

THE
SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST.

HENRY FROWDE, M.A.
PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD



LONDON, EDINBURGH, AND NEW YORK

THE
SATAPATHA-BRÂHMAṆA

ACCORDING TO THE TEXT

MÂDHYANDINA SCHOOL

TRANSLATED BY

JULIUS EGGELING

PART V

BOOKS XI, XII, XIII, AND XIV

Oxford

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1900

[All rights reserved]

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	xiii

ELEVENTH KÂṆDA.

The Full and New-Moon Sacrifice (Supplementary Remarks).	
Time of Sacrifice	1
Additional oblations to Indra Vimridh and Aditi	5
Expiatory oblations (to Agni, Indra, Vishnu) at New Moon	7
Birth of Pragâpati from golden egg	12
He creates Gods (Agni, Indra, Soma, Paramesh/hin) and Asuras	13
Sacrifice representing universe and man	18
Brahman (n.), the origin and immortal element, of gods and universe	27
Sacrifice, the Year	38
The Agnihotra (esoteric doctrines)	46
The Brahmakârin	48
Uddâlaka Âruvi and Svaidâyana	50
Saulâyana and Ayasthûva	61
The Mitravindâ Sacrifice	62
Sîi dismembered	62
Purûravas and Urvasi	68
The Seasonal Sacrifices (Āturmāsya)	74
Sauteya Prâkinayogya and Uddâlaka Âruvi on the Agnihotra	79
The Upanayana, or Initiation of the Brâhmanical Student	86
The Sâvitri formula	87
The Satâtirâtra Sattrâ	91
The Morning-Litany (prâtaranuvâka) of the Atirâtra	92
The Svâdhyâya, or Daily Study of the Veda	95
The three Vedas, or triple science	102

The Adâbhya Cup of Soma	105
Varuna and his son Bhṛigu (on future states of existence)	108
Ganaka of Videha on the Agnihotra	112
Yâgñavalkya and Sâkalya (on the gods and the supreme deity)	115
The Animal Sacrifice, of two kinds	118
The Sacrificial stake (yûpa)	123
The Victim and its deity	127
The King of the Keshin and his Samrâg-cow	131

TWELFTH KÂṆDA.

The Sacrificial Session (Sautra)	135
Man, the Year	144
The Tâpaskita Sautra	171
Expiatory Ceremonies of the Agnihotra	178
The going out of one of the fires	187
The death of the Agnihotrin	197
The burying of the dead body	200
Expiatory Oblations of Soma-sacrifice	205
The Sautrâmanî	213
Namuki slain by Indra	216, 222
Preparation of the Surâ-liquor	223
Oblations of milk and Surâ	231
Oblations to the Fathers	234
The Âsvina, Sûrasvata, and Aindra cups	245
Indra assisted and healed by the Asvins and Sarasvatî	223, 249
Consecration of Sacrificer	249
Cakes to Indra, Savitṛi, and Varuna	247, 260
The Avabhṛitha, or purificatory bath	264
Kâkra Sthapati performs Sautrâmanî for Dushâtîtu	
Paumsâyana	269

THIRTEENTH KÂṆDA.

The Asvamedha, or Horse-sacrifice	274
Fettering and sprinkling of Horse	276
Stokîyâ oblations	280

	PAGE
Prakrama oblations	282
Three cake-offerings to Savitri	284
Dhriti oblations	285
Lute-playing by Brâhmana and Râganya	285
Dikshâ, or Initiation	289
Vairvadeva oblations	289
Audgrabhama oblations	291
First Soma-day (Agnish/oma)	295
Annahomas (food oblations)	296
Second Soma-day (Ukthya)	298
Fettering of victims	298
Bahishpavamâna-stotra	304
Setting free of the wild victims	307
Sacrificer drives with Horse to pond of water and back	311
Horse anointed and adorned by Sacrificer's wives	312
Brahmodya of Hotri and Brahman	314
Sprinkling of Horse by Adhvaryu (and Sacrificer)	316
Killing of Horse on cloths and plate of gold	320
Wives led up to circumambulate and fan the Horse	322
Mahishi addresses the Horse	323
Priests' colloquy with wives	324
The Knife-paths made with needles	326
The two Mahiman Cups of Soma	327
The Chanting of the Kâtush/oma	329
Araṇya-nûkya oblations	336
Svish/akrit oblations of blood	337
Oblations to the Deaths	340
Asvastomiyâ oblations	341
Dvipadâ oblations	342
Expiatory Offerings	345
Right time for performing the Asvamedha	347
Preliminary Ceremonies :—the mess of rice	348
Sacrificer and wives pass the night in the sacrificial hall	349
Offering to Agni Pathikrit—the mouth of the Sacrifice	350
Offering to Pûshan	352
Leading up of the Horse, assisted by its noble keepers	353
Three Sâvitra offerings (performed daily for a year)	355
Brâhman lute-player sings three gâthâs	356
Horse and keepers sent to range the quarters	359

	PAGE
The Pâriplava Âkhyâna, or revolving legend	361-370
Prakrama and Dhṛtî oblations	363
Râganya lute-player sings three gâthâs	364
Dikshâ, or Initiation (at end of year)	371
Sutyâ-days	372
The set of twenty-one sacrificial stakes	373
The chanting of Gotama's <i>Kâtu-sh-toma</i>	375
The Sastras and Stotras of the Central (<i>Ekavimsa</i>) day	377
The animal sacrifices of that day	382
The Adhrigu litany	385
The Mahishî and the Horse	386
Colloquy of priests, chamberlain and women	386
Brahmodya of priests	388
The first Mahiman Cup of Soma	391
The offering of the omenta (<i>yajñâ</i>)	392
The second Mahiman Cup of Soma	394
The Stotras of the third (<i>Atirâtra</i>) day	395
Various Arrangements of the <i>Asvamedha</i> Chants	396
Offering of barren cows	402
Animal sacrifices performed in following year	402
The <i>Purushamedha</i> , or Human Sacrifice	403
Animal sacrifices	404
The (symbolical) human victims	407
<i>Purusha-Nârâyana</i> litany (<i>Purusha-sûkta</i>)	410
<i>Traidhâtavî</i> offering	412
<i>Uttara-Nârâyana</i> litany	412
Enumeration of the human victims	413
The <i>Sarvamedha</i> , or All-Sacrifice	417
The ten <i>Sutyâ</i> -days thereof	418
Funeral Ceremonies	421
Burial-ground (<i>smasâna</i>)	421
Locality of the tomb	424
Form and size of the tomb	428
Preparation (sweeping, ploughing, sowing) of the site	429
Depositing of charred bones	433
Arranging of bones limb by limb	434
Body completed by bricks, like bird-shaped altar	435
Height of sepulchral mound	435
Driving in of pins marking site of mound	436

Furrows, dug south and north, filled with (milk and) water	437
Passing the northern ones on three stones thrown in by each	437
Purification by Apâmârga plants and bath . . .	438
Home-going, and offering to Agni Âyushmat on house- fire	439
Depositing of clod midway between grave and village	440

FOURTEENTH KÂṆDA.

The Pravargya	441
Sacrificial session performed by the gods at Kuru- kshetra	441
Vishnu excels and becomes overweening	442
Bowstring, gnawed by ants, cuts off his head . .	442
The names 'Gharma, Pravargya, Mahâvîra, Samrâg' explained	442
Vishnu's body divided between the gods	443
Dadhyañk Âtharvana warned by Indra not to teach the sweet doctrine	444
His head cut off by Indra, and restored by the Asvins	445
Rule of abstinence observed when teaching the Pravargya	446
Collecting materials for making the Mahâvîra pot .	447
Pragâpati, as the boar Emûsha, raises the Earth .	451
The making of the Mahâvîra vessels in shed . .	453
The fumigating and baking of the vessels . . .	456
Depositing of vessels and implements in front of Gârhapatya	458
The Hotri's recitation	459
Sprinkling of pot with lustral water	460
The Mahâvîra's (imperial) Throne-seat south of Âha- vanîya	461
The pot anointed with ghee	462
The pot set down on mound upon burning reed- sheaths	463
The Sacrificer invoking blessings upon the earth .	464
Pieces of Vikankata wood laid round, and a gold plant upon the pot.	466

Fanning of the fire with three pieces of antelope-skin till aglow	466
Revering of the heated pot with the Avakâsa verses	469
Offering of the first Rauhîa cake	472
Samrâg-cow tied and milked	474
The pot lifted from the fire and placed on the tray	476
Cooling of pot with goat's milk ; and pouring in of cow's milk	477
Oblations made by (muttering) the (twelve) wind-names	478
Pouring of spilt milk and ghee from tray into pot	481
Oblation to Arvins	482
Anuñhantraya to the rising milk	484
Mahāvîra pot placed on mound	485
Offering of the steeped Vikānkata chips (to Pûshan, &c.)	486
Pouring of remaining milk from pot into tray	488
Offering of the second Rauhîa cake	489
Sacrificer drinks the remaining Gharma	489
Cleansing, and performance of Upasat	490
Rules for priests as to how and for whom to perform the Pravargya	490
Pravargyotsâ lana, or 'setting out' of the implements	493
Kindling of bundles of faggots, and offering thereon	494
Procession led by Prastotri singing a Sâman	496
Arrangement of apparatus in form of human body	498
Singing of Vârshâhara-sâman and departure	501
Mode of performance at continued Soma-sacrifices	502
Dakshinâs, or sacrificial fees	503
Expiatory ceremonies in case of breaking of pot	504
Laudation of Pravargya	507
INDEX TO PARTS III, IV, AND V (Vols. XLI, XLIII, AND XLIV)	511
Additions and Corrections	591

Transliteration of Oriental Alphabets adopted for the Trans- lations of the Sacred Books of the East	593
---	-----

INTRODUCTION.

THE present volume completes the theoretic exposition of the sacrificial ceremonial, and thus brings us to the end of our task. The remaining six chapters of the last book of the *Brāhmaṇa* form the so-called *Bṛihad-āraṇyaka*, or great forest-treatise, which, as one of the ten primitive Upanishads, is included in Professor F. Max Müller's translation of those old theosophic treatises, published in the present series. The portion of the work contained in this volume forms practically a continuation of the first five *kāṇḍas*, the intervening five books being devoted to the consideration of the *Agnikāyana*, or construction of the sacred brick-altar, which had come to be recognised as an important preliminary to the Soma-sacrifice. The circumstances which seem to have led to this somewhat peculiar distribution of the different sections of the work have been explained in the introduction to the first volume of the translation. As was there shown, the inclusion of the *Agnikāyana* in the sacrificial system of the *Vāgasaneyins*, or theologians of the White Yagur, appears to have resulted in a definite settlement of the sacrificial texts of the ordinary ritual, as contained in the first eighteen *adhyāyas* of the *Vāgasaneyi-saṃhitā*, as well as of the dogmatic explanation of that ritual as given in the first nine *kāṇḍas* of the *Satapatha-brāhmaṇa*. Considerable portions of the remaining sections of both works may have been, and very likely were, already in existence at the time of that settlement, but, being excluded from the regular ceremonial, they were naturally more liable to subsequent modifications and additions than

those earlier sections which remained in constant use. Whilst the tenth *kāṇḍa*, included in the preceding volume of the translation, consisted of speculations on the sacred fire-altar, as representing Puruṣa-Pragāpati and the divine body of the Sacrificer—whence that book is called the *Agnirahasya*, or mystery of the fire-altar—the present volume contains the supplementary sections connected with the sacrificial ceremonial proper.

The eleventh and twelfth *kāṇḍas* are mainly taken up with additional remarks and directions on most of the sacrifices treated of in the first four *kāṇḍas*, especially with expiatory ceremonies and oblations in cases of mishaps or mistakes occurring during the performance, or with esoteric speculations regarding the significance and mystic effect of certain rites. In this way the eleventh book deals with the New and Full-moon sacrifices; the Seasonal offerings (XI, 5, 2), the Agnihotra (XI, 5, 3; 6, 2), the Soma-sacrifice (XI, 5, 5; 9), and the Animal-sacrifice (XI, 7, 2-8, 4); whilst the twelfth *kāṇḍa* treats of the 'Gāvām ayanam'—or most common sacrificial session lasting for a year, thus offering a convenient subject for dilating upon the nature of Pragāpati, as the Year, or Father Time;—of additional expiatory rites for Soma-sacrifices (XII, 6), and of the *Sautrāmazi*, consisting of oblations of milk and spirituous liquor, supposed to obviate or remove the unpleasant effects of any excess in the consumption of Soma-juice (XII, 7-9). Though supplementary notes and speculations on such ceremonial topics cannot but be of a somewhat desultory and heterogeneous character, they nevertheless offer welcome opportunities for the introduction of much valuable and interesting matter. It is here that we find the famous myth of Purūravas and Urvashi (XI, 5, 1); and that of Bhṛigu, the son of Varuṇa, vividly illustrating the notions prevalent at the time regarding retribution after death (XI, 6, 1); as also the important cosmogonic legend of the golden egg from which Pragāpati is born at the beginning of the evolution of the universe (XI, 1, 6). Of considerable interest also are the chapters treating of the way in which

the dead body of the pious performer of the Agnihotra, or daily milk-offering, is to be dealt with (XII, 5, 1-2); of the initiation and the duties of the Brâhmanical student (XI, 3, 3; 3, 4); and, last not least, of the study of the Vedas (XI, 5, 6-7) and their subsidiary texts amongst which we meet, for the first time, with the Atharvâṅgiras as a special collection of texts recommended for systematic study.

With the commencement of the thirteenth *kāṇḍa*, we enter once more upon a regular exposition of a series of great sacrifices like those discussed in the early books; the first and most important of them being the Asvamedha, or Horse-sacrifice. Like the Râgasûya, or inauguration of a king, the Asvamedha is not a mere sacrifice or series of offerings, but it is rather a great state function in which the religious and sacrificial element is closely and deftly interwoven with a varied programme of secular ceremonies. But whilst the Râgasûya was a state ceremonial to which any petty ruler might fairly think himself entitled, the Asvamedha, on the contrary, involved an assertion of power and a display of political authority such as only a monarch of undisputed supremacy could have ventured upon without courting humiliation¹; and its celebration must therefore have been an event of comparatively rare occurrence. Perhaps, indeed, it is owing to this exceptional character of the Asvamedha rather than to the later origin of its ritual and dogmatic treatment that this ceremony was separated from the Râgasûya which one would naturally have expected it to succeed. It is worthy of remark, in this respect, that, in Kâtyâyana's *Anukramanî* to the Vâgasaneyi-saṃhitâ, the term 'khila,' or supplement, is not applied to the Asvamedha section² (Adhy. XXII-XXV), while the subsequent sections are distinctly characterised as such. As a matter of fact, however, the Asvamedha has

¹ Cf. Taitt. Br. III, 8, 9, 4,—*parâ vâ esha sîkṣate yoshalo asvamedhena yagate*:—'Verily, poured away (dislodged) is he who, being weak, performs the Asvamedha'; Âp. Sr. XX, 1, 1, 'a king ruling the whole land (sârvabhauma) may perform the Asvamedha;—also one not ruling the whole land.'

² Cf. Weber, *History of Indian Literature*, p. 107; Max Müller, *History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, p. 358.

received a very unequal treatment in the different rituals. On the two recensions of the Brāhmana of the *Āg* veda priests the Aitareya-brāhmana takes no account whatever of the Horse-sacrifice, whilst its last two books (VII, VIII) generally regarded as a later supplement, though probably already attached to the work in Pāṇini's time are mainly taken up with the discussion of the Rāgasūya. The Kaushitaki-brāhmana, on the other hand, passes over both ceremonies, their explanation being only supplied by the Sāṅkhayana-sūtra, along with that of some other sacrifices, in two of its chapters (17 and 18), composed in Brāhmana style and said to be extracted from the Maha-Kaushitaki-brāhmana¹. In the principal Brāhmana of the Saman priests the Pañḍarīnga-brāhmana, the Asvamedha, as a triātva, or triduum, is dealt with in its proper place (XXI, 4), among the Ahinas, or several days' performances. As regards the Black Yagus, both the Kāṭhaka and the Maitrayaṇi Samhitā give merely the mantras of the Asvamedha², to which they assign pretty much the same place in the ritual as is done in the White Yagus. In the Taittiriya-samhitā, on the other hand, the mantras are scattered piecemeal over the last four kāṇḍas; whilst, with the exception of a short introductory vidhi-passage, likewise given in the Samhitā (V, 3, 12), the whole of the exegetic matter connected with this ceremony is contained, in a continuous form, in the Taittiriya-brāhmana (VIII and IX). Lastly, in the Vaitāna-sūtra of the Atharva-veda—doubtless a comparatively late work, though probably older than the Gopatha

¹ Besides the two chapters referred to, nothing more than quotations are known of this work. Possibly, however, the difference between it and the Kaushitaki-brāhmana consisted merely of such supplements which would thus be very much of the same character as the last two paṭh-kās of the Aitareya-brāhmana, except that they never became so generally recognised.

² Though this circumstance seems to favour the supposition of the more recent ritualistic treatment of the Asvamedha, it may not be out of place to notice that, in the Maitrayaṇi Samhitā, the Asvamedha section is followed by several Brāhmana sections; amongst them that of the Rāgasūya which is not found in the Kāṭhaka at all. Śat. Br. XIII, 3, 3, 6, calls the Asvamedha an 'utsannayagña'; but it is not quite clear what is meant thereby, seeing that the same term is applied to the Kāturmāsyaṇi, or Seasonal offerings (II, 5, 2, 48).

brāhmaza¹—the Asvamedha is treated immediately after the Rāgasūya, and followed by the Purushamedha and Sarvamedha; these four ceremonies being characterised at the end as the Kshatriya's sacrifices² (medha).

With regard to the earliest phase of Vedic religion, there is no direct evidence to show that the horse-sacrifice was already at that time a recognised institution. Two hymns of the *R̥g-veda* (I, 162; 163), it is true, relate to that sacrifice³, but they evidently belong to the latest productions⁴ of that collection, though still sufficiently far removed from the time of the oldest of the ritual works just referred to. Seeing, however, that animal sacrifices generally are not alluded to in the *R̥ksamhitā*⁵, whilst there is every reason to believe that they were commonly practised from remote antiquity, this absence of earlier positive evidence regarding the horse-sacrifice cannot be taken as proving the later origin of that institution. As will be seen further on, there are sufficient indications to show that even human sacrifices were at one time practised amongst the Aryans of India, as they were amongst their

¹ See Professor M. Bloomfield's paper on 'The Position of the Gopatha-brāhmaṇa in Vedic Literature,' Journ. Am. Or. Soc., vol. xix.

² Cf. Mahābh. XIV, 48, where these four sacrifices are specially recommended by Vyāsa to Yudhishṭhira as worthy of being performed by him as King.

³ Possibly also, the hymn *R̥g-veda* I, 164 Ath.-v. IX, 9, 10—on which see P. Deussen, Allg. Geschichte der Philosophie, I, 1, p. 105 seq.—may have been placed after the two Asvamedha hymns to supply topics for the priests' colloquy 'brahmodya' at the Asvamedha. Cf. XIII, 2, 6, 9 seqq.; 5, 2, 11 seqq. The fact that the Asvamedha is not treated of in the Aitareya-brāhmaṇa cannot, of course, be taken to prove the later origin of the hymns referred to, though it might, no doubt, fairly be used as an argument in favour of assuming that those parts of the Asvamedha ceremonial in which the Hotṛ takes a prominent part were probably not introduced till a later time.

⁴ Haug, Ait. Br. I, introd., p. 12 seqq., argues against the assumption of a comparatively late origin of the hymn I, 162; but his argument meets with serious lexical and other difficulties.

⁵ We may leave out of account here one or two vague allusions, such as X, 155, 5 'these have led around the cow (or bull) and have carried around the fire; with the gods they have gained for themselves glory: who dares to attack them?' The question also as to whether the so-called Āpri-hymns, used at the fore-offerings of the animal sacrifice, were from the very beginning composed for this purpose, cannot be discussed here.

European kinsmen. The fundamental idea which underlay this practice doubtless was the notion that man, as the highest attainable living being, could not but be the most acceptable gift that could be offered to the gods, and, at the same time, the most appropriate substitute for the human Sacrificer himself. For the same reason no doubt only domesticated animals were considered suitable for sacrifice; and amongst these the horse was naturally looked upon as ranking next to man (*Sat. Br.*, VI, 2, 1, 2), although considerations of practical expediency and even of social distinction might prevent its use for ordinary sacrificial purposes.

In the speculations of the *Brāhmanas*, a deep mystic significance is attached to the Horse-sacrifice. In the last two chapters of the 'Mystery of the Fire-altar' (*Sat. Br.* X, 6, 4, 1; 4), the *Asvamedha*—i. e. the sacrificial horse itself—is coupled with the *Arka*, the mysterious name of the sacred fire, as the representative of *Agni-Pragāpati*, the Sun. The horse-sacrifice is called the bull (XIII, 1, 2, 2), and the king (XIII, 2, 2, 1), of sacrifices, just as the horse itself is the highest and most perfect of animals¹ (XIII, 3, 3, 1; *Taitt. Br.* III, 8, 7; 8, 9, 1); the horse selected for sacrifice, in particular, being said to be worth a thousand cows (XIII, 4, 2, 1). The connection of the sacrificial horse with 'the lord of creatures' is, of course, fully accounted for by the theory of the identity of the sacrifice generally with *Purusha-Pragāpati*, discussed in the introduction to part iv of this translation. The sacrificial horse accordingly belongs to *Pragāpati*, or rather is of *Pragāpati*'s nature (*prāgāpatya*); nay, as the *Taitt. Br.* (III, 9, 17, 4) puts it, it is a form of *Pragāpati* himself (*pragāpate rūpam asvaḥ*), and is, of all animals, the one most conformable (*anurūpatamaḥ*) to *Pragāpati*. Hence also, in the cosmogonic account at the commencement of the *Agnikāyana* section (VI, 1, 1, 11), the horse is represented as having originated, immediately after the *Brahman* (sacred lore) and *Agni*, directly from the

¹ 'They (the Massagetae) worship the sun only of all the gods, and sacrifice horses to him; and the reason for this custom is that they think it right to offer the swiftest of all animals to the swiftest of all the gods.' *Herod.* I, 216.

egg-produced by Pragâpati from the cosmic waters; whilst, according to other accounts (VII, 5, 2, 6; XIII, 3, 1, 1), the horse originated from Pragâpati's eye. But, since the offering also represents the offerer himself, or rather his divine self awaiting him in the other world (XI, 1, 8, 6; 2, 2, 6), the sacrificial horse is also identified with the Sacrificer (*yagamâno vâ asvaḥ*, Taitt. Br. III, 9, 17, 4) who thereby obtains the fellowship of the Lord of creatures and a place in his world (ib. III, 9, 20, 2).

Besides Pragâpati, there is, however, another deity who lays claim to the possession of the sacred steed; for the horse is Varuṇa's sacrificial animal (Sat. Br. V, 3, 1, 5; VI, 2, 1, 5; Taitt. Br. III, 9, 16, 1); nay, Varuṇa is even the lord of all one-hoofed cattle (*Vâg. S. XIV, 30*; Sat. Br. VIII, 4, 3, 13). This connection of the horse with Varuṇa seems natural enough, seeing that this god, as the king of heaven and the upholder of the law, is the divine representative of the earthly king; whence the Râgasūya, or coronation-ceremony, is called Varuṇa's consecration (Sat. Br. V, 4, 3, 21; cf. II, 2, 3, 1). For this reason the barley also is sacred to Varuṇa¹ (XIII, 3, 8, 5); and accordingly, during the same ceremony, the king offers a barley-mash to Varuṇa, in the house of his Sûta, or charioteer and herald; a horse being the sacrificial fee for this offering (V, 3, 1, 5). In the Vedic hymns, this association of the god Varuṇa with the noble quadruped finds a ready, if rather commonplace, explanation in a common natural phenomenon: Varuṇa's horse is none other than the fiery racer who pursues his diurnal course across the all-encompassing arch of heaven, the sphere of Varuṇa², the all-ruler. It is in the

¹ Dr. Hillebrandt, 'Varuṇa und Mitra,' p. 65, is inclined to refer this connection to Varuṇa's character as the god of waters and the rains, as favouring the crops and fertility generally.

² Whilst it may be a matter of opinion whether, with Professor Brugmann (Grundr. II, p. 154), we have to take the original form of this name to be 'vorvanos,' or whether the 'u' of the Sanskrit word is merely due to the dulling influence of the preceding r (cf. *taruṇa*, *dhârṇuṇa*, *karuṇa*), the etymological identity of 'varuṇas' and *oûpanos* is now probably questioned by few scholars. The ethical attributes of this mythological conception seem to

form of the horse that the Sun is thus lauded in the hymn *Rig-v.* I, 163, recited by the *Hotri* on the second day of the *Asvamedha*, after the horse has been led up to the sacrificial stake, and to the slaughtering-place¹:—1. 'When, first born (just born), thou didst neigh, uprising from the sea, or from the vapoury region, the falcon's wings and the deer's feet—praiseworthy greatness was innate in thee, O steed!'. . . 4. 'Three fetterings², they say, are thine in the sky, three in the waters, three within the sea; and like unto *Varuza*. O steed, dost thou appear to me, where, they say, thy highest birth-place is.' And since, as in these verses, the upper regions commonly present themselves to the eye of the Vedic singer under the semblance of a heavenly sea, *Varuza* also comes to be looked upon as the divine representative of the waters; whilst the horse, for the same reason, is supposed to have sprung from the waters. Of any connection of the sacrificial horse with *Pragāpati*, on the other hand, as of the *Pragāpati* theory of the sacrifice generally, clearly shadowed forth in the *Purusha-sūkta*, and so decidedly dominant during the *Brāhmaṇa* period, no trace is to be found in the earlier hymns. Indeed, if we have any right to assume that the horse-sacrifice was known and practised in the earlier times, it can scarcely be doubted that King *Varuza* must have been the deity to whom this victim was chiefly consecrated.

The close and natural relations between the sun and the heavens find their hallowed expression in the divine duad *Mitra* and *Varuza*. Though, judged by the number of

n.e. to find a sufficiently intelligible explanation without resorting to outside influence to account for them. Indeed, Dr. Hillebrandt's '*Varuza und Mitra*' gives a fairly complete and satisfactory account of this figure of the Indian pantheon in all its relations.

¹ See *Sat. Br.* XIII, 5, 1, 17, 18.

² That is, probably, three halting-places (? the points of rising, culminating, and setting). Perhaps also the three statements are merely meant as an emphatic repetition of one and the same locality—the sky, the sea of waters; though, possibly, three different strata of the upper region may be intended. Professor Ludwig, on the other hand, takes '*trīni bandhanāni*' in the sense of 'three fetters,' and Professor Hillebrandt, l. c., in that of 'three relations (or connections, *Beziehungen*).'

hymns addressed to them, singly or jointly, this pair of deities occupies a somewhat subordinate position in the Vedic pantheon. there is reason to believe that it formed a more prominent feature of a phase of belief lying beyond the period reflected in the hymns of the *Rig-veda*. Judging from the peculiar character of these deities, one might indeed be inclined to claim for the people that formed religious conceptions such as these a long period of peaceful dwelling and normal intellectual growth. If such was the case, the occupation of the land of the seven rivers and the gradual eastward drift certainly proved a turning-point in the development of this Aryan people. But, in any case, the decided change of climate¹, and the close contact with aboriginal tribes of inferior culture, could hardly fail, along with the changed conditions of life, to influence considerably the character of the people, and to modify their religious notions and intellectual tendencies. As, in their struggles against hostile tribes, the people would naturally look to leaders of deed and daring rather than to mild and just rulers, so the violent war of elements, periodically convulsing the heavens in these regions, after long and anxious seasons of heat and drought, and striking awe and terror into the minds of men, might seem to them to call for a heavenly champion of a different stamp than the even-headed and even-tempered Varuṇa,—it would need a divine leader of dauntless, and even ferocious, spirit to fight the worshipper's battle against his earthly and unearthly foes. Such a champion the Vedic Aryans indeed created for themselves in the person of Indra, the divine representative, as it were, of their warlike kings, and the favourite subject of their song. And side by side with him, and sharing with him the highest honours—nay, even taking precedence of him—we find the divine priest, Agni, the deified fire of sacrifice, as representing the all-pervading, all-supporting

¹ Whilst the climate of Baluchistan is regulated, as in Europe, by the succession of four seasons, the climate of the districts east of the Indus, as of India generally, shows the characteristic threefold division of rainy, cool, and hot seasons (S. Pottinger, *Beloochistan*, p. 319 seqq.).

light of heaven ; just as we found Mitra, the sun, by the side of Varuṇa, the god of the all-encompassing heaven. Not as if Agni and Indra had ever entirely superseded Mitra and Varuṇa. On the contrary, all these gods continue to share, in a greater or less degree, the affections of the Vedic singers ; and as regards Varuṇa and Indra in particular, their relations are well expressed by Vasiṣṭha when he says (*Rig-v.* VII, 82, 2 ; 5), that the one (Varuṇa) is 'samrâg' (universal ruler, overlord) ; and the other (Indra) 'svarâg' (self-ruler, independent lord) ;—and that ever since the time when these two, by their power, created all the beings in the world, Mitra serves Varuṇa in peace, whilst the mighty (Indra) goes forth with the Maruts in quest of glory. Even in the sacrificial ritual, Mitra and Varuṇa continue to play an important part, seeing that one of the priests—the Maitravaruṇa—is named after them, that they receive various oblations, and that at the end of every Soma-sacrifice at least one sterile cow is offered to them, apparently as an expiatory victim, for shortcomings in the sacrifice¹, thus accentuating once more the ethical character of these deities. It is thus not to be wondered at that, whilst Agni and Indra are most commonly referred to in the Brāhmaṇas as the divine representatives of the Brahman and Kṣhatra, or the spiritual and the political powers—the high priest and king—respectively, the very same is the case as regards Mitra and Varuṇa² ; and the Maruts, representing the common people, are accordingly associated with Varuṇa,

¹ Taitt. S. VI, 6, 7, 4, explains this offering as symbolically smoothing down the sacrifice torn up by recited verses and chanted hymns, even as a field, torn up by the plough, is levelled by a roller ('matya,' taken however by Sây. in the sense of 'cow-dung'). The Sat. Br. does not allude to the expiatory character of the offering, but there can be no doubt that it is of an essentially piacular significance. It need scarcely be mentioned that the 'avabhṛitha,' or lustral bath, at the end of Soma- and other sacrifices, is distinctly explained (II, 5, 2, 46 ; IV, 4, 5, 10) as intended to clear the Sacrificer of all guilt for which he is liable to Varuṇa. Cf. Taitt. Br. III, 9, 15, 'At the lustral bath he offers the last oblation with "To Gumbaka hail !" for Gumbaka is Varuṇa : he thus finally frees himself from Varuṇa by offering.'

² See, for instance, Sat. Br. IV, 1, 4, 2 ; V, 3, 2, 4 ; IX, 4, 2, 16 ; Maitr. S. IV, 5, 8 ; Taitt. Br. III, 1, 2, 7 (kṣhatrasya râgâ Varuṇo dhîrâgâh).

as their king or ruler (Sat. Br. II, 5, 2, 34) just as they are with Indra (II, 5, 2, 27). One might thus expect that Indra would claim the same special connection¹ with the sacrificial horse as that which is conceded to Varuṇa. The reason why this is not the case probably is that, in the Brāhmaṇa period, the notion of the horse having, like the sun, originated from the cosmic waters had become as firmly established as was the traditional connection—nay, even identity²—of Varuṇa with the element of water generally.

As regards Varuṇa's and Pragâpati's joint connection with the sacrificial horse, the Taitt. S. (II, 3, 12, 1) records the following legend which may perhaps have some bearing on this point:—Pragâpatir Varuṇâyâsvam anayat, sa svâṃ devatâm ârkhat, sa paṇy adiryata, sa etam vâruṇam katushkapâlam apasyat, tam nir avapat. tato vai sa varuṇapâsâd amukyata, Varuṇo vâ etam grîhṇāti yo=svam pratigrîhṇāti. yâvato=svân pratigrîhṇiyât tâvato vâruṇâṇ katushkapâlân nir vaped, Varuṇam eva svena bhâgadheycnopa dhâvati, sa evainam varuṇapâsân muṇkati:—'Pragâpati led up the horse to Varuṇa: he (thereby) impaired his own godhead, and became racked all over with dropsy. He beheld that four-kapâla (cake) sacred to Varuṇa, and offered it. and thereupon was freed from Varuṇa's noose; for Varuṇa seizes him who takes (receives) a horse,—as many horses as one takes so many four-kapâla (cakes) one ought to offer to Varuṇa: one (thereby) hastens up to Varuṇa with his (V.'s) own share, and he (V.) frees him from Varuṇa's noose.'

The interpretation of this legend presents, however, some difficulties. Dr. Hillebrandt, 'Varuṇa und Mitra' (p. 64), translates the first sentence by—'Pragâpati führte dem

¹ Since all the gods are concerned in the Asvamedha—whence the horse is called 'vaisvadeva'—Indra would of course have a general interest in it. Indra is also associated with the horse in so far as he is said to have first mounted it, Rîg-veda I, 163, 2, 9. Indra's two bays (harts) of course belong to a different conception.

² Âpo vai Varuṇâḥ, Maitr. S. IV, 8, 5.

Varuṇa das Ross fort¹—‘Pragāpati led the horse away from Varuṇa’: this would undoubtedly make better sense, but, unfortunately, the construction of ‘nī’ with the dative in this sense would involve a decided solecism. Sāyana, on the other hand, takes it in the same sense as we have done, and he explains that it is just by giving away the horse whose deity he himself is that Pragāpati forfeits his godhead². He feels, however, afterwards constrained to assign to ‘pratigr̥hṇāti’ the causal force of ‘he causes it to be taken, he gives it away,’ which is clearly impossible. But whatever the correct interpretation of the opening clause may be, it seems at all events clear that the sacrificial horse is represented in the legend as undergoing a change of ownership from the one deity to the other.

When one compares the ceremonial of the Asvamedha, as expounded in the Brāhmaṇa, with the ritual indications contained in the two hymns already referred to, one is struck by the very marked contrast between the two. For whilst, on the central day of the Asvamedha alone, the ritual requires the immolation of not less than 349 victims bound to twenty-one stakes (p. 311, n. 1)—not counting two sets of eleven Savaniya victims (p. 383, n. 3) subsequently added thereto—the hymns (I, 162, 2-4; 163, 12) seem only to mention two victims, viz. the horse itself, and a he-goat. This latter animal which is to precede the horse when led to the sacrificial ground (and stake), and to

¹ This, no doubt, might possibly be taken to mean ‘Pragāpati led away the horse for Varuṇa,’ but Dr. Hillebrandt could hardly have meant it in this sense, since his argument apparently is that the horse (like Varuṇa himself) represents the aqueous element, and that thus, by taking to himself the horse, Pragāpati incurs drowsy. The exact point which interests us here, viz. the relation between Pragāpati and Varuṇa as regards the sacrificial horse, lies outside Dr. Hillebrandt’s inquiry.

² In Dr. Hillebrandt’s interpretation, it is also not quite easy to see in what way Pragāpati, by carrying off Varuṇa’s horse, impaired—‘griff an,’ attacked, assailed—his own godhead. One might possibly refer ‘svām’ to the horse, but this would make the construction rather harsh. The verb ‘nī’ here would seem to refer to the leading up of the sacrificial horse to the offering-ground, either for being set free for a year’s roaming, or for sacrifice, for both of which acts the verb ‘ud-ā-nī’—i. e. to lead up the horse from the water where it was washed—is used (Sat. Br. XIII, 4, 2, 1; 5, 1, 16).

be slaughtered first in order to carry the welcome news of the sacrifice to the gods, is in one place referred to as Pūshan's share, and in another as going forward to the dear seat of Indra and Pūshan¹. Sāṅkhāyana (Srautas. XVI, 3, 27-30), however, takes these statements of the *Rishi* to refer to two different he-goats, both of which he includes amongst the victims tied to the horse's limbs, viz. one, sacred to Pūshan, tied to the forehead, and another, sacred to Indra and Pūshan, fastened to the navel, of the horse². The corresponding 'paryaṅgya' victims recognised by the *Maitrāyaṇi Samhitā* (III, 13) and the *White Yagus* (Vâg. S. XXIV, 1), on the other hand, are a black-necked he-goat for Agni, tied to the forehead, and a black or grey (*syāma*) one, bound to the navel, and consecrated by the one authority to Pūshan, and by the other to Soma and Pūshan. But, curiously enough, the *Taittirīya* school (*Taitt. Br.* III, 8, 23; *Āp. Sr.* XX, 13, 12) recognises not only Sāṅkhāyana's two victims, but also the one for Agni; whilst in regard to the other victims also it differs considerably from the other schools of the *Yagur-veda*. Seeing, then, that there is so little agreement on these points even amongst different branches of the same *Veda*, one can hardly escape the inference that, in this respect at least, there was no continuity of ritual practice since the time of those two hymns. As regards the other points therein alluded to, the he-goat and horse are referred to

¹ *Rig-veda* S. I, 162. 2. 'When, held by the mouth (by the bridle), they lead round the offering of the (horse) covered with rich trappings, the all-coloured he-goat goes bleating in front right eastwards to the dear seat of Indra and Pūshan. 3. This he-goat, fit for all the gods, is led in front of the swift horse as Pūshan's share; like (1) the welcome cake, *Tvashtri* promotes it, along with the steed, to great glory. 4. When thrice the men duly lead around the horse meet for offering along the way to the gods, then the he-goat walks first, announcing the sacrifice to the gods. . . . 16. The cloth which they spread (for the horse to lie upon) and the upper cloth and the gold, the halter, the steed, the shackle—these they bring up as acceptable to the gods.'—I, 163, 12. 'Forth came the swift steed to the slaughter, musing with reverent mind; his mate, the he-goat, is led in front; and behind go the wise singers.'

² According to the *Taittirīyas*, this second he-goat is tied to the cord surrounding the horse's limbs somewhere above the neck of the horse.

as being led round thrice in accordance with the sacred ordinance. Now, this ceremony is quite foreign to the later practice in animal sacrifices. *Sâyana* accordingly takes it to refer to the rite of 'paryagnikarana,' or carrying fire round the victims¹; but the text of the passage evidently does not admit of such an interpretation; and, besides, in *Rig-v.* X, 155. 5, the sacrificial cow is apparently referred to as first being led round, and then fire being carried round it. It is therefore more probable that the victims were in the first place made to circumambulate the fire, or the fire and stake combined.

Further, the allusion to the *pasu-puroḍāsa*, or cakes offered in connection with the victims, as well as to the *two cloths and the piece of gold* placed on the ground, as they are in the later practice, for the dead horse to lie upon, might seem to suggest that even then this sacrifice was not performed in quite so simple a manner, but somewhat more in accordance with the later ceremonial than the scanty allusions in the hymns might lead one to suppose. At all events, however, we shall probably not be far wrong in assuming that, from the very beginning, the performance of the horse-sacrifice must have had connected with it a certain amount of ceremonial of a purely secular and popular character. Even at the time of the fully developed ritual this was almost certainly the case to a larger extent than would appear from the exposition of it given in the *Brāhmaṇas* and *Sūtras* which, indeed, are mainly concerned with the religious side of the ceremonial. For this reason considerable interest attaches to the description of the horse-sacrifice given in the *Āsvamedhika-parvan* of the *Mahābhārata* in which much greater stress is laid on the popular and chivalrous aspect of this religious observance. Though this epic account manifestly emanates from a much later period², it seems, upon the whole, to present the

¹ See p. 307, note 5.

² It has even been supposed to be merely a condensed version of a comparatively modern work ascribed to *Gaimini*, the (*Āsvamedha-parvan* of the, *Gaimini-Bhārata*).

traditional features of this royal ceremony, embellished no doubt by all the exercise of that poetic fancy to which the occasion so readily lends itself.

On the completion of the great war between the Pāṇḍava and Kaurava princes, Yudhishthira, having re-ascended the throne of his fathers, resolves on performing the horse-sacrifice, as calculated to cleanse him of all guilt¹ incurred by the slaughter of his Kaurava kinsmen. Having been initiated on the day of the Kaitra full-moon (beginning of spring), 'the king, clad in a linen (? silk) garment and the skin of a black antelope, bearing a staff in his hand, and wearing a gold wreath, and a round gold plate² round his neck, shone like a second Prajāpati at the holy cult.' The chosen steed³, of black and white colour like the black buck, is then led up, and is set free by the sage Vyāsa himself; and that model of knightly perfection, Arjuna, the king's second brother, is appointed to guard the priceless victim during its year's roaming. He accordingly starts after it on his chariot yoked with white steeds, attended by a picked body-guard⁴, amidst the rejoicings and fervent blessings of all Hastināpura--men, women, and children. Thus followed by its martial escort, the noble steed roams at will over the lands

¹ Vyāsa remarks to Yudhishthira (XIV, 2071), 'For the Asvamedha, O king of kings, cleanses away all ill-deeds: by performing it thou wilt without doubt become free from sin.' Cf. Sat. Br. XIII, 3, 1, 1, 'Thereby the gods redeem all sin, yea, even the slaying of a Brahman they thereby redeem; and he who performs the Asvamedha redeems all sin, he redeems even the slaying of a Brahman.' As a rule, however, greater stress is laid in the Brāhmaṇa on the efficacy of the ceremonial in ensuring supreme sway to the king, and security of life and property to his subjects.

² The 'rukma' is borne by the Agnikūṭ, or builder of a fire-altar, which is required for the Asvamedha; cf. VI, 7, 1, 1.

³ It is carefully selected by charioteers and priests, Mahābh. XIV, 2087.

⁴ Whilst, according to the Brāhmaṇa (XIII, 4, 2, 5), the body of 'keepers' is to consist of 100 royal princes clad in armour, 100 noblemen armed with swords, 100 sons of heralds and headmen bearing quivers and arrows, and 100 sons of attendants and charioteers bearing staves; the epic gives no details, except that it states that 'a disciple of Yāgyavalkya, skilled in sacrificial rites, and well-versed in the Veda, went along with the son of Prithā to perform the propitiatory rites,' and that 'many Brāhmaṇas conversant with the Veda, and many Kshatriyas followed him at the king's behest.'

over which sovereign sway is claimed by the Pāṇḍava king—to wit, the whole of India from sea to sea—first pressing eastwards towards the sea, then turning southwards along the eastern shore as far as the extreme point of the peninsula, and finally northwards again, on its homeward way, along the western coast. Time after time the determined attempts to impede its progress, or even to capture and retain it as a precious trophy and token of national independence, are successfully repelled by the dauntless son of Prithā: but, mindful of his brother's injunctions, he spares the lives of the kings and princes who oppose him, and, having obtained their submission, he invites them to attend the sacrifice of the horse at Hastināpura. On the other hand, not to take up the challenge implied in the progress of the horse was considered a sign of weakness or cowardice. Thus the king of Mazipura is censured severely by Arjuna for receiving him meekly, accompanied only by Brāhmins and with presents to offer to the intruder, being told that he had lamentably fallen away from the status of a Kshatriya, and acted the part of a woman. At length tidings of the approach of the horse reach the king, and forthwith preparations are made for getting ready the sacrificial ground, and to provide accommodation, on a right royal scale, for the numerous guests expected to witness the ceremonial. Specimens of all available species of animals are brought together to serve as victims¹ along with the sacred horse; and dialecticians,

¹ That is, real or symbolic, only the domesticated animals being offered, whilst the wild ones are set free after the ceremony of 'paryagnikarāṇa.' Amongst these animals the poet curiously enough also mentions (XIV, 2542) '*vriddha-strīyaḥ*,' which Pratāpa Chandra Rāy translates by 'old women.' This is of course impossible; if it is not a wrong reading, it has doubtless to be taken in the sense of 'old female (kine),' probably the (21) barren cows offered at the end of the Asvamedha to Mitra-Varuṇa, the Virṣe Devāḥ, and Brīhaspati (XIII, 5, 4, 25, being intended. In its enumeration of the victims, the Taitt. Saṃhitā (V, 6, 21, indeed mentions '*vairāgi puruṣāḥ*,' taken by the commentator to mean 'two human females consecrated to Virāg.' If it be for this or a similar purpose that the '*vriddha-strīyaḥ*' were intended, we may refer to Taitt. Br. III, 9, 8, where it is distinctly stated that 'the man' and the wild animals are to be released as soon as the '*paryagnikarāṇam*' has been performed on them. But no 'man' being mentioned amongst the victims, Sāyana

eager to vanquish one another, foregather to discuss the nature and origin of things. At last Arguna arrives, and, having met with an enthusiastic welcome, he 'takes repose like a seafaring man who has reached the shore after crossing the ocean.' Then commences the performance of the sacrifice, the general outline of which, as sketched in the epic¹, fairly corresponds to the ordinary ceremonial; the chief points of difference being the form and material of the altar, which is described as three-cornered, like the heavenly bird *Garuda*, and as being composed of a 'trunk,' measuring eighteen cubits, and made, like the wings, of gold bricks,—the structure thus shining like the altar of *Dakṣha Prajāpati*. The sacrifice over, a great public festival ensues for which 'mountains of food and sweetmeats, rivers of spirituous and other beverages, and lakes of ghee' are provided, and the feasting goes on through day and night till every one has had his fill.—a festival, indeed, of which the poet remarks people continued to talk to his day.

From the fanciful narrative of Arguna's martial exploits whilst following his precious charge, one could not of course venture to draw any conclusion as to the kind of adventures the sacred horse might have met with, at the time of the *Brāhmaṇa*, during the period of its roaming at large. As a rule, however, the closely-watched animal would probably not range very far from the place where the sacrifice was to be performed; and though its body of guardians were not permitted at any time to force it to retrace its steps, they could have had little difficulty in keeping it within a certain range of grazing. Indeed, on the occasion of King *Daśaratha's* *Asvamedha*², described in the first canto of the *Rāmāyaṇa*, no mention whatever is made of

takes the 'puruṣam' here to refer to the 'vairāḡi puruṣi' mentioned in the *Saṃhitā*. Perhaps, however, this passage has rather a wider sense, referring to human victims generally at any sacrifice.

¹ Draupadi's *Asva-upasaṃvesanam* is referred to, but no further particulars are mentioned.

² The king's object, in performing the sacrifice, was to obtain the birth of a son. Cf. *Sat. Br.* XIII, 1, 9, 9, 'for from of old a hero was born to him who had performed the (*Asvamedha*) sacrifice.'

anything having happened to the horse during its time of grace. The expedient mentioned in the *Brāhmava* (XIII, 4, 2, 5) that a hundred worn-out horses should be sent along with the horse to keep it company would doubtless, as a rule, prove a sufficient check; but seeing that neither the *Taitt. Brāhmava* nor *Sāṅkhāyana* alludes to this expedient, it is probably meant as a practical suggestion rather than as a positive injunction. That the horse intended for sacrifice was by no means always safe from violent assaults¹ is clear from the directions given in the *Brāhmanas* as to what should be done in the event of foes getting possession of it². Even more pointed, in this respect, are the stanzas quoted in our *Brāhmava* (XIII, 5, 4, 21, 22).—‘*Satānika Sātrāgita* seized a sacrificial horse in the neighbourhood, the sacrifice of the *Kāsis*, even as *Bharata* (seized that) of the *Satvats*. The mighty *Satānika* having seized, in the neighbourhood, *Dhṛitarāshṭra*’s white sacrificial horse, whilst roaming at will in its tenth month³, the son of *Satāgita* performed the *Govinata* (form of) sacrifice.’ As a rule, however, the fortunes of the roaming horse would doubtless depend largely on personal circumstances. Whilst a strong ruler who had already made his power felt amongst his neighbours would probably run little risk of having his consecrated victim kidnapped even though it were to stray beyond its master’s boundaries, a prince of greater pretensions than resources might find it very difficult to secure the safety of his horse even if it kept well within the territory over which he ruled. In any case, however, the capture of the noble beast would doubtless

¹ Whilst cattle-lifting generally, such as formed the object of the invasion of the land of the *Matsyas* by the *Tigartas* (as related in the *Virāṭa-parvan*), was probably a practice pretty prevalent from ancient times, the stealing of the sacrificial horse would offer an additional temptation, from the political point of view, on account of the exceptional character of the animal as the symbol of its master’s claim to paramountcy.

² *Sat. Br.* XIII, 1, 6, 3; *Taitt. Br.* III, 8, 9, 4.

³ One might feel inclined to take this specification of that month as implying the existence, at the poet’s time, of the practice of confining the horse in a pen or shed (made of *Asvattha* palings) during the last two months, mentioned *Taitt. Br.* III, 8, 12, 2.

cause not a little bad blood, and might lead to complications and struggles not less serious than those occasioned by Vasishtha's cow, or, in Irish legend, by the brown bull of Queen Medb (Mab) of Connaught.

Whilst the epic account of the *Asvamedha* thus presents an instructive, though extravagant, illustration of possible occurrences during the preliminary period of the sacrifice, some items of the ceremonial on which further information might have been acceptable are altogether ignored in it. Two of these at least one might have expected to find mentioned there, seeing that they are of special interest to Kshatriyas, viz. the practice of a *Brāhmaṇa* and a Kshatriya lute-player singing¹ morning and night stanzas composed by themselves in honour of the king; and the so-called 'revolving legend' (XIII. 4, 3, 1 seqq.) related by the *Hotri* in a ten days' cycle all the year round. It is especially in regard to this latter point that the statements of the ritualistic works might with advantage have been supplemented. During the ten days' cycle a different god, or some mythic personage, is assumed, on each successive day, to be king, having some special class of beings assigned to him as his subjects, and a certain body of texts as his Veda from which a section is then recited. But from the particulars given it even remains uncertain whether any legend connected with the respective deity was actually related; whilst regarding the form and nature of some of the specified texts—such as the *sarpavidyā* (snake-science), *devaganavidyā* (demonology), *māyā* (or *asuravidyā*, magic art)—we really know next to nothing. Nay, even regarding the *Itihāsas* and *Purāṇas*, likewise figuring as distinct texts, additional knowledge would by no means be unwelcome. And though regarding some of the divinities referred to the *Hotri* might easily have made up some kind of short tale, others would have required some

¹ See XIII, 1, 5, 1 seqq.; 4, 2, 8 seqq.; *Taitt. Br.* III, 9, 14. In connection with the 'revolving legend,' the conductors of bands of lute-players seem to have sung additional stanzas in which the royal Sacrificer was associated with pious kings of old; see XIII, 4, 3, 3.

exercise of ingenuity, unless he had at his disposal materials other than those accessible to us. As a rule, however, legends of this kind would seem to have been of the *simplest possible description*, as may be gathered from the *particulars regarding the 'Nārāyaṇī,'* or recitals in praise of (pious) men, which, according to Sāṅkhāyana (XVI, 11), take the place of the 'revolving legend' in the ten days' cycle of the Purushamedha. The Hotṛi's recitals on that occasion consist simply of certain verses, or hymns, of the *Rig-veda*, generally celebrating the liberality shown by some patron to his priest, preceded by a brief statement merely consisting, it would seem, of a prose paraphrase of the respective verses recited thereafter. This latter set of recitations and legends thus consists entirely of matter taken from, or based on, the *Rig-veda*, which is indeed the proper source for the Hotṛi priest to resort to for his utterings. The recitations required for the *Asvamedha*, on the other hand, consist of matter drawn not even from the three older Vedas alone, but also from the *Atharvans* and *Āṅgiras* whose names combined usually make up the old designation of the hymns and spells of the *Atharva-veda*, whilst they are here taken separately as if still representing two different collections of texts ;—nay, the materials, as we have seen, are even drawn from other, probably still later, sources¹. This circumstance, added to the fact that the texts of the *Black Yagus* make no mention of this item of the ceremonial², might well make one suspect its comparatively late introduction into the *Asvamedha* ritual: though even this would not, of course, make it any the less strange that no allusion should be made, in the epic account, to this by no means the least interesting feature of the performance. One must, however, bear in mind that the poet's mind was evidently more intent on telling about the wonderful deeds

¹ It is hardly likely that some of the texts mentioned (*devāṇavidyā*, *sarpavidyā*, &c.) refer merely to portions of the Vedic texts.

² The singing of stanzas in honour of the king, by a *Brāhmana* and a *Kshatriya*, with the accompaniment of lutes, on the other hand, does form part of the *Taittiriya* ritual. *Taitt. Br.* III, 9, 14.

of the semi-divine bowman in foreign lands than on recording the regularly recurring rites performed, in the meantime, at home in the presence of the royal sacrificer himself. Even in cases where the horse was kept within a convenient distance from the sacrificial compound all the year round, its warders, themselves partly of royal blood, could hardly have had an opportunity of attending the performance of these rites; though the popular character of some of these rites, as well as certain expressions used in connection with the 'revolving legend,' would lead one to suppose that they were meant to be witnessed by at least representatives of the various classes of the population.

The ritual arrangements of the *Purushamedha*, or human sacrifice, of which the *Brāhmana* treats next, seem to have been developed out of those of the *Asvamedha*. Its first three Soma-days are essentially the same as the three days of the horse-sacrifice, except as regards the difference of victims on the second day. To these the authorities of the White Yagur-veda—and apparently also those of the Black Yagus¹—add two more days, whilst the *Sāṅkhāyana-sūtra*², on the other hand, recognises but one additional day. Like the *Vaitāna-sūtra*, *Sāṅkhāyana* also differs from the other authorities in giving an entirely different character to the central feature of this performance, inasmuch as he makes it a real human sacrifice instead of a merely symbolic one. A peculiar interest thus attaches to this difference of theory, seeing that it involves the question as to how far down the practice of human sacrifices can be traced in India³. That such sacrifices were prac-

¹ Whilst the three *Saṃhitās* contain no section relating to the *Purushamedha*, the *Taittirīya-brāhmana* III, 4) enumerates the (symbolic) human victims in much the same way as does the *Vāgasaneyi-saṃhitā* (see the present vol. p. 413 seqq.); and the *Āpastamba-sūtra* makes the performance similar to what it is in the White Yagus texts. The *Vaitāna-sūtra* of the *Atharva-veda* also makes it a five days' performance.

² Like the chapter on the *Asvamedha*, that on the *Purushamedha* is stated to be taken from the *Mahā-Kaushītaki-brāhmana*.

³ On this question see especially A. Weber, *Zeitsch. d. D. M. G.* 18, p. 262 ff., repr. in *Indische Streifen*, II, p. 54 ff.

tised in early times is clearly shown by unmistakable traces of them in the ritualistic works; but in this respect India only shares a once almost universal custom. The question, then, which chiefly interests us here is whether or not this practice was still kept up at the time with which we are here concerned. Now, as regards the texts of the Yagur-veda—that is, the text-books of the sacrificial priest *kar' éṣoxi*—it seems pretty clear that they no longer recognise the sacrifice of human beings; and the same may be said of the remaining ritualistic literature with the exception of the two works above referred to with regard to this particular sacrifice. The points bearing on this question, being very few in number, may be briefly reviewed here.

First as regards the story of *Sunahsepa* which is recited at the *Rāgasūya* sacrifice¹, and has been several times treated before². King *Harisandra*, being childless, prays to *Varuṇa* to grant him a son, vowing to sacrifice him to the god. A son is born to him, and is called *Rohita*; but, in spite of the god's repeated demands, the fulfilment of the vow is constantly deferred; till at last the youth, having been invested in armour, is told of the fate awaiting him. He, however, refuses to be sacrificed, and escapes to the forest. The king thereupon is seized with drowsiness; and the son, hearing of this, hastens homeward to save his father. On the way he is met by *Indra* who urges him to wander, and he accordingly does so for a year. The same is repeated five different times. In the sixth year, the prince, while wandering in the forest, comes across a starving *Brāhman*, *Agigarta*, who lives there with his wife and three sons, and who consents to sell him one of his sons for a hundred cows to serve him as a ransom to *Varuṇa*. The *Brāhman* wishing to keep his eldest son, whilst the mother refuses to part with the youngest, the choice falls upon

¹ See part iii, p. 95.

² Cf. Max Müller, *History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, p. 108 ff.; M. Haug, *Aitareya-brāhmaṇa*, II, p. 460 ff.; R. Roth, *Weber's Ind. Stud.* I, 475 ff.; II, 112 ff.

the second boy, called *Suna/sepa*. Rohita now returns to his father who, having been told of the transaction, then proposes to Varuza to offer the Bráhmaṇ youth in lieu of his son; and the god, deeming a Bráhmaṇ better than a Kshatriya, consents to the exchange, and orders the king to perform the Rágasúya sacrifice, and to make the youth the chief victim on the Abhishekaniya, or day of consecration. Four renowned *Rishis* officiate as offering-priests; but when the human sacrifice is to be consummated, no one will undertake to bind the victim. The boy's own father, Agigarta, then volunteers to do so for another hundred cows; and subsequently he even undertakes to slay his son for a similar reward. But when the poor lad sees his own father coming towards him, whetting his knife, and becomes aware that he is really to be slain, 'as if he were not a man,' he bethinks himself of calling upon the gods for help; and by them he is successively referred from one to another, till by uttering three verses in praise of Ushas, the Dawn, he is released from his fetters, whilst the king is freed from his malady. Subsequently one of the four priests, the royal sage Visvámitra, receives *Suna/sepa* as his son, conferring upon him the name of Devaráta (Theodotos), and refuses to give him up to Agigarta; and when the latter calls on his son to return to him, and not to desert his ancestral race, he replies, 'What has never been found even amongst Sùdras, thou hast been seen with a knife in thy hand, and hast taken three hundred cows for me, O Aṅgiras!' And on his father avowing his guilt, and promising to make over the cattle to him, he again replies, 'He who has once done wrong will commit another sin; thou hast not abandoned the ways of a Sùdra: what thou hast done is irremediable'; and 'is irremediable,' echoes Visvámitra, who then formally adopts him as his son.

This legend¹, so far from bearing witness to the existence

¹ The earliest reference to the myth or story of *Suna/sepa* is in *R̥g-veda* I, 24, 11-13; V, 2, 7, where he is apparently alluded to as having been actually

of human sacrifices as a generally recognised practice, at the time when it originated, would rather seem to mark this particular case as an exceptional one. For, if it were not so, how comes it that the king's four high-priests—who, if any, must have been looked upon as thorough masters of the sacrificial science—should have refused to assist in the immolation of the human victim ordered by the deity, leaving it to be accomplished by the sullied hands of the wretched father? But there is another feature of the story which cannot but strike one as very peculiar. Why should the childless king pray for the birth of a son only to make a sacrifice of him? He has been told to do so by the holy sage Nārada: is one then to understand that the sage's advice, as well as Varuṇa's consent, is given merely to try the king's faith and truthfulness? If so, the case is similar to that of Abraham's sacrifice in the land of Moriah, only that the king's faith proves less intense and exalted—perhaps more humanly faint-hearted—than that of the Jewish patriarch. But the most striking feature of the legend doubtless is the part played in it by the unnatural father: and this feature seems indeed to impart to the tale something of the character of an allegorical representation of the contrast between a barbarous (and perhaps earlier) and a more civilised phase of life and moral feeling¹. In this respect two points deserve to be noticed, viz. the coarseness of the synonymous names ('dog's tail') of the three sons of the Brāhman²; and the fact that the latter belongs to the Aṅgiras stock, a name intimately associated with super-

rescued from the stake, or from three stakes to which he was bound either for sacrifice, or, as Roth prefers, for torture.

¹ In the Sabhāparvan of the Mahābhārata (II, 6275 seqq.), as was first pointed out by Lassen, *Kṛishna* accuses *Garāsandha*, king of Magadha and Kēdi, residing at Mathurā, of having carried off numerous vanquished kings and princes to his city, and keeping them confined in his mountain stronghold with a view to afterwards sacrificing them 'at his Rāgasūya' to the lord of Umā (Kudra); adding subsequently v. 864 that 'the immolation of men was never seen at any time.'

² His own name 'Agigarta,' on the other hand, is taken by the St. Petersburg Dictionary to mean 'one who has nothing to swallow,' and would thus be merely descriptive of his condition of life.

stitution rites¹ on the one hand, and with the ritual of the fire-altar² on the other.

Now, it is exactly in connection with the building of the fire-altar that the clearest, and most unmistakable trace of an old practice of human sacrifices—or rather of the slaying of men for sacrificial purposes—occurs. In laying down the bottom layer of the altar, the pan which had been used by the Sacrificer for carrying about the sacred fire for a year is built into this layer, with heads of the five recognised sacrificial animals³—man, horse, ox, sheep, and goat—put therein, in order to impart stability to the altar (*Sat. Br. VII. 5, 2, 1 seqq.*). In a previous passage of the *Brāhmaṇa*⁴ (*I, 2, 3, 6 seq.*) where the relative value of non-animal offering-materials and the five sacrificial animals is discussed, it was stated that, whilst the gods were making use of one after another of these animals, the sacrificial essence gradually passed from one to the other, thus rendering the previous one useless for sacrifice, until it finally passed into the earth whence it entered the rice and barley afterwards used for sacrificial dishes. The general purport of this passage would seem to be to indicate a gradual tendency towards substituting the lower for the higher animals, and ultimately vegetable for animal offerings; though, as a matter of fact, animals continued of

¹ Viz. in their connection with the *Atharva-veda*. In *Mahābh. V. 548-51* Aṅgiras praises Indra by means of 'Atharvavedamantraiḥ.' Cf. Weber, *Ind. Stud.* I, p. 297.

² Both in making the fire-pan (*ukhā*) and in laying down the bricks of the fire-altar, the expression 'angirasyat' (as in the case of Aṅgiras) frequently occurs in the formulas; cf. *VI. 1, 2, 28*; *3, 1, 38 ff.*; *4, 1, 1 ff.*

³ All that is said in the *Brāhmaṇa* regarding the headless bodies of the five victims is (*VI. 2, 1, 7 seqq.*) that *Pragāpati*, having cut off the heads, and put them on (the altar, i.e. on himself), plunged four of the trunks into the water, and brought the sacrifice to a completion by 'offering' the he-goat (not a he-goat, as translated), and that he subsequently gathered up the water and mud (clay) in which those corpses had lain, and used them for making bricks for the altar. The view that the other four bodies should likewise be offered is rejected by the author, who rather seems to suggest that they should be allowed to float away on the water.

⁴ A very similar passage occurs in *Ait. Br. VI, 8*, on which cp. Max Müller, *History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, p. 420.

course to be commonly sacrificed in later times. Now as regards the heads of the five victims, the author subsequently (VI. 2, 1, 37 seqq.) makes some further remarks which go far to show that his previous statements referred only to the traditional practice which, however, was no longer in use in his own day, and had probably not been so for generations past. He mentions various expedients adopted by some priests with a view to keeping up at least some semblance of the old custom,—viz. either by procuring real heads from some source or other, or by using heads made of gold or clay; but they are summarily dismissed as profane and fraudulent counterfeits; and the author then remarks somewhat vaguely and diplomatically that ‘one may slay these five victims as far as one may be able (or inclined) to do so, for Praṇapati was the first to slaughter them, and Śyāparṇa Śāyakāyana the last, and in the interval also people used to slaughter them; but at the present day people slaughter only (one of¹) those two, the (he-goat) for Praṇapati, and the one for Vāyu:’ after which he proceeds to explain in detail the practice then in ordinary use. Later on (VII, 5, 2, 1 seqq.) the Brāhmaṇa expounds in the usual way the formulas used in the traditional, and theoretically still available procedure, though in the actual performance perhaps only the formulas relating to the particular heads² used would be muttered.

While Yāgñavalkya thus, at least in theory, deals rather cautiously with this feature of the traditional custom, the theologians of the Black Yagus³ take up a somewhat bolder position. Indeed it is evidently against this older school of ritualists that some of the censure of our Brāhmaṇa is directed. For though they too allow, as an alternative practice, the use of a complete set of five heads, they make

¹ This doubtless is what is meant (cf. Kāty. XVI, 1, 38); and ‘atha’ at the beginning of VI, 2, 2, 6 ought accordingly to have been taken in the rather unusual sense of ‘or’ (‘or rather’, instead of ‘then.’ Cf. VI, 2, 2, 15.

² According to Āp. Sr. XVI, 17, 19–20, however, even if there is only one head (that of Vāyu’s he-goat), all the formulas are to be pronounced over it.

³ The Maitr. Samhitā, however, does not seem to refer to this particular point in its Brāhmaṇa sections.

no mention of a man being killed for this purpose, but enjoin that a dead man's head is to be bought for twenty-one beans¹, which is then to be laid against an ant-hill with seven holes in order to again supply it with the seven 'vital airs of the head'; whereupon three stanzas relating to Yama are to be sung round about it to redeem it from the god of death. Besides the four animals, there is also to be a he-goat sacred to Pragâpati, the offering of which is to complete the animal sacrifice². In this school also³, the ordinary practice, however, is to kill only a he-goat for Vâyû Niyutvat, and to use its head for putting it in the pan placed in the bottom layer of the altar. As regards the *Rîg-veda* ritual, the Kaushîtaki-brâhmaṇa, as Prof. Weber has pointed out, leaves a choice between a he-goat for Pragâpati and one for Vâyû; whilst the Sāṅkhâyaṇa-sûtra, curiously enough, again adds the alternative course of using the set of five heads.

The same scholar has drawn attention to another rite in the sacrificial ceremonial which seems to him to show clear traces of human sacrifice. At the purificatory bath at the end of the Asvamedha, the Sacrificer is to be purged of any guilt he may have committed against Varuṇa by an oblation made to Gumbaka (Varuṇa) on the bald head of a man possessed of certain repulsive features, whilst standing in the water. To these particulars,—as given in the present work (XIII, 3, 6, 5), the Taitt. Brâhmaṇa (III, 9, 15), and Kâtyâyaṇa's Sûtra (XX, 8, 16),—Sāṅkhâyaṇa (XVI, 18)

¹ Or, according to Āpastamba, for seven beans; the head to be that of a Kshatriya or a Vairya killed either by an arrow-shot or by lightning, and apparently to be severed from the body at the time of purchase (which, as Professor Weber rightly remarks, is a merely symbolic one). As, however, the particulars given by Āpastamba are not mentioned in the older works, they may not unlikely have been introduced by him to meet some of the objections raised by the Vāgasaneyins to whose views he generally pays some attention. Otherwise the transaction might seem rather suspicious.

² Taitt. S. V. 1, 83, indeed, seems to speak of the other four animals being set free after fire has been carried round, so that their sacrificial use would be merely symbolical. Whether in that case only the head of the one animal would be used, or the man's head along with it, seems doubtful.

³ Cf. Taitt. S. V, 5.

again adds further particulars, viz. that the man is to be a Bráhmaṇa of the Ātreya family, bought (or hired) for a thousand cows, and that he is to enter the river till the water flows into his mouth. Now Prof. Weber is of opinion that this ceremony would be meaningless if the man were not actually drowned. I fail, however, to see the necessity of this assumption, seeing that even a purely symbolical interpretation of the ceremony will give it all the significance of the real act. That the Yagus texts contain nothing that could make one suspect that the man was actually drowned is beyond doubt; but even Sāṅkhāyana's statement that the water is to flow into his mouth is probably only meant to suggest the nearness and semblance of death by drowning. Otherwise the oblation could hardly have been performed in anything like a decent form. Besides, Sāṅkhāyana further states that, after the completion of the oblation, 'they drive him (the man) out, thinking that the guilt of the village-outcasts is (thereby) driven out!'. Here the verb 'niḥ-sidh' could hardly have been used if the man was to be driven farther into the water. What is meant is probably that the man was to be driven out from the water, and possibly also from the village, to live an anchorite's life in the forest.

If now we turn our attention to the Purushamedha, or 'human sacrifice' proper, we find that the Yagus texts, as far as they deal with this ceremony at all², treat it as

¹ The compound 'niḥ-sidhāpamānāḥ sapagrāmāḥ,' may possibly be meant in the sense that the evil deeds of the outcasts are driven out—prevented from troubling the peace of the village; Katy. XX, 8, 17-18, however, states that when the Sacrificer has stepped out of the water, evil-doers enter (to bathe in the water, without having performed any other rites, and that they are then said to be 'purified by the Asvamedha.'

² Besides the description of the ceremony in the present work (XIII, 6, 1-2, 20., only the Taittirīya-bráhmaṇa III, 4, seems to refer to it, enumerating merely the would-be victims who, according to Āpastamba, as quoted by Śāyana, are eventually set free. Professor Weber's suggestion that they may possibly at one time have been intended to be all of them slaughtered can hardly have been meant seriously. One might as well suppose that, at the Asvamedha, all the 'evil-doers' who, according to Kātyāyana, are to bathe in the river, were meant to be drowned.

a purely symbolical performance. A large number of men and women, apparently intended to represent all classes of the community, are bound to eleven sacrificial posts, and after the necessary rites, concluding with the 'paryagnikarava'¹—or the carrying of fire round the oblations—have been performed on them, they are one and all set free: the sacrifice then proceeding with the offering of the set of eleven animal victims. That the ceremony in this form, with its pedantically elaborate array of symbolic human victims, cannot possibly lay claim to any very great antiquity is self-evident; the only question is whether it has not come to take the place of some other form of human sacrifice. Now, after the foregoing statement of facts, it would be idle to deny that the existence, at one time, of a simple form of human sacrifice is not only quite possible, but is indeed highly probable; and it would be no more than might be expected, if such a practice should eventually have revolted the moral sense of the more refined classes of the community¹, just as it happened, little more than a hundred years ago, in the case of the scarcely less odious practice of the burning of witches in Christian lands.

The practice of human sacrifices seems, however, to receive evidence of a yet more direct and unmistakable kind than the facts hitherto mentioned, from the ceremonial of the Purushamedha, as set forth in the Sāṅkhāyana and Vaitāna Sūtras. If this evidence has been reserved here to the last, it is because there seems reason to believe that, in the form in which it is presented in those works, the sacrifice was never actually performed, and probably never meant to be performed, but that we have here to do with a mere theoretical scheme intended to complete the sacrificial system. The importance of the subject makes it, however, desirable that we should take a somewhat closer view of the procedure of the 'human sacrifice,' as laid down in those two Sūtras.

¹ When the practice became generally recognised that the Sacrificer (and priests) should eat a portion of the offered victim, this alone would, as Professor Weber suggests, have tended to make human sacrifices impracticable.

Sâṅkh. XVI. 10, 1. Praṅgâpati, having offered the Asvamedha, beheld the Purushamedha : what he had not gained by the Asvamedha, all that he gained by the Purushamedha¹; and so does the sacrificer now, in performing the Purushamedha, gain thereby all that he had not gained by the Asvamedha. 2, 3. The whole of the Asvamedha ceremonial (is here performed): and an addition thereto. 4-8. First oblations to Agni Kâma (desire), A. Dâtṛ (the giver), and A. Pathikrîṭ (the path-maker) . . . 9. Having bought a Brâhmava or a Kshatriya for a thousand (cows) and a hundred horses, he sets him free for a year to do as he pleases in everything except breaches of chastity. 10. And they guard him accordingly. 11. For a year there are (daily) oblations to Anumati (approval), Pathyâ Svasti (success on the way), and Aditi. 12. Those (three daily oblations) to Savitri² in the reverse order. 13. By way of revolving legends (the Hotṛi recites) Nârasamsâni . . .—XVI, 11, 1-33 enumerate the Nârasamsâni³, together with the respective Vedic passages.—XVI, 12, 1-7. There are twenty-five stakes, each twenty-five cubits long . . .; and twenty-five Agnishomiya victims. 8. Of the (three) Asvamedha days the first and last (are here performed). 9-11. The second (day) is a pañkavimsa-stoma one . . . 12. The Man, a Gomrîga, and a hornless (polled) he-goat—these are the Prâṅgâpatya⁴ (victims). 13. A Bos Gaurus, a Gayal, an elk (sarabha), a camel, and a Mâyû Kimpurusha (? shrieking monkey) are the anustaranâh. 14-16. And the (other) victims in groups of twenty-five for the twenty-five seasonal deities . . . 17. Having made the adorned Man smell (kiss) the chanting-ground, (he addresses him) with the eleven verses (Rîg-v. X, 15, 1-11) without 'om,'—'Up shall rise (the Fathers worthy of Soma), the lower, the

¹ The Asvamedha section of the same work begins:—Praṅgâpati desired, 'May I gain all my desires, may I attain all attainments.' He beheld this three days' sacrificial performance, the Asvamedha, and took it, and offered with it; and by offering with it he gained all his desires, and attained all attainments.

² See XIII, 4, 2, 6-17.

³ See p. xxxii.

⁴ See XIII, 2, 2, 2 seqq.

higher, and the middle ones.' 18. The Âpri verses are 'Agnir *mṛityuh*' . . . 20. They then spread a red cloth, woven of kusa grass, for the Man to lie upon. 21. The Udgâtri approaches the suffocated Man with (the chant of) a Sâman to Yama (the god of death).—XVI, 13. 1. The Hotri with (the recitation of) the Purusha Nârâyana (litany). 2. Then the officiating priests—Hotri, Brahman, Udgâtri, Adhvaryu approach him each with two verses of the hymn (on Yama and the Fathers) *Rig-v.* X. 14, 'Revere thou with offering King Yama Vaivasvata, the gatherer of men, who hath walked over the wide distances tracing out the path for many.' 3-6. They then heal the Sacrificer (by reciting hymns X, 137; 161; 163; 186: 59: VII, 35). 7-18. Ceremonies analogous to those of the Asvamedha (cf. XIII, 5, 2, 1 seqq.), concluding with the Brahmavadya (brahmodya).—XVI, 14, 1-20. Details about chants. &c.; the fourth (and last) day of the Purushamedha to be performed like the fifth of the *Prishthya-shadaha*.

Vait. S. XXXVII, 10. The Purushamedha (is performed) like the Asvamedha . . . 12. There are offerings to Agni Kâma, Dâtri, and Pathikrit. 13. He causes to be publicly proclaimed, 'Let all that is subject to the Sacrificer assemble together!' 14. The Sacrificer says, 'To whom shall I give a thousand (cows) and a hundred horses to be the property of his relatives? Through whom shall I gain my object?' 15. If a Brâhmava or a Kshatriya comes forward, they say, 'The transaction is completed.' 16. If no one comes forward, let him conquer his nearest enemy, and perform the sacrifice with him. 17. To that (chosen man) he shall give that (price) for his relatives. 18. Let him make it be publicly known that, if any one's wife were to speak ¹, he will seize that man's whole property, and kill herself, if she be not a Brâhmava woman. 19. When, after being bathed and adorned, he (the man) is set free, he (the priest) recites the hymns A.V. XIX, 6; X, 2.—20. For a year (daily) offerings to Pathyâ Svasti, Aditi, and

¹ That is, as it would seem, with a view to dissuading her husband from offering himself as a victim.

Anumati. 21. At the end of the year an animal offering to Indra-Pūshan. 22. The third day is a Mahāvratā. 23. When (the man¹) is bound to the post, he repeats the three verses, 'Up shall rise' . . . and when he is unloosened, the utthāpani-verses. 24-26. When he is taken to the slaughtering-place (the priest repeats) the harim-verses; when he is made to lie down, the two verses, 'Be thou soft for him, O Earth'; and when he has been suffocated, (he repeats) the Sahasrabāhu (or Puruṣa Nārāyaṇa) litany, and hymns to Yama and Sarasvatī. XXXVIII. 1-9 treat of the subsequent ceremonies, including the recitation, by the Brahman, of hymns with the view of healing the Sacrificer.

Now, even a slight consideration of the ritual of the Puruṣamedha, as sketched out in these two works, must, I think, convince us that this form of human sacrifice cannot possibly be recognised—any more than the one propounded in the Satapatha and Taittiriya Brāhmaṇas—as having formed part of the traditional sacrificial ceremonial; and that, in fact, it is nothing more than what Sāṅkhāyana appears to claim for it, viz. an adaptation, and that a comparatively modern adaptation, of the existing Aśvamedha ritual. Indeed, it seems to me by no means unlikely that the two different schemes of the Puruṣamedha originated at about the same time, and that they were intended to fill up a gap in the sacrificial system which seemed to require for Man, as the chief sacrificial animal, a more definite and, so to speak, a more dignified place in the ceremonial than was up to that time accorded to him. The circumstance that the account of this sacrifice, as given in the Sāṅkhāyana-sūtra, presents some of the ordinary features of Brāhmaṇa diction, and that it is indeed actually assigned by the commentary to the Mahā-Kaushitaka, should not be allowed to weigh with us, since this is most likely done for the very purpose of securing for this scheme some sort of authoritative sanction of respectable

¹ Dr. Garbe, in his translation, makes this and the subsequent rules refer (erroneously I think, to the animal victims of rule 21.

antiquity¹. For seeing that the older ritualistic works know nothing of it, it seems sufficiently evident that this human sacrifice could not possibly have been *rite* performed in Sāṅkhāyana's time, since no proper priest—no genuine *Adhvaryu* and *Udgātri*, at all events—could have been found to perform it. And, indeed, it can scarcely be without significance that the *Atharva-sūtra* is the only other work which recognises the ceremony; and that nearly all the hymns and verses used in connection with the immolation of the human victim are taken from the *Atharvan* and the tenth *maṇḍala* of the *R̥ik*. Nay, the very fact that, in both *Sūtra* works, this sacrifice is represented as being undertaken, not for the great object of winning immortal life, but for the healing of the Sacrificer's bodily infirmities, might seem sufficient to stamp the ceremony as one partaking more of the nature of the superstitious rites of the *Atharvan* priests than of that of the great sacrifices of the traditional *Srauta* ritual.

If thus we find it impossible to recognise the *Puru-shamedha* as a genuine member of the sacrificial system, this is still more the case as regards the *Sarvamedha*, or all-sacrifice, a ten days' performance which includes amongst its component parts, not only the *Purushamedha*, but also the *Asvamedha*, the *Vāgapeya*, and the *Visvagit* with all the *Stomas* and *Prishthas*,—it thus being the very ceremonial performance that might seem calculated to fitly crown the edifice of the sacrificial theory. As regards the ritualistic treatment of this sacrifice, the number of authorities dealing with it shows a further diminution from that of the *Purushamedha*. For whilst the *Satapatha-brāhmaṇa* agrees with the *Sāṅkhāyana* and *Vaitāna Sūtras* on the general features of its ritual—with the exception, of course, of the radical difference as to the character of the human sacrifice—the *Taittiriya-brāhmaṇa*, which gave at least the list of the symbolic victims of the *Purushamedha*, is altogether silent on the *Sarvamedha*; this ceremony being.

¹ On this and other passages referred to the *Mahā-Kaushītaka*, cp. Professor Aufrecht's judicious remarks, *Ait. Br.*, p. v.

however, dealt with in some of the Sūtra works connected with the Black Yagus.

The concluding chapter of the thirteenth *kāṇḍa* contains a valuable and interesting account of the preparation of the burial-place or sepulchral mound, and the interment of the charred bones previously preserved, in an urn or jar, for some indefinite period since the burning of the dead body. Of especial interest, in this account, is the statement that the bones, when committed to the grave, are to be arranged in accordance with their natural position, the spaces between them being then filled up with bricks in such a way as to present, as in the case of the fire-altar, a fancied resemblance to the shape of a bird. It is difficult to see what explanation could be offered for this feature of the obsequies, except a vague belief in some form of future resurrection.

The fourteenth *kāṇḍa*, up to the beginning of the *Brīhad-āraṇyaka*, is entirely taken up with the exposition of the *Pravargya*, an important, though optional and subsidiary, ceremony performed on the *Upasad*-days of Soma-sacrifices. Whilst the central feature of this sacrificial performance consists of a ceremony of an apparently simple and unpretending character, viz. the preparation of a hot draught of milk and ghee, the *Gharma*, which the Sacrificer has to take, after oblations have been made thereof to various deities, the whole rite is treated with a considerable amount of mystic solemnity calculated to impart to it an air of unusual significance. A special importance is, however, attached to the rough clay pot, used for boiling the draught, and manufactured and baked in the course of the performance itself; it is called *Mahāvira*, i.e. the great man or hero, and *Samrāḡ*, or sovereign lord, and is made the object of fervid adoration as though it were a veritable deity of well-nigh paramount power.

Although the history of this ceremony is somewhat obscure, the place assigned to it in the Soma-ritual would lead one to suppose that its introduction must have taken place at a time when the main procedure of the Soma-sacrifice had already been definitely settled. This con-

clusion is also borne out by the position taken up towards this ceremony by the authorities of the Black Yagur-veda. For whilst the *Maitráyaṇīyā Samhitā* gives at least the formulas used for it, the *Kāṭhaka*, on the other hand, takes no notice whatever of it, and the Taittiriya school only deals with it in its *Āraṇyaka*. Nevertheless, this ceremony can boast of a respectable antiquity, seeing that it is treated of at some length in the *Brāhmaṇas* of the *R̥k-* viz. Ait. Br. I, 18-22; Kaush. Br. VIII, 3-7: and this circumstance alone might almost seem to justify the inference that it was in that very school of ritualists that this item of the sacrificial ceremonial was first elaborated. It is very doubtful, however, whether such an inference would find any support in the dogmatic explanation of the ceremony offered by some of the theologians of the *R̥g-veda*. At the end of the *Pravargya* section, in a passage which has a somewhat disconnected appearance, and seems hardly in consonance with previous dogmatic explanations, the *Aitareya-brāhmaṇa* makes the secret import of the ceremony to be that of a mystic union of the gods resulting in the generation of a new, divine body for the Sacrificer. This explanation, having been previously adopted by Haug and Garbe, was recorded without question in a note to part ii (p. 104) of this translation. Further consideration of this matter has, however, convinced me that the theory referred to fails altogether to account for the origin of the ceremony, as well as for important points in its performance which find a ready explanation in the theory applied to it by the present work, as well as by the *Taittiriya-Āraṇyaka* and the *Kaushitaki-brāhmaṇa*. For seeing that the main object of sacrificial performances generally is the reconstruction of *Pragāpati*, the personified universe, and (the divine body of) the Sacrificer, it is difficult to see why, for this latter purpose, a new and special ceremony should have been thought necessary; and, besides, the rejected theory, if it is at all to account for the high honour rendered to the *Mahāvira* pot, would almost involve the recognition of a form of *Līṅga*-worship which surely would require very much stronger evidence than the isolated and

(to my mind) somewhat suspicious passage on which this theory is based.

Now, as regards the rival theory underlying the exposition of the Pravargya, as given in the *Satapatha-brāhmaṇa*, it makes the Mahāvira pot a symbol of the sun, whilst the hot milk draught represents the divine flood of life and light with which the performer of the ceremony becomes imbued. These symbolic interpretations, whatever we may think of them otherwise, certainly adapt themselves admirably to the general sacrificial imagery. As the sun is the head of the universe—or, in figurative language, the head of Pragāpati, the world-man—so its earthly, and earthen, counterpart, the Mahāvira pot, is the head of Vishṇu, the sacrificial man, and the Sacrificer; and this ceremony is thus performed in order to complete the universe and sacrifice, as well as the divine body of the Sacrificer, by supplying them with their head, their crowning-piece, so to speak: and to imbue them with the divine essence of life and light. For this purpose the theory rather ingeniously avails itself of certain myths vaguely alluded to in the *Rig-veda*, according to which (X, 171, 2) Indra cut off the head of Makha (here identified with Vishṇu, the sacrifice and the sun-god); and (I, 116, 12; 117, 22; 119, 9) Dadhyañk, the son of Atharvan, was fitted by the Āsvins with a horse's head, and this hippocephalous creature then communicated to them the Madhu, or sweet thing,—that is, as would appear, the sweet doctrine of the Soma, the drink of immortality. This symbolism readily explains some points connected with the Pravargya ceremony, for which no obvious reason seems otherwise to suggest itself. For one thing, it accounts for the deep reverence shown to the Gharma vessel, which, in fact, is no other than the giver of light and life himself; whilst the optional character of the ceremony explains itself from the fact that the Soma-cup, of which the Sacrificer will subsequently partake, might of itself be expected to supply him with the blessings which he hopes to derive from the Pravargya. And, finally, it also becomes clear why the Pravargya must not form part of a man's first performance of a Soma-

sacrifice. For the Pravargya, as we have seen, is performed on the preliminary days of the Soma-sacrifice, before the pressing of the Soma has taken place; and it obviously is only after he has actually partaken of the Soma-drink, and has thereby potentially 'put on immortality,' that he can partake of the Gharma, and thus become imbued with the celestial light¹. The dogmatical explanation of this ceremony thus puts, as it were, the finishing touch to that strange allegory by which the Indian theologians sought to make the sacrificial ceremonial a practical illustration of that unity of the All which speculation had been striving to compass since the days when the emptiness of the Vedic pantheon had dawned upon the thinking mind, and when critically inclined bards ventured to sing of the national god²: 'Not for a single day hast thou fought, nor hast thou any enemy, O Maghavan: illusion is what they say concerning thy battles; no foe hast thou fought either to-day or aforetime.'

As regards the optional and somewhat recondite character of the Pravargya ceremony, it is probably not without significance that the section dealing therewith is combined with the speculative *Bṛihadâraṇyaka* so as to make up with it the last book of the *Brâhmaṇa*,—the *Âraṇyaka-kâṇḍa*. or forest section. Such, at least, is the case in the *Mâdhyandina* text, where the Pravargya section occupies the first three *adhyâyas* of the last (fourteenth) book; whilst the *Kâṇva* text presents a slight difficulty in this respect. What passes generally as the seventeenth (and last) *kâṇḍa* of that version, consists of the *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*: whilst the sixteenth *kâṇḍa* begins with the section on funeral rites, corresponding to the last

¹ The *Kaushîtaki-brâhmaṇa* (VIII, 3), on the other hand, seems to justify the prohibition on the ground that, prior to the first complete Soma-sacrifice, the body of the Sacrifice (and Sacrificer) is incomplete, and therefore not ready to receive its head, in the shape of the Pravargya. Hence also the same work allows the Pravargya to be performed at the first Soma-sacrifice of one who is thoroughly versed in the scriptures, since such a one is himself the body, or self, of the sacrifice.

² See XI, 1, 6, 10.

(eighth) adhyāya of *kāṇḍa* XIII of the Mādhyandina recension, and is stated¹ to include also the Pravargya section (Madhy. XIV, 1-3). Now it is a strange fact that the six adhyāyas of the *Bṛhadāraṇyaka* (XIV, 4-9 in the Mādhyandina text) are counted 3-8 in the Kāṇva text,—a circumstance which manifestly can only be explained by the Pravargya section being taken to form the first two adhyāyas of the last book of that version. This, indeed, is probably implied in the remark added to the description of a MS. of the Kāṇva text in the catalogue of the MSS. of the Sanskrīt College, Benares (p. 44), according to which ‘Pravargyakāṇḍasya patrāṇi’ are ‘bhinnapramāṇākṣharāṇi.’—that is, ‘the leaves of the Pravargya section have a special pagination’ (i. e. they are numbered independently of the section on funeral rites preceding them).

And now my task is done, and I must take leave of this elaborate exposition of the sacrificial ordinances of Indian theology. For well-nigh a score of years the work has ‘dragged its slow length along,’ and during that time it has caused me—and, I doubt not, has caused some of my readers, too—not a few weary hours. In the early stages of the work, my old teacher, Professor Albrecht Weber, than whom no one is more deeply versed in the intricacies of the sacrificial ritual, wrote to me: ‘You have undertaken a difficult, a most difficult task; and I can only hope that your courage and patience will not fail you before you are through with it.’ And, indeed, I must confess that many a time I felt as if I should never be able to get through my task; and but for Professor Max Müller’s timely exhortations and kindly encouragement, the work might perhaps never have been completed. ‘I know,’ he once wrote to me, ‘you will thank me one day for having pressed you to go on with your work;’ and now I do indeed thank him most sincerely and with all my heart for the kindness and patience he has shown me these many years. But, strange to say, now that the work is completed, I feel as if I could not do without working at it; and certainly, if

a second edition could ever have been required of a work of this kind, it would have found me ready once more to work my way through the bewildering maze of rites ; and I know only too well that I should have to correct many a mistake, and could improve many an awkwardly expressed passage. In conclusion, a word of cordial thanks is due to the staff of the University Press, whose patience must often have been severely tried in the course of the printing of this work, and who, by the excellence of their presswork, and by their careful supervision, have materially lightened my task, and saved me much tedious and irksome labour.

J. EGDELING.

EDINBURGH, *December 30, 1899.*

SATAPATHA-BRÂHMANA.

ELEVENTH KÂNDĀ.

THE FULL AND NEW-MOON SACRIFICE.

FIRST ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMANA.

1. Verily, Pragâpati, the Sacrifice, is the Year: the night of new moon is its gate, and the moon itself is the bolt of the gate.

2. And when one lays down the two fires at new moon¹,—even as one would enter a stronghold by the gate, when the gate is open, and would thence reach the world of heaven, so it is when one lays down the fires at new moon.

3. And if one lays down the fires under a (special) asterism²,—just as if one tried to enter a stronghold, when the gate is closed, in some other way than through the gate, and failed to get inside the stronghold, so it is when one lays down the fires under an asterism: let him therefore not lay down the fires under an asterism.

4. On the same day on which that one (the moon) should not be seen either in the east or in the west,

¹ For the performance of the Agnyâdhâna, or setting up the sacrificial fires, see part i, p. 274 seqq.

² For the Nakshatras, or lunar mansions, under which the Agnyâdhâna may be performed, see II, 1, 2, 1 seqq., and especially II, 1, 2, 19, where the practice of regulating the time of the ceremony by the Nakshatras is discouraged.

let him fast, for it is then that he (the moon) comes to this world¹, and on that (day) he abides here (on the sacrificial ground).

5. And all the gods abide (here), all the spirits, all the deities, all the seasons, all the Stomas (hymn-forms), all the *Prishthas*², and all the metres.

6. And, verily, it is for all the gods, for all spirits, for all deities, for all seasons, for all Stomas, for all *Prishthas*, and for all metres that the fires of him are laid down who lays them down at new moon: he should therefore lay them down at new moon.

7. He may lay down the fires on the new moon which falls in the (month) Vaisâkha, for that coincides with the Rohini (asterism); for the Rohini means the self, offspring and cattle³: he thus becomes established in a self, in offspring and cattle. But, indeed, the new moon is the form of the Agnyâdheya: let him therefore lay down the fires at new moon;—let him perform the preliminary ceremony⁴ at full moon, and the initiation ceremony at new moon.

SECOND BRÂHMANA.

1. Now when they spread (and perform) the sacrifice, they kill it; and when they press out king Soma, they kill him; and when they 'quiet' and cut up the victim, they kill it,—it is by means of the mortar and pestle, and by the two mill-stones that they kill the Haviryagña (grain-offering).

¹ See I, 6, 4, 5.

² For the six *Prishtha-sâmans*, see part iii, introd., p. xx seqq.

³ See II, 1, 2, 6, 7.

⁴ For the Anvârambhasyâ-ishâ, lit. 'taking-hold offering,' see part ii, p. 40, note 1.

2. And having killed the sacrifice, he pours it, as seed, into the fire as its womb, for, indeed, the fire is the womb of the sacrifice, from out of it it is produced : let him therefore perform those ten oblations¹ for which the Vashat is uttered.

3. And, indeed, this sacrifice is the blowing (wind): he blows here, as it were, as a single one, but when he has entered into man, he is divided into ten parts;—with the vital airs thus distributed, it (the sacrifice) is born from out of its womb, the fire : this is that Virâḡ of ten syllables, this is that perfection, the sacrifice.

4. There may, however, be nine (oblations)²;—he thus forms a defective (lesser, lower) Virâḡ with a view to production; for from the lesser³, indeed, creatures are produced here : this is that perfection, the sacrifice.

5. But there may be one additional (oblation)⁴,—that one remains over for Praḡâpati : this is that perfection, the sacrifice.

6. And there may be two additional (oblations)⁵.

¹ These ten oblations of the New and Full-moon sacrifice (as the model for Haviryagñas generally), as enumerated by Sâyana, are (a) at full moon—five fore-offerings, two butter-portions, two cake-offerings to Agni, and Agni-Soma, and a low-voiced offering to Agni-Soma, (b) at new moon—five fore-offerings, two butter-portions, a cake to Agni, a low-voiced offering to Vishnu, and an offering of (sweet and sour) milk, or Sānnāyya, to Indra.

² Viz. inasmuch as, according to Sâyana, at the Full-moon sacrifice the offering to Agni-Soma only takes place in the case of one who is a Soma-offerer. I find, however, no authority for this.

³ Or, from the lower part (nyûna); cf. II, 1, 1, 13; 5, 1, 20.

⁴ That is, if the oblation to Agni Svishakrîṭ (part i, p. 199 seqq.) is taken into account.

⁵ According to Sâyana, the second additional offering is the oblation of clotted ghee to Vanaspati (the lord of the forest, or

—a productive pair consists of two : thus a productive pair is produced ; this is that perfection, the sacrifice.

7. And there may be three additional ones¹,—a productive pair consists of two, and that which is produced is the third : this is that perfection, the sacrifice.

8. And there may be four additional ones²,—as the one so the four. There are these three worlds : these worlds he thus gains by three (oblations) ; and Pragâpati, indeed, is the fourth beyond these worlds : by the fourth (oblation) he thus gains Pragâpati,—this is that perfection, the sacrifice.

9. That (sacrifice) which is defective in two (oblations)³ is indeed defective, it is not a sacrifice ; and that which is excessive in respect of five (oblations) is indeed excessive, it is not a sacrifice : this is that perfection as regards the ten, the twenty, thus up to a thousand⁴.

10. Verily, they who perform the Full and New-moon sacrifice, run a race⁵. One ought to perform it during fifteen years ;—in these fifteen years there are three hundred and sixty full moons and new

the tree, i. e. the sacrificial stake, or Soma) at the animal sacrifice. Cf. part ii, p. 208.

¹ These three oblations, according to Sâyana, are the three after-offerings (to the Barhis, to Nârâsamsa, and to Agni), see part i, p. 230 seqq.

² Viz. either the Svish/akrî and the three after-offerings ; or the four Patnîsam-yâgas (to Soma, Tvash/rî, the wives of the gods, and Agni Grîhapati), cf. part i, p. 256 seqq.

³ That is, if it includes only eight oblations, see paragraph 4.

⁴ That is, counting every ten (oblations) one Virâg, or metrical pâda of ten syllables.

⁵ Viz. running along, as they do, with the revolutions of the moon and the sun.

moons ; and there are in a year three hundred and sixty nights : it is the nights he thus gains.

11. He should then offer for another fifteen years ; in these fifteen years there are three hundred and sixty full moons and new moons ; and there are in a year three hundred and sixty days : it is the days he thus gains, and the year itself he thus gains.

12. Now, indeed, the gods were at first mortal ; and only when they had gained the year they were immortal ; for the year is everything, and the imperishable means everything : thereby then accrues to him imperishable merit, the imperishable world.

13. He who, knowing this, offers (the Full and New-moon sacrifice) for thirty years, becomes one of the race-runners, whence one ought to offer sacrifice for not less than thirty years. But if he be a performer of the Dākshâyana sacrifice¹, he need only offer for fifteen years, for therein that perfection is brought about, since he performs (every month) two Full-moon and two New-moon offerings, and thus that perfection is indeed brought about therein.

THIRD BRĀHMANA.

1. When he has performed the Full-moon sacrifice, he prepares an additional (cake) for Indra Vimridh (the repeller of scorers), and offers it in accordance with the procedure of an ishî²; and when he has performed the New-moon sacrifice, he prepares an additional rice-pap for Aditi³, and offers it in accordance with the procedure of an ishî.

¹ For this modification of the New and Full-moon sacrifice, see part i, p. 374 seqq.

² That is to say, after the model of the Full-moon sacrifice.

³ See part i, p. 375, where read 'Aditi' for 'Âditye.'

2. And as to why, after performing the Full-moon sacrifice, he prepares (a cake) for Indra Vimṛdih, it is because Indra is the deity of the sacrifice; but the chief oblation of the Full-moon sacrifice belongs to Agni and Soma, and nothing is offered there with the formula 'To Indra (I offer) thee!' Hereby then that oblation comes to be shared by Indra, and so does the sacrifice come to be shared by Indra. And as to why (he offers) with 'To (Indra) Vimṛdih!' it is that by the Full-moon sacrifice he slays all scorers (mṛdih), all evil spirits.

3. And as to why, after performing the New-moon sacrifice, he prepares a pap for Aditi, that moon doubtless is the same as King Soma, the food of the gods; when on that night he is not seen either in the east or in the west, the oblation becomes, as it were, uncertain and unfirm. Now Aditi is this earth, and she, indeed, is certain and firmly established; thereby, then, that oblation of his becomes certain and firmly established. Such, then, is the reason why he prepares additional oblations; now as to why he should not prepare them.

4. When, after performing the Full-moon sacrifice, he prepares an additional (cake) for Indra Vimṛdih, he does so in order that his sacrifice should become shared in by Indra, for every sacrifice belongs to Indra. But inasmuch as every sacrifice belongs to Indra, thereby that oblation of his, and that sacrifice, is already shared in by Indra.

5. And when, after performing the New-moon sacrifice, he prepares an additional pap for Aditi, -- surely the New-moon sacrifice is itself an additional one; for by the Full-moon sacrifice Indra slew Vṛitra, and for him who had slain Vṛitra, the gods

then prepared that additional oblation, the New-moon sacrifice: why, then, should he prepare an oblation to be added to an additional offering? Let him, therefore, not prepare the additional oblations.

6. When, after performing the Full-moon sacrifice, he afterwards prepares another oblation; and when, after performing the New-moon sacrifice, he afterwards prepares another oblation, he rises and defies his malicious enemy; and, indeed, unassailed and undisturbed is the prosperity of him who at full moon performs the Full-moon sacrifice, and at new moon the New-moon sacrifice¹.

7. For by performing the Full-moon sacrifice at full moon, and the New-moon sacrifice at new moon, the gods forthwith dispelled evil, and were forthwith reproduced; and, verily, he who, knowing this, performs the Full-moon sacrifice at full moon, and the New-moon sacrifice at new moon, forthwith dispels evil, and is forthwith reproduced. If he offer an additional oblation, let him give a sacrificial fee (to the priests); for no oblation, they say, should be without a *dakshinâ*; and for the Full and New-moon sacrifices there is that *dakshinâ*, to wit, the *Anvâhârya* (mess of rice²). Thus much as to the additional oblations; now as to (the sun) rising over him.

FOURTH BRÂHMANA.

1. Now, some people enter upon the fast³ when

¹ That is, he who performs these sacrifices without additional oblations:—*atah paurnamâsyâyâm amâvâsyâm ka darsapûrnamâsayâgâv eva kartavyau, nānyat kimkid dhavir anunirvāpyam, Sây.* Whilst favouring this view, the author, however, also admits the other as ensuring the same benefits.

² See part i, p. 49, note 1.

³ As, for the Full-moon offering, the Sacrificer should enter on

they (still) see (the moon, on the fourteenth day of the half-month), thinking, 'To-morrow he will not rise,'—either on account of clouds or not having ascertained properly; they enter upon the fast, and (in the morning) he rises over him. Now if he (the moon) should rise on (the material for) the oblation being not yet taken out, then that approved (procedure is followed) and the same fasting-observance. The sour curds from last night's milking they use for coagulating the sacrificial food¹; they let the calves join (their mothers), and drive them away again².

2. In the afternoon he drives them away with the parva-branch; and as there that approved oblation of the New-moon offering (is prepared) so here. But if he should not care to undergo (again) the fasting-observance, or if (the moon) were to rise over (the material for) the oblation already taken out, then let him do otherwise: having properly cleansed the rice-grains of the husks, he cooks the smaller ones as a cake on eight pots/herds for Agni Dâtrî (the Giver).

3. And the sour curds (from the milk) milked on the day before (he prepares) for Indra Pradâtrî

the fast at the very time of full moon (I, 6, 3, 34), so, for the New-moon offering, he should do so at the time when the last sign of the moon has disappeared, cf. I, 6, 4, 14.

¹ Literally, they make it the means of coagulating the havis: that is to say, they put the sour-milk (of last night's milking) into the milk obtained from the milking of this, the second, day so as to produce the sour curds required on the next, or offering-day. See I, 6, 4, 6 seq.;—*pûrvedyuh sâyamdugdham payo yad dadhi âtmanâ vidyate parasmîn divase punah karanîyasya sâyamdoharûpasya havisha âtañkanârtham kuryuh, Sây.*

² See I, 7, 1, 1 seq. The milk of the evening milking will be required for the sour curds and whey to be mixed with the sweet (boiled) milk of the following morning in the preparation of the Sânnâyya.

(the Bestower); and those (larger) rice-grains¹ he cooks in boiled fresh milk as a pap for Vishṇu Sipivishṭa (the Bald); for a pap it is whenever rice-grains are thrown (into milk or sour curds).

4. And as to this being so, it is because that moon is no other than King Soma, the food of the gods;—he (the Sacrificer) at that time sought to secure him², and missed him : Agni, the Giver, gives that (moon) to him, and Indra, the Bestower, bestows that one upon him ; Indra and Agni give that (moon, Soma) as a sacrifice to him, and that sacrifice given by Indra and Agni he offers. And as to why (he offers) to Vishṇu, the Bald, it is because Vishṇu is the sacrifice ; and as to why to the Bald (sipivishṭa).—it is that his missing him whom he sought to secure is the bald part (? sipita) of the sacrifice, hence to the Bald one. And on this occasion he should give (to the priests) as much as he is able to give, for no oblation, they say, should be without a dakṣiṇā. And let him observe the fast just (on the day) when he (the moon) does not rise.

FIFTH BRĀHMANA.

1. He observes the fast thinking, 'To-day is the day of new moon³;' and then that (moon) is seen in

¹ According to Kāty. Śrautas. XXV, 4, 40, the rice-grains are sorted in three different sizes; those of medium size being used for Agni Dātṛi, the largest for Indra Pradātṛi, and the smallest for Vishṇu Sipivishṭa.

² That is, at the time of new moon when Soma is supposed to stay on earth.

³ The native dictionaries also assign the meaning 'affected by a skin-disease' to 'sipivishṭa.'

⁴ Amāvāsyā, lit. the night of their (the sun and moon's) staying together.

the west. But, indeed, he (the moon) is that heavenly dog: he watches the Sacrificer's cattle (to seize them), and that would not be good for cattle if amends were not made to them¹; and through fear of that 'downcoming moon', as they think him to be,—

2. They steal away into the shade. And therefore, indeed, people call that burning pain 'svaluḥita' (dog's clutch): and therefore they also call that one—

3. 'The hare in the moon'. Soma, the food of the gods, indeed, is the moon: at full moon they press him; and in the subsequent half of the month he enters the waters and plants; and, the cattle feeding on the water and the plants, he then during that night (of new moon) collects him from the cattle.

4. He keeps the fast thinking, 'To-day is the day of new moon'; and then that (moon) is seen in the west, and the Sacrificer departs from the path of sacrifice. As to this they say, 'What should one do when he has departed from the path of the sacrifice? Should he sacrifice, or should he not sacrifice?' He should certainly sacrifice, for there is no other way out of it: day after day that (moon) rises larger. Having performed offering after the manner of the New-moon sacrifice, he takes out material for an additional offering either on the same, or on the following day.

5. There are three chief oblations for this (offering).—(he prepares) a cake on eight potsherds for

¹ Aprāyaskittikṛāte (or -krītaḥ),—? in the case of (the owner) who did not make amends to, and quiet, them.

² Avakṛiṣṭo nikṛiṣṭas kṛandamā avakṛandamasah, Sây.

³ Sâyana takes this to mean that for this reason the moon is called 'sarāṅka,' 'he who is marked with a hare.'

Agni Pathikṛit (the path-maker), one on eleven potsherds for Indra Vṛitrahan (the slayer of Vṛitra), and a cake on twelve potsherds for Agni Vaisvânara.

6. Now as to why he prepares (an oblation) for Agni Pathikṛit,—it is that Agni, being the maker of the path, leads the Sacrificer (back) to the path of sacrifice, from which he now departs.

7. And as to why to Indra Vṛitrahan,—Vṛitra is sin: with the help of Indra, the slayer of Vṛitra, he thus slays sin, Vṛitra, which ever keeps him from well-being, from virtue, and from the good work: this is why he (offers) to Indra Vṛitrahan.

8. And as to why he prepares a cake on twelve potsherds for Agni Vaisvânara,—when Indra had slain Vṛitra, he burnt him completely by means of Agni Vaisvânara, and thereby burnt all his (Vṛitra's) sin; and in like manner does that (Sacrificer) now, after slaying sin, Vṛitra, with the help of Indra Vṛitrahan, burn him, and all that sin of his, by means of Agni Vaisvânara; and, verily, not the slightest sin remains in him who, knowing this, performs this offering.

9. For this (offering) there are seventeen kindling-verses. He offers to the deities in a low voice, and makes any (verses) he pleases his invitatory and offering-formulas. In like manner (those of) the two butter-portions and the two formulas of the Svi-shakṛit.

10. A bow with three arrows he gives as dakshinâ; for with the bow a dog is driven away: he thus drives away that (dog, the moon) when he gives a bow with three arrows as dakshinâ.

11. A staff he gives as dakshinâ; for with a staff

a dog is driven away: he thus drives away that (dog) when he gives a staff as dakshizā. This, indeed, is the prescribed dakshizā; but he may give anything else besides, of such other (objects meet for) dakshizās as may be at his disposal. This, doubtless, is an offering relating to cattle: he may perform it even though (the moon) was not seen (at his New-moon sacrifice).

SIXTH BRĀHMANA.

1. Verily, in the beginning this (universe) was water, nothing but a sea of water. The waters desired, 'How can we be reproduced?' They toiled and performed fervid devotions¹, when they were becoming heated, a golden egg was produced. The year, indeed, was not then in existence: this golden egg floated about for as long as the space of a year.

2. In a year's time a man, this Praḡāpati, was produced therefrom: and hence a woman, a cow, or a mare brings forth within the space of a year; for Praḡāpati was born in a year. He broke open this golden egg. There was then, indeed, no resting-place: only this golden egg, bearing him, floated about for as long as the space of a year.

3. At the end of a year he tried to speak. He said 'bhū/': this (word) became this earth;— 'bhūva/': this became this air;—'śva/': this became yonder sky. Therefore a child tries to

¹ Or, they toiled and became heated (with fervid devotion). For this cosmological legend, see J. Muir, *Original Sanskrit Texts*, iv, p. 24.

speak at the end of a year, for at the end of a year Praḡapati tried to speak.

4. When he was first speaking Praḡapati spoke (words) of one syllable and of two syllables ; whence a child, when first speaking, speaks (words) of one syllable and of two syllables.

5. These (three words consist of) five syllables : he made them to be the five seasons, and thus there are these five seasons. At the end of the (first) year, Praḡapati rose to stand on these worlds thus produced ; whence a child tries to stand up at the end of a year, for at the end of a year Praḡapati stood up.

6. He was born with a life of a thousand years : even as one might see in the distance the opposite shore, so did he behold the opposite shore (the end) of his own life.

7. Desirous of offspring, he went on singing praises and toiling. He laid the power of reproduction into his own self. By (the breath of) his mouth he created the gods : the gods were created on entering the sky ; and this is the godhead of the gods, (deva) that they were created on entering the sky (div). Having created them, there was, as it were, daylight for him ; and this also is the godhead of the gods that, after creating them, there was, as it were, daylight (divā) for him.

8. And by the downward breathing he created the Asuras : they were created on entering this earth. Having created them there was, as it were, darkness for him.

9. He knew, ' Verily, I have created evil for myself since, after creating, there has come to be, as it were, darkness for me.' Even then he smote

them with evil, and owing to this it was that they were overcome; whence people say, 'Not true is that regarding (the fight between) the gods and Asuras which is related partly in the tale and partly in the legend; for it was even then that Pragâpati smote them with evil, and it was owing to this that they were overcome.'

10. Therefore it is with reference to this that the *Rishi* has said, 'Not for a single day hast thou fought, nor hast thou any enemy, O Maghavan: illusion is what they say concerning thy battles; no foe hast thou fought either to day or aforetime.'

11. Now what daylight, as it were, there was for him, on creating the gods, of that he made the day; and what darkness, as it were, there was for him, on creating the Asuras, of that he made the night: they are these two, day and night.

12. Pragâpati bethought himself, 'Everything (sarva), indeed, I have obtained by stealth (tsar) who have created these deities:': this became the 'sarvatsara,' for 'sarvatsara,' doubtless, is the same as 'samvatsara (year)'. And, verily, whosoever thus knows 'samvatsara' to be the same as 'sarvatsara',¹ is not overcome by any evil which, by magic art, steals upon him (tsar); and whosoever thus knows 'samvatsara' to be the same as 'sarvatsara,' overcomes against whomsoever he practises magic art.

13. Pragâpati bethought himself, 'Verily, I have created here a counterpart of myself, to wit, the year;': whence they say, 'Pragâpati is the year;': for he created it to be a counterpart of himself:

¹ Or, whosoever knows the 'all-stealing' power of the year.

inasmuch as 'samvatsara (year),' as well as 'Pragâpati,' consists of four syllables, thereby it (the year) is a counterpart of him.

14. Now, these are the deities who were created out of Pragâpati,—Agni, Indra, Soma, and Paramesh//in Prâgâpatya.

15. They were born with a life of a thousand years; even as one would see in the distance the opposite shore, so did they behold the opposite shore of their own life.

16. They went on singing praises and toiling. Then Paramesh//in, son of Pragâpati, saw that sacrifice, the New and Full-moon offerings, and performed these offerings. Having performed them, he desired, 'Would I were everything here!' He became the waters, for the waters are everything here, inasmuch as they abide in the furthest place; for he who digs here on earth finds indeed water; and, in truth, it is from that furthest place, to wit, from yonder sky that he¹ rains, whence the name Paramesh//in (abiding in the furthest, highest place).

17. Paramesh//in spake unto his father Pragâpati, 'I have discovered a sacrifice which fulfils wishes: let me perform this for thee!'—'So be it!' he said. He accordingly performed it² for him. Having sacrificed, he (Pragâpati) desired, 'Would I were everything here!' He became the breath (vital air), for breath is everything here: Pragâpati is that breath which blows here (the wind); and whatsoever knows that it is thus he blows is his (Pragâpati's) eyesight; and whatsoever is endowed

¹ Viz. Parganya, the rain-god, according to Sâyana.

² Viz. officiating as his, Pragâpati's, priest.

with breath is Pragâpati. And, verily, whosoever thus knows that eyesight of Pragâpati becomes, as it were, manifest.

18. Pragâpati spake unto his son Indra, 'Let me perform for thee this wish-fulfilling sacrifice which Paramesh//in has just performed for me.'—'So be it!' he said. He accordingly performed it for him. Having sacrificed, he (Indra) desired, 'Would that I were everything here!' He became speech (vāk), for speech is everything here; whence they say, 'Indra is Vāk.'

19. Indra spake unto his brothers Agni and Soma, 'Let me perform for you this wish-fulfilling sacrifice which our father Pragâpati has just performed for me.'—'So be it!' they said. He accordingly performed it for them. Having sacrificed, those two desired, 'Would that we were everything here!' One of them became the eater of food, and the other became food: Agni became the eater of food, and Soma food; and the eater of food, and food, indeed, are everything here.

20. These five deities, then, performed that wish-fulfilling sacrifice; and for whatever wish they sacrificed, that wish of theirs was fulfilled; and, verily, for whatever wish one performs that sacrifice, that wish of his is fulfilled.

21. When they had sacrificed they beheld (discovered) the eastern quarter, and made it the eastern (front) quarter; as it now is that eastern (front) quarter: therefore creatures here move in a forward direction, for they (the gods) made that the front quarter. 'Let us improve it' from here!'

¹ Or, perhaps, raise it, bring it nearer. The St. Petersburg Dict.

they said, and made it to be strength. 'May we see' this strength!' they said; and it became yonder sky².

22. They then beheld the southern quarter, and made it the southern quarter; and it now is that southern (right, dakṣiṇā) quarter: whence the dakṣiṇā (cows) stand to the south (of the altar)³, and are driven up from the south, for they made that the southern one (dakṣiṇā). 'Let us improve it from here!' they said, and made it to be space. 'May we see this space!' they said; and it became this air, for that (air) is space: for even as the resting-place here in this world is clearly the earth, so the resting-place there in yonder world is clearly this air; and because, whilst being here on earth, one does not see that space, therefore people say, 'That space (or, yonder world) is invisible.'

23. They then beheld the western quarter, and made it (to represent) hope,—wherefore it is only when⁴, after going forwards (to the east), one

takes 'upa-kurute' here in the sense of 'to cherish (hegen, pflegen)'; Professor Delbrück, *Altind. Syntax*, p. 238, doubtfully in that of 'worship, revere (verehren)';—*enām prākīm disam upetya itaḥ param kurvimahi kār्याntaram sṛṅgemahi*, Śāy.

¹ The particle 'khalu' might perhaps be rendered by 'really,' or—'could we but see it,' 'were it but (really) visible to us.'

² That is, it was moved up to them.

³ See IV, 3, 4, 14.

⁴ It seems hardly possible to take 'yad—tena' here in the usual causal sense. —it is only because (or, inasmuch as) one obtains (one's object) after going forwards that one goes to the western quarter. What is implied, in any case, is that first some hope, or desire, is conceived the accomplishment of which is only brought about by a forward movement, or by action; and that success in attaining the object sought for is followed by the conception of fresh desires. For the same force of 'yad—tena' (when—then) see XI, 3, 3, 4—~~5~~

obtains (his object) that he goes (back) to that (western) quarter; for they (the gods) made that (quarter to represent) hope. 'Let us improve it from here!' they said, and made it to be prosperity (or distinction). 'May we see this prosperity!' they said; and it became this earth, for this (earth) is indeed (the source of) prosperity; whence he who obtains most therefrom becomes the most prosperous.

24. They then beheld the northern quarter, and made it the waters. 'Let us improve it from here!' they said, and made it (to represent) the law, for the waters are the law; hence whenever the waters come down to this (terrestrial) world everything here comes to be in accordance with the law; but whenever there is drought, then the stronger suffers upon the weaker, for the waters are the law.

25. These then are eleven deities; there are five fore-offerings, two intermediate portions, the *Svishākrā* and three after-offerings.

26. These are eleven offerings;—it was, indeed, by these offerings that the gods gained these worlds, and these quarters; and¹ in like manner does this (Sacrificer), by these offerings, gain these worlds, and these quarters.

27. And the four *Patnisaṃyāgas* are the four intermediate quarters; and, indeed, it was by the four *Patnisaṃyāgas* that the gods gained the intermediate quarters; and by means of them this (Sacrificer) now gains the intermediate quarters.

¹ Viz. the four quarters and the objects enumerated as represented by them.

28. And as to the *Idā*, —thereby the gods gained food; and in like manner does this (Sacrificer) thereby gain food. This, then, is the completeness of the New and Full-moon sacrifices as regards the gods.

29. Now as to the body:—there are in man these five breathings, not including the eyes; they are the five fore-offerings, and the two butter-portions are the eyes.

30. The *Svishzakṛt* is the same as this downward breathing; and because he offers that (oblation), as it were, apart from the other oblations¹, therefore all the breathings recoil from that breathing; and because for the *Svishzakṛt* he cuts portions from all the sacrificial dishes, therefore everything that enters these (channels of the other) breathings meets in (the channel of) that breathing.

31. The three after-offerings are the three male organs²; and that which is the chief after-offering is, as it were, the chief organ. ‘He should offer it without drawing breath³,’ they say, ‘for thus it becomes unfailing for him.’

32. He may, however, draw breath once, for that (organ) has one joint; but if it were jointless, it

¹ See I, 7, 3, 21, where I would now translate, He offers apart (sideways), as it were, from the other oblations,—the oblation to Agni *Svishzakṛt* being poured out on the north side of the fire, so as not to come in contact with the chief oblations and the butter-portions.

² That is, including the testicles.

³ Or, rather,—at the third after-offering (viz. that to Agni *Svishzakṛt*),—the *Hotṛi* should (according to some authorities) pronounce the offering-formula, which is considerably longer than those of the two other offerings, without making a pause; whilst others allow him to pause once.

either would only stand erect, or it would hang down; whilst now it both becomes erect and hangs down: he may therefore draw breath once.

33. The four *Patnīsamyâgas* are the two arms (or front legs) and the two thighs—the support, in fact¹; and the *Idā* is this vital air (in the centre); and inasmuch as that (*Idā*) is not offered in the fire, but remains as unburnt, therefore this (central) vital air is undivided.

34. The invitatory and offering-formulas are the bone, and the offering-material is the flesh. The invitatory and offering-formulas are (in) measured metre, whence the bones of a fat and a lean person are alike: but inasmuch as he takes now more, now less, offering material, therefore the flesh of a fat person is fat, and the flesh of a lean person is lean. This sacrifice he performs to any deity he pleases and for whom there is a sacrificial dish.

35. Now, these are offerings from which nothing must be omitted: but were one to omit anything of them, it would be as if he were to break off some limb, or knock out some (channel of the) vital air. Other oblations, indeed, are either added to or omitted.

36. These, then, are sixteen offerings, for man consists of sixteen parts, and the sacrifice is the Man (*Purusha*): hence there are sixteen offerings.

SIXTH BRÂHMANA.

1. Now there, on the occasion of the entering on the fast, it is said², ‘If he does not eat, he becomes

¹ *Bâhudvayam ūrudvayam katvārāḥ patnīsamyâgāḥ*, *atas te prathīhātmaḥ*; *ayam eva madhyamaḥ prāṇa idā*, *Sây*.

² See I, 1, 1, 9. 10.

consecrated to the Fathers¹; and if he does eat he eats whilst passing over the gods;’ and, in this respect, they lay down the rule, ‘Let him therefore eat what grows in the forest.’

2. If he eats cultivated plants he eats the sacrificial essence of the offering-cake; and if he eats forest plants he eats the essence of the barhis²; and if he eats aught of trees he eats the essence of the fuel (for the sacrificial fire); and if he drinks milk he consumes the essence of the Sānnāyya³; and if he drinks water he consumes the essence of the lustral waters⁴; and if he eats nothing he becomes consecrated to the Fathers.

3. As to this they say, ‘What course of procedure is there?’ Well, let him, on those two nights (of full and new moon), himself offer the Agnihotra: inasmuch as, after offering, he takes food he does not become consecrated to the Fathers, for that (libation) is an offering; and inasmuch as he performs that offering in his own self he does not eat of those sacrificial essences.

4. Now all the nights concentrate themselves in these two nights: all the nights of the waxing moon concentrate in the night of full moon, and all the nights of the waning moon concentrate in the night of new moon; and, verily, for him who, knowing this, offers (the Agnihotra) himself on the day of

¹ That is, he would be liable to die, and join the departed ancestors.

² The layer of sacrificial grass spread on the Vēdi, serving as a seat for the deities to whom offering is made.

³ For this dish, prepared of sweet and sour milk, and offered at the New-moon sacrifice, see part i, p. 178, note 4.

⁴ For the Pravitāḥ, see I, 1, 1, 12.

the entrance on the fast, offering is always made by himself¹.

EIGHTH BRÂHMANA.

1. Now, the gods and the Asuras, both of them sprung from Praçâpati, once strove together. Then the Asuras, even through arrogance, thinking, 'Unto whom, forsooth, should we make offering?' went on offering into their own mouths. They came to naught, even through arrogance: wherefore let no one be arrogant, for verily arrogance is the cause of ruin².

2. But the gods went on offering unto one another. Praçâpati gave himself up to them, and the sacrifice became theirs; for, indeed, the sacrifice is the food of the gods.

3. Having given himself up to the gods, he created that counterpart of himself, to wit, the sacrifice: whence people say, 'The sacrifice is Praçâpati;' for he created it as a counterpart of himself.

4. By this (Full and New-moon) sacrifice he redeemed himself from the gods. Now when he (the Sacrificer) enters on the fast, he thereby gives himself up to the gods, even as Praçâpati thereby gave himself up to the gods. Let him therefore endeavour to pass that night (with his mind) completely restrained³, in the same way as he would

¹ That is to say, even though on other nights the Agnihotra were performed for him by a priest, it would always count as being performed by himself.

² See V, 1, 1, 1. 2.

³ Professor Delbrück, *Altind. Syntax*, p. 350, takes this injunction, and apparently also the illustration, to refer to sexual intercourse. Cf. I, 1, 1, 11.

proceed with (material for) an oblation, for he becomes an oblation to the gods.

5. And when (on the following day) he performs the sacrifice, then he redeems himself by sacrifice from the gods, even as Pragâpati thereby redeemed himself: when he takes out the material for (the chief) sacrificial dish, he redeems the sacrifice by the material for the sacrificial dish; the sacrificial dish (he redeems) by the invitatory formula, the invitatory formula by the portion cut (from the sacrificial dish), the portion by the offering-formula, the offering-formula by the Vashaṭ-call, and the Vashaṭ-call by the oblation. His oblation itself is still unredeemed,—

6. And that sacrifice of his is like a tree with its top broken off. He redeems the oblation by the Anvâhârya (mess of rice)¹; and because he thereby supplies (anv-â-harati) what is wanting in the sacrifice, therefore it is called Anvâhârya. Thus, then, that entire sacrifice of his comes to be redeemed; and that sacrifice becomes the Sacrificer's self in yonder world. And, verily, the Sacrificer who, knowing this, performs that (offering of) redemption comes into existence in yonder world with a complete body.

SECOND ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMANA.

1. Verily, man is born thrice, namely in this way :—first he is born from his mother and father; and when he to whom the sacrifice inclines performs offering he is born a second time; and when he dies, and they place him on the fire, and when he

¹ See part i, p. 49, note 1.

thereupon comes into existence again, he is born a third time;—wherefore they say, 'Man is born thrice.'

2. He (the Hotri) recites those eleven kindling-verses¹,—there are these ten vital airs in man, and the body in which these vital airs are established is the eleventh,—so great, indeed, is man: he thus causes him to be born complete. And what comes after the kindling-verses that is the foundation: thus, having caused him to be born, he establishes him.

3. There are nine utterances of impulsion (or quickening) :—there are these nine vital airs in man: he thereby causes him to be born a second time; and the (Adhvarya's) call and (the Âgnidhra's) response² are the foundation. And when there, on the occasion of the throwing³ (of the grass-bunch

¹ See part i. p. 95 seqq.

² According to Sâyana, this refers either to the formula by which the Adhvarya calls on the Hotri to recite the kindling-verses, and which, he says, consists of nine syllables (*umînâyânuubrûhi*); or to nine preliminary formulas (forming a *nigrah*) pronounced by the Hotri before the performance of the late-offerings, see I. 5, 2, 1 seqq. These latter formulas are probably those intended by the author: the former formula being the less likely to be referred to, as, in its above form of nine syllables, it is indeed allowed to be used optionally by the Âpastumbasûtri, but not by the authorities of the white Yâgus, who use the formula '(Hotar) Agnaye samidhiyamânâyânuubrûhi'; see Sat. Br. I, 3, 5, 2, 3.

³ Viz. the two calls—'Om arâvaya' and 'Astu sraushaz,' see part i. p. 132, note.

⁴ The word '*srîshî*' usually means 'creation,' but in accordance with the primary meaning of the verb '*srîg*,' it apparently refers here (as Sâyana seems to think) to the throwing of the anointed Prastara, as the representative of the Sacrificer, into the Âhavanîya fire, thus insuring for the Sacrificer his despatch to, and renewed life in, the heavenly world. With reference to

into the fire), birth is spoken of, he thereby causes him to be born a third time : on this occasion the *Patnisamyâgas*¹ are the foundation.

4. For thrice, indeed, man is born, and it is just in this way that he causes him to be born thrice from the sacrifice. Of those eleven (kindling-verses) he recites thrice the first and last :—

5. This makes fifteen kindling-verses,—there are two libations of ghee (*âghâra*²), five fore-offerings, the *Iḍâ*, three after-offerings, the *Sûktavâka*, and *Samyovâka*³—that makes thirteen oblations. And when there, at the *Patnisamyâgas*, he takes up at the same time (the two spoons) ; and the *Samishṭa-yagus*⁴ :—

6. That makes fifteen oblations:—for these fifteen oblations those fifteen kindling-verses (serve, as it were, as) invitatory formulas; and for these invitatory formulas these (serve as) offering-formulas—whatever formula (is used) there (at those oblations) and what *Nigada* (is used at the invocation of the *Iḍâ*⁵) that is of the form of offering-formulas. Thereby, then, those oblations of his come to be supplied with invitatory formulas through those kindling-verses ; and through those oblations those invitatory formulas come to be supplied with both offering-formulas and oblations.

this throwing of the grass-bunch into the fire (I. 8. 3. 11 seq. : 9. 2, 19) some of the *Sûtras* use, indeed, the verb '*srîḡ*,' cf. Hillebrand, *Das Altindische Neu- und Vollmondsopfer*, p. 146.

¹ See part i, p. 256 seqq.

² See part i, p. 124 seqq.

³ Part i, p. 236 seqq.

⁴ See I. 9. 2. 10 : 25 seqq.

⁵ See part i, p. 222 seqq.

SECOND BRÂHMANA.

1. He recites a gâyatrî invitational formula¹: the gâyatrî consisting of three feet, these worlds being three in number², it is these worlds the gods thereby established.

2. He offers with a trish/ubh (verse): the trish/ubh consisting of four feet, and cattle being four-footed, *it is cattle* the gods thereby established in these established worlds.

3. The Vasha/-call consists of two syllables (vau-sha/-): man being two-footed, it is two-footed man they thereby established among the established cattle.

4. Two-footed man, then, is established here among cattle. In like manner this (Sacrificer) establishes thereby the worlds; and in the established worlds he establishes cattle, and among the established cattle he establishes himself: thus, indeed, is that man established among cattle, who, knowing this, offers sacrifice.

5. And when he offers, after the Vasha/- has been uttered,—that Vasha/-call being yonder shining (sun), and he being the same as Death³—he thereby consecrates him (the Sacrificer) after death, and causes him to be born from out of it, and he is

¹ The anuvâkyâs recited prior to the principal oblations (pradhâna-havis) are in the gâyatrî metre; whilst the yâgyâs (referred to in the next paragraph), at the end of which the Vau-sha/- is uttered and the oblation poured into the fire, consist of trish/ubh verses; cf. I, 7, 2, 15.

² These inserted clauses with 'vai' supply the reason for what follows, not for what precedes, them.

³ See X, 5, 1, 4.

delivered from that death. And the sacrifice, indeed, becomes his body : thus, having become the sacrifice, he is delivered from that death, and all his chief offerings are thereby delivered from that death¹.

6. And, verily, whatever offering he there performs, that offering becomes his body in yonder world ; and when he who knows this departs this world then that offering, being behind him, calls out to him, ' Come hither, here I am, thy body ; ' and inasmuch as it calls out (invokes, āhvayati), it is called ' āhuti ' (offering or invocation).

THIRD BRĀHMAṆA.

1. Verily, in the beginning, this (universe) was the Brahman (neut.)². It created the gods ; and, having created the gods, it made them ascend these worlds : Agni this (terrestrial) world, Vāyu the air, and Sūrya the sky.

2. And the deities who are above these he made ascend the worlds which are above these ; and, indeed, just as these (three) worlds and these (three) deities are manifest, so are those (higher) worlds and those (higher) deities manifest—(the worlds) which he made those deities ascend.

3. Then the Brahman itself went up to the sphere beyond. Having gone up to the sphere beyond, it considered, ' How can I descend again into these worlds ? ' It then descended again by means of these two—Form and Name. Whatever has a name.

¹ Viz. inasmuch as the oblation is made with the Vasha/.

² On this speculative myth, see John Muir, *Orig. S. Texts*, vol. v, pp. 387-89.

that is name; and that again which has no name, and which one knows by its form, 'This is (of a certain) form,' that is form: as far as there are Form and Name so far, indeed, extends this (universe).

4. These, indeed, are the two great forces of the Brahman; and, verily, he who knows these two great forces of the Brahman becomes himself a great force.

5. These, indeed, are the two great manifestations¹ of the Brahman; and, verily, he who knows these two great manifestations of the Brahman becomes himself a great manifestation. One of these two is the greater, namely Form; for whatever is Name, is indeed Form; and, verily, he who knows the greater of these two, becomes greater than he whom he wishes to surpass in greatness.

6. In the beginning, indeed, the gods were mortal, and only when they had become possessed² of the Brahman they were immortal. Now, when he makes the libation to Mind³—form being mind, inasmuch as it is by mind that one knows, 'This is form' he thereby obtains Form; and when he makes the libation to Speech—name being speech, inasmuch as it is by speech that he seizes (mentions) the name—he thereby obtains Name;—as far as there are Form and Name, so far, indeed, extends this whole (universe): all this he obtains; and—the

¹ Or, phantasmagories, illusive representations.

² The use of 'âp' with the instrumental (brahmanâ âpuh) is peculiar.—brahmanâ vyâptâh, Sây.

³ The two libations (âghâra) of ghee, forming the first oblations of an ishî, made on the newly kindled fire, are offered to Mind and Speech respectively; cf. part i, p. 124 seqq.

all being the imperishable—imperishable merit and the imperishable world thus accrue to him.

7. There, on the occasion of the offering to Agni¹, it has been told how the sacrifice then pleased the *R̥ishis*, and how they performed it. Now, when the *R̥ishis* were performing the sacrifice, the Gandharvas came nigh to them. They looked on, thinking, 'Here, surely, they have done too much,—here they have done too little.' And when their sacrifice was completed, they pointed it out to them, saying, 'Here, surely, ye have done too much,—here ye have done too little.'

8. Now, wherever they had done too much it was like a hill; and wherever they had done too little it was like a pit.

9. Now, when he pronounces the *Samyos* (all-hail and blessing), he touches (the earth²) with (*Vâg. S. II, 19*), 'O Sacrifice, homage be unto thee: mayest thou complete thy course up to the success of the sacrifice and up to mine own right offering!' Wherever (in the course of the sacrifice) he has committed any excess, he makes amends for it by doing homage; and wherever he has left anything defective, it ceases to be defective by his saying, 'up to.' In saying, 'Mayest thou complete thy course up to the success of the sacrifice,'—success being whatever in the sacrifice is neither defective nor excessive—he thereby makes amends for both of these (mistakes); and in saying, 'Mayest thou complete thy

¹ *Sâyana* explains this by '*âdhānakarāṇe*'; but the passage referred to occurs I, 6, 2, 3, 4, in connection with the first butter-portion (*āgyabhāga*), that of Agni.

² Or, perhaps, the altar; see I, 9, 1, 29.

course up to mine own right offering,'—right offering being whatever in the sacrifice is neither defective nor excessive—he thereby also makes amends for both of these (mistakes); and thus that sacrifice of his comes to be performed as one that is neither defective nor excessive by whosoever, knowing this, thus touches (the earth): let him therefore touch it just in this way. But, indeed, those Gandharvas were Yavamân (rich in barley), the winnowing-basket; Uddâlavân (rich in *paspalum frumentaceum*), husbandry; and Antarvân (the pregnant), grain¹.

FOURTH BRÂHMANA.

1. The full moon, doubtless, is the same as that burning (sun), for he, indeed, is full day by day; and the new moon (darsa) is the same as the moon, for he appears (dars), as it were.

2. But they also say inversely, 'The full moon is the same as the moon, for after the filling up of the latter there is the night of full moon;' and the new moon (darsa) is the same as that burning (sun), for the latter appears, as it were.

3. The full moon, indeed, is this (earth), for she is, as it were, full; and the new moon is yonder sky, for yonder sky appears (or, is seen), as it were.

4. *The full moon, indeed, is the night, for this*

¹ On these names, Sâyana merely remarks,—*te gandharvâh sŭrpâdibhâvam âpannâ bahbûvuh, yavamân ityâdyâs teshâm sam-gñâh*.—Mahîdhara, on the other hand, on Vâg. S. II, 19, makes them to be five names, Yavamat, Sŭrpa (n.), Uddâlavat, Krîshî (f.), and Dhânântarvat. This is very improbable; the last name, especially, being accented on the first syllable, showing it to be two words.

night is, as it were, full; and the new moon is the day, for this day appears, as it were. This, then, is the theory regarding the full and new moon in respect of the gods.

5. Then as to the body. The full moon is the up-breathing, for it is by the up-breathing¹ that this man is, as it were, filled; and the new moon is the out (and in)-breathing², for this out-breathing appears, as it were: thus, the full and new moon are these two, the eater and the giver of food.

6. The out (and in)-breathing (the mouth) is the eater of food, for by means of the out (and in)-breathing this food is eaten; and the up-breathing is the giver of food, for by the up-breathing³ this food is given to him.

7. The full moon is the mind, for full, as it were, is this mind; and the new moon is speech, for this speech appears, as it were. Thus these two are clearly the full and new moon, as regards the body; and inasmuch as on the day of fasting he eats the (food) suitable for eating on the vow, he thereby clearly gratifies these two in regard to the body; and on the morrow (he gratifies them) as gods by sacrifice.

8. As to this they say,—‘Seeing that no offering-material is taken out “for the full moon,” nor any offering-material “for the new moon,” and seeing that he does not say, “Recite the invitory formula for the full moon,” nor “Recite the invitory for-

¹ The udâna is explained by Sâyana as the breath passing (up into the head, and) through the nose.

² The prâna is the breath of the mouth.

³ That is, by (the vital air of) the head (hence of the eyes, ears, &c.).

mula for the new moon ;" nor " Recite the offering-formula for the full moon," nor " Recite the offering formula for the new moon," how, then, is offering made to this full and new moon? Well, when he makes a libation of ghee to the Mind the full moon being the Mind—he thereby makes offering to the full moon; and when he makes a libation of ghee to Speech—the new moon being Speech—he thereby makes offering to the new moon: and thus offering is made by him to the full and new moon.

9. Now, some prepare two messes of rice, one for Sarasvat on the full moon, and one for Sarasvati on the new moon, saying, 'We thus clearly make offering to the full and new moon.' But let him not do this: for Sarasvat is the Mind, and Sarasvati is Speech; and thus, in making libation of ghee to these two, offering is made by him to the full and new moon: let him therefore not prepare these two messes of rice.

10. As to this they say, 'Surely, he who performs the Full and New moon offerings becomes a (mere) utterer of the Âgur¹; for, when he has performed

¹ Or, one who has only had the Âgur-formulas uttered for him (by the priests). Âgur is the technical term of two formulas, viz. of the formula 'Agnimî yaga' (recite the offering-formula to Agni, or to whatever deity offering is made), by which the Adhvaryu calls on the Hotri to recite; and of the formula 'Ye yagâmahe (Agnim),' by which the Hotri introduces the yâgyâ, or offering-verse. At the Soma-sacrifice the former formula is modified to 'Hotâ yakshat,' uttered by the Maitravaruna priest. See Haug, Transl. of Ait. Br., p. 133, note.—In comparing these Âgur-formulas with the performances of the Full and New-moon offerings, the author thus seems to imply that, just as the utterance of these formulas is merely the preliminary to the oblation itself, so each fortnightly

the Full-moon offering, he knows that he will perform the New-moon offering; and when he has performed the New-moon offering, he knows that he will again perform the Full-moon offering; thus when he goes to the other world he goes thither as an utterer of the Âgur: how, then, does he become one who has not (merely) uttered the Âgur? Well, when, on both occasions, he makes those two libations of ghee (to Mind and Speech), then his Full and New-moon offerings become complete: and he goes to the other world after his Full and New-moon offerings are completed, and thus becomes one who has not (merely) uttered the Âgur.

FIFTH BRĀHMAṆA.

I. And, verily, even on this occasion¹, they slaughter the sacrificial horse (Asvamedha) as a sacrifice to the gods: of this (New and Full-moon sacrifice) they say, 'It is the original (normal) Asvamedha;' and that (real Asvamedha), indeed, is just the other (modified one); for, indeed, the Asvamedha is the same as the moon.

performance is only the preliminary to the next performance; but that the Sacrificer never actually completes the sacrifice. Sîyana, on the other hand, takes 'âgûrtin' to mean 'one who has formed a resolution (âgûrtā, âgurazam = samkalpa):' and native dictionaries, indeed, give 'âgur' as a synonym of 'pratigñā' (promise, agreement; Zurf, Zusage). But, even if this were the right meaning of the word, the general drift of the passage would remain the same, viz. that such a sacrificer would ultimately die as one who had merely promised or intended to offer sacrifice, without his having actually performed it, or brought it to a proper conclusion, and thus without reaping the ultimate benefit from it, viz. citizenship in the heavenly abodes.

¹ Viz. in performing the Full and New-moon sacrifice, for which all the benefits accruing from the Asvamedha are here claimed.

2. As to this, they say, 'For each foot of the sacrificial horse they offer an oblation;'¹—when he performs the Agnihotra in the evening and morning, he offers two oblations in the evening, and two in the morning—that makes four oblations; thus—the horse being four-footed—an oblation is offered for each of its feet.

3. As to this, they say, 'On the starting off of the horse he performs an offering'²; for the moon, doubtless, is the same as King Soma, the food of the gods: when, during that night (of new moon), he does not appear either in the east or in the west, then he comes to this world, and starts for this world³.

4. Now, when he performs the New-moon sacrifice, he thereby performs the (same) offering (as) on the starting off of that (horse), and when he performs the Full-moon sacrifice he slaughters the sacrificial horse itself, and, having slaughtered it, he presents it to the gods. The other (real) horse-sacrifice they indeed perform (only) a year after (the starting offering), but this month (of the Full and New-moon sacrifice), revolving, makes up a year³: thus the sacrificial horse comes to be slaughtered for him year after year.

¹ According to Âsv. X, 6, 2 seqq., having chosen the horse to be sacrificed, he performs two *ish/is*, to Agni Múrdhanvat and Pûshan; whereupon he sets free the horse, and for a year performs three *ish/is* daily at the three pressings, viz. to Savitri Satyaprasava, Prasavitri, and Âsavitri.

² Or, he disappears in this world; the same verb (*vi-vr̥t*) being used for the disappearance as for the starting off of the horse when set free.

³ The syntactic construction of the last two sentences is that frequently alluded to before, viz. that of parenthetical causal clauses.

5. Verily, then, for him who, knowing this, offers both the Agnihotra and the Full and New-moon sacrifices, they slaughter the sacrificial horse month by month; and month by month the Asvamedha is offered for him, and his Agnihotra and Full and New-moon sacrifices come to pass into the Asvamedha.

SIXTH BRÂHMANA.

1. The *Pranîta* water, doubtless, is the head of the sacrifice¹; and when he leads forward the *Pranîta* water, it is the head of the sacrifice he thereby forms, and he should know that it is that head of his own that is then being formed.

2. The fuel, indeed, is its breath (of the mouth), for it is by the breath that everything here is kindled (animated) that has breath and moves twinkling with its eyelids: let him know that it is he himself that is that fuel.

3. The kindling-verses, indeed, are its spine: let him therefore say (to the *Hotri*) regarding them, 'Recite for me, making them, as it were, continuous'; for continuous, as it were, is this spinal column. And the two libations of ghee are its mind and speech, *Sarasvat* and *Sarasvati*³: let

¹ *Yagña*, the sacrifice, is here, as so often, to be understood as the abstract representation of the victim (here the horse), as well as of the *Purusha*,—i. e. *Pragâpati*, and the *Sacrificer*.

² The kindling-verses, being in the *Gâyatri* metre, consist of three octosyllabic *pâdas* each. Whilst after each verse a kindling-stick (*samith*) is thrown into the fire by the *Adhvaryu*, the *Hotri* does not make any pause in his recitation at this point, but he does so after the second *pâda* of each verse, thus connecting the last *pâda* with the first two *pâdas* of the next verse.

³ See XI, 2, 5, 9.

him know that the two libations of ghee are his mind and speech, Sarasvat and Sarasvatī.

4. The five fore-offerings are these its five (outlets of the) vital airs in the head;—the first fore-offering is its mouth, the second the right nostril, the third the left nostril, the fourth the right ear, and the fifth the left ear. And inasmuch as at the fourth fore-offering he pours together (the ghee¹), therefore this ear is, on the inner side, connected by a channel (with the other). The two butter-portion²s are the eyes: let him know that these are his own eyes.

5. And that cake which is offered to Agni is its right flank; and the low-voiced offering is its heart; and inasmuch as they perform this in a low voice, this heart is, as it were, in secret.

6. And that cake which is offered to Agni and Soma (at full moon), or Indra's Sānnāyā (at new moon), is its left flank; the Svishṭakṛt is that part between its shoulders; and the (Brahman's) fore-portion² is the poison³.

7. And when he cuts off the fore-portion, even as there they cut out what was injured⁴ in Pragâpati, so do they now thereby cut out what in this (body) is clogged and hardened, and affected by Varuṇa:

¹ See I, 5, 3, 16.

² See I, 7, 4, 10 seqq.

Instead of 'visham,' the MS. of Sāyana's commentary reads 'divishan' (that is, enemy), which is explained as meaning 'satru-buddhi': the 'cutting out' of the fore-portion being compared with the annihilation of enemies (satrunirasanârtham),—all this is, however, manifestly fanciful. What is intended would seem to be the poison (real or figurative) caused by the enemies' (or Rudra's, or Varuṇa's) shafts, in accordance with the myth regarding Pragâpati and his daughter, I, 7, 4, 1 seqq.

⁴ Literally, what was pierced (by an arrow), cf. I, 7, 4, 3, 9.

let him know that, as there they cut out what was injured in Praṣâpati, so they now cut out what in him is clogged and hardened and affected by Varuṇa.

8. The *Idâ*, indeed, is the belly: even as there, at (the invocation of) the *Idâ*¹ they cut off portions (and put them) together, so now food of all kinds is put together in the belly.

9. The three after-offerings are these its three downward breathings; and the *Sûktavâka* and *Samyovâka* its arms (or fore-feet); the four *Patnisamyâgas* the four supports—the two thighs and the two knee-bones; and the *Samishṭayagus* is the two (hind) feet.

10. These are twenty-one offerings;—two libations of ghee, five fore-offerings, two butter-portions, and Agni's cake: this makes ten; Agni and Soma's low-voiced offering, Agni and Soma's cake, the Agni *Svishṭakṛit*, the *Idâ*, three after-offerings, the *Sûktavâka*, the *Samyovâka*, further his seizing (the two spoons) at the same time there at the *Patnisamyâgas*², and (last) the *Samishṭayagus*.

11. These are twenty-one offerings,—there are twelve months and five seasons in a year; and three worlds—that makes twenty; and yonder burning (sun) is the twenty-first—that is the goal³, that the resting-place: he thus reaches that goal, that resting-place.

12. Now, as to this *Âruṇi* said, 'Every half-month, indeed, I become a sharer of the same world with yonder sun: that is the perfection of the Full and New-moon sacrifices which I know.'

¹ See I, 8, 1, 12 seqq.

² See I, 9, 2, 19.

³ *Saishâ sūryarûpaiva gatiḥ gantavyabhûmiḥ*; *eshaiva pratishṭhâ krîtsnaphalasyâsrayaḥ*, *Sây.*

13. As to this they ask, 'Who is the better one, the self-offerer, or the god-offerer?' Let him say, 'The self-offerer;' for a self-offerer, doubtless, is he who knows, 'This my (new) body is formed by that (body of Yagña, the sacrifice), this my (new) body is procured¹ thereby.' And even as a snake frees itself from its skin, so does he free himself from his mortal body, from sin; and made up of the *Rik*, the Yagus, the Sâman, and of offerings, does he pass on to the heavenly world.

14. And a god-offerer, doubtless, is he who knows, 'I am now offering sacrifice to the gods, I am serving the gods,'—such a one is like an inferior who brings tribute to his superior, or like a man of the people who brings tribute to the king; verily, he does not win such a place (in heaven) as the other.

SEVENTH BRĀHMANA.

1. The Sacrifice is the Year; and, verily, sacrifice is offered at the end of the year of him whoso knows that the sacrifice is the year; and all that is done in the year comes to be gained, secured, and won for him.

2. The officiating priests are the seasons; and, verily, sacrifice is offered at the end of the seasons of him whoso knows that the officiating priests are the seasons; and all that is done in the seasons comes to be gained, secured, and won for him.

3. The oblations are the months; and, verily, sacrifice is offered at the end of the months of him whoso knows that the oblations are the months;

and all that is done in the months comes to be gained, secured, and won for him.

4. The oblation-vessels are the half-months; and, verily, sacrifice is offered at the end of the half-months of him whoso knows that the oblation-vessels are the half-months; and all that is done in the half-months comes to be gained, secured, and won for him.

5. The two attendants¹ are the day and night; and, verily, sacrifice is offered at the end of the day and night of him whoso knows that the two attendants are the day and night; and all that is done in the day and night comes to be gained, secured, and won for him.

6. The first kindling-verse is this (earth), the second the fire, the third the wind, the fourth the air, the fifth the sky, the sixth the sun, the seventh the moon, the eighth the mind, the ninth speech, the tenth fervid devotion, and the eleventh the Brahman; for it is these that kindle all this (universe), and by them all this (universe) is kindled, whence they are called kindling-verses.

7. Thrice he recites the first (kindling-verse): by reciting it the first time he gains the eastern region, by the second time he gains the southern region, and by the third time he gains the upper region.

8. And thrice he recites the last(verse): by reciting it the first time he gains the western region, by the second time he gains the northern region, by the third time he gains this same (earth as a) resting-place:

¹ Sâyana seems to take the two attendants (*parivesh/rî*, preparers or servers-up of food) to mean the pair of fire-tongs (*dhrish/î*):—*ye pariveshana-sâdhane dhrish/î tayor ahorâtrabuddhim vidhatte.*

and by those (kindling-verses) he thus gains these worlds, and these regions.

9. The first libation of ghee is the sacred law, and the second the truth; and, verily, he secures for himself law and truth, and whatsoever is to be gained by law and truth all that he now gains.

10. The first fore-offering is brilliance, the second honour, the third fame, the fourth holy lustre, the fifth food (prosperity).

11. After the first fore-offering let him utter (the *anumantrava* ¹), 'May I become brilliant;' after the second, 'May I become honoured;' after the third, 'May I become glorious;' after the fourth, 'May I become endowed with holy lustre;' after the fifth, 'May I become prosperous;' and, verily, whosoever knows this becomes brilliant, and honoured, and glorious, and endowed with holy lustre, and prosperous.

12. Now, Svetaketu Āruneya ², who knew this, said once, 'To him who will thus know that glory of the fore-offerings, people will in days to come be flocking from all sides as if wishing to see some great serpent.'

13. The first butter-portion, doubtless, is the past, and the second the future: verily, he secures for himself both the past and the future; and whatever is to be gained by the past and the future, all that he now gains.

¹ Each of the offering-formulas of the Prayāgas has after it the *anumantrava* 'might is speech, might is energy, in me the in-breathing and off-breathing;' which, according to our paragraph (and Kāty. III, 3, 5), is to be supplemented by these special prayers.

² See X, 3, 4, 1, with note.

14. The cake offered to Agni is the Brahman (priesthood); and, verily, whosoever knows Agni's cake to be the priesthood secures for himself the priesthood; and whatever is to be gained by the priesthood all that he now gains.

15. The low-voiced offering is the Kshatra (nobility); and, verily, whosoever knows the low-voiced offering to be the nobility secures for himself the nobility; and whatever is to be gained by the nobility all that he now gains. And inasmuch as some perform the low-voiced offering, and others do not, therefore people speak (give information) to the noble both in a loud voice and in a low voice.

16. The second cake is the Vis (people); and, verily, whosoever knows the second cake to be the people secures for himself the people; and whatever is to be gained by the people all that he gains. And inasmuch as Agni's cake and the low-voiced offering come first therefore the priesthood and nobility are established upon the people.

17. The Sânnâyya¹ is royal dignity; and, verily, whosoever knows the Sânnâyya to be royal dignity secures for himself royal dignity; and whatever is to be gained by royal dignity all that he gains. And inasmuch as some pour (sweet and sour milk) together², and others do not, therefore the royal dignity both (combines) together and (keeps) asunder³.

18. The Svish/akr/it is fervid devotion; and, verily, whosoever knows the Svish/akr/it to be fervid devo-

¹ For this sacrificial dish of the New-moon sacrifice prepared from fresh milk and sour curds, see part i. p. 178.

² That is, they prepare the Sânnâyya.

³ That is to say, different kings either combine or keep separate from each other.

tion secures for himself fervid devotion ; and whatever is to be gained by fervid devotion all that he now gains.

19. The fore-portion is the place (in heaven); and, verily, whosoever knows the fore-portion to be the place (in heaven) secures for himself the place (in heaven); and whatever is to be gained by the place (in heaven) all that he now gains; and, indeed, he does not by ever so little fall from his place, for it is by ever so little that in yonder world men fall from their place; and whosoever knows this does not fall from his place however much evil he may have done.

20. The *Iḍā* is faith; and, verily, whosoever knows the *Iḍā* to be faith secures for himself faith, and whatever is to be gained by faith all that he now gains.

21. The first after-offering is the thunderbolt, the second the hail-stone, the third the (heavenly) firebrand (meteor).

22. After the first after-offering let him utter (the *anumantraya*), 'O thunderbolt, smite N. N.!' (naming) him whom he hates; after the second, 'O hail-stone, smite N. N.!' after the third, 'O firebrand, smite N. N.!'.

23. And if such a one dies suddenly, then, indeed, it is that after-offering, the thunderbolt, that smites him; and if he is, as it were, covered with out-flowing (blood), then it is that after-offering, the hail-stone, that smites him; and if he is, as it were, covered with scorching, then it is that after-offering, the (heavenly) firebrand, that smites him.

24. Such is the bolt of the sacrifice: it was by that bolt, indeed, that the gods overcame the Asuras;

and in like manner does the Sacrificer who knows this overcome his wicked, spiteful enemy.

25. And if the sacrifice were to end with after-offerings, then it would end with the thunderbolt, the hail-stone, and the (heavenly) firebrand : therefore the sacrifice of the gods ends either with the *Idā* or with the *Samyos*.

26. By the fore-offerings, indeed, the gods reached the world of heaven. The Asuras tried to get thither after them; and by the after-offerings they (the gods) drove them back : thus, when the after-offerings are performed, the Sacrificer drives back his wicked, spiteful enemy.

27. The fore-offerings, indeed, are the out-breathings¹, and the after-offerings the off-breathings : wherefore the fore-offerings are poured out in a forward direction², for that is the form of the out-breathing; and the after-offerings (are poured out) in a backward direction³, for that is the form of the off-breathing. The after-offerings, indeed, are the *Upasads*⁴ of the

¹ That is, the breath (out and in-breathing) of the mouth (*prāṇa*), in comparing which with the fore-offerings (*prayāga*) the stress is laid on the preposition 'pra.'

² According to Kāty. III, 2, 18 seqq., the five *prayāga* libations are to be made either on the part of the fire burning the brightest, or so that each subsequent libation is poured further east of the preceding one.

³ According to Kāty. III, 5, 10, the three *anuyāga* libations are to be made on the forepart, the middle, and the back (western) part of a burning log respectively.

⁴ For the three days' libations, called *Upasadaḥ* (homages or sieges), at the Soma-sacrifice, see part ii, p. 104 seqq. I do not quite understand the reference to the 'backward direction' (*pratyag-apavargatvaṃ vopasad-dharmaḥ*, Śāy.) of the *Upasads*, unless it be that the libations are offered to Agni, Soma and Vishṇu, who are compared with the point, barb and socket (?) of an arrow

Full and New-moon sacrifices, whence they are performed in a backward direction after the manner of the Upasads.

28. The Sûktavâka is the completion ; and, verily, whosoever knows the Sûktavâka to be the completion secures for himself the completion ; and whatever is to be gained by the completion all that he now gains : he obtains the completion of his (full) lifetime.

29. The Samyovâka is the resting-place ; and, verily, whosoever knows the Samyuvâka to be the resting-place secures for himself a resting-place ; and whatever is to be gained by a resting-place all that he now gains : he reaches a resting-place.

30. The gods fortified the Patnisamyâgas by a mound from behind¹, and placed a couple thereon for the sake of procreation : thus when the Patnisamyâgas are performed, he places a couple thereon for the sake of procreation : for, indeed, after the procreation of the gods offspring is produced, and offspring is produced by pair after pair (of men and beasts) for him who knows this.

31. The Samishayagus is food ; and, verily, whosoever knows the Samishayagus to be food secures for himself food ; and whatever is to be gained by food all that he now gains.

32. The Sacrificer is the Year ; and the Seasons officiate for him. The Âgnidhra is the Spring,

respectively (III, 4, 4. 14), or that in filling the spoons with ghee, the procedure is the reverse of that usually followed (III, 4, 4. 7. 8).

¹ The Patnisamyâgas (by which offering is made to Soma, Tvashtri, and Agni, along with the wives of the gods) are performed on the Gârhapatya fire, and hence at the back (western) part of the sacrificial ground where the Sacrificer's wife is seated. For the symbolical import of the rite see I, 9, 2, 5.

whence forest-fires take place in spring, for that is a form of Agni. The Adhvaryu is the Summer, for summer is, as it were, scorched; and the Adhvaryu comes forth (from the sacrificial ground) like something scorched¹. The Udgâtri is the Rainy season; whence, when it rains hard, a sound as that of a chant is produced. The Brahman is the Autumn; whence, when the corn ripens, they say, 'The creatures are rich in growth (brahmanvat).' The Hotri is the Winter, whence in winter cattle waste away, having the Vasha² uttered over them. These, then, are the divinities that officiate for him; and even if Aishâvirâ³ were to officiate for him, let him think in his mind of those divinities, and those deities, indeed, officiate for him.

33. Now, as to that balance, the right (south) edge of the Vedi⁴. Whatever good deed man does that is inside the Vedi; and whatever evil deed he does that is outside the Vedi. Let him therefore sit down, touching the right edge of the Vedi; for, indeed, they place him on the balance in yonder world; and whichever of the two will rise⁴ that he will follow, whether it be the good or the evil. And, verily, whosoever knows this, mounts the balance even in this world, and escapes being placed on the balance in yonder world; for his good deed rises, and not his evil deed.

¹ Viz. from his constant attendance on the sacrificial fires.

² According to Sâyana, Eshavira is the name of a Brâhmanical family held in general contempt. See Weber, Ind. Stud. I, p. 228.

³ That is, the altar-ground covered with sacrificial grass, serving as a seat for the gods.

⁴ Literally, will force down (the other). On this ordeal see E. Schlagintweit, Die Gottesurtheile der Indier. Nachträge; A. Weber, Ind. Streifen I, p. 21; II, p. 363.

THIRD ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMANA.

THE AGNIHOTRA.

1. Verily, the Agnihotri cow is the speech of the Agnihotra, and her calf is its mind. Now these two, mind and speech, whilst being one and the same, are, as it were, distinct from each other; therefore they tie up the calf and its mother with one and the same rope; and the fire¹, indeed, is faith, and the ghee truth.

2. Now, as to this Ganaka of Videha once asked Yâgñavalkya, 'Knowest thou the Agnihotra, Yâgñavalkya?'—'I know it, O king,' he said.—'What is it?'—'Milk, indeed.'

3. 'If there were no milk, wherewith wouldst thou sacrifice?'—'With rice and barley.'—'If there were no rice and barley, wherewith wouldst thou sacrifice?'—'With what other herbs there are.'—'If there were no other herbs, wherewith wouldst thou sacrifice?'—'With what forest herbs there are.'—'If there were no forest herbs, wherewith wouldst thou sacrifice?'—'With fruit of trees.'—'If there were no fruit of trees, wherewith wouldst thou sacrifice?'—'With water.'—'If there were no water, wherewith wouldst thou sacrifice?'

4. He spake, 'Then, indeed, there would be nothing whatsoever here, and yet there would be offered—the truth in faith.'—'Thou knowest the Agnihotra, Yâgñavalkya: I give thee a hundred cows,' said Ganaka.

5. Concerning this point there are also these

¹ That is, according to Sâyaṇa, the fire, or heat, produced by the rope. Instead of 'tega eva śraddhâ,' one would rather expect 'śraddhaiva tegaḥ.'

verses:—‘Knowing what¹, does the offerer of the Agnihotra stay away from his house? how is his wisdom (manifested)²? how is he kept up by his fires³?’—whereby he means to say, ‘How, then, is there no staying away from home on his part⁴?’

6. ‘He who is the swiftest in the worlds⁵, that wise one is found staying abroad: thus (is manifested) his wisdom, thus he is kept up by his fires:’—he thereby means the mind: it is owing to his mind that there is no staying away from home on his part.

7. ‘When, having gone far away, he heedeth not there his duty, wherein is that offering of his offered: (and wherein) do they, at his house, perform the offering of the progress?’—that is to say,—‘When, having gone far away, he there heeds not his duty, wherein does that offering of his come to be offered?’

8. ‘He who waketh in the worlds and sustaineth all beings, in him that offering of his is offered, (and in him) do they, at his house, perform the offering

¹ That is, according to Sâyana.—What form of Agnihotra does he recognise, when he goes to stay abroad?

² That is, —How does he show his knowledge of the sacred obligation that one ought to perform the Agnihotra regularly twice a day for life?

³ That is to say, How is the continuity in the constant attendance to his sacred fires kept up by him?

⁴ Literally, ‘How is non-staying abroad (brought about)?’ that is to say,—How, though having to stay abroad, does he ensure the spiritual benefits of remaining at home? or, as Sâyana puts it, How is the fault of staying abroad, avoided?—*asya pravāsato yagamânasya anapaproshitam pravâsadoshâbhâvaḥ*.

⁵ Or, among (or in) beings. Sâyana supplies ‘yagamânaḥ’ to ‘yo gavishṭhaḥ.’

of the progress;—he thereby means the breath; whence they say, ‘The Agnihotra is breath.’

SECOND BRÂHMANA.

1. Verily, whosoever knows the six pairs in the Agnihotra, has offspring born to him by pair after pair, by all generations. The Sacrificer and his wife—this is one pair: through it his Agnihotra would be possessed of a wife, - ‘May I obtain this pair!’ he thinks¹. The calf and the Agnihotra-cow—this is another pair: through it his Agnihotra-cow would become possessed of a male calf. ‘May I obtain this pair!’ he thinks. The pot and the coals—this is another pair; the offering-spoon and the dipping-spoon—this is another pair; the Âhavanīya fire and the log this is another pair; the libation and the Svâhâ-call—this is another pair: these, doubtless, are the six pairs in the Agnihotra; and he who thus knows them, has offspring born to him by pair after pair, by all generations.

THIRD BRÂHMANA.

1. The Brahman delivered the creatures over to Death, the Brahmaçârin (religious student) alone it did not deliver over to him. He (Death) said, ‘Let me have a share in this one also.’—‘Only the night on which he shall not bring his² fire-wood,’ said (the Brahman). On whatever night, therefore, the Brahmaçârin does not bring fire-wood, that

¹ Or, perhaps, it (the Agnihotra) thinks.

² Prof. Delbrück, *Altind. Syntax*, p. 260, doubtless rightly takes the middle form (âharâtai) here to imply ‘for his own self,’ i.e. for his own protection from death.

(night) he passes¹ cutting it off from his own life : therefore the Brahmacārin should bring fire-wood, lest he should pass (his nights) cutting off (as much) from his life.

2. He who enters on a Brahmacārin's life, indeed, enters on a long sacrificial session : the log he puts on the fire in entering thereon is the opening (offering), and that which (he puts on the fire) when he is about to bathe² is the concluding (offering) ; and what (logs) there are between these, are just his (logs) of the sacrificial session. When a Brāhmaṇa enters on a Brahmacārin's life—

3. He enters beings in four parts : with one fourth part (he enters) the fire, with another part death, with another part his religious teacher ; and his fourth part remains in his own self.

4. Now, when he brings a log for the fire, he redeems that fourth part of his which is in the fire : and having cleansed³ it, he takes it to his own self, and it enters him.

5. And when, having made himself poor, as it were, and become devoid of shame, he begs alms, then he redeems that part of his which is in death :

¹ Or, perhaps better,—that (night) he keeps cutting off from his life, —in which case the verb 'vas' would be construed with the gerund in much the same way as 'sthā' commonly is. This construction would suit even better the second passage (without the object 'tām') at the end of the paragraph. In any case we have to understand that, during every night passed with his teacher without his having brought fire-wood, he cuts off a night, or day, from (the latter end of) his life. Cf. Delbrück, *Altind. Syntax*, pp. 260, 334, 405.

² That is, prior to his leaving the house of his teacher and returning to his own family.

³ *Samskrāya*=*utkrishṭam krāvā*, *Sāyana*.

and, having cleansed it, he takes it to himself, and it enters him.

6. And when he does the teacher's bidding, and when he does any work for the teacher, he redeems that part of his which is in the teacher; and, having cleansed it, he takes it to himself, and it enters him.

7. Let him not beg alms after he has bathed (at the end of his studentship), for by bathing he drives off beggary, and drives off hunger from his kinsmen and his deceased ancestors, 'Let him who knows this beg alms only from her in whom he has the greatest confidence¹, they say, 'for that makes for heaven.' And should he find no other woman from whom alms could be begged, he may even beg from his own teacher's wife and thereafter from his own mother². The seventh (night) should not pass by for him without begging: him who knows this and practises this all the Vedas enter: for, verily, even as the fire shines when kindled, so does he, after bathing, shine, who, knowing this, lives a Brahma-kārin's life.

FOURTH ADHYĀYA. FIRST BRĀHMAṆA.

1. Now Uddālaka Āruzi³ was driving about⁴, as a chosen (offering-priest), amongst the people of

¹ That is, from whom he is perfectly sure of getting something. Sāyana, however, takes it in the sense of 'from whom he feels sure he will get most,'—*sa brahma-kāriṁ yasyā eva bhikṣitāyāḥ striyaḥ sakāśād bhūyishāṃ bahutaram annam labhyata iti ślāgheta tām bhikṣhetety āhuḥ*, Sāy.

² That is, after leaving his teacher's house and returning home.

³ For another version of this legend see *Gopatha-Brāhmaṇa* I, 3, 6. See also Prof. Geldner's translation in *Pischel and G.'s Vedische Studien* II, p. 185.

⁴ Prof. Geldner takes '*dhāvayām kakāra*' in a causal sense

the northern country. By him a gold coin was offered; for in the time of our forefathers a prize used to be offered by chosen (priests) when driving about, for the sake of calling out the timid¹ to a disputation. Fear then seized the Brāhmaṇas of the northern people:—

2. 'This fellow is a Kurupañkâla Brahman,² and son of a Brahman—let us take care lest he should deprive us of our domain: come, let us challenge him to a disputation on spiritual matters.' —'With whom for our champion?'—'With Svaidâyana.' Svaidâyana, to wit, was Saunaka.

3. They said, 'Svaidâyana, with thee as our champion we will fight this fellow.' He said, 'Well, then, stay ye here quietly: I will just make his acquaintance².' He went up to him, and when he had come up, he (Uddâlaka) greeted him saying,

'er verursachte einen Auflauf' (he caused people to crowd together, or to come to him in crowds). Sâyana, however, takes it in the same sense as we have done,—*ârtivgyâya vr̥tāḥ sann udagdesân gagâma*. The Gopatha-Br., further on, has the remark 'sa vai gotamasya putra ūrdhvaṃ vr̥to dhâvit' (!).

¹ It is by no means certain whether the interpretation of the paragraph as here adapted is the right one. Prof. Geldner takes it thus,— 'He (Udd.) had taken a gold piece with him; for in times of old the chosen (priests) who caused a crowd to gather round them, used to take a single gold piece with them with a view to their proposing a riddle (or problem) whenever they were afraid.' The Gopatha-Br. has a different reading, which is likewise far from clear: —*tasya ha nishika upāhito babhūva, upavādād bibhyato yo mā brāhmaṇo nūkāna upavadishyati tasmā etam pradāsyām-iti*; —by him a gold coin was offered (? by him a gold plate had been put on, i.e. was worn round the neck) being afraid of obloquy (?): 'I shall give this to any learned Brāhman who will speak up against me,' thus (he thought).

² Or, I'll just find out what kind of man he is.

'Svaiddâyana!'—'Halloo, son of Gautama!' replied the other, and straightway began to question him.

4. 'He alone, O son of Gautama, may drive about amongst people as chosen (offering-priest), who knows in the Full and New-moon sacrifices eight butter-portions (offered) previously, five portions of sacrificial food in the middle, six (portions) of Pragâpati, and eight butter-portions (offered) subsequently.

5. 'He alone, O son of Gautama, may drive about amongst people as chosen (priest), who knows from the Full and New-moon sacrifices¹ whereby it is that creatures here are born toothless, whereby they (the teeth) grow with them, whereby they decay with them, whereby they come to remain permanently with them; whereby, in the last stage of life, they all decay again with them; whereby the lower ones grow first, then the upper ones; whereby the lower ones are smaller, and the upper ones broader; whereby the incisors are larger, and whereby the molars are of equal size.

6. 'He alone, O son of Gautama, may drive about amongst people as chosen (priest), who knows from the Full and New-moon sacrifices, whereby creatures here are born with hair; whereby, for the second time, as it were, the hair of the beard and the arm-pits and other parts of the body² grow on them; whereby it is on the head that one first

¹ Literally, who knows that (element) in the Full and New-moon sacrifices whereby . . .

² The word 'durbîrîṇîni' is of doubtful meaning, the etymology proposed by Sâyana having little claim to being seriously considered. In the St. Petersburg Dict. the meaning 'bristly' is assigned to it, as applied to the hair of the beard.

becomes grey, and then, again, in the last stage of life, one becomes grey all over.

7. 'He alone, O son of Gautama, may drive about amongst people as chosen (priest), who knows from the Full and New-moon sacrifices whereby the seed of the boy is not productive, whereby in his middle age it is productive, and whereby again in his last stage of life it is not productive :—

8. 'And he who knows the golden, brilliant-winged Gâyatri who bears the Sacrificer to the heavenly world.' Then he (Uddālaka) gave up to him the gold coin, saying, 'Thou art learned, Svaidâyana; and, verily, gold is given unto him who knows gold;' and he (Svaidâyana), having concealed it¹, went away. They asked him, 'How did that son of Gautama behave?'

9. He said, 'Even as a Brahman, and the son of a Brahman: the head would fly off of whosoever should (dare to) challenge him to a disputation.' They then went away in all directions. He (Uddālaka) then came back to him, with fire-wood

¹ Sâyana takes 'upaguhya' in the sense of 'having embraced (him)', that being the meaning the verb has in classical Sanskrit:

tam Svaidâyanam upaguhya âlîngya Uddâlakas tismât sâhânân nishâkrâma nishâkrântavân. The Gopatha-Br. has 'tad upayamya' (having taken it) instead. Svaidâyana evidently did not wish the other Brâhmins to know that he had had the better of the Kurupâñkâla.

² ? Or, to catechize him: Brahmâ svayam vedâdyañ brahmaputro brahmishthasya Gotamasya putra ity etad yathâvâttam eva, api tu yah purusha enam Uddâlakam upavâheta prâdhânam sreshthyañ (? sreshtham) kuryât—varha valha prâdhânya iti dhâtuh- asya purushasya mûrdhâ vipatet, alpagâñasya âdhikyena viparyayagrahañât tannimitta-sirâpatanam bhavâtîy arthañ, Sây.— Prof. Geldner translates,—'He must rack his brains (muss sich den Kopf zerbrechen) who wants to outdo him in questions (überfragen).'

in his hand¹, and said, 'I want to become thy pupil.'—'What wouldst thou study?'—'Even those questions which thou didst ask me—explain them to me!' He said, 'I will tell them to thee even without thy becoming my pupil.'

10. And he then spoke thus to him:—The two libations of ghee, the five fore-offerings, and, eighth, Agni's butter-portion—these are the eight butter-portions (offered) previously. Soma's butter portion, being the first of the portions of sacrificial food for Soma is sacrificial food. Agni's cake, Agni-Soma's low-voiced offering, Agni-Soma's cake, and (the offering to) Agni Svishṭakṛt these are the five portions of sacrificial food in the middle.

11. The fore-portion, the *Idā*, what he hands to the Agnidh², the Brahman's portion, the Sacrificer's portion, and the Anvāhārya (mess of rice)—these are the six (portions) of Prajāpati. The three after-offerings, the four Patnīsamīyāgas, and, eighth, the Samishṭayagus—these are the eight butter-portions (offered) subsequently.

12. And inasmuch as the fore-offerings are without invitatory formulas³, therefore creatures are born here without teeth: and inasmuch as the chief oblations have invitatory formulas, therefore they (the teeth) grow in them: and inasmuch as the after-offerings are without invitatory formulas, therefore they (the teeth) decay in them; and inasmuch as the Patnīsamīyāgas have invitatory formulas,

¹ That is, as a pupil (brahmācārin) would to his teacher.

² Viz. the 'śaḍavatta,' or share consisting of six 'cuttings,' for which see I. 8, 1, 41 with note.

³ With these oblations there is no puroḥnuvākya, but only a yāgyā, or offering-formula.

therefore they (the teeth) come to remain permanently with them; and inasmuch as the Samish/a-yagus is without invitatory formula, therefore they all decay again in the last stage of life.

13. And inasmuch as, after uttering the invitatory formula, he offers with the offering-formula, therefore the lower (teeth) grow first, then the upper ones; and inasmuch as, after uttering a gāyatrī verse as invitatory formula, he offers with a trish/ubh verse¹, therefore the lower (teeth) are smaller, and the upper ones broader; and inasmuch as he pours out the two libations of ghee in a forward direction², therefore the incisors are larger; and inasmuch as the two saṃyāgyās³ are in the same metre, therefore the molars are of equal size.

14. And inasmuch as he spreads a cover of sacrificial grass (on the Vēdī), therefore creatures here are born with hair; and inasmuch as he for the second time, as it were, spreads the Prastara-bunch⁴, therefore, for the second time, as it were, the hair of the beard and the arm-pits, and other parts of the body grow; and inasmuch as at first he only throws the Prastara-bunch after (the oblations into the fire), therefore it is on the head that one first becomes grey; and inasmuch as he then throws after it all the sacrificial grass of the altar-ground, therefore,

¹ Whilst the gāyatrī verse consists of 3×8 syllables, the trish/ubh has 4×11 syllables.

² That is, pouring the second into the fire at a place immediately to the front, or eastward, of the first.

³ That is, the invitatory and offering-formulas used for the oblation to Agni Svish/akrūt; see part i, p. 307, note 1.

⁴ For this bunch taken from the sacrificial grass before it is spread on the altar-ground, and symbolically representing the Sacrificer, see I. 3, 3, 4 seqq.; and part i, p. 84, note 2.

in the last stage of life, one again becomes grey all over.

15. And inasmuch as the fore-offerings have ghee for their offering-material, a boy's seed is not productive, but is like water, for ghee is like water; and inasmuch as, in the middle of the sacrifice, they sacrifice with sour curds¹ and with cake, therefore it is productive in his middle stage of life, for thick-flowing, as it were, is (that havis), and thick-flowing, as it were, is seed; and inasmuch as the after-offerings have ghee for their offering material, it again is not productive in his last stage of life, and is like water, for ghee, indeed, is like water.

16. The Vedi (altar ground), doubtless, is the Gâyatri: the eight butter portions (offered) previously are her right wing, and the eight butter-portions (offered) subsequently are her left wing: that same golden, brilliant-winged Gâyatri, indeed, bears the Sacrificer who knows this to the heavenly world.

SECOND BRÂHMANA.

1. Now, then, as to the taking up of the two offering-spoons.² Now, in this respect, some people,

¹ That is, at the New-moon service, with the Sindhôya, or mixture of sour curds with sweet lotted milk. The 'iti' after 'purohita' is taken by Sâyana in the sense of 'za'; and though this cannot be accepted, it is not very easy to see what force it can have here.

² At the time when the sacrificial food (havis) is to be placed on the Vedi, the two offering-spoons, gubhî and upabhrî, are filled with ghee, and then placed, the former on the Pristara bunch (lying on the Vedi) with the bowl towards the east, and the latter north of it on the grass-cover of the Vedi; a third spoon, the dhruvâ, being again placed north of the upabhrî. The first libation of ghee (âghâra) is made from the dipping-spoon (sruva); but when about

thinking themselves clever, take up the (guhû) with the right, and the upabhrî with the left (hand); but let him not do so; for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this Adhvaryu has made the Sacrificer's spiteful enemy equal to him, and able to cope with him,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

2. Let him rather do it in this way: having taken the guhû with both hands, let him lay it down on the upabhrî; there is no question about this: it is good for (securing) cattle and life. Let him take them up without clinking them together,--were he to let them clink together, insecurity of property would befall the Sacrificer: let him, therefore, take them up without clinking them together.

3. Now as to the stepping past (the Vedi). By a thunderbolt, indeed, one Adhvaryu scatters the Sacrificer's cattle, and by a thunderbolt another drives them together for him. Now that Adhvaryu, doubtless, scatters the Sacrificer's cattle by a thunderbolt, who steps past with his right (foot)¹ when he is

to make the second libation, as also prior to each of the two butter-portion's, to the first of the five fore-offerings, as well as before each of the chief offerings (when, however, portions of the respective sacrificial dishes are added to the ghee in the guhû, the Adhvaryu takes up the two spoons in the manner mentioned, viz. holding them together with both hands so as to be parallel to each other, the bowl of the guhû being just above that of the upabhrî without touching it. While thus holding them he goes forward to the Âhavaniya, and, after the other necessary rites, pours the oblation from the guhû, over the spout of the upabhrî, into the fire. At the fourth fore-offering the ghee contained in the upabhrî is for the first time made use of, half of it being poured into the guhû for the last two fore-offerings, whilst the remainder is used for the after-offerings.

¹ When the Adhvaryu betakes himself from his place behind the Vedi (on which the sacrificial material is laid out) to the Âhavaniya

about to call (on the Âgnidhra) for the Sraushaṭ, and with his left (foot) when he has called for the Sraushaṭ; and that (other) one drives them together for him who steps past with his left (foot) when he is about to call for the Sraushaṭ, and with his right (foot) when he has called for the Sraushaṭ; for he does indeed drive them together for him.

4. Now as to the holding (of the spoons). In this respect, some people, thinking themselves clever, hold the two spoons whilst stretching forward both arms; but let him not do so, for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this Sacrificer has made two spears of his arms: he will become a spear-holder,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass. But that (navel is the channel of the) central breathing: let him therefore hold (the spoon) by lowering them¹ to that (breathing).

5. Now as to calling for the Sraushaṭ²: there are six (modes of) calling for the Sraushaṭ, the descending, the level, the ascending, the feeble, the outward-tending, and the inward-tending.

6. Now the descending mode, indeed, it is when he begins in a high tone and concludes in a low tone: whoever should wish that any one³ should be poorer,

in order to perform an offering, he is to proceed in such a way as constantly to keep his left foot before the right one; whilst in returning to his place he keeps the right foot before the left. Of the two ways of procedure mentioned in the paragraph, the second way is thus the right one.

¹ Whilst the Adhvaryu is standing by the side of the Âhavanîya, ready to make the offering, he holds the spoons to his navel till the moment when he has to pour the oblation into the fire.

² The Adhvaryu's call is 'om srāvaya' (make him hear!) whereupon the Âgnidhra responds 'astu sraushaṭ' (yea, may he hear!).

³ Viz. any one for whom he (the Adhvaryu) performs a sacrifice,

let him begin for him in a high tone and conclude in a low tone; and he will thereby become poorer.

7. And the level one, indeed, it is when he concludes in the same tone in which he has begun: whoever should wish that any one should be neither more prosperous nor poorer, let him conclude for him in the same tone in which he has begun; and he will thereby become neither more prosperous nor poorer.

8. And the ascending one, indeed, it is when he begins in a low tone and concludes in a high tone: whoever should wish that any one should be more prosperous, let him begin for him in a low tone and conclude in a high tone; and he will thereby become more prosperous.

9. And the feeble one, indeed, it is when he calls for the *Srausha* in a thin, long-drawn, toneless way: if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this *Adhvaryu* has made the Sacrificer feeble, and submissive to his spiteful enemy,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

10. And the outward-tending (*bahiḥ-sri*) one, indeed, it is when he opens his lips wide and utters his call at a high, toneless pitch: tone being prosperity, he thereby puts prosperity (*sri*) outside (*bahis*) himself, and becomes hungry (poor).

11. And the inward-tending (*antaḥ-sri*) one, indeed, it is when he closes his lips, and utters his call at a loud, toneful pitch: tone being prosperity, he thereby puts prosperity (*sri*) inside (*antaḥ*) himself, and becomes an eater of food (rich).

in case he (the priest) thinks he has not been treated liberally enough by his patron, or for some other reason.

12. Having kept back (the tone) deep in the breast, as it were, let him (keep up the middle pitch of) the *Bṛ̥zhat* (*sāman*) in both (words '*om srāva-ya*'), and finally leave off at a high pitch: there is no question about this: it is good for (securing) cattle and life.

13. Now as to the oblation. In this respect, some people, thinking themselves clever, having turned down the spoon eastwards, and poured out the oblation, turn it round and place it over the *upabhr̥t*. But let him not do this; for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this *Adhvaryu* has made the *Sacrificer* dependent on, and submissive to, his spiteful enemy,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

14. And some, having turned down the spoon sideways, and poured out the oblation, turn it round and place it over the *upabhr̥t*. But let him not do so; for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this *Adhvaryu* has stopped the oblations by (following) the wrong way, he (the *Sacrificer*) will either be shattered; or become worm-eaten,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

15. Let him rather do it in this way: having turned down the spoon eastwards, and poured out the oblation, let him carry it up in the same way and place it over the *upabhr̥t*; there is no question about this: it is good for (securing) cattle and life.

16. One *Adhvaryu*, indeed, burns the oblations, and another satisfies the oblations; and that *Adhvaryu*, assuredly, burns the oblations who, having offered ghee, offers portions (of sacrificial dishes); indeed, it is with reference to him that an invisible voice has said, 'Surely, this *Adhvaryu* burns the oblations.' And he, indeed, satisfies them who

having offered ghee, offers sacrificial portions, and finally again offers ghee thereon: such a one certainly satisfies them; and, these (oblations) having been satisfied, the gods fill gold cups (for him)¹.

17. Concerning this, Yāgñavalkya said², 'When, after making an underlayer (of ghee), and cutting portions (from the sacrificial dish), he bastes them (with ghee), then, indeed, he satisfies them; and, they being satisfied, the gods fill (for him) gold cups³.' Now Saulvāyana was Adhvaryu to those who had Ayasthūza⁴ for their Grīhapati⁵.

18. He said, 'Surely, this sacrificial session is supplied with lean cattle and scanty ghee; and yet this one, forsooth, thinks himself a Grīhapati!'

19. He (Ayasthūza) said, 'Adhvaryu, thou hast insulted us; and there now are those two spoons which, for a whole year, thou hast not been able to take up (in the proper manner): if I were to instruct thee in (the use of) them, thou wouldst become multiplied in offspring and cattle, and wouldst lead (the Sacrificer) to heaven.'

20. He said, 'Let me become thy pupil.' He answered, 'Even now, indeed, art thou worthy (of being instructed), who hast been our Adhvaryu for a year: I will teach thee this even without thy

¹ Tāsām samvṛptānām āhutinām bhoktāro devāḥ pitṛāḥ santo hiraṇmayān hiraṇyavikāraṃś kamaśān yaçamānāya dātum yena pūrayante, Sāy.

² Cf. I, 7, 2, 7-10; and part i, p. 192, note 1, where the procedure is explained.

³ One would expect an 'iti' here.

⁴ According to Sāyana, Ayasthūza is the name of a Rishi.

⁵ Literally, 'house-lord' or householder—the title of the Sacrificer at sacrificial sessions.

becoming my pupil.' And so, indeed, he taught him that taking up of the two spoons as we have here explained it: hence one ought only to make one who knows this his Adhvaryu, and not one who does not know it.

THIRD BRÂHMANA.

THE MITRAVINDÂ SACRIFICE.

1. Praġāpati was becoming heated (by fervid devotion), whilst creating living beings¹. From him, worn out and heated, Sri (Fortune and Beauty) came forth. She stood there resplendent, shining, and trembling². The gods, beholding her thus resplendent, shining, and trembling, set their minds upon her.

2. They said to Praġāpati, 'Let us kill her and take (all) this from her.' He said, 'Surely, that Sri is a woman, and people do not kill a woman, but rather take (anything) from her (leaving her) alive.'

3. Agni then took her food, Soma her royal power, Varuṇa her universal sovereignty, Mitra her noble rank, Indra her power, Bṛihaspati her holy lustre, Savitṛi her dominion, Pūshan her wealth, Sarasvatī her prosperity, and Tvashṛi her beautiful forms.

4. She said to Praġāpati, 'Surely, they have taken (all) this from me!' He said, 'Do thou ask it back from them by sacrifice!'

¹ That is, gods, men, &c., Sāy.

² Sāyana apparently takes 'lelāyanti' in the sense of 'all-embracing' (from līyate, to nestle against),—*dīpyamānā avayavaiḥ sobhamānā bhrāgamānā sarvaṃ gatat svategasā prakāsayanti svakīyena teḡahpuṇḡcena sarvaṃ āślishyanti atishḡhat sthitavati*.

5. She perceived this offering with ten sacrificial dishes --a cake on eight potsherds for Agni, a pap for Soma, a cake on ten potsherds for Varuṇa, a pap for Mitra, a cake on eleven potsherds for Indra, a pap for Brīhaspati, a cake on twelve or eight potsherds for Savitrī, a pap for Pūshan, a pap for Sarasvatī, and a cake on ten potsherds for Tvashtrī.

6. She invited them by means of this invitatory formula: 'May Agni, Soma, Varuṇa, Mitra, Indra, Brīhaspati, and the thousandfold-bestowing Savitrī,--May Pūshan, for our Sacrifices, unite us with cattle, Sarasvatī with favour, Tvashtrī with beautiful forms!' They accordingly made their appearance again.

7. By this offering-formula she then approached them in inverted order (beginning) from the last:-- 'May Tvashtrī grant me forms, and the bountiful Sarasvatī, and Pūshan good fortune, and may Savitrī bestow gifts on me, and Indra power, and Mitra noble rank, and Varuṇa, and Soma and Agni!' They were ready to restore them to her.

8. She perceived these additional oblations:-- 'May Agni, the food-eater, the food-lord, bestow food upon me at this sacrifice, svāhā!' Agni, taking the oblation, departed and restored her food to her.

9. 'May Soma, the king, the lord of kings, bestow royal power upon me at this sacrifice, svāhā!' Soma, taking the oblation, departed and restored her royal power to her.

10. 'May Varuṇa, the universal sovereign, the lord of universal sovereigns, bestow universal sovereignty upon me at this sacrifice,

syâhâ!' Varuṇa, taking the oblation, departed and restored her universal sovereignty to her.

11. 'May Mitra, the Kshatra (nobility), the lord of the Kshatra, bestow noble rank upon me at this sacrifice, svahâ!' Mitra, taking the oblation, departed and restored her noble rank to her.

12. 'May Indra, the power, the lord of power, bestow power upon me at this sacrifice, svahâ!' Indra, taking the oblation, departed and restored her power to her.

13. 'May Brahman, the Brahman (priesthood), the lord of the Brahman, bestow holy

store upon me at this sacrifice, svahâ!' Brahman, taking the oblation, departed and restored her holy store to her.

14. 'May Savitr, the kingdom, the lord of the kingdom, bestow the kingdom upon me at this sacrifice, svahâ!' Savitr, taking the oblation, departed and restored her kingdom to her.

15. 'May Pushan, wealth, the lord of wealth, bestow wealth upon me at this sacrifice, svahâ!' Pushan, taking the oblation, departed and restored her wealth to her.

16. 'May Sarasvatī, prosperity, the lord of prosperity, bestow prosperity upon me at this sacrifice, svahâ!' Sarasvatī, taking the oblation, departed and restored her prosperity to her.

17. 'May Tvashṭr, the fashioner of forms,

¹ I read 'pushṭr' instead of 'puṭrīm.' - Siyana takes it thus, - whatever prosperity Sarasvatī, the lord of prosperity, took from me, may he bestow that prosperity upon me!

the lord of forms, bestow cattle with form¹ upon me at this sacrifice, syāhā!' Tvashtri, taking the oblation, departed and restored her cattle with (beautiful) form to her.

18. These, then, are ten deities, ten sacrificial dishes, ten offerings, ten presents to priests. - the Virāg consists of decad after decad (of syllables), and the Virāg (shining one) is Sri (beauty, prosperity): he thus establishes (the Sacrificer) in the Virāg, in prosperity and food.

19. For this (sacrifice) there are fifteen kindling-verses²: he offers to the deities in a low voice. There are five fore-offerings, three after-offerings, and one Samishṭayaḥ. The (formulas of the two butter-portions contain the word 'affluence':— (*R̥g-veda* S. I, 1, 31, 'Through Agni may he obtain wealth and affluence day by day, famous and abounding in heroes':— (*R̥g-veda* S. I, 61, 12), 'An increaser of the house, a remover of trouble, a procurer of wealth, an augmenter of affluence, a kind friend be thou unto us, O Soma!' The two formulas of the Svishṭakṛt contain the word 'thousand':— (*R̥g-veda* S. III, 13, 7), 'Grant thou unto us wealth, a thousandfold, with offspring and affluence, and glorious manhood, O Agni, most excellent and never

¹ Siyaza supplies 'vi-shāin,' cattle endowed with form.

² That is, the ordinary number of sāmāhenis at an ishta, viz. eleven verses, the first and last of which are recited three times each. See part I, p. 102, note 1; p. 112, note 1.

³ That is, the formulas— with the exception of the final 'em' of the invitiatory formulas, and the introduction 'ye yagamāhe' and the final 'vausha!' of the offering-formulas—are pronounced in a low voice.

failing!'—(*R̥g-veda* S. III, 13, 6), 'Favour thou our prayer, as the best invoker of the gods for our hymns: blaze up auspiciously for us, wind-fanned, O Agni, the dispenser of a thousand bounties!'

20. Now, indeed, it was Gotama Rāhūgana who discovered this (sacrifice). It went away to Ganaka of Videha, and he searched for it in the Brāhmanas versed in the Aṅgas¹ (limbs of the Veda), and found it in Yāgñavalkya. He said, 'A thousand we give thee, O Yāgñavalkya, in whom we have found that Mitravinda. He finds (vindh) Mitra, and his is the kingdom he conquers recurring death: and gains all life: whosoever, knowing this, performs this sacrifice: or whosoever thus knows it.

FOURTH BRĀHMAṆA.

1. Now, as to the successful issue of the sacrificial food. Now, indeed, there are six doors to the Brahman: to wit, fire, wind, the waters, the moon, lightning, and the sun.

2. He who offers with slightly burnt sacrificial food, enters through the fire door² of the Brahman:

¹ That is, the Vedāṅgas, i.e., the limbs, or supplementary sciences, of the Veda.

² That is to say, his approaching death will deliver him *once* for all from mundane existence and its constantly repeated round of birth and death.

³ That is, of the (impersonal) world-spirit.

⁴ In the text the two words are not compounded, but stand in apposition to each other (with the fire as the door of B.), with, however, much the same force as a compound word. Cf. XII, 2, 1, 2 *gātham* (eva) *pratish/hā* (a foothold consisting of a ford; and ib. 9 *gādha-pratish/hā*, 'ford-foothold.')

and, by entering through the fire-door of the Brahman, he wins his union with, and participation in the world of, the Brahman.

3. And he who offers with sacrificial food that has fallen (on the ground) enters through the wind-door of the Brahman; and, by entering through the wind-door of the Brahman, he wins his union with, and participation in the world of, the Brahman.

4. And he who offers with uncooked sacrificial food, enters through the water door of the Brahman; and, by entering through the water-door of the Brahman, he wins his union with, and participation in the world of, the Brahman.

5. And he who offers with slightly browned sacrificial food, enters through the moon-door of the Brahman, and, by entering through the moon-door of the Brahman, he wins his union with, and participation in the world of, the Brahman.

6. And he who offers with browned sacrificial food, enters through the lightning-door of the Brahman, and, by entering through the lightning-door of the Brahman, he wins his union with, and participation in the world of, the Brahman.

7. And he who offers with well-cooked sacrificial food, enters through the sun-door of the Brahman; and, by entering through the sun-door of the Brahman, he wins his union with, and participation in the world of, the Brahman. This, then, is the successful issue of the sacrificial food, and, verily, whosoever thus knows this to be the successful issue of the sacrificial food, by him offering is made with wholly successful sacrificial food.

8. Then, as to the successful issue of the sacrifice. Now, whatever part of the sacrifice is incomplete

(nyūna) that part of it is productive for him¹; and what is redundant in it that is favourable to cattle; and what is broken (disconnected)² in it that makes for prosperity; and what is perfect in it that is conducive to heaven.

9. And if he think, 'There has been that which was incomplete in my sacrifice,' let him believe, 'That is productive for me: I shall have offspring produced (in men and cattle).'

10. And if he think, 'There has been that which was redundant in my sacrifice,' let him believe, 'That is favourable to cattle for me: I shall become possessed of cattle.'

11. And if he think, 'There has been that which was disconnected in my sacrifice,' let him believe, 'That makes for my prosperity: Prosperity, surrounded by splendour, fame and holy lustre, will accrue to me.'

12. And if he think, 'There has been that which was perfect in my sacrifice,' let him believe, 'That is conducive to heaven for me: I shall become one of those in the heavenly world.' This then is the successful issue of the sacrifice; and, verily, whosoever thus knows this to be the successful issue of the sacrifice, by him offering is made by a wholly successful sacrifice.

FIFTH ADHYĀYA. FIRST BRĀHMANA.

1. The nymph Urvastī loved Purūravas³, the son of Idā. When she wedded him, she said,

¹ See XI, 1, 2, 4;—*tad asya yagñasya pragananam pragotpattisāadhanam*.

² Śāyana's explanation of the term 'samkasuka' (? broken, affected with gaps) is not available owing to an omission in the MS. Ind. Off. 1071.

³ King Purūrayas, of the lunar race of kings, is considered the

'Thrice a day shalt thou embrace' me; but do not lie with me against my will², and let me not see thee naked, for such is the way to behave to us women.'

2. She then dwelt with him a long time, and was even with child of him, so long did she dwell with him. Then the Gandharvas³ said to one another, 'For a long time, indeed, has this Urvastī dwelt among men: devise ye some means how she may come back to us.' Now, a ewe with two lambs was tied to her couch: the Gandharvas then carried off one of the lambs.

3. 'Alas,' she cried, 'they are taking away my darling', as if I were where there is no hero and no man!' They carried off the second, and she spake in the selfsame manner.

4. He then thought within himself, 'How can that be (a place) without a hero and without a man where I am?' And naked, as he was, he sprang

son of Budha (the planet Mercury, and son of Soma). On this myth (based on the hymn *Rig-veda* S. X, 95) see Prof. Max Müller, *Oxford Essays* (1856), p. 61 seqq.; (reprinted in *Chips from a German Workshop*, II. p. 102 seqq.); A. Kuhn, *Herabkunft des Feuers und des Göttertranks*, p. 81 seqq. (2nd ed. p. 73 seqq.); Weber, *Ind. Streifen* I, p. 16 seqq.; K. F. Geldner, in *Pischel and Geldner's Vedische Studien* I, p. 244 seqq.; cf. H. Oldenberg, *Religion des Veda*, p. 253.

¹ Vaitasena dandena hatād,—vaitaso dandah pumvyaṅganasya nāma; uktam hi Yāskena, sepo vaitasa iti pumspragananasyeti (Nir. III, 21), Śāy.

² Akāmām kāmarahitām suratābhilāsharahitām ka mām mā sma nipadyāsai nigrhīya mām prāpnuyāh. Śāy.

³ The Gandharvas are the natural companions and mates of the Apsaras, or nymphs.

⁴ Literally, 'my son,'—madīyam putratvena svikṛtam uranadvayam, Śāy.

up after them: too long he deemed it that he should put on his garment. Then the Gandharvas produced a flash of lightning, and she beheld him naked even as by daylight. Then, indeed, she vanished: 'Here I am back,' he said, and lo! she had vanished¹. Wailing with sorrow he wandered all over Kurukshetra. Now there is a lotus-lake there, called Anyatāplakshā: He walked along its bank; and there nymphs were swimming about in the shape of swans².

5. And she (Urvast), recognising him, said, 'This is the man with whom I have dwelt.' They then said, 'Let us appear to him!'—'So be it!' she replied; and they appeared to him³.

6. He then recognised her and implored her (*Rig-veda* X. 95. 1), 'Oh, my wife, stay thou, cruel in mind⁴: let us now exchange words! Untold, these secrets of ours will not bring us joy in days to

¹ Cf. C. Gaedicke, *Der Accusativ im Veda* (1886), p. 211. Previous translators had assigned the words 'punar emi' (I come back) to Urvast; and in view of the corresponding passage in paragraph 13, the new interpretation is just a little doubtful.

² The text has 'āti,' some kind of water-bird—*galakṣarapakshi-visheshah*, Sây.—(probably Gr. *ἄνις*; Lat. *anas*, *anat-is*; Anglo-S. *æned*, Germ. *Ente*).

³ That is, they became visible, or rather recognisable to him by showing themselves in their real forms,—*pakṣurūpam vibhāya svakiyena rūpeṇa prādūr babhūvuh*, Sây.—In Kālidāsa's plays, both Urvast and Sakuntalā become invisible by means of a magic veil (*ūṛaskarīṇī*, 'making invisible') with which has been compared the magic veil by which the swan-maidens change their form. A. Weber, *Ind. Stud.* I, p. 197; A. Kuhn, *Herabkunft*, p. 91.

⁴ *Manasā tish/ha ghorē*,—possibly it may mean, 'O cruel one, be thou constant in (thy) mind;' or, as Kuhn takes it, 'pay attention, O cruel one.' Sâyana, however, takes it as above.

come ;' —' Stop, pray, let us speak together !' this is what he meant to say to her.

7. She replied (X. 95. 2). 'What concern have I with speaking to thee? I have passed away like the first of the dawns. Purūravas, go home again : I am like the wind, difficult to catch ;'—'Thou didst not do what I had told thee ; hard to catch I am for thee, go to thy home again !' this is what she meant to say.

8. He then said sorrowing (X. 95. 14), 'Then will thy friend ¹ rush away ² this day never to come back, to go to the farthest distance : then will he lie in Nirṛiti's ³ lap, or the fierce wolves will devour him ;'—'Thy friend will either hang himself, or start forth ; or the wolves, or dogs, will devour him !' this is what he meant to say.

9. She replied (X. 95. 15), 'Purūravas, do not die! do not rush away! let not the cruel wolves devour thee! Truly, there is no friendship with women, and theirs are the hearts of hyenas ⁴ ;'—

¹ This is a doubtful rendering (Max Muller ; Gespicle, A. Weber) of 'sudeva,'—Göttergenoss (the companion of the gods), Kuhn ; 'dem die Götter einst hold waren' (he who was formerly favoured by the gods), Grassmann ; Sudeva, Ludwig.

² Or, will fall down (Max Müller, Weber) ; sich in's Verderben stürzen (will rush to his destruction), Kuhn ;-- forteilen (hasten away), Grassmann ; verloren gehen (get lost), Ludwig ; sich in den Abgrund stürzen, Geldner ;-- 'mahāprasthānam kuryāt' (he will set out on the great journey, i. e. die), Śāyana. The Brāhmaṇa seems to propose two different renderings,—to throw oneself down (hang oneself), or, to start forth.

³ Nirṛiti is the goddess of decay or death.

⁴ The meaning of 'śālāvṛka,' also spelled 'śālāvṛka' (? house-wolves), is doubtful ; cf. H. Zimmer, Altindisches Leben, p. 8. Prof. Weber, Ind. Stud. I, p. 413, makes the suggestion that 'wehrwolves' may be intended.

'Do not take this to heart! there is no friendship with women; return home!' this is what she meant to say.

10. (*Rig-veda* X, 95, 16). 'When changed in form, I walked among mortals, and passed the nights there during four autumns¹ I ate a little ghee, once a day, and even now I feel satisfied therewith².'—This discourse in fifteen verses has been handed down by the *Bahvrikas*³. Then her heart took pity on him⁴.

11. She said, 'Come here the last night of the year from now⁵: then shalt thou lie with me for one night, and then this son of thine will have been born.' He came there on the last night of the year, and lo, there stood a golden palace⁶! They then

¹ The words 'rātriḥ saradaś ātata-rah' may also be taken in the sense of 'four nights of the autumn' (Max Müller, A. Kuhn). It needs hardly to be remarked that 'nights' means days and nights, and 'autumns' years.—Sâyana takes the passage in the sense of four delightful (rātriḥ ramayatriḥ) autumns or years.

² Literally, I walk (or go on, keep) being satisfied therewith. Prof. Geldner, however, takes it in an ironical sense, 'das Bischen liegt mir jetzt noch schwer im Magen' ('even now I have quite enough of that little').

³ That is, the theologians of the *Rig-veda*. As Prof. Weber points out, the hymn referred to, in the received version, consists not of fifteen but of eighteen verses, three of which would therefore seem to be of later origin (though they might, of course, belong to a different recension from that referred to by the *Brāhmaṇa*).

⁴ Or, according to Prof. Geldner, 'Then he touched her heart (excited her pity).'

⁵ Literally, the yearliest night, i. e. the 360th night, the last night of a year from now, or, this night next year: it is the night that completes the year, just as 'the fifth' completes the number 'five,'—*samvatsaratamīm samvatsarapūranīm antimām rātrim*, Sây. Cf. Delbrück, *Altind. Syntax*, p. 195.

⁶ *Hiraṇyavimitāni hiraṇyanirmitāni saudhāni*, Sây.

said to him only this (word)¹, 'Enter!' and then they bade her go to him.

12. She then said, 'To-morrow morning the Gandharvas will grant thee a boon, and thou must make thy choice.' He said, 'Choose thou for me!'—She replied, 'Say, Let me be one of yourselves!' In the morning the Gandharvas granted him a boon; and he said, 'Let me be one of yourselves!'

13. They said, 'Surely, there is not among men that holy form of fire by sacrificing wherewith one would become one of ourselves.' They put fire into a pan, and gave it to him saying, 'By sacrificing therewith thou shalt become one of ourselves.' He took it (the fire) and his boy, and went on his way home. He then deposited the fire in the forest, and went to the village with the boy alone. [He came back and thought] 'Here I am back;' and lo! it had disappeared²: what had been the fire was an Asvattha tree (*figus religiosa*), and what had been the pan was a Samī tree (*mimosa suma*). He then returned to the Gandharvas.

14. They said, 'Cook for a whole year a mess of rice sufficient for four persons; and taking each time three logs from this Asvattha tree, anoint them with ghee, and put them on the fire with

¹ Thus also A. Kuhn, and Śāyana, tato hainam ekam ūṣur etat, prapadyasveti, — enam Purūravasam tatra tyā ganā idam ekam ūṣuḥ. Śāy.—The word 'ekam' might also be taken along with 'enam' (Max Müller, Weber, Geldner).—'they said this to him alone' (? they bade him enter alone without his attendants).

² See above, paragraph 4 and note 1 on p. 70. According to the other interpretation we should have to translate:—He then deposited the fire in the forest, and went to the village with the boy alone, thinking, 'I (shall) come back.' [He came back] and lo! it had disappeared.

verses containing the words "log" and "ghee": the fire which shall result therefrom will be that very fire (which is required).'

15. They said, 'But that is *recondite* (esoteric), as it were. Make thyself rather an upper *arāṇi*¹ of *Asvattha* wood, and a lower *arāṇi* of *Sami* wood: the fire which shall result therefrom will be that very fire.'

16. They said, 'But that also is, as it were, *recondite*. Make thyself rather an upper *arāṇi* of *Asvattha* wood, and a lower *arāṇi* of *Asvattha* wood: the fire which shall result therefrom will be that very fire.'

17. He then made himself an upper *arāṇi* of *Asvattha* wood, and a lower *arāṇi* of *Asvattha* wood: and the fire which resulted therefrom was that very fire: by offering therewith he became one of the *Gandharvas*. Let him therefore make himself an upper and a lower *arāṇi* of *Asvattha* wood, and the fire which results therefrom will be that very fire: by offering therewith he becomes one of the *Gandharvas*.

SECOND BRĀHMAṆA.

THE SEASONAL SACRIFICES (*Kāturmāsya*).

1. By means of the Seasonal sacrifices, *Pragāpati* fashioned for himself a body. The sacrificial food for the *Vaiśvadeva*² sacrifice he made to be this

¹ That is, a churning-stick used for producing fire; see part i, p. 275; p. 294, note 3.

² The *Vaiśvadeva*, or first of the four seasonal sacrifices, requires the following oblations:—1. a cake on eight potsherds to *Agni*; 2. a *pap* to *Soma*; 3. a cake on twelve or eight potsherds to

right arm of his; the oblation to Agni thereof this thumb; that to Soma this (fore-finger); and that to Savitṛi this (middle finger).

2. That cake (to Savitṛi), doubtless, is the largest, and hence this (middle finger) is the largest of these (fingers). That (oblation) to Sarasvatī is this (third) finger; and that to Pūshan this (little finger). And that (oblation) to the Maruts is this joint above the hand (the wrist); and that to the Visve Devāḥ is this (elbow¹); and that to Heaven and Earth is this arm: this (oblation) is indistinct², whence that limb also is indistinct³.

3. The Varuṇapraghāśa⁴ offerings are this right leg,—the five oblations which this has in common (with the other Seasonal offerings) are these five toes; and the oblation to Indra and Agni is the knuckles: this (oblation) belongs to two deities

Savitṛi; 4. a pap to Sarasvatī; 5. a pap to Pūshan—these first five oblations recur at all seasonal offerings;—6. a cake on seven potsherds to the Maruts; 7. a dish of clotted curds to the Visve Devāḥ; 8. a cake on one potsherd to Heaven and Earth.

¹ It would rather seem that what is intended here by 'samdhi' is not the joints themselves, but the limbs (in the anatomical sense) between the articulations. Similarly in 'trishandhi' in parag. 7.

² That is to say, it is a low-voiced offering, the two formulas, with the exception of the final Om and Vauṣaḥ, being pronounced in a low voice. All cakes on one potsherd are (except those to Varuṇa) of this description; Kāty. Sr. IV, 5, 3; Āsv. Sr. II, 15, 5; cf. Sat. Br. II, 4, 3, 8.

³ That is, not clearly defined; the word 'dos,' which is more usually restricted to the fore-arm, being also used for the whole arm, and even the upper arm.

⁴ The Varuṇapraghāśāḥ, or second seasonal sacrifice, has the following oblations:—1-5, the common oblations; 6. a cake on twelve potsherds to Indra and Agni; 7, 8, two dishes of clotted curds for Varuṇa and the Maruts respectively; 9. a cake on one potsherd for Ka (Pragāpati).

whence there are these two knuckles. That (oblation) to Varuṇa is this (shank); that to the Maruts this (thigh); and that (cake) to Ka is this back-bone: this (oblation) is indistinct, whence that (back-bone) is indistinct.

4. The offering to (Agni) Anikavat (of the Sāka-medhâ¹), doubtless, is his (Pragâpati's) mouth, for the mouth is the extreme end (anika) of the vital airs; the Sâmtapaniâ (pap) is the chest, for by the chest one is, as it were, confined² (sam-tap); the Grîhamedhiyâ (pap) is the belly—to serve as a foundation, for the belly is a foundation; the Kraiḍina oblation is the male organ, for it is there-with that (man) sports (kriḍ), as it were; and the offering to Aditi³ is this downward breathing.

5. The Great Oblation, indeed, is this left leg,—the five oblations which it has in common (with the other Seasonal offerings) are these five toes; and the oblation to Indra and Agni is the knuckles: this (oblation) belongs to two deities whence there are

¹ The Sāka medhâh, or third seasonal sacrifice, consists of the following oblations:—1. a cake on eight potsherds to Agni Anikavat; 2. 3. paps to the Marutaḥ Sâmtapanâḥ and Marutaḥ Grîhamedhinâḥ; 4. a cake on seven potsherds to the Marutaḥ Kriḍinâḥ; 5. a pap to Aditi. Then follows the Great Oblation consisting of 6–10, the five common oblations; 11. a cake on twelve potsherds to Indra and Agni; 12. a pap to Mahendra; and 13. a cake on one potsherd to Virvakarman. Then follows the Pitriyagña.

² Or, according to Sâyana, one gets oppressed or heated on account of the close proximity of the heart and the digestive fire,—urasâ hrîdaya-sambandhâg gaḥarasannivesât ka samtâpana-vishayatvam.

³ This offering of a cake to Aditi, mentioned in Kâty. Sr. V, 7, 2, is not referred to in the Brâhmana's account of the Sâkamedhâh, see II, 5, 3, 20.

these two knuckles. The (oblation) to Mahendra is this (shank); that to Visvakarman this (thigh): this (oblation) is indistinct, whence this (thigh) also is indistinct.

6. The Sunāstriya¹, doubtless, is this left arm,—the five oblations which it has in common (with the other Seasonal offerings) are these five fingers; the Sunāsiriya is that joint of his above the hand; that (oblation) to Vāyu is this (elbow); that to Sūrya this arm: this (oblation) is indistinct, whence this (limb) also is indistinct.

7. Now these Seasonal offerings are tripartite and furnished with two joints², whence these limbs of man are tripartite and furnished with two joints. Two of these four (sacrifices) have each three indistinct (low-voiced) oblations; and two of them have two each³.

8. At all four of them they churn out the fire,

¹ The Sunāsiriya, or last Seasonal offering, consists of—1-5. the common oblations; 6. the Sunāsiriya cake on twelve potsherds; 7. a milk oblation to Vāyu; 8. a cake on one potsherd to Sūrya.

² The Seasonal offerings are performed so as to leave an interval of four months between them; the fourth falling exactly a year after the first; hence the whole performance consists, as it were, of three periods of four months each, with two joints between them;—corresponding to the formation of the arms and legs.

³ Of the five oblations common to the four sacrifices, one—viz. the cake to Savitṛ—is a low-voiced offering (Kāty. Sr. IV, 5, 5; Āsv. Sr. II, 15, 7), as are also the one-kapāla cakes of which there is one in each sacrifice. According to Sāyana the first and last Seasonal sacrifices have only these two Upamsuyāgas, whilst the second and third have each one additional low-voiced oblation, but he does not specify them. This is, however, a mistake, as Kātyāyana, Sr. IV, 5, 6, 7, states distinctly, that the two additional low-voiced oblations are the Vaisvadevi payasyā in the first, and the oblation to Vāyu in the last, Āturmāsya.

whence (the draught animal) pulls with all four limbs. At two of them they lead (the fire) forward¹, whence it (the animal) walks on two (feet at a time)². Thus, then, Pragāpati fashioned for himself a body by means of the Seasonal sacrifices: and in like manner does the Sacrificer who knows this fashion for himself a (divine) body by means of the Seasonal sacrifices.

9. As to this they say, 'The Vairadeva oblation (should have) all (its formulas) in the Gāyatrī, the Varuṇapraghāsā³ all in the Trishūbh, the Great Oblation all in the Gāgatrī, and the Sunāsirtya all in the Anushūbh metre, so as to yield a Katushōma.' But let him not do this, for inasmuch as (his formulas) amount to these (metres) even thereby that wish is obtained.

10. Now, indeed, (the formulas of) these Seasonal offerings amount to three hundred and sixty-two Brīhati verses⁴: he thereby obtains both the year⁵.

¹ According to Śāyana this refers to the first and last Seasonal sacrifices, inasmuch as there is no uttaravah required for these, and hence only the single leading forward of the fire to the Āhavyādyācharī; whilst the commentary on Kī. V. 4, 6, on the contrary, refers it just to the other two, because a double leading forth takes place there.

² Or, as Śāyana takes it, man walks on two feet.

³ The Katushōma, properly speaking, is the technical term for such an arrangement of the Stōtras of a Soma-sacrifice by which they are chanted on stomas, or hymn forms, increasing successively by four verses. Two such arrangements (of four and six different stomas respectively) are mentioned, one for an Agnishōma sacrifice, and the other for a Shodāin. See note on XIII, 3, 1, 4.

⁴ These 362 Brīhatt verses (of 36 syllables each) would amount to 13,032 syllables; and, verses of the four metres referred to amounting together to 148 syllables, this amount is contained in the former 88 times, leaving only eight over; so slight a discrepancy being considered of no account in such calculations.

⁵ That is, a year of 360 days; and if, as is done by Śāyana (in

and the Mahāvrata¹; and thus, indeed, this Sacrificer also has a twofold² foundation, and he thus makes the Sacrificer reach the heavenly world, and establishes him therein.

THIRD BRĀHMANA.

1. Saukeya Prākīnayogya came to Uddālaka Āruzi for a disputation on spiritual matters, thinking, 'I desire to know the Agnihotra.'

2. He said, 'Gautama, what like is thy Agnihotra cow? what like the calf? what like the cow joined by the calf? what like their meeting? what like (the milk) when being milked? what like when it has been milked? what like when brought (from the stable)? what like when put on the fire? what like when the light is thrown on it⁴; what like when water is poured thereto? what like when being taken off (the fire)? what like when taken off? what like when

accordance with the calculations in Book X), the year is identified with the fire-sakar, a mahavedi containing 360 Yagushmati bricks.

¹ Sāyana reminds us that the Mahivrata-sāman consists of five parts in five different stanzas (Trivṛt, xci, see part iv, p. 282, note 4), the verses of which, added up (6, 15, 17, 25, 21), make 87, which amount is apparently, in a rough way, to be taken as identical with that of 88 obtained in note 4 of last page.

² Viz. inasmuch as the total amount of Brāhatīs (362) exceeds by two the number of days in the year.

³ Sāyana takes 'brahmodyam agnihotram' together, in the sense 'the sacred truth' regarding (or, in the form of) the Agnihotra, - agnihotraviśayam brahmodyam brahmatattvasya rūpam prati-pādyate yena tad vividiśāmi tadviśayam vedane⁴ karishyāmi tyādinābhiprāyeṇāgatah. Unless 'brahmodyam' could be taken as an adjective, I do not see how it is possible to adopt Sāyana's interpretation.

⁴ For letting the light of a burning straw fall on the milk to see whether it is done, see II, 3, 1, 10.

being ladled out¹? what like when ladled out? what like when lifted up (to be taken to the Āhavanīya)? what like when being taken there? what like when held down²?

3. 'What like is the log thou putttest on? what like the first libation? why didst thou put it down (on the Vedi³)? why didst thou look away (towards the Gārhapatya⁴)? what like is the second libation?

4. 'Why, having offered, dost thou shake it (the spoon)? why, having cleansed the spoon all round (the spout), didst thou wipe it on the grass-bunch? why, having cleansed it a second time all over, didst thou place thy hand on the south (part of the Vedi)? why didst thou eat (of the milk) the first time, and why the second time? why, on creeping away (from the Vedi), didst thou drink (water)? why, having poured water into the spoon, didst thou sprinkle therewith? why didst thou sprinkle it away a second time, and why a third time in that (northerly) direction? why didst thou pour down water behind the Āhavanīya? why didst thou bring (the offering) to a close? If thou hast offered the Agnihotra knowing this, then it has indeed been offered by thee;

¹ Viz. by the dipping-spoon (*śruva*) into the ladle (*agnihotra-havanī*), see II, 3, 1, 17.

² Whilst taking the oblation to the Āhavanīya, he holds the spoon level with his mouth, except when he is in a line between the two fires, when for a moment he lowers the spoon so as to be level with his navel.

³ This refers to the putting down of the spoon containing the milk on the grass-bunch prior to the second libation; cf. II, 3, 1, 17. One might also translate, 'what is that (or does it mean) that thou didst put it down?'

⁴ Thus Śāyana, —*apaikshish/tāh gārhapatasyaikshazam kṛitavān asi.*

but if (thou hast offered it) **not knowing this**, then it has not been offered by thee.¹

5. He (Uddālaka), said, 'My Agnihotra cow is Idā, Manu's daughter²; my calf is of Vāyu's nature; the (cow) joined by the calf is in conjunction therewith³; their meeting is the Virāg; (the milk) when being milked belongs to the Asvins, and when it has been milked, to the Visve Devāḥ; when brought (from the stable) it belongs to Vāyu; when put on (the fire), to Agni; when the light is thrown on it, it belongs to Indra and Agni; when water is poured thereto it belongs to Varuṇa; when being taken off (the fire), to Vāyu; when it has been taken off, to Heaven and Earth; when being ladled out, to the Asvins; when it has been ladled out, to the Visve Devāḥ; when lifted up, to Mahādeva; when being taken (to the Āhavanīya), to Vāyu; when held down, to Vishṇu.

6. 'And the log I put on (the fire) is the resting-place of the libations; and as to the first libation, I therewith gratified the gods; and when I laid down (the spoon with the milk), that belongs to Br̥haspati; and when I looked away, then I joined together this and yonder world; and as to the second libation, I thereby settled myself in the heavenly world.

7. 'And when, having offered, I shake (the spoon), that belongs to Vāyu; and when, having cleansed the spoon all round (the spout), I wiped it on the grass-bunch, then I gratified the herbs and trees;

¹ See the legend, I, 8, 1, 1 seqq.

² That is, according to Sāyana, 'the sky allied with Vāyu, the wind,'--vāyunā samsrīṣṭā dyauḥ.

and when, having cleansed it a second time all over, I placed my hand on the south (part of the altar-ground), then I gratified the Fathers¹; and when I ate (of the milk) the first time, then I gratified myself; and when (I ate) a second time, then I gratified my offspring; and when, having crept away (from the altar-ground), I drank (water), then I gratified the cattle; and when, having poured water into the spoon, I sprinkled therewith, then I gratified the snake-deities; and when (I sprinkled) a second time, then (I gratified) the Gandharvas and Apsaras; and when, a third time, I sprinkled it away in that (northerly) direction, then I opened the gate of heaven; and when I poured down water behind the altar, then I bestowed rain on this world; and when I brought (the sacrifice) to a close, then I filled up whatever there is deficient in the earth.—‘This much, then, reverend sir, we two (know) in common²,’ said (Saukeya).

8. Saukeya, thus instructed, said, ‘I would yet ask thee a question, reverend sir.’—‘Ask then, Prāṭi-nayogya!’ he replied. He (Saukeya) said, ‘If, at the time when thy fires are taken out, and the sacrificial vessels brought down, thou wert going to offer, and the offering-fire were then to go out, dost thou know what danger there is in that case for him who offers?’ ‘I know,’ he replied; ‘before long the eldest son would die in the case of him who would

¹ The departed ancestors are supposed to reside in the southern region.

² He bhagavann Uddālaka bhavatoktam etat saha (? saha) nāv āvayoh saha sahitam samānam ekarūpam iti Saukeyo ha bhuktavān (? hy uktavān) anyaprasnam darsayitam prastauti, Saukeyo gṛāpta iti, Sāy.

not know this; but by dint of knowledge I myself have prevailed.'—'What is that knowledge, and what the atonement?' he asked.—'The breath of the mouth has entered the upward breathing—such (is the knowledge); and I should make the offering in the Gārhapatya fire—that would be the atonement, and I should not be committing that sin.'—'This much, then, reverend sir, we two (know) in common,' said (Saukeya).

9. Saukeya, thus instructed, said, 'I would yet ask thee a question, reverend sir.'—'Ask then, Prāṭi-nayogya!' he replied. He said, 'If, at that very time, the Gārhapatya fire were to go out, dost thou know what danger there is in that case for him who offers?'—'I know it,' he replied; 'before long the master of the house' would die in the case of him who would not know this; but by dint of knowledge I myself have prevailed.'—'What is that knowledge, and what the atonement?' he asked.—'The upward breathing has entered the breath of the mouth—this (is the knowledge); and I would make the offering on the Āhavaniya—this would be the atonement, and I should not be committing that sin.'—'This much, then, reverend sir, we two (know) in common,' said (Saukeya).

10. Saukeya, thus instructed, said, 'I would yet ask thee a question, reverend sir.'—'Ask then, Prāṭi-nayogya!' he replied. He said, 'If, at that very time, the Anvāhāryapaśana fire were to go out, dost thou know what danger there is in that case for him who offers?'—'I know it,' he replied: 'before long all the cattle would die in the case of him who would

not know this; but by dint of knowledge I myself have prevailed.'—'What is that knowledge, and what the atonement?' he asked.—'The through-breathing has entered the upward breathing—this (is the knowledge); and I would make the offering on the Gārhapatya fire—this is the atonement; and I should not be committing that sin.'—'This much, then, reverend sir, we two (know) in common,' said (Saukēya).

11. Saukēya, thus instructed, said, 'I would yet ask thee a question, reverend sir.'—'Ask, then, Prāṭi-nayogya!' he replied. He said, 'If, at that very time, all the fires were to go out, dost thou know what danger there is in that case for him who offers?'—'I know it,' he replied: 'before long the family would be without heirs in the case of him who would not know this; but by dint of knowledge I myself have prevailed.'—'What is that knowledge, and what the atonement?' he asked.—'Having, without delay, churned out fire, and taken out an offering fire in whatever direction the wind might be blowing, I would perform an offering to Vāyu (the wind); I would then know that my Agnihotra would be successful, belonging as it would to all deities; for all beings, indeed, pass over into the wind, and from out of the wind they are again produced'. This would be the atonement, and I should not be committing that sin.'—'This much, then, reverend sir, we two (know) in common,' said (Saukēya).

12. Saukēya, thus instructed, said, 'I would yet ask thee a question, reverend sir.'—'Ask then, Prāṭi-

¹ At the time of dissolution (layakāle) they pass into the wind; and at the time of creation (sṛishikāle) they are again created, Sây.

mayo'gya!' he replied. He said, 'If at that very time all the fires were to go out, when there should be no wind blowing, dost thou know what danger there would be for him who offers?'—'I know it,' he replied; 'unpleasant things, indeed, he would see in this world, and unpleasant things in yonder world, were he not to know this; but by dint of knowledge I myself have prevailed.'—'What is that knowledge, and what the atonement?' he asked.—'Having, without delay, churned out fire, and taken out an offering-fire towards the east, and sat down behind it, I myself would drink (the Agnihotra milk): I should then know that my Agnihotra would be successful, belonging as it would to all deities, for all beings, indeed, pass into the Brāhmaṇa¹, and from the Brāhmaṇa they are again produced. That would be the atonement; and I should not be committing that sin.'—'And, verily, I did not know this,' said (Saukeya).

13. Saukeya, thus instructed, said, 'Here are logs for fuel: I will become thy pupil, reverend sir.' He replied, 'If thou hadst not spoken thus, thy head would have flown off²: come, enter as my pupil!'—'So be it,' he said. He then initiated him, and taught him that pain-conquering utterance, Truth: therefore let man speak naught but truth³.

¹ Viz. as the representative of the Brahman, or world-spirit.

² Yadaivam nāvakshyaḥ yadaivam agñānam nāvishkaroshi te mūrdhā vyapatishyat, mūrdhā(va)patanam svagñānaprakāśanenaṭra-bhavataḥ parihrāṣam iti, Sāy. — Prof. Delbrück, Altind. Syntax, p. 366, takes 'vi-pat' in the sense of—(thy head would have) flown asunder, or burst; which is indeed possible; cf. XI, 4, 1, 9.

³ Cf. F. Max Müller, 'India, what can it teach us?' p. 65 seqq.

FOURTH BRÂHMANA.

THE UPANAYANA, OR INITIATION OF THE BRÂHMANICAL
STUDENT¹.

1. He says, 'I have come for *Brahmakārya*²:' he thereby reports himself to the Brahman. He says, 'Let me be a *Brahmakārin* (student):' he thereby makes himself over to the Brahman. He (the teacher) then says, 'What (ka) is thy name?'—now Ka is *Pragâpati*: he thus initiates him after making him one belonging to *Pragâpati*.

2. He then takes his (right) hand with, 'Indra's disciple thou art: Agni is thy teacher, I am thy teacher, O N. N.!'—now these are two most high and most powerful deities: it is to these two most high and most powerful deities he commits him; and thus his disciple suffers no harm of any kind, nor does he who knows this³.

3. He then commits him to the beings: 'To *Pragâpati* I commit thee, to the god *Savitri* I commit thee;'—now these are two most high and most important deities: it is to these two most high and most important deities he commits him; and thus his disciple suffers no harm of any kind, nor does he who knows this.

¹ With this chapter compare *Pâraskara Grîhyasûtra* II, 2, 17 seqq.; *Ârvalâyana Grîhyasûtra* I, 20 seqq.; *Sāṅkhâyana Grîhyasûtra* II, 1 seqq.

² That is, for religious (theological) studentship: 'I have come to be a student.'—*Sâyana* takes the aorist 'âgām' in an optative sense 'may I enter (or obtain),'—*brahmakārinō bhāvo brahmakāryam tad âgām prâpnuyām*.

³ *Vidusho·py etat phalam āha, na sa iti, evam uktârtham yo veda gānāti so·py ârtim na prâpnotīty arthah, Sây.*

4. 'To the waters, to the plants I commit thee,'—he thus commits him to the waters and plants.—'To Heaven and Earth I commit thee,'—he thus commits him to these two, heaven and earth, within which all this universe is contained.—'To all beings I commit thee for security from injury,'—he thus commits him to all beings for security from injury; and thus his disciple suffers no harm of any kind, nor does he who knows this.

5. 'Thou art a Brahmacārin,' he says, and thus commits him to the Brahman;—'sip water!'—water, doubtless, means ambrosia: 'sip ambrosia' is thus what he tells him;—'do thy work!'—work, doubtless, means vigour: 'exert vigour' is thus what he tells him;—'put on fuel!'—'enkindle thy mind with fire, with holy lustre!' is what he thereby tells him;—'do not sleep!'—'do not die' is what he thereby says to him;—'sip water!'—water means ambrosia: 'sip ambrosia' is what he thus tells him. He thus encloses him on both sides with ambrosia (the drink of immortality), and thus the Brahmacārin suffers no harm of any kind, nor does he who knows this.

6. He then recites to him (teaches him) the Sāvitrī²;—formerly, indeed, they taught this (verse) at the end of a year³, thinking, 'Children, indeed, are

¹ 'Do not sleep in the daytime!' Pār., Ārv.

² For this verse, also called the Gāyatrī (*Rig-veda* S. III, 62. 10). see II, 3, 4, 39.

³ Sāyana takes this in the sense of 'some only teach this (formula) a year after (or, after the first year).—purā pūrvasminn upanayanād ūrdhva bhāvinī samvatsarakāle tīte sati tām etām gāyatrīm anvāhuḥ, kecid ācāryā upadiśanti.

born after being fashioned for a year¹ : thus we lay speech (voice) into this one as soon as he has been born.'

7. Or after six months, thinking, 'There are six seasons in the year, and children are born after being fashioned for a year : we thus lay speech into this one as soon as he has been born.'

8. Or after twenty-four days, thinking, 'There are twenty-four half-months in the year, and children are born when fashioned for a year : we thus lay speech into this one as soon as he has been born.'

9. Or after twelve days, thinking, 'There are twelve months in the year, and children are born when fashioned for a year : we thus lay speech into this one as soon as he has been born.'

10. Or after six days, thinking, 'There are six seasons in the year, and children are born when fashioned for a year : we thus lay speech into this one as soon as he has been born.'

11. Or after three days, thinking, 'There are three seasons in the year, and children are born when fashioned for a year : we thus lay speech into this one as soon as he has been born.'

12. Concerning this they also sing the verse,—
'By laying his right hand on (the pupil), the teacher becomes pregnant (with him) : in the third (night) he is born as a Brāhmaṇa with the Sāvitrī².' Let him,

¹ Literally, made equal, or corresponding, to a year,—*Samvat-sarātmanā kālena samyakparikkhinnāḥ khalu garbhā vyaktāvayavāḥ santaḥ pragāyante utpadyante ; ata upanayanānantaram ātārya-samipe garbhavad avakkhinnas taduktaniyamanāt samvatsarakāla eva punar gāyate, Sāy.*

² *Ātāryo mānavakam upaniya samīpavartinā tena garbhī bhavati garbhavān bhavati, kim krīvā, ātmīyam dakṣiṇam hastam sishya-*

however, teach a Brāhmaṇa (the Sāvitrī) at once, for the Brāhmaṇa belongs to Agni, and Agni is born at once¹: therefore, he should teach the Brāhmaṇa at once.

13. Now some teach an Anush/ubh Sāvitrī, saying, 'The Anush/ubh is speech: we thus lay speech into him.' But let him not do so; for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this (student) has taken away his (the teacher's) speech: he will become dumb; ' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass: let him therefore teach him that Gāyatrī Sāvitrī.

14. And some recite it to him while he (the student) is standing or sitting on (the teacher's) right side: but let him not do this; for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this (teacher) has born this (student) sideways, he will become averse to him; ' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass: let him therefore recite it in a forward (easterly) direction to (the student) looking at him towards the west.

15. He (first) recites it by pādas²: there being three breathings, the out-breathing, the up-breathing and the through-breathing: it is these he thus lays into him;—then by half-verses: there being these

mastaka ādhāya nīkshipya; sa garbharūpo mānavakas *trīṇīyasyām* rātrau vyatītāyām gāyate ākāryād utpadyate, gītas ka ākāryenopa-
dīshayā sāvitrīyā sahita san brāhmaṇo bhavati sāvitrirūpam ka
brahmādhita iti vyutpattiḥ, brāhmaṇagātītavam asya
sampannam ity arthaḥ, Śāy.

¹ Viz. immediately on the 'churning-sticks' being set in motion.

² The Gāyatrī (Sāvitrī) consists of three octosyllabic pādas, forming two half-verses of two and one pāda respectively; whilst an Anush/ubh (Sāvitrī) would consist of four octosyllabic pādas, two of which make a half-verse.

two (principal) breathings, the out-breathing and the up-breathing¹, it is the out-breathing and the up-breathing he thus lays into him ;—then the whole (verse): there being this one vital air (in man), he thus lays the whole vital air into the whole of him.

16. As to this they say, 'When one has admitted a Brâhmaṇa to a term of studentship, he should not carry on sexual intercourse, lest he should generate this Brâhmaṇa from shed seed ; for, indeed, he who enters on a term of studentship becomes an embryo.'

17. And concerning this they also say, 'He may nevertheless do so, if he chooses ; for these creatures are of two kinds, divine and human,—these human creatures are born from the womb, and the divine creatures, being the metres (verses of scripture), are born from the mouth : it is therefrom he (the teacher) produces him, and therefore he may do so (have intercourse) if he chooses.'

18. And they also say, 'He who is a Brahmacârin should not eat honey, lest he should reach the end of food, for honey, doubtless, is the utmost (supreme) essence of plants.' But Svetaketu Âruṇeya, when eating honey, whilst he was a student, said, 'This honey, in truth, is the remainder (essential part) of the triple science (the Vedas), and he, indeed, who has such a remainder, is an essence.' And, indeed, if a Brahmacârin, knowing this, eats honey, it is just as if he were to utter either a Rîk-verse, or Yagus-formula, or a Sâman-tune : let him therefore eat freely of it.

¹ That is, the breath of the mouth, and that of the nostrils.

FIFTH BRĀHMANA.

THE SATĀTIRĀTRAM, OR SACRIFICIAL SESSION OF A HUNDRED ATIRĀTRA-SACRIFICES.

1. Now, when the gods were passing upwards to the world of heaven, the Asuras enveloped them in darkness. They spake, 'Verily, by nothing else save a sacrificial session is there any way of dispelling this (darkness): well, then, let us perform a sacrificial session!'

2. They entered upon a sacrificial session of a hundred Agnishōma (days), and dispelled the darkness as far as one may see whilst sitting; and in like manner did they, by (a session of) a hundred Ukthya (days), dispel the darkness as far as one may see whilst standing.

3. They spake, 'We do indeed dispel the darkness, but not the whole of it: come, let us resort to Father Pragāpati.' Having come to Father Pragāpati, they spake, 'Reverend sir, when we were passing upwards to the world of heaven the Asuras enveloped us in darkness.'

4. 'We entered upon a sacrificial session of a hundred Agnishōmas, and dispelled the darkness as far as one may see whilst sitting; and in like manner did we dispel the darkness as far as one may see whilst standing: do thou teach us, reverend sir, how, by dispelling the Asuras and darkness, and all evil, we shall find (the way to) the world of heaven!'

5. He spake, 'Surely, ye proceeded by means of two sacrifices, the Agnishōma and Ukthya, which do not contain all Soma-rites¹;—enter ye upon

¹ Viz. neither the Shodasin which, to (the twelve stotras, and

a sacrificial session of a hundred Atirâtras : when ye have thereby repelled the Asuras and darkness, and all evil, ye shall find the world of heaven.'

6. They entered upon a sacrificial session of a hundred Atirâtras ; and, having thereby repelled the Asuras and darkness, and all evil, they found (the way to) the world of heaven. In their first fifty days¹ the night-hymns reached into the day, and the day-hymns into the night.

7. They spake, 'Verily, we have got into confusion and know not what to do : come, let us resort to Father Pragâpati!' Having come to Father Pragâpati, they spake (the verses), 'Our night-hymns are (chanted) in daytime, and those of the day at night : O sage, being learned and wise, teach thou us who are ignorant (how to perform) the sacrifices!'

8. He then recited to them as follows, 'A stronger, pursuing, has, as it were, driven a great snake from its own place, the lake : therefore the sacrificial session is not carried through.'

9. 'For your Âsvina (sastra), being recited, has *indeed driven the morning-litany from its place* :—

sastras of the Agnishoma, and) the fifteen chants of the Ukthya, adds a sixteenth; and the Atirâtra which has thirteen additional chants (and recitations), viz. three nocturnal rounds of four chants each, and one twilight-chant, followed by the Âsvina-sastra, recited by the Hotri. No account is here taken of either the Atyagnishoma of thirteen chants, or the Aptoryâma, which, to those of the Atirâtra, adds four more chants. Cf. part ii, p. 397, note 2.

¹ Or, perhaps, rather, in their days prior to the fiftieth (arvâkpât-kâreshv ahaṁsu), St. Petersburg. Dict.

² The Âsvina-sastra, with the recitation of which, by the Hotri, the Atirâtra concludes, takes the place, and is, indeed,

‘What ye, being wise, have unwise-like driven from its place, take ye up that gently through the *Prasāstri*, reciting so as not to disturb¹ (the *Hotri*).’

10. They spake, ‘How, then, reverend sir, is (the *Āsvina-sastra* properly) recited and how is the recitation not disturbed?’ He spake, ‘When the *Hotri*, in reciting the *Āsvina-sastra*, reaches the end of the *Gāyatra* metre of the *Āgneya-kratu*², the *Pratiprasthātri*³ should carry round the *Vasat*ivart water⁴, and bespeak the *Prātar-anuvāka* for the *Maitrāvaruṇa* (seated) between the two *Havirdhāna* (carts containing the offering-material). The *Hotri* recites (the *Āsvina-sastra*) in a loud voice, and the other (the *Maitrāvaruṇa*) repeats (the morning-litany) in a low voice, only just muttering it : in this

merely a modification, of the *Prātar-anuvāka*, or morning-litany (see part ii, p. 229, note 2), by which an ordinary Soma-sacrifice is ushered in. Like it, its chief portion consists of three sections, termed *kratu*, of hymns and detached verses addressed to the ‘early-coming’ deities, *Agni*, *Usha*s and the two *Āsvins*. The whole is to consist of not less than a thousand *Br̥hatis*, that is to say, the whole matter is to amount to at least 36,000 syllables. For a full account of this *Sastra*, see Haug’s Transl. of *Ait. Br.*, p. 268.

¹ Whilst the *Hotri* is reciting the *Āsvina-sastra*, his first assistant, the *Prasāstri* (or, as he is more commonly called, the *Maitrāvaruṇa*), is to repeat the *Prātar-anuvāka* in a low voice.

² The hymns and detached verses of each of the three sections—the *Āgneya*-, *Ushasya*- and *Āsvina-kratu*—of the *Āsvina-sastra* (as of the *Prātar-anuvāka*) are arranged according to the seven principal metres—*gāyatrī*, *anushṭubh*, *trishṭubh*, *br̥hatī*, *ushnīh*, *gagatī*, and *pañkti*—forming as many subdivisions of the three sections.

³ That is, the first assistant of the *Adhvaryu* priest : the latter having to respond (*pratigara*) to the *Hotri*’s calls (see part ii, p. 326, note 1) at the beginning and end of the *Sastra*, and to sit through the recitations (III, 9, 3, 11).

⁴ See III, 9, 2, 13 seqq.

way he does not run counter to (the Hotṛi's) speech by (his own) speech, nor metre by metre.

11. 'When the Prâtar-anuvâka has been completed, he (the Pratiprasthâtṛi), having offered, at their proper time¹, the Upâmsu and Antaryâma cups², presses out the straining-cloth and puts it in the Dronakalasa³. And when ye have performed the (offering of the cups of) fermented Soma⁴, and returned (to the Sadas), ye should drink the fermented Soma (remaining in those cups). Having then, in the proper form, completed the "tail of the sacrifice," and taken up the cups of Soma (drawn) subsequent to the Antaryâma⁵, and offered the oblation of drops⁶, as well as the Santani-oblation⁷, ye should perform the Bahishpavamâna chant, and enter upon the day (-performance).'

12. Concerning this there are these verses:—
'With four harnessed Saindhava (steeds) the sages left behind them the gloom—the wise gods who spun out the session of a hundred sacrifices.'

13. In this (sacrificial session) there are, indeed, four harnessed (steeds).—to wit, two Hotṛis and two Adhvaryus.—'Like unto the artificer contriving spikes to the spear, the sages coupled the ends of

¹ Yathâyatanam eva prakṛtau yasmin kâlâ hūyeta tathaiva hutvâ, Sây.

² See IV, 1, 1, 22 seqq.; 1, 2, 21 seqq.

³ See II, 1, 2, 3, with note thereon.

⁴ That is, having, after the completion of the Ârvina-sastra, offered to the Arvins some of the Soma that has been standing 'over the previous day.'

⁵ Viz. the Aindravâyava, Maitrâvaruna, &c., see IV, 1, 3, 1 seqq.

⁶ See IV, 2, 5, 1 seqq.

⁷ Called 'savanasantani' (? i. e. continuity of pressing) by Kâty., XXIV, 4, 1.

two days: now the Dānavas, we know¹, will not disorder the sacrificial thread of them stretched out by us. They leave undone the work of the previous day, and carry it through on the following day,—difficult to be understood is the wisdom of the deities: streams of Soma flow, interlinked with streams of Soma!—Even as they constantly sprinkle the equal prize-winning² steeds, so (they pour out) the cups full of fiery liquor in the palace of Ganamegaya.' Then the Asura-Rakshas went away.

SIXTH BRÂHMANA.

THE STUDY OF THE VEDA.

1. There are five great sacrifices, and they, indeed, are great sacrificial sessions,—to wit, the sacrifice to beings, the sacrifice to men, the sacrifice to the Fathers, the sacrifice to the gods, and the sacrifice to the Brahman.

2. Day by day one should offer an oblation to beings: thus he performs that sacrifice to beings. Day by day one should offer (presents to guests) up to the cupful of water³: thus he performs that

¹ Sâyana construes,—we know the extended sacrificial thread of these (days), and the Dānavas (Asuras) do not henceforth confound us. In that case the order of words would be extremely irregular.

² *Kâsh/abhrītaḥ*, āgyantā (!) *kâsh/hāni tāni bibhratīti kâsh/abhrītaḥ svādasam* (? *kāṇḍasam*) *pūrvapadasya hrasvatvam*, āgri-dhāvanam *kṛtāvato hayān arvān*, Sây. According to this authority the general meaning of the verse is that even as the (king's) horses, when they have performed their task, have sweet drinks poured out on (? to) them, and thus obtain their hearts' desire, so the gods, by performing a sacrificial session of a hundred Atirātras, in accordance with Pragāpati's directions, dispel the darkness and gain the world of heaven.

³ Or perhaps, from a cupful of water onwards,—*aharahaḥ dadyād*

sacrifice to men. Day by day one should offer with Svadhâ up to the cupful of water¹: thus he performs that sacrifice to the Fathers. Day by day one should perform with Svâhâ up to the log of fire-wood²: thus he performs that sacrifice to the gods.

3. Then as to the sacrifice to the Brahman. The sacrifice to the Brahman is one's own (daily) study (of the Veda). The gûhû-spoon of this same sacrifice to the Brahman is speech, its upabhrît the mind, its dhruvâ the eye, its sruva mental power, its purificatory bath truth, its conclusion heaven. And, verily, however great the world he gains by giving away (to the priests) this earth replete with wealth, thrice that and more—an imperishable world does he gain, whosoever, knowing this, studies day by day his lesson (of the Veda): therefore let him study his daily lesson.

4. Verily, the *Rîk*-texts are milk-offerings to the gods; and whosoever, knowing this, studies day by day the *Rîk*-texts for his lesson, thereby satisfies the gods with milk-offerings; and, being satisfied, they satisfy him by (granting him) security of

iti manushyân uddisya odapâtrât udakapûritam pâtram udapâtram udakapâtrâvadhi yad odanâdikam dadyât sa manushyayagña ity arthaḥ, Sây.—Cf. J. Muir, Orig. Sanskrit Texts, vol. iii, p. 18 seqq.

¹ In making offering to the (three immediately preceding) departed ancestors, water is poured out for them (to wash themselves with) both at the beginning and at the end of the ceremony; see II, 4, 2, 16; 23; II, 6, 1, 34; 41, where each time it is said that this is done 'even as one would pour out water for (a guest) who is to take (or has taken) food with him';—pitṛñ uddisya pratyaham svadhâkâreṇa annâdikam udapâtraparyantam dadyât, Sây.

² Apparently the log of wood placed on the Gârhapatya after the completion of the offering.

possession¹, by life-breath, by seed, by his whole self, and by all auspicious blessings; and rivers of ghee and rivers of honey flow for his (departed) Fathers, as their accustomed draughts.

5. And, verily, the Yagus-texts are ghee-offerings to the gods; and whosoever, knowing this, studies day by day the Yagus-texts for his lesson thereby satisfies the gods with ghee-offerings; and, being satisfied, they satisfy him by security of possession, by life-breath, by seed, by his whole self, and by all auspicious blessings; and rivers of ghee and rivers of honey flow for his Fathers, as their accustomed draughts.

6. And, verily, the Sāman-texts are Soma-offerings to the gods; and whosoever, knowing this, studies day by day the Sāman-texts for his lesson thereby satisfies the gods with Soma-offerings; and, being satisfied, they satisfy him by security of possession, by life-breath, by seed, by his whole self, and by all auspicious blessings; and rivers of ghee and rivers of honey flow for his Fathers, as their accustomed draughts.

7. And, verily, the (texts of the) Atharvāṅgiras are fat-offerings to the gods; and whosoever, knowing this, studies day by day the (texts of the) Atharvāṅgiras for his lesson, satisfies the gods with fat-offerings; and, being satisfied, they satisfy him by security of possession, by life-breath, by seed, by his whole self, and by all auspicious blessings; and rivers of ghee and rivers of honey flow for his Fathers, as their accustomed draughts.

¹ Aprāptasya phalasya prāptir yogaḥ tasya paripālanam kṣemaḥ, Sây.

8. And, verily, the precepts¹, the sciences², the dialogue³, the traditional myths and legends⁴, and the Nārāsaṃsi Gāthās⁵ are honey-offerings to the gods; and whosoever, knowing this, studies day by day the precepts, the sciences, the dialogue, the traditional myths and legends, and the Nārāsaṃsi Gāthās, for his lesson, satisfies the gods with honey-offerings; and, being satisfied, they satisfy him by (granting him) security of possession, by life-breath, by seed, by his whole self, and by all auspicious blessings; and rivers of ghee and rivers of honey flow for his Fathers, as their accustomed draughts.

¹ The Anusāsanāni, according to Sāyana, are the six Vedāṅgas, or rules of grammar, etymology, &c.

² By vidyāḥ, according to Sāyana, the philosophical systems, Nyāya, Mīmāṃsā, &c., are to be understood. More likely, however, such special sciences as the 'sarpavidyā' (science of snakes) are referred to; cf. XIII, 4, 3, 9 seqq.

³ Vākavākyaṃ, apparently some special theological discourse, or discourses, similar to (if not identical with) the numerous Brahmodya, or disputations on spiritual matters. As an example of such a dialogue, Sāyana refers to the dialogue between Uddālaka Āruṇi and Svaidāyana Gautama, XI, 4, 1, 4 seqq.

⁴ Itihāsa-purāṇa: the Itihāsa, according to Sāyana, are cosmological myths or accounts, such as 'In the beginning this universe was nothing but water,' &c.; whilst as an instance of the Purāṇa (stories of olden times, purāṇanapurushavṛttānta) he refers to the story of Purūravas and Urvasī. Cf. Max Müller, History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature, p. 41.

⁵ Or, the Gāthās and Nārāsaṃsis. Sāyana, in the first place, takes the two as one, meaning 'stanzas (or verses) telling about men;' but he then refers to the interpretation by others, according to which the Gāthās are such verses as that about 'the great snake driven from the lake' (XI, 5, 5, 8); whilst the Nārāsaṃsis would be (verses 'telling about men') such as that regarding Ganamegaya and his horses (XI, 5, 5, 12). On Aitareyār. II, 3, 6, 8, Sāyana quotes 'prātaḥ prātar anṛitam te vadanti' as an instance of a Gāthā.

9. Now, for this sacrifice to the Brahman there are four Vasha/-calls¹,—to wit, when the wind blows, when it lightens, when it thunders, and when it rumbles²: whence he who knows this should certainly study³ when the wind is blowing, and when it lightens, or thunders, or rumbles, so as not to lose his Vasha/-calls; and verily he is freed from recurring death, and attains to community of nature (or, being) with the Brahman. And should he be altogether unable (to study), let him at least read a single divine word; and thus he is not shut out from beings⁴.

SEVENTH BRĀHMAṆA.

1. Now, then, the praise of the study (of the scriptures). The study and teaching (of the Veda) are a source of pleasure to him, he becomes ready-minded⁵, and independent of others, and day by day he acquires wealth. He sleeps peacefully; he is the best physician for himself; and (peculiar) to him are restraint of the senses, delight in the one thing⁶, growth of intelligence, fame, and the (task of) perfecting the people⁷. The growing

¹ That is, the call 'Vausha!' with which, at the end of the offering-formula, the oblation is poured into the fire.

² That is, when the rumbling of distant thunder is heard; or, perhaps, when there is a rattling sound, as from hail-stones.

³ Hardly, should only study,—adhīyātaiva.

⁴ Or, from (the world of) spirits (?).

⁵ Or, as Sāyana takes it to mean, of intent, undistracted mind,—yuktam avikshiptam ekāgram mano yasya sa yuktamanāḥ.

⁶ Sāyana seems to take 'ekārāmatā' in the sense of 'remaining always the same,'—eka eva sann ā samantād bhavatyī ekārāmas tasya bhāvaḥ.

⁷ Or, perfecting the world,—tadyukto yo lokas tasya paktiḥ paripāko bhavati, Sāy.

intelligence gives rise to four duties attaching to the Brāhmaṇa—Brāhmaṇical descent, a befitting deportment, fame, and the perfecting of the people; and the people that are being perfected guard the Brāhmaṇa by four duties—by (showing him) respect, and liberality, (and by granting him) security against oppression, and security against capital punishment.

2. And, truly, whatever may be the toils here between heaven and earth, the study (of the scriptures) is their last stage, their goal (limit) for him who, knowing this, studies his lesson: therefore one's (daily) lesson should be studied.

3. And, verily, whatever portion of the sacred poetry (*kṛandas*) he studies for his lesson with that sacrificial rite¹, offering is made by him who, knowing this, studies his lesson: therefore one's (daily) lesson should be studied.

4. And, verily, if he studies his lesson, even though lying on a soft couch, anointed, adorned and completely satisfied, he is burned (with holy fire²) up to the tips of his nails, whosoever, knowing this, studies his lesson: therefore one's (daily) lesson should be studied.

5. The *Āṅk*-texts, truly, are honey, the Sāman-texts ghee, and the Yagus-texts ambrosia; and, indeed, when he studies the dialogue that (speech and reply) is a mess of milk and a mess of meat.

¹ The study of the Veda being 'the sacrifice of the Brahman,' the reading of a portion is, as it were, a special rite, or form of offering, belonging to that sacrifice. Sāyana, on the other hand, takes it to mean that the student performs, as it were, the particular rite, or offering, to which the portion he reads may refer. It may, indeed, be implied, though it certainly is not expressed in the text.

² Thus A. Weber, Ind. Stud. X, p. 112;—*sarīrapīḍanena tapas-tapto bhavati*, Sāy.

6. And, indeed, he who, knowing this, studies day by day the *Rik*-texts for his lesson, satisfies the gods with honey, and, thus satisfied, they satisfy him by every object of desire, by every kind of enjoyment.

7. And he who, knowing this, studies day by day the *Sāman*-texts for his lesson, satisfies the gods with ghee; and, being satisfied, they satisfy him by every object of desire, by every kind of enjoyment.

8. And he who, knowing this, studies day by day the *Yagus*-texts for his lesson, satisfies the gods with ambrosia; and, being satisfied, they satisfy him by every object of desire, by every kind of enjoyment.

9. And he who, knowing this, studies day by day the dialogue, the traditional myths and legends, for his lesson, satisfies the gods by messes of milk and meat; and, being satisfied, they satisfy him by every object of desire, by every kind of enjoyment.

10. Moving, indeed, are the waters, moving is the sun, moving the moon, and moving the stars; and, verily, as if these deities did not move and act, even so will the *Brāhmaṇa* be on that day on which he does not study his lesson: therefore one's (daily) lesson should be studied. And hence let him at least pronounce either a *Rik*-verse or a *Yagus*-formula, or a *Sāman*-verse, or a *Gāthā*, or a *Kumbyā*¹, to ensure continuity of the *Vrata*².

¹ A 'Kumbyā,' according to *Sāyana*, is a *Brāhmaṇa*-passage explanatory of some sacrificial precept or rite (*vidhyarthavādāt-makam brāhmaṇa-vākyam*); whilst, on *Aitareyār.* II, 3, 6, 8, the same commentator explains it as a verse (*ṛig-viśeṣa*) conveying some precept of conduct (*ātārasikshārūpa*), such as 'brahma-kāryasyāposānam karma kuru, divā mā svāpsīh,' &c. Cf. Prof. F. Max Müller's transl., *Upanishads* I, p. 230, note 2.

² This is in keeping with the mystic representation of this and

EIGHTH BRĀHMANA.

1. Verily, in the beginning, Pragâpati alone was here. He desired, 'May I exist, may I be generated.' He wearied himself and performed fervid devotions: from him, thus wearied and heated, the three worlds were created—the earth, the air, and the sky.

2. He heated these three worlds, and from them, thus heated, three lights (gyotis) were produced—Agni (the fire), he who blows here (Vāyu), and Sūrya (the sun).

3. He heated these three lights, and from them, thus heated, the three Vedas were produced—the *Rig-veda* from Agni, the *Yagur-veda* from Vāyu, and the *Sāma-veda* from Sūrya.

4. He heated these three Vedas, and from them, thus heated, three luminous essences¹ were pro-

the preceding chapters which represent the scriptural lesson as a sacrifice continued day by day. The student, as the sacrificer, has accordingly, during the sacrifice (that is, during the period of his study of the Vedas, or for life), as it were, to limit his daily food to the drinking of the Vrata-milk, which rule he obeys symbolically by reciting such a verse or formula.

¹ ? Sāyana takes 'sukra' here in the sense of 'flame, light' (vyāhritirūpāni tegāmsi); whilst the St. Petersburg Dict. assigns to it the meaning of 'sap, juice' (Saft, Seim, cf. next note). Ait. Br. V, 32, contains a very similar passage in which the same process of evolution is set forth:—Pragâpati first creates the three worlds, earth, air, and heaven. From them, being heated by him, three lights (gyotis) are produced—Agni from the earth, Vāyu from the air, and Âditya from the sky (or heaven). From them, being heated, the three Vedas are produced—the *Rig-veda* from Agni, the *Yagur-veda* from Vāyu, and the *Sāma-veda* from Âditya. From the Vedas, being heated, three flames (sukra, luminaries, Haug) are produced—Bhûh from the *Rig-veda*, Bhuvah from the *Yagur-*

duced—‘bhûh’ from the *Rig-veda*, ‘bhuvah’ from the *Yagur-veda*, and ‘svar’ from the *Sâma-veda*. And with the *Rig-veda* they then performed the work of the *Hotri* priest, with the *Yagur-veda* the work of the *Adhvaryu*, and with the *Sâma-veda* the work of the *Udgâtri*; and what luminous essence¹ there was in the threefold science, therewith the work of the Brahman priest then proceeded.

5. The gods spake unto Pragâpati, ‘If our sacrifice were to fail in respect of either the *Rik*, or the *Yagus*, or the *Sâman*, whereby should we heal it?’

6. He spake, ‘If (it were to fail) in respect of the *Rik*, ye should take ghee by four ladlings and offer it in the Gârhapatya fire with ‘Bhûh!’ and if in respect of the *Yagus*, ye should take ghee by four ladlings and offer it in the Âgnidhriya—or in the Anvâhâryapaṭana² in the case of a Haviryagña—with ‘Bhuvah!’ and if in respect of the *Sâman*, ye should take ghee by four ladlings and offer it in the Âhavanīya with ‘Svar!’ But if it should not be known (where the mistake has occurred), ye should make offering in the Âhavanīya after utter-

veda, and Svar from the *Sâma-veda*. From these in the same way are produced three sounds (or letters, *varṇa*), â, u and m, which being combined yield the syllable ‘Om.’ Cp. J. Muir, *Original Sanskrit Texts*, vol. iii, p. 4.

¹ Here Sâyana also seems to take ‘sukra’ in the sense of ‘pure, essential part’—*nirmalam rūpam sâratvatâmsah* (!).

² That is, the *Dakṣinâgni*. At the Haviryagña (of which class of sacrifices, performed in the *Prâkinavamsa* hall, the full and new moon serves as model) there is no Âgnidhriya, which is, however, required for the Soma-sacrifice. See the plan in part ii, p. 475.

ing rapidly all (the three sacred words¹): thus one heals the *Rig-veda* by the *Rig-veda*², the *Yagur-veda* by the *Yagur-veda*, and the *Sâma-veda* by the *Sâma-veda*;—even as one would put together joint with joint³, so does he put together (the broken part of the sacrifice) whoever heals it by means of these (three sacred words). But if he heals it in any other way than this, it would be just as if one tried to put together something that is broken with something else that is broken, or as if one were to apply some poison as lotion to a broken part⁴. Let him therefore appoint only one who knows this (to officiate as) his Brahman, and not one who does not know this.

7. As to this they say, 'Seeing that the work of the *Hotri* is performed with the *Rig-veda*, that of the *Adhvaryu* with the *Yagur-veda*, and that of the *Udgâtri* with the *Sâma-veda*, wherewith then is the work of the Brahman (performed)?' Let him reply, 'With that threefold science.'

¹ According to Sâyana, offering would be used with the formula 'Bhûr bhuvah sva, svâh !'

² Viz. by the word 'bhûh,' representing that Veda.

³ Yathâ khalu loka bhagnam hastapâdâdiparva tatsannihitenânyena parvanâ purushâya samdadhyât samsleshayet, evam evânena vyâhrîgîgânena tat tad avedoktam prabhrisham ângam punah sahitam bhavati, Sây.

⁴ ? Or, as if one were to put some fluid into some broken (vessel; or, on some broken part).—yathâ sirnena bhagnena anyak kâirnam bhagnam vastu samdhitset samdhâtum ikkhet; yathâ vâ sirne garam bhaktâvayave garam abhinidadhyât prakdattipeta (? prakshipet), Sây.

NINTH BRĀHMANA.

THE ADĀBHYA-GRAHA.

1. Now, the *Amsu* (cup of Soma)¹, indeed, is no other than *Pragâpati*; and it is the body of this (sacrifice), for *Pragâpati*, indeed, is the body. And the *Adâbhya*² (cup of Soma) is no other than speech. When he draws the *Amsu*-cup, and then the *Adâbhya*-cup, he thereby constructs the body of this (sacrifice) and then establishes that speech therein.

2. And, indeed, the *Amsu* is also the mind, and the *Adâbhya* speech; and the *Amsu* is the out-breathing, and the *Adâbhya* the up-breathing; and the *Amsu* is the eye, and the *Adâbhya* the ear: these two cups they draw for the sake of wholeness and completeness.

3. Now, the gods and the *Asuras*, both of them sprung from *Pragâpati*, were contending,—it was for this very sacrifice, for *Pragâpati*, that they were contending, saying, 'Ours he shall be! ours he shall be!'

4. The gods then went on singing praises, and toiling. They saw this cup of Soma, this *Adâbhya*, and drew it: they seized upon the (three) *Soma*-services, and possessed themselves of the whole sacrifice, and excluded the *Asuras* from the sacrifice.

5. They spake, 'Surely, we have destroyed (*adâbhâma*) them;' whence (the cup is called) *Adâbhya*; —'they have not destroyed (*dabh*) us;' whence also (it is called) *Adâbhya*. And the *Adâbhya*

¹ See IV, 1, 1, 2; 6, 1, 1.

² See part ii, p. 424, note 1.

being speech, this speech is indestructible, whence also it is (called) *Adâbhya*; and, verily, in like manner does he who knows this possess himself of the whole sacrifice of his spiteful enemy, and exclude and shut out his spiteful enemy from all participation in the sacrifice.

6. Into the same vessel with which he draws the *Amsu*¹ he pours water from the *Nigrâbhyâh*², and therein puts those Soma-plants³ with (*Vâg. S. VIII, 47*).—

7. 'Thou art taken with a support': for Agni I take thee, possessed of the *Gâyatri* metre!—the morning-service is of *Gâyatri* nature: he thus possesses himself of the morning-service;—'For Indra I take thee, possessed of the *Trish/ubh* metre!—the midday-service is of *Trish/ubh* nature: he thus possesses himself of the midday-service;—'For the *Visve Devâh* I take thee, possessed of the *Gagati* metre!—the evening-service is of *Gagati* nature: he thus possesses himself of the evening-service;—'The *Anush/ubh* is thy song of praise;—whatever is subsequent to the (three) services⁴, that is of *Anush/ubh* nature: it is thereof he thus possesses

¹ See IV, 6, 1, 3 seq.

² That is, the water originally taken from the *Pranîta* water, and poured into the (square) *Hotri's* cup (made of *Udumbara* wood), to be used for moistening the Soma-plants.

³ For the *Adâbhya* he puts three Soma-plants into the *Hotri's* cup.

⁴ According to *Kâty. XII, 6, 15*, this portion of the formula—the '*upayâma*,' or support—is repeated before the formulas of each of the three plants, hence also before 'For Indra . . .,' and 'For the *Visve Devâh* . . .'

⁵ Viz. the *Ukthyas*, *Shodasin*, &c., in forms of Soma-sacrifice other than the *Agnishôma*.

himself. He does not press this (batch of Soma-plants) lest he should injure speech (or, the voice of the sacrifice), for the press-stone is a thunderbolt, and the Adâbhya is speech.

8. He merely shakes the (cup with the) plants with (Vâg. S. VIII, 48), 'In the flow of the streaming (waters) I waft thee! in the flow of the gurgling I waft thee! in the flow of the jubilant I waft thee! in the flow of the most delightful I waft thee! in the flow of the most sweet I waft thee!' These doubtless are the divine waters: he thus bestows sap on him (Prajâpati, the sacrifice) by means of both the divine and the human waters which there are.

9. 'Thee, the bright, I waft in the bright,'—for he indeed wafts the bright one in the bright:—'in the form of the day, in the rays of the sun;'—he thus wafts it both in the form of the day and in the rays of the sun.

10. [Vâg. S. VIII, 49], 'Mightily shineth the towering form of the ball,'—for mightily indeed shines that towering form of the ball, to wit, yonder burning (sun);—'the bright one, the leader of the bright one, Soma, the leader of Soma,'—he thereby makes that bright (sun) the leader of the bright (Soma), and Soma the leader of the Soma;—'what indestructible, watchful name there is of thine, for that do I take thee;'—for this, to wit, speech, is indeed his (Soma's) indestructible (adâbhya), watchful name: it is thus speech he thereby takes for speech.

11. Then, stepping out (from the Havirdhâna shed¹) to (the Âhavantiya), he offers with, 'O

¹ It is there that the Soma-plants are kept.

(Soma, to this thy Soma, hail!—he thus offers Soma to Soma, and so does not throw speech into the fire¹. He breathes over gold²: the meaning of this is the same as there (on the occasion of the *Amsu*). He gives as many presents (to the priests) as for the *Amsu-graha*.

12. He then puts the Soma-plants back (on the heap of plants in the Havirdhâna) with (Vâg. S. VIII, 50), 'Enter thou gladly Agni's dear seat, O divine Soma!—Enter thou willingly Indra's dear seat, O divine Soma!—As our friend enter thou, O divine Soma, the dear seat of the *Viśve Devâh*!' On that former occasion he possessed himself of the (three) Soma services: he now restores them again, and causes them to be no longer used up; and with them thus restored they perform the sacrifice.

SIXTH ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMANA.

1. Now, *Bhrigu*, the son of *Varuṇa*, deemed himself superior to his father *Varuṇa* in knowledge³. *Varuṇa* became aware of this: 'He deems himself superior to me in knowledge,' he thought.

2. He said, 'Go thou eastward, my boy; and

¹ Though the *Adâbhya-graha*, that is, the water in which the three Soma-plants are contained, and which alone is offered, has been identified with speech, the wording of the formula is such as to protect (the faculty of) speech from being burned in the fire.

² Just as, after the offering of the *Amsu-graha*, he smelled at (or breathed over) a piece of gold fastened to (? or contained in) the spoon, see IV, 6, 1, 6 seqq.

³ On this legend, see Prof. Weber, *Indische Streifen*, I, p. 24 seqq., where the scenes here depicted are taken to be reflections of the popular belief of the time as to the punishments awaiting the guilty in a future existence.

having seen there what thou shalt see, go thou southwards; and having seen there what thou shalt see, go thou westward; and having seen there what thou shalt see, go thou northward; and having seen there what thou shalt see, go thou toward the northern of those two intermediate quarters in front¹, and tell me then what thou shalt see there.'

3. He then went forth from thence eastward, and lo, men were dismembering men², hewing off their limbs one by one, and saying, 'This to thee, this to me!' He said, 'Horrible! woe is me! men here have dismembered men, hewing off their limbs one by one!' They replied, 'Thus, indeed, these dealt with us in yonder world, and so we now deal with them in return.' He said, 'Is there no atonement for this?'—'Yes, there is,' they replied.—'What is it?'—'Thy father knows.'

4. He went forth from thence southward, and lo, men were dismembering men, cutting up their limbs one by one, and saying, 'This to thee, this to me!' He said, 'Horrible! woe is me! men here have dismembered men, cutting up their limbs one by one!' They replied, 'Thus, indeed, these dealt with us in yonder world, and so we now deal with them in return.' He said, 'Is there no atonement for this?'—'Yes, there is,' they replied.—'What is it?'—'Thy father knows.'

¹ That is to say, in the north-easterly direction. Prof. Weber seems to take it in the sense of the northern one of the two regions intermediate between the two (regions) first referred to. This, however, makes no sense.

² I think, with Prof. Delbrück, *Altind. Syntax*, p. 404, that the instrumental 'purushaiḥ' stands in lieu of the accusative; this construction being adopted in order to avoid the double accusative and consequent ambiguity.

5. He went forth from thence westward, and lo, men, sitting still, were being eaten by men, sitting still! He said, 'Horrible! woe is me! men, sitting still, are eating men, sitting still!' They replied, 'Thus, indeed, these have dealt with us in yonder world, and so we now deal with them in return.' He said, 'Is there no atonement for this?'—'Yes, there is,' they replied.—'What is it?'—'Thy father knows.'

6. He went forth from thence northward, and lo, men, crying aloud, were being eaten by men, crying aloud! He said, 'Horrible! woe is me! men, crying aloud, here are eating men, crying aloud!' They replied, 'Thus, indeed, these dealt with us in yonder world, and so we now deal with them in return.' He said, 'Is there no atonement for this?'—'Yes, there is,' they replied.—'What is it?'—'Thy father knows.'

7. He went forth from thence toward the northern of those two intermediate quarters in front, and lo, there were two women, one beautiful, one over-beautiful¹: between them stood a man, black, with yellow eyes, and a staff in his hand. On seeing him, terror seized him, and he went home, and sat down. His father said to him, 'Study thy day's lesson (of scripture): why dost thou not study thy lesson?' He said, 'What am I to study? there is nothing whatever.' Then Varuṇa knew, 'He has indeed seen it!'

8. He spake, 'As to those men whom thou

¹ According to Sāyana 'ati-kalyāṇī' means 'not beautiful (aro-bhāṇā), ugly.' Perhaps its real meaning is 'one of past beauty,' one whose beauty has faded.

sawest in the eastern region being dismembered by men hewing off their limbs one by one, and saying, "This to thee, this to me!" they were the trees: when one puts fire-wood from trees on (the fire) he subdues the trees, and conquers the world of trees.

9. 'And as to those men whom thou sawest in the southern region being dismembered by men cutting up their limbs one by one, and saying, "This to thee, this to me!" they were the cattle: when one makes offering with milk he subdues the cattle, and conquers the world of cattle.

10. 'And as to those men thou sawest in the western region who, whilst sitting still, were being eaten by men sitting still, they were the herbs: when one illumines (the Agnihotra milk) with a straw¹, he subdues the herbs, and conquers the world of herbs.

11. 'And as to those men thou sawest in the northern region who, whilst crying aloud, were being eaten by men crying aloud, they were the waters: when one pours water to (the Agnihotra milk), he subdues the waters, and conquers the world of waters.

12. 'And as to those two women whom thou sawest, one beautiful and one over-beautiful,—the beautiful one is Belief: when one offers the first libation (of the Agnihotra) he subdues Belief, and conquers Belief; and the over-beautiful one is Unbelief: when one offers the second libation, he subdues Unbelief, and conquers Unbelief.

13. 'And as to the black man with yellow eyes,

¹ See II, 3, 1, 16.

who was standing between them with a staff in his hand, he was Wrath: when, having poured water into the spoon, one pours (the libation into the fire), he subdues Wrath, and conquers Wrath; and, verily, whosoever, knowing this, offers the Agnihotra, thereby conquers everything, and subdues everything.'

SECOND BRĀHMANA.

1. Now, Ganaka of Videha once met some Brāhmanas who were travelling about¹, to wit, Svetaketu Āruṇeya, Somasushma Sātya-yagñi, and Yâgñavalkya. He said to them, 'How do ye each of you perform the Agnihotra?'

2. Svetaketu Āruṇeya replied, 'O great king, I make offering, in one another, to two heats, never-failing and overflowing with glory.'—'How is that?' asked the king. 'Well, Āditya (the sun) is heat: to him I make offering in Agni in the evening; and Agni, indeed, is heat: to him I make offering in the morning in Āditya.'—'What becomes of him who offers in this way?' asked the

¹ Or, driving about (and officiating at sacrifices); see XI, 4, 1, 1. For a translation of this story see Max Müller, History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature, p. 421 seqq.

² Ādityam sâyamkâle agnâv anupravishatam guhomi havishâ tarpayâmi: athâgnir api gharmanah, sa prâtar âdityam anupravisati, tam agnim prâtaḥkâle âditye sthitam havishâ prîṇayâmi, Sây.—At II, 3, 1, 36, instead of—'In the evening he offers Sûrya in Agni, and in the morning he offers Agni in Sûrya'—we ought probably to translate,—'In the evening he makes offering to Sûrya in Agni, and in the morning he makes offering to Agni in Sûrya.' The commentary there would admit of either rendering:—Agnir gyotir, iti mantrena guhvad agnâv eva santam sûryam guhoti, tathâ ka gyotiḥśabdaḥ sûryavakanaḥ; prâtaḥkâle tu sûrye santam agnim guhoti.

king. 'He verily becomes never-failing in prosperity and glory, and attains to the fellowship of those two deities, and to an abode in their world.'

3. Then Somasushma Sātyayagñi said, 'I, O king, make offering to light in light.'—'How is that?' asked the king. 'Well, Âditya is light: to him I make offering in Agni in the evening; and Agni, indeed, is light: to him I make offering in Âditya in the morning.'—'What becomes of him who offers in this way?'—'He verily becomes lightsome, and glorious, and prosperous; and attains to the fellowship of those two deities, and to an abode in their world.'

4. Then Yâgñavalkya said, 'When I take out the fire (from the Gârhapatya), it is the Agnihotra itself, I thereby raise¹. Now when Âditya (the sun) sets, all the gods follow him: and when they see that fire taken out by me, they turn back. Having then cleansed the (sacrificial) vessels, and deposited them (on the Vedi), and having milked the Agnihotra cow, I gladden them, when I see them, and when they see me.'—'Thou, O Yâgñavalkya, hast inquired most closely into the nature of the Agnihotra,' said the king; 'I bestow a hundred cows on thee. But not even thou (knowest) either the uprising, or the progress, or the support, or the contentment, or the return, or the renascent world of those two (libations of the Agnihotra).' Thus saying, he mounted his car and drove away.

5. They said, 'Surely, this fellow of a Râganya has outtalked us: come, let us challenge him to

¹ Yad yadâ âhavanīyam gârhapatyâd aham uddharâmi tat tadâ-
nām krâśnam âṅgopâṅgasahitam agnihotram eva udyakṣâmi
udvahâmi, Sây.

a theological disputation!' Yâgñavalkya said, 'We are Brâhmaṇas, and he is a Râganya: if we were to vanquish him, whom should we say we had vanquished? But if he were to vanquish us, people would say of us that a Râganya had vanquished Brâhmaṇas: do not think of this!' They approved of his words. But Yâgñavalkya, mounting his car, drove after (the king). He overtook him, and he (the king) said, 'Is it to know the Agnihotra, Yâgñavalkya?'—'The Agnihotra, O king!' he replied.

6. 'Well, those two libations, when offered, rise upwards: they enter the air, and make the air their offering-fire, the wind their fuel, the sun-motes their pure libation: they satiate the air, and rise upwards therefrom.

7. 'They enter the sky, and make the sky their offering-fire, the sun their fuel, and the moon their pure libation: they satiate the sky, and return from there.

8. 'They enter this (earth), and make this (earth) their offering-fire, the fire their fuel, and the herbs their pure libation: they satiate this (earth), and *rise upwards therefrom.*

9. 'They enter man, and make his mouth their offering-fire, his tongue their fuel, and food their pure libation: they satiate man; and, verily, for him who, knowing this, eats food the Agnihotra comes to be offered. They rise upwards from there.

10. 'They enter woman, and make her lap their offering-fire, her womb the fuel,—for that (womb) is called the bearer, because by it Pragâpati bore creatures,—and the seed their pure libation: they satiate woman; and, verily, for him who, knowing this, approaches his mate, the Agnihotra comes to

be offered. The son who is born therefrom is the⁴ renascent world: this is the Agnihotra, Yāgñavalkya, there is nothing higher than this.' Thus he spoke; and Yāgñavalkya granted him a boon. He said, 'Let mine be the (privilege of) asking questions of thee when I list, Yāgñavalkya!' Thenceforth Ganaka was a Brahman.

THIRD BRĀHMANA.

1. Ganaka of Videha performed a sacrifice accompanied with numerous gifts to the priests. Setting apart a thousand cows, he said, 'He who is the most learned in sacred writ amongst you, O Brāhmaṇas, shall drive away these (cows)¹!'

2. Yāgñavalkya then said, 'This way (drive) them!' They said, 'Art thou really the most learned in sacred writ amongst us, Yāgñavalkya?' He replied, 'Reverence be to him who is most learned in sacred writ! We are but hankering after cows².'

3. They then said (to one another), 'Which of us shall question him?' The shrewd Sākalya said, 'I!' When he (Yāgñavalkya) saw him, he said, 'Have the Brāhmaṇas made of thee a thing for quenching the firebrand, Sākalya?'

4. He said³, 'How many gods are there, Yāgñavalkya?'—'Three hundred and three, and three thousand and three,' he replied.—'Yea, so it is!' he said. 'How many gods are there really, Yāgñavalkya?'—'Thirty-three.'—'Yea, so it is!' he said.

¹ One might also construe,—These are yours, O Brāhmaṇas: he who is the most learned in sacred writ shall drive (them) away. Cf. Delbrück, *Altind. Syntax*, pp. 251, 363.

² Gokāmā eva kevalam vayan smah bhavāmah, Śāy.

³ See XIV, 6, 9, 1 seqq.

'How many gods are there really, Yāgñavalkya?'—
 'Three.'—'Yea, so it is!' he said. 'How many
 gods are there really, Yāgñavalkya?'—'Two.'—
 'Yea, so it is!' he said. 'How many gods are there
 really, Yāgñavalkya?'—'One and a half.'—'Yea, so
 it is!' he said. 'How many gods are there really,
 Yāgñavalkya?'—'One.'—'Yea, so it is!' he said.
 'Who are those three hundred and three, and three
 thousand and three?'

5. He replied, 'These are their powers, but
 thirty-three gods indeed there are.'—'Who are those
 thirty-three?'—'Eight Vasus, eleven Rudras, and
 twelve Ādityas,--that makes thirty-one; and Indra
 and Pragāpati make up the thirty-three.'

6. 'Who are the Vasus?'—'Agni, the Earth, Vāyu
 (the wind), the Air, Āditya (the sun), Heaven, the
 Moon, and the Stars:--these are the Vasus, for these
 cause all this (universe) to abide (vas), and hence
 they are the Vasus.'

7. 'Who are the Rudras?'—'These ten vital airs
 in man, and the self (spirit) is the eleventh: when
 these depart from this mortal body, they cause wail-
 ing (rud), and hence they are the Rudras.'

8. 'Who are the Ādityas?'—'The twelve months
 of the year: these are the Ādityas, for they pass
 whilst laying hold on everything here; and inasmuch
 as they pass whilst laying hold (ā-dā) on everything
 here, they are the Ādityas.'

9. 'Who is Indra, and who Pragāpati?'—'Indra,
 indeed, is thunder', and Pragāpati the sacrifice.'—
 'What is thunder?'—'The thunderbolt.'—'What is
 the sacrifice?'—'Cattle.'

¹ Sāyana takes 'stanayitnu' in the sense of 'thunder-cloud,'—
 stanayitnuḥ stananasilo gargan parganya ity arthaḥ.

10. 'Who are those three gods?' — 'These three worlds, for therein all the gods are contained.' — 'Who are those two gods?' — 'Food and breath (life).' — 'Who is the one and a half?' — 'He who is blowing here' (Vāyu, the wind). — 'Who is the one god?' — 'Breath.'

11. He (Yāgñavalkya) said, 'Thou hast gone on questioning me beyond the deity¹, beyond which there must be no questioning: thou shalt die ere such and such a day, and not even thy bones shall reach thy home!' And so, indeed, did he (Śākalya) die; and robbers carried off his bones², taking them for something else³. Wherefore let no man decry⁴ any one, for even (by) knowing this, he gets the better of him⁵.

¹ XIV, 6, 9, 10, the use of 'adhyardha (having one half over)' in connection with the wind is accounted for by a fanciful etymology, viz. because the wind succeeds (or prevails) over (adhy-ardh) everything here.

² That is, as would seem, Pragāpati. cf. XIV, 6, 6. 1. where Yāgñavalkya tells Gārgi how one world is 'woven and rewoven' on another, the last being that of Pragāpati, which was woven on that of the Brahman; and when Gārgi asks him as to what world the Brahman-world was woven on, he gives the same reply as here, viz. that there must be no questioning beyond that deity (Pragāpati).

Prof. Weber, Ind. Studien, I, p. 21, connects this feature with the belief in a strictly personal existence after death prevailing at the time of the Brāhmaṇa, which involved, as a matter of great moment, the careful collection of the bones after the corpse had been burnt, with a view to their being placed in an earthen vessel and buried. — Cf. Āśval. Gr̥hyas. IV, 5, 1 seqq.; Kāty. Sr. XXI, 3, 7 seqq. See also J. Muir, Orig. Sanskrit Texts, vol. v, p. 316.

³ That is, mistaking them for gold or some other valuable substance, comm., — anyan manyamānāḥ suvarṇādīdravyatvena gānantāḥ.

⁴ Or, 'revile,' as the St. Petersburg Dict. takes it. Possibly, however, 'upa-vad' has here the sense of 'to speak to,' i.e. 'to question or lecture some one.'

⁵ The commentary is partly corrupt and not very intelligible:—

SEVENTH ADHYĀYA. FIRST BRĀHMAṆA.

THE ANIMAL SACRIFICE¹.

1. He performs the animal sacrifice. Now the animal sacrifice means cattle: thus, when he performs the animal sacrifice (*pasubandha*, the binding of the animal), it is in order that he may be possessed of cattle. Let him perform it at his home, thinking, 'I will bind (attach) cattle to my home.' Let him perform it in the season of abundant fodder, thinking, 'I will bind to myself cattle in a season of abundant fodder. For, whilst he is offering, the Sacrificer's fires become worn out, and so does the Sacrificer, along with the worn-out fires, and along with the Sacrificer his house and cattle.

2. And when he performs the animal sacrifice, he renews his fires, and so, along with the renewal of his fires, does the Sacrificer (renew himself), and along with the Sacrificer his house and cattle. And beneficial to life, indeed, is that redemption of his

Yasmād evaṃ tasmād nī gosha kathārūpeṇa tattvanikṛti-m upetya vādi na bhavet, sva (? svayam) apī tu evaṃvit paro bhavati, uktapra-kāreṇa yaś prānasvarūpaṃ gānāti tam vidvāmsam upetya tātparyeṇā savā (? ātmanā) yukto bhaved ity arthaḥ, Sāy. Cf. Weber, Ind. Stud. V, p. 361, note.—Prof. Delbrück, Altind. Syntax, p. 528, takes 'paro bhavati' in the sense of 'he becomes one of the other side, or shore,' i.e. he dies.

¹ Whilst a full account is given in the third *Kāṇḍa* (part ii, p. 162 seqq.) of the animal sacrifice performed on the day before the Soma-sacrifice, the *Brāhmaṇa*, in the last two *adhyāyas* of the present *Kāṇḍa*, touches on certain features in which the performance of the animal sacrifice of the pressing-day differs from that of the preceding day.

² *Viz.* the *Agnihotra* every morning and evening.

own self¹; for whilst he is offering the Sacrificer's fires long for flesh; they set their minds on the Sacrificer and harbour designs on him. In other fires² people do indeed cook any kind of meat, but these (sacrificial fires) have no desire for any other flesh but this (sacrificial animal), and for him to whom they belong.

3. Now, when he performs the animal offering he thereby redeems himself—male by male, for the victim is a male, and the Sacrificer is a male. And this, indeed, to wit, flesh, is the best kind of food: he thus becomes an eater of the best kind of food. Let not a year pass by for him without his offering; for the year means life: it is thus immortal life he thereby confers upon himself.

SECOND BRÂHMĀNA.

1. Now there is one animal sacrifice of the Haviryagñā order³, and another of the order of the Soma-sacrifice. Of the Haviryagñā order is that at which he (the Adhvaryu) brings him fast-food⁴, leads water

¹ That is, the ransoming of one's own life from the sacrificial fires, by offering an animal victim to them in lieu of his own self.

² That is, in ordinary, culinary fires.

³ That is, the offering of the Agnishomīya he-goat which takes place on the day before the press-day (see part ii, p. 162 seqq.); whilst the Savaniya-parubandha is performed on the day of the Soma-sacrifice itself; the victim being slaughtered during the morning-service, and the flesh-portions cooked during the day and offered at the evening-service (cf. part ii, p. 313, note 3; p. 356, note 3).

⁴ That is, milk from the Vratadughâ cow (which may be mixed with some rice or barley; III, 2, 2, 14), the only food to be taken by the Sacrificer during his dīkshâ, or period of initiation—in this case on the day before the Soma-sacrifice.

forward¹, and pours out a jarful of water², and at which (the Sacrificer) strides the Vishvu-strides³ and of the order of the Soma-sacrifice is that (animal sacrifice) at which these (rites) are not performed.

2. Concerning this they ask, 'Is the animal sacrifice an *ishṭi* or a great (Soma-) sacrifice?'-- 'A great sacrifice,' let him say: 'for in that (other) case⁴ thou hast made the animal sacrifice an *ishṭi*, and shattered it.' Thus he should say to him.

3. Its fore-offerings are the morning-service, its after-offerings the evening-service, and its sacrificial cake⁵ the midday-service.

4. Now, some bring up the Dakshinās (presents to the priests) when the omentum has been offered :

¹ That is, the ritual of pressing the butter sacred purposes generally, and especially for an offering when required for pressing the Soma. Cf. the comment on Kāty. VI, 7, 10, where the 'pradhipranyas' is expressly referred to as a necessary element of the performance of the Agnihotric.

For the pouring out of the water on the south side of the Veil, at the end of the Haviryajña, see I, 9, 3, 1 seqq.

The Sacrificer also sips with his hands some of the water poured out, for his own nourishment, and then strides the three Vishvu-strides: cf. I, 9, 3, 8 seqq.

⁴ Viz. in case of the animal sacrifice being performed on the Haviryajña or *Ishṭi* no-tell: which, strictly speaking, would involve the use of no other offering-material except milk, ghee, and dishes made of cereals.

⁵ The usual order of subject and predicate would require the translation, 'the morning-service is its fore-offerings,' which would hardly be in accordance with the author's reasoning.

⁶ For the *paru-puroḍāsa*, III, 8, 3, 1 seqq.

⁷ That is, prior to the offering of the 'animal cake' (*paru-puroḍāsa*), whilst the presentation of the *dakshinās*—a head of cattle, or a milk-cow, or some other desirable object--according to Kāty. VI, 7, 29, should take place after the offering of the *Idā*, which marks the end of the *Paru-puroḍāsa-ishṭi*.

but let him not do so, for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this (Sacrificer) has brought the Dakshizās outside of the vital airs (or, of life), he has not strengthened his vital airs: he will become either blind, or lame, or deaf, or paralyzed on one side;' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

5. Let him perform it in this way: -- when the *Idā* of the cake-offering has been invoked, he should bring up the Dakshizās; for to Indra belongs this vital air in the centre (of the body): by means of the Dakshizās he thus strengthens this vital air in the centre (of the body): and to Indra also belongs the midday Soma-service, and at the midday-service the Dakshizās are brought up: therefore he should bring up the Dakshizās after the invocation of the *Idā* of the cake-offering.

6. Here now they say, 'Seeing that the want of the purificatory bath in the case of the initiated is improper, Adhvaryu, when didst thou initiate him?' Well, let them¹ sustain him till the purificatory bath, -- to wit, the Adhvaryu, the Pratiprasthātṛi, the Hotṛi, the Maitrāvaruṇa, the Brahman, and the

¹ Sâyana supplies 'ganāh,' 'the people:' but possibly the text of the commentary may be corrupt in this place. The author's meaning would seem to be that, as there is no purificatory bath at the end of the animal sacrifice performed on the Soma-day, the Sacrificer's strength is to be kept up by the *Shadḍhotṛi* formula (representing the six priests themselves) which will carry him as far as the purificatory bath at the end of the Soma-sacrifice. I am, however, far from sure that this is the real meaning of the passage. The *Shadḍhotṛi* is performed (at the animal sacrifice of the pressing-day) shortly after the beginning of the ceremonies connected with the Pasubandha, viz. immediately after the 'yūpāhuti,' see part ii, p. 162 seqq.

Âgnidhra, for it is through these that this (formula) is called 'shaddhotri': having rapidly muttered that 'shaddhotri,' he offers, performing either one or five oblations of ghee¹,—'The heaven is his' back, the air his body, O Vâkaspati, by his limbs he gave rise to the sacrifice, by his forms to the earth; by his flawless voice and his flawless tongue to the god-gladdening invocation. Hail!' This, indeed, is his initiation.

7. As to this they say, 'Seeing that the want of the purificatory bath in the case of the initiated is improper, Adhvaryu, when didst thou take him down to the purificatory bath?' Well, when they perform with the heart-spit², that is his purificatory bath.

8. Madhuka Paingya once said, 'Some perform the animal sacrifice without Soma, and others do so with Soma. Now, Soma was in the heavens, and Gâyatri, having become a bird, fetched him; and inasmuch as one of his leaves (parva) was cut off³,

¹ That is, one containing (mentioning), or requiring, six offering-priests, the number required for the animal sacrifice.

² In either case the offering consists of five ladlings of ghee; and in the case of a single oblation, according to Sâyana, a different dipping-spoon (sruva) would seem to be used for each ladling; unless, indeed, 'ekaikena sruvena' mean 'with one sruva-full each.' According to Kâty. VI, 1, 36, the formula is merely 'run through mentally.'

³ Sâyana interprets 'thy back'; and he apparently supplies 'prâpnoti' at the end of the first half-verse, whilst 'airayat' he takes to stand for the second person singular.

⁴ That is, when the heart is roasted on the spit prior to its being offered; see III, 8, 3, 16. This use of the spit is to take the place of the purificatory bath, the technical term of which is 'spit-bath' (sûlâvabhṛt̥ha), the spit being on that occasion buried at the point 'where the dry and the moist meet,' see III, 8, 5, 8-10.

⁵ Either a leaf of Soma or a feather of Gâyatri was cut off by an

that was how the Parṇa-tree arose :¹ such, indeed, is (the passage in) the Brāhmaṇa that is told. And some, it is true, perform the animal sacrifice without Soma, and others with Soma ; for he who makes the sacrificial stake other than of Palāsa wood, performs the animal sacrifice without Soma ; and he who makes the sacrificial stake of Palāsa performs the animal sacrifice with Soma : therefore let him make his sacrificial stake of Palāsa wood.

THIRD BRĀHMANA.

1. Such a (sacrificial stake) as has much substance¹ is not auspicious to cattle, whence he who desires to have cattle should not make such a one his sacrificial stake : but such a one as is of little hardness is auspicious to cattle, whence he who desires to have cattle should make such a one his sacrificial stake.

2. And such a one as, while being crooked, has a top like a spit, is called 'kapoti'² ; and whoever makes such a one his sacrificial stake certainly goes to yonder world before his full measure of life : therefore let no one wishing for long life make such a one his sacrificial stake.

arrow shot by an archer pursuing Gâyatri, and, on its falling to the earth, a Palāsa, or Parṇa, tree (*Butea frondosa*) sprang forth, see III, 3, 4, 10.

¹ That is, as would seem, made of very hard wood. It cannot mean 'pithy,' because at XIII, 4, 4, 9, the Khadira (*acacia catechu*), a tree of very hard, solid wood, is mentioned as 'bahuśāra.'

² Either 'that which has a pigeon (sitting) on it' (*kapotin*, viz. *yūpa*), or, as Sāyana takes it, fem. of 'kapota,'—a female pigeon ; i. e. a tree too much pointed at the top.

3. And such a one as is bent at the top, and bent outwards¹ in the middle, is a type of hunger (poverty); and if any one makes such a one his sacrificial stake, his dependants will certainly be hungry; therefore let no one wishing for food make such a one his sacrificial stake. But such a one as is bent at the top and bent inwards in the middle, is a type of food (prosperity): therefore let him who wishes for food make such a one his sacrificial stake.

FOURTH BRĀHMANA.

1. Now, when he who is about to perform an animal sacrifice makes a stake one cubit long, he thereby gains this (terrestrial) world; and when he makes one two cubits long, he thereby gains the air-world; and when he makes one three cubits long, he thereby gains the heavens; and when he makes one four cubits long, he thereby gains the regions. But, indeed, that sacrificial stake of the (ordinary) animal sacrifice is either three or four cubits long, and one that is above that belongs to the Soma-sacrifice.

2. As to this they say, 'Should he offer the butter-portions or not?' 'Let him offer them,' they say: 'for the two butter-portions are the eyes of the sacrifice, and what were man without eyes?' For as long as a co-sharer is not bought off by (receiving) a share of his own, so long does he consider himself not bought off; but when he is bought off by a share *of his own, then, indeed, he considers himself bought*

¹ That is, as would seem, bent to the opposite side from that towards which the top tends.

off: when the Hotri, on that occasion¹, recites, 'Endow the Rakshas with blood!' he buys him off by (assigning to him) a share of his own.

3. For on that occasion² the anguish of the victim, in being slaughtered, becomes concentrated in the heart, and from the heart (it flows) into the spit. Thus, if they (were to) cook the animal together with the heart, the anguish would again spread all over the animal: let him therefore cook it (the heart) after spitting it from the side on a stick.

4. He makes an underlayer of ghee (in the offering-ladle): this he makes a type of the earth; he then puts a chip of gold thereon: this he makes a type of fire; he then puts the omentum thereon: this he makes a type of the air; he then puts a chip of gold thereon: this he makes a type of the sun; and what (ghee) he pours upon it, that he makes a type of the heavens. This, then, is that five-portioned omentum,—fivefold is the sacrifice, fivefold the sacrificial animal, and five seasons there are in the year: this is why the omentum consists of five portions³.

¹ Viz. at the time when the victim is cut up. Cf. Āit. Br. II, 7, -- 'Endow ye the Rakshas with blood!' he says: for by (assigning to them) the husks and the sweepings of the grain the gods deprived the Rakshas of their share in the Haviryagña, and by the blood (they deprived them) of that in the great (Soma-) sacrifice: thus by saying, 'Endow ye the Rakshas with blood!' he dispossesses the Rakshas of the sacrifice by assigning to them their own share.--- The Adhvaryu then smears a stalk of grass with the blood with, 'Thou art the Rakshas' share,' throws it on the heap of rubbish, and treads on it with, 'Herewith I tread down the Rakshas,' &c. Cf. III, 8, 2, 13-15.

² See III, 8, 5, 8.

³ Or, cuttings; see III, 8, 2, 26.

EIGHTH ADHYĀYA. FIRST BRĀHMAṆA.

1. Verily, even as this cart-wheel, or a potter's wheel, would creak¹ if not steadied, so, indeed, were these worlds unfirm and unsteadied.

2. Pragâpati then bethought him, 'How may these worlds become firm and steadied?' By means of the mountains and rivers he stablished this (earth), by means of the birds and sun-motes² the air, and by means of the clouds and stars the sky.

3. He then exclaimed, 'Wealth!'—now, wealth³ (mahas) means cattle, whence they (cattle) thrive (mahiyante⁴) exceedingly in the homestead of one who possesses many of them; and this (Sacrificer), indeed, possesses many of them, and in his homestead they do thrive exceedingly. Wherefore, if people were either to forcibly drive him from his home, or to bid him go forth let him, after performing the Agni hotra, approach (the fires) saying, 'Wealth'; and he becomes firmly established by offspring and cattle, and is not deprived of his home.

¹ Sâyana apparently takes 'krand' in the sense of 'to shake, or wobble,'—even as a cart-wheel or some other wheel, not standing on the ground for want of the wooden rest (âlambana-kâsh/ha, ? axle-pin) or some other thing, would wobble (hvalet).² What Sâyana means to say, probably, is that the verb used by the author expresses the effect of the action intended.

² Or, sun-beams (rasmi), as Sâyana takes 'marîki'; cf. Weber, Ind. Stud. IX, p. 9, note.

³ Or, joy;—cp. II, 3, 4, 25, which would seem to be the passage referred to in the present paragraph.

⁴ Or, perhaps, 'they enjoy themselves, gambol,' as the St. Petersburg Dict. takes it. Differently, again, Sâyana,—yata ebhih parubhir mahiyate (he thrives?), ata etc mahah.

SECOND BRÂHMANA.

1. Verily, there are four kinds of fire,—the one laid down, the one taken out, the one taken forward, and the one spread (over the three hearths). Now, that which is laid down is this very (terrestrial) world; that which is taken out is the air-world, that which is taken forward is the sky, and that which is spread is the regions. And that which is laid down is Agni, that which is taken out is Vâyu (the wind), that which is taken forward is Âditya (the sun), and that which is spread is Ândramas (the moon). And that which is laid down is the Gârhapatya, that which is taken out is the Âhavanîya, that which is taken forward is the (fire) they lead forth eastwards from the Âhavanîya; and that which is spread is the one they take northwards for the cooking of the victim, and that (used) for the by-offerings¹: let him therefore perform the animal sacrifice on a fire taken forward.

THIRD BRÂHMANA.

1. Here, now, they say, 'To what deity should this victim belong?'—'It should belong to Pragâpati,' they say; 'for it was Pragâpati who first saw it: therefore it is to Pragâpati that this victim should belong.'

2. And they also say, 'To Sûrya (the sun) that victim should belong;—whence it is that cattle are tied up when he (the sun) has set: some of them

¹ See III, 8, 3, 18; 8, 4, 9, with note.

they tie up¹ in their respective stables, and others just flock together :—‘therefore,’ they say, ‘it is to Sūrya that this victim should belong.’

3. And they also say, ‘To Indra and Agni that victim should belong ; for behind these two deities are (all) the other gods : if one who is afflicted sacrifices, those two (gods) sustain him ; and if one sacrifices with (a desire for) abundance², they sustain him ; therefore it is to Indra and Agni that this victim should belong.’

4. The animal sacrifice, indeed, is the breath, whence, as long as one lives, no other has power over his cattle, for they are tied to him.

5. Prajāpati said to Agni, ‘I will perform sacrifice with thee : I will lay hands upon thee (as a victim).’ —‘Nay,’ said he, ‘speak unto man!’ He said to man, ‘I will perform sacrifice with thee : I will lay hands upon thee!’ —‘Nay,’ said he, ‘speak unto the cattle!’ He said to the cattle, ‘I will perform sacrifice with you : I will lay hands upon you.’ —‘Nay,’ said they, ‘speak unto the moon!’ He said to the moon, ‘I will perform sacrifice with thee : I will lay hands upon thee!’ —‘Nay,’ said he, ‘speak unto the sun!’ He said to the sun, ‘I will perform sacrifice with thee : I will lay hands upon thee.’ —‘So be it!’ said he ; ‘but seeing that those liked it not (to be slaughtered), what, then, shall become mine that now is with these³?’ —‘What-

¹ Or, perhaps, cattle are shut up—some of them they shut up.

² ? Thus, apparently, Śāyana :—*Anye tv indrāgnyoh sarvadevatā-prādhānyāt svoddesena yāgam kr̥ṇavatiām kṛmenārtināśak (atv)ān mahatah (?) maharah) prāpakatvāh ka pasur aindrāgna iti.*

³ *Eteshām svabhūtam vastu kim labdham bhavet, Śāy.*

soever thou mayest desire,' he said.—'So be it,' he replied. He laid hands upon him, and this is that animal of his seized (for sacrifice). When slaughtered, it swelled, and by means of those Âpri-hymns, he appeased it¹; and inasmuch as, by means of these Âpri-hymns, he appeased it, they are called Âpris. And let him, for that reason, say of the slaughtered animal, 'Let it lie for a moment!' As great as the world is which he gains by performing the horse-sacrifice, so great a world does he gain by this (animal sacrifice).

6. The (wind of the) eastern region breathed over that (dead victim), saying, 'Breathe forth!' and thereby laid the breath (of the mouth) into it; the southern region breathed over it, saying, 'Breathe through!' and thereby laid the through-breathing into it; the western region breathed over it, saying, 'Breathe off!' and thereby laid the off-breathing into it; the northern region breathed over it, saying, 'Breathe up!' and thereby laid the up-breathing (of the nostrils) into it; the upper region breathed over it, saying, 'Breathe all about!' and thereby laid the circulating breathing into it. Therefore, regarding a new-born son, let him say to five Brâhmanas, before the navel-string has been cut, 'Breathe over him in this way!' But if he should be unable to obtain them he may even

¹ See III, 8, 1, 2 (with note), where 'â-pri' is apparently taken by the Brâhmana in the sense of 'to fill up.'

² The Brâhmanas having been placed in the direction of the respective quarters, the father makes one after the other breathe upon the child,—the first from the east and the child's head, the second from the right side, &c., in sunwise succession; the fifth (whose position is not specified) breathing right down upon the child.

himself breathe over him whilst walking round him; and that (son of his) attains the full measure of life¹ and lives to old age.

7. He (the sun) took unto himself Agni's breath; whence that (fire) does not blaze unless fanned or kindled, for its breath has been taken from it; and, verily, he who knows this takes away the breath of life from his spiteful enemy.

8. He took to himself Vāyu's form; whence people hear it (the wind), as it were, shaking, but do not see it, for its form has been taken from it; and, verily, he who knows this takes away the form of his spiteful enemy.

9. He took to himself man's thought; whence people say, 'The divine thought protect thee, man's thought me!' for his thought has been taken from him; and, verily, he who knows this takes away the thought of his spiteful enemy.

10. He took to himself the eye of cattle; whence, even whilst seeing clearly, as it were, they do not know anything, but only know what it is when they smell at it, for their eye has been taken from them; and, verily, he who knows this takes away the eye of his spiteful enemy.

11. He took to himself the moon's shine; whence of these two (sun and moon), though being similar, the moon shines much less, for its shine has been taken from it; and, verily, he who knows this takes away the shine from his spiteful enemy. And inasmuch as he took these away (ā-dā), he (the sun) is called Āditya.

¹ Viz. a hundred years, Śāy. See X, 2, 6, 9; part iv, introd., p. xxiii.

FOURTH BRĀHMANA.

1. Now, once upon a time, a tiger killed the samrâg-cow¹ of those (who were sacrificing) with (the king of the) Kesin as their Grîhapati². He (the king³) said to his fellow-sacrificers, 'What atonement is there for this?' They replied, 'There is no atonement for this: Khaṇḍika Audbhâri alone knows an atonement for it; but he certainly desires as much as this, and worse than this⁴, (to happen) to thee.'

2. He said, 'Charioteer, put to my horses; I shall drive thither: if so be he will tell me, I shall succeed (with my sacrifice); but if he will have me die, I shall be shattered along with the shattered sacrifice.'

3. Having put to the horses, he drove off, and

¹ That is the cow which supplies the milk for the Pravargya; this milk, when heated, being called 'gharma (heat)' or 'samrâg (sovereign king).' See part ii, p. 104, note 3.

² Grîhapati, or house-lord, master of the house, is the title of the principal sacrificer at a sacrificial session (sattra).—According to Sâyana, the Kesinâh were a race of nobles (râgânah), who, on this occasion, were performing a 'sattra,' and are therefore styled 'householders' (grîhapati);—kesino nâma râgânah satrayâgam anutish/hanto grîhapataya âsuh. Sâyana thus takes 'kesi-grîhapataya,' not as a bahuvrîhi, but as a tatpurusha (karmadhâraya, 'the Kesin householders') which would, however, require the accent on the second member of the compound.—Though all those taking part in a sacrificial session ought to be Brâhmins, the rule does not seem to have been strictly observed. Cf. part iv, introd., p. xxv; Weber, Ind. Stud. X, pp. 25; 94.

³ Grîhapatishu pradhânabhûtaḥ kesirâgah, Sây.

⁴ That is, that even a greater misfortune should happen to thee,—atyantam pâpayuktam govadhâdidoshayuktam ity arthaḥ, Sây.

came thither¹. When he (*Khaṇḍika*) saw² him, he said, 'Seeing that there are those skins on deer, we break their ribs and cook them: the skin of the black antelope is attached to my neck³— is it with thoughts such as these that thou hast dared to drive over to me?''

4. 'Not so,' he replied; 'a tiger has killed my samrāg-cow, reverend sir; if so be thou wilt tell me, I shall succeed; but if thou wilt have me die, I shall be shattered along with the shattered sacrifice.'

5. He said, 'I will take counsel with my counsellors⁴.' Having called them to counsel, he said, 'If I tell him, his race, not mine, will prevail here⁵,

¹ *Sāyana* makes *Khaṇḍika* the subject of this last verb: 'saha ratham avatāḥ sa tasya Khaṇḍikasaṁpāpau yavau: so'pi Khaṇḍikāḥ ke manīḥ śimā, amā, śa vivikṭam (vavikṭam) Kṣatriyaṁ prakhyāyī māṅḍikyaś cāyāḥ ca prathamam vyāḥa. He thus seems *not* to draw here to the meaning of 'to drive,' but to take 'yavau' in the sense of 'the went that or.' It might, of course, also mean 'he sent out.'

² *Sāyana* apparently takes 'prā' khyā' in the sense of 'to refuse admittance to, to reject,' 'abw. sein.'

³ *Sāyana's* comment on this passage is as follows: — 'O Kesin, the skin of the cow that yields the gharmā-milk is worn by thee on the neck: those (i.e. sechli ke) skins, indeed, are (i.e. are seen) on deer; and having broken (i.e. torn to pieces) the "prishā" (i.e. the small-sized does) amongst them we cook them: that black-antelope skin is fastened on my neck.' *Khaṇḍika* having spoken thus, the king said, 'No, this is not my intention.'

⁴ Literally, those that should be consulted, whom further on *Sāyana* calls 'āptāḥ' or trusty men.

⁵ Or, perhaps, the people here (the *Kesins*) will become his, not mine; cf. *Delbrück, Altind. Syntax*, pp. 32; 141 (two different renderings). *Sāyana*, on the other hand, takes 'pragā,' not in the sense either of 'family' or 'people,' but in that of '(sacred) knowledge'—perhaps with reference to the threefold science (the *Veda*) as the

but I shall gain the (other) world; and if I do not tell him, my own race, not his, will prevail here, but he will gain the (other) world.' They said, 'Do not tell him, reverend sir, for, surely, this (the earth) is the Kshatriya's world!'. He replied, 'Nay, I will tell him: there are more nights² up yonder.'

6. And, accordingly, he then said to him,—' Having offered the *Spr̥tis*³, he (the Adhvaryu) should say, "Drive up another (cow)!" and that one should be thy *samr̥g-cow*⁴.—'[Having offered with.] "From the moon I take thy mind, hail!—From the sun I take thine eye, hail!—From the wind I take thy breathings, hail!—From the regions I take thine ear, hail!—From the waters I take thy blood, hail!—From the earth

thousandfold progeny of Vāk, speech (cf. IV. 5. 8. 4; 6. 7. 3; V. 5. 5, 12)—which *Khanda* would thus lose, whilst, by imparting the sacred knowledge, he would gain a seat in heaven.

¹ Sāyana's comment is not very intelligible, the MS. being more than usually corrupt on this last page:—*evamvidhe virodha udbhāvitē sati te āptā ūlūh*, he *bhagavo vidyām nā vośaḥ*, *kshatriyasya loko na bhaviṣyati*; *nanu tavānusayaḥ* (?) *appanage*, domain, following) *sa tasya nāsti*; *ayam vāva ayam eva khalu kshatriyasya lokas tasmāt sauspātrāter* (?) *evam ukte sati sadveśenarāpatra bhavānti* (!) *ato vakshyāmy evety uvāka*.

² That is, days,—by giving up a brief life of earthly power and glory, he gains eternal life.

³ That is, oblations performed with a view of 'taking hold (*spr̥t*)' of something; cf. *Kāty. Śrautas. XXV, 6, 11. 12.*

⁴ The particle 'iti' here causes some difficulty of construction which would be removed by the latter clause being taken as part of the Adhvaryu's speech; though *Kātyāyana*, it is true, does not recognise it as such. Perhaps, however, *Khanda*'s speech ends here, and what follows up to 'that one shall be thy *samr̥g-cow*' has to be taken as a ritualistic insertion, in which case the final 'iti' would have some such meaning as 'having been told thus.'

I take thy body, hail!" let him then say, "Drive up another (cow)!" and that one shall be thy samrâg-cow!' He then departed from thence¹, and, verily, members of the Kesin race are born here even to this day.

¹ Sâyana takes this thus: - Thus instructed, Kesin disappeared (or, passed away, vanished, *utsasida ymashata*) from that region (*tato devit*) - after which there is a lacuna in the MS. Perhaps, however, it is Khazāṅka, rather than Kesin, to which this refers, he (and his race) then, indeed, passed away from that region, whilst the Kesins flourished.

TWELFTH KĀṆḌA.

THE SACRIFICIAL SESSION (SATTRA).

FIRST ADHYĀYA. FIRST BRĀHMAṆA.

1. Verily, this sacrifice is the same as this blowing (wind): it is that¹ they wish to secure who take the vow of initiation for a year. Of them the *Gṛīhapati* is initiated first²; for the *Gṛīhapati* is this (terrestrial) world, and upon this world everything here is established; and so, indeed, are his fellow-sacrificers established in the *Gṛīhapati*: it is thus after they have become established on a firm foundation that they are initiated.

2. He (the *Adhvaryu*) then initiates the *Brahman* (priest). Now the *Brahman* is the moon, and the moon is *Soma*, and plants belong to *Soma*³: he thus connects the plants with this (terrestrial) world. Therefore no other person should be initiated between those two: for, assuredly, were any one else to be initiated between those two, he would separate (tear up) the plants from this (terrestrial) world, and they would be liable to dry up: let therefore no other person be initiated between those two.

3. He then initiates the *Udgâtri*. Now, the *Udgâtri* is the thunder-cloud, and from the thunder-cloud rain is produced: he thus connects the rain

¹ Viz. the wind as the vital air pervading man; see paragraph 11.

² He, as well as the first three priests, is initiated by the *Adhvaryu*.

³ *Soma* is the king of plants, whence these are called 'soma-râgñi,' II, 3, 4, 4; V, 4, 2, 3; *Rig-veda* S. X, 97, 8.

with the plants. Therefore no other person should be initiated between those two; for, assuredly, were any one else to be initiated between those two he would separate the rain from the plants, and (the cloud) would be liable to lack rain: let therefore no other person be initiated between those two.

4. He then initiates the Hotri. Now, the Hotri¹ is Agni in respect of the deity, and speech in respect of the body; and rain is food: he thus connects both Agni (fire) and speech with food. Therefore no other person should be initiated between those two; for, assuredly, were any one else to be initiated between those two, he would separate fire and speech from food, and (people) would be liable to starve: let therefore no other person be initiated between those two.

5. The Pratipraschâtri then initiates the Adhvaryu. Now, the Adhvaryu is the mind, and the Hotri is speech: he thus connects mind and speech with one another. Therefore no other person should be initiated between those two; for, assuredly, were any one else to be initiated between those two, he would separate mind and speech, and (people) would be liable to perish: let therefore no other person be initiated between those two.

6. He then initiates the Brâhmanâkhamsin for the Brahman, for under him the former is. He then initiates the Prastotri for the Udgâtri, for under

¹ Viz. as the offering-priest *kur' êloxân*, he who, by the recitation of his 'invitatory' and 'offering' verses, like Agni, draws the gods to the offering, and causes them to graciously accept it.

² The Adhvaryu is the head of the sacrifice (IV, 1, 5, 16); and, as the mind, he marches in front. See also III, 2, 4, 11. 'Mind goes before Speech (prompting her), "Speak thus! say not this!"'

him the former is. He then initiates the Maitrâ-varuṇa for the Hotṛi, for under him the former is. These four the Pratiprasthâtṛi initiates.

7. The Neshṭṛi then initiates the Pratiprasthâtṛi for the Adhvaryu, for under him the former is. It is after the fitting out¹ of these nine that the others are fitted out; for there are nine vital airs: he thus lays the vital airs into them; and so they attain the full term of life, and so they do not depart this world before their (full) term of life.

8. He then initiates the Potṛi for the Brahman, for under him the former is. He then initiates the Pratihartṛi for the Udgâtṛi, for under him the former is. He then initiates the Akhâvâka for the Hotṛi, for under him the former is. These four the Neshṭṛi initiates.

9. The Unnetṛi then initiates the Neshṭṛi for the Adhvaryu, for under him the former is. He then initiates the Âgnidhra for the Brahman, for under him the former is. He then initiates the Subrahmanyâ for the Udgâtṛi, for under him the former is. He then initiates the Grâvastut for the Hotṛi, for under him the former is. These four the Unnetṛi initiates.

10. Either a Snâtaka², or a Brahmakârin, or some one else who is not initiated, then initiates the Unnetṛi; for they say, 'No pure one should purify.' This is the regular order of initiation³:

¹ Or, after getting them ready, or prepared (kâṇḍi).

² That is, one who has completed his course of theological study (brahmakârya), and has taken the bath (snâta) marking the end of that course, and his return to the bosom of his family. See above, pp. 48-50 (esp. XI, 3, 3, 7).

³ Literally, the initiation in the regular succession.

and, assuredly, only when, knowing this¹, they become initiated, they make ready the sacrifice even whilst being initiated, and along with the getting ready of the sacrifice security of property accrues to the performers of the sacrificial session (Sattrā); and, along with the accruing of security of property to the performers of the session, security of property also accrues to that district in which they perform the sacrifice.

11. Now, the Unmetz is initiated last of these, and when they come out from the purificatory bath it is he that comes out first; for the Unmetz is the vital air: he thus lays vital air into them on both sides; and so they attain the full term of life, and so they do not depart this world before their (full) term of life. This is the regular order of initiation: and, assuredly, he should become initiated only where such as know this become initiated.

SECOND BRĀHMANA.

1. Verily, from out of faith the gods fashioned the initiation, from out of Aditi the opening (sacrifice²), from out of Soma the buying (of Soma-plants), from out of Vishzu the guest-offering, from out of the sun the Pravargya, from out of the Svadhā (*the food of departed ancestors*) the Upa-

¹ That is to say, when they become initiated in accordance with this knowledge.

² For the Prāyanīyeshā of the ordinary Soma-sacrifice, see part ii, p. 47 seqq. For the subsequent ceremonies, cf. the table of contents of the same part. They are here alluded to for the reason that they are essential parts of every day's performance during the year's session.

sads, from out of Agni and Soma the day of fasting, and from out of this world the opening Atirātra¹.

2. From out of the year (they fashioned) the *Katurvimsa* day, from out of the priesthood the *Abhiplava* (*shadāha*), from out of the nobility the *Prishthya* (*shadāha*)², from out of Agni the *Abhigit*, from out of the waters the *Svarasāman* days, from out of the sun the *Vishuvat*. —the *Svarasāman* days have been told;—from out of Indra the *Visvagit*,—the *Prishthya* and *Abhiplava* have been told;—from out of Mitra and Varuṇa the *Go* and

¹ The *Prāyañiya Atirātra* is the first day of the sacrificial session called *Gayimayanam*, the performance of which lasts a year, and includes the following sacrificial periods and days (cf. part ii, p. 427):—

Prāyañiya Atirātra, or opening day.

Katurvimsa day, an *Ukthya*, all the *stotras* of which are in the *katurvimsa-stoma*.

5 months, each consisting of 4 *Abhiplava shadāhas*, and 1 *Prishthya shadāha* (= 30 days).

3 <i>Abhiplavas</i> and 1 <i>Prishthya</i> .	} 28 days which, with the two opening days, complete the sixth month.
<i>Abhigit</i> day (performed with all the <i>stomas</i>).	
3 <i>Svarasāman</i> days.	

VISHUVAT, or *Divākīrtiya* day (*Ekavimsa-stoma*).

3 <i>Svarasāman</i> days.	} 28 days which, with the two concluding days, complete the seventh month.
<i>Visvagit</i> day (performed with all the <i>prishthas</i>).	
1 <i>Prishthya</i> and 3 <i>Abhiplavas</i> .	

4 months, each consisting of 1 *Prishthya shadāha* and four *Abhiplava shadāhas*.

3 <i>Abhiplava shadāhas</i> (18 days).	} 30 days (twelfth month).
1 <i>Goshoma</i> (<i>Agnishoma</i>).	
1 <i>Āyushoma</i> (<i>Ukthya</i>).	
1 <i>Dasarātra</i> (10 days).	

Mahāvratā day (*Agnishoma*).

Udayañiya Atirātra, or concluding day.

² For the difference between these two sacrificial periods of six days, see part iii, introd., p. xxi, note 2.

Âyus¹, from out of the Visve Devâh the Dava-râtra², from out of the regions the Prêshthya-shadaha of the Dasarâtra, from out of these worlds the Khandoma days.

3. From out of the year (they fashioned) the tenth day, from out of Pragâpati the Mahāvata, and from out of the world of heaven the Udayaniya Atirâtra:—such was the birth of the Year; and, verily, whosoever thus knows that birth of the Year becomes more (and more) glorious to (the end of) it, he becomes possessed of a (new) body: he becomes the Year, and, as the Year, he goes to the gods.

THIRD BRĀHMANA.

1. Now, when they are initiated they indeed offer sacrifice to the deities Agni and Vishva: they become the deities Agni and Vishva, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Agni and Vishva.

2. And when they perform the opening sacrifice they indeed offer sacrifice to the deity Aditi: they become the deity Aditi, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Aditi.

3. And when they proceed with the buying (of Soma-plants) they indeed offer sacrifice to the deity Soma: they become the deity Soma, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Soma.

¹ For the differences between the three modes of chanting the Stotras of the Agnishoma and Ukthya Soma-sacrifices—viz. Gyotishoma, Goshoma, Âyushoma—see part iv, p. 287, note 2.

² The Dasarâtra, or central ten days of the Dvâdasâha (twelve days' period), consists of a Prêshthya shadaha, three Khandoma days (of the Ukthya order), and a final (tenth) Atyagnishoma day called Avivâkya.

³ For the Sacrificer as father Time, see part iv, introd., p. xxii.

4. And when they perform the guest-offering they indeed offer sacrifice to the deity Vishnu : they become the deity Vishnu, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Vishnu.

5. And when they perform the Pravargya-offering¹ they indeed offer sacrifice to the deity Āditya : they become the deity Āditya, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Āditya (the sun).

6. And when they enter upon the U'pasads they indeed offer sacrifice to those very deities² who (receive oblations) at the U'pasads : they become those deities, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with those deities.

7. And when they perform the animal sacrifice to Agni and Soma³ they indeed offer sacrifice to the deities Agni and Soma : they become the deities Agni and Soma, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Agni and Soma.

8. And when they perform the opening Atirātra (of the sacrificial session) they indeed offer sacrifice to those deities, the Day and Night⁴ : they become those deities, the Day and Night, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with the Day and Night.

9. And when they enter upon the Katurvimsa day they indeed offer sacrifice to that deity, the Year⁵ : they become that deity, the Year, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with the Year.

¹ See XIV, 1-3 : and part ii, p. 104, note 3.

² Viz. Agni, Soma, and Vishnu ; cf. part ii, p. 105, note 1.

³ See part ii, p. 162 seqq.

⁴ Viz. inasmuch as the Atirātra includes both a day and a night performance.

⁵ Viz. both because this is the real opening day of the year's session, and because Pragāpati (as the Purusha and the Year) is 'katurvimsa' or 'twenty-four-fold' (c. g. VI, 2, 1, 23).

10. And when they enter upon the Abhiplava-shadāha they indeed offer sacrifice to those deities, the Half-months and Months: they become those deities, the Half-months and Months, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with the Half-months and Months.

11. And when they enter upon the *Prishthya*-shadāha they indeed offer sacrifice to those deities, the Seasons: they become those deities, the Seasons, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with the Seasons.

12. And when they enter upon the Abhigit (day) they indeed offer sacrifice to the deity Agni: they become the deity Agni, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Agni.

13. And when they enter upon the Svarasāman (days) they indeed offer sacrifice to that deity, the Waters: they become that deity, the Waters, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with the Waters.

14. And when they enter upon the Vishuvat (day) they indeed offer sacrifice to the deity Āditya: they become the deity Āditya, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Āditya. The Svarasāmans have been told.

15. And when they enter upon the Visvagit (day) they indeed offer sacrifice to the deity Indra: they become the deity Indra, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Indra. The *Prishthya* and Abhiplava (shadāhas) have been told.

16. And when they enter upon (the performance of) the Go and Āyus (stoma)¹ they indeed offer sacrifice to the deities Mitra and Varuna: they

¹ See p. 140, note 1.

become the deities Mitra and Varuṇa, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Mitra and Varuṇa.

17. And when they enter upon the Dasarātra they indeed offer sacrifice to that deity the Visve Devāḥ: they become that deity, the Visve Devāḥ, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with the Visve Devāḥ.

18. And when they enter upon the Prishthya-shaḍaha of the Dasarātra they indeed offer sacrifice to those deities, the Regions: they become those deities, the Regions, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with the Regions.

19. And when they enter upon the Āzandomas they indeed offer sacrifice to those deities, these Worlds: they become those deities, these Worlds, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with these Worlds.

20. And when they enter upon the tenth day (of the Dasarātra) they indeed offer sacrifice to that deity, the Year: they become that deity, the Year, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with the Year.

21. And when they enter upon the Mahāvratā they indeed offer sacrifice to the deity Praṇāpati: they become the deity Praṇāpati, and attain to fellowship and co-existence with Praṇāpati.

22. And when they enter upon the concluding Atirātra (of the sacrificial session), then, indeed, having gained the Year, they establish themselves in the world of heaven. And were any one to ask them, 'To what deity are ye offering sacrifice this day? what deity are ye? with what deity do ye dwell?' let them name of those (deities) the one to whom they may be nearest (in the performance of the Sattra). And,

verily, such (sacrificers) are seated (sad) in the good¹ (place), for they are for ever seated among the good deities; and the others are mere partakers in the sacrificial session²; and if any one were, during a sacrificial session, to speak evil of such initiates as know this, let them say to him, 'We cut thee off from those deities;' and he becomes the worse, and they themselves become the better for it.

23. That same year contains three great rites (mahāvratā):—the great rite on the *Kāturviṃśa* day, the great rite on the *Vishuvat* day, and the great rite³ on the *Mahāvratā* day itself. Now, those of old used, indeed, to enter upon (perform) that (year's session) with three great rites, and they became glorious, truth-speaking, and faithful to their vow; but if nowadays any (sattrins) were to perform it on this wise, they assuredly would crumble away even as a jar of unbaked clay would crumble away if water were poured into it. They (who do so) perform too much: that (object) of theirs is gained by truth, by toil, by fervid devotion, by faith, by sacrifice, and by oblations.

FOURTH BRĀHMAṆA.

1. The Year, indeed, is Man;—the opening (*prāyazya*) *Atirātra* is his feet, for by means of their

¹ Or, in the true, abiding (place)—*sati*.

² That is, those who perform a sacrificial session (*sattra*) without their possessing the esoteric knowledge regarding the several ceremonies, set forth in the preceding paragraphs, are mere '*sattra-sadaḥ*' (i. e. merely 'sitting through the sacrificial session') whilst those possessing that knowledge are '*sati sadaḥ*.'

³ That is, more especially, the chanting of the *Mahāvratā-sāman*, for which see part iv, p. 282, note 5.

feet (men) go forward (prayanti): that part of them which is white is of the form of the day, and that which is black is (of the form) of the night; the nails are of the form of herbs and trees. The *Kāturvimsa* day is the thighs, the *Abhiplava* the breast, and the *Prishthya* the back.

2. The *Abhigīt* is this right arm, the *Svarasāman* days these three (openings of the) vital airs on the right side¹, the *Vishuvat* the head, and the (second period of) *Svarasāman* days these three vital airs on the left side.

3. The *Viśvagīt* is this left arm,—the *Prishthya* and *Abhiplava* have been told,—the *Go* and *Āyus* those downward vital airs; the *Dasarātra* the limbs, the *Mahāvratā* the mouth; and the concluding (*udayantya*) *Atirātra* is the hands, for by means of the hands (men) move (reach) upwards (*udyanti*): that part of them which is white is of the form of the day, and that which is black is of that of the night; and the nails are of the form of the stars. Thus that year is established in respect of the body; and, verily, whosoever thus knows that year to be established in respect of the body, establishes himself by means of offspring and cattle in this, and by immortality in the other, world.

SECOND ADHYĀYA. FIRST BRĀHMANA.

1. Verily, those who become initiated for (a sacrificial session of) a year cross an ocean: the *Prāyanīya Atirātra* is a flight of steps², for it is by means of a flight of steps that one enters (the water); and

¹ Viz. the right eye, ear, and nostril.

² Or, a descent, a passage leading down to a bathing-place.

when they enter on the *Prāyanīya Atirātra* it is just as if they were entering the ocean by a flight of steps.

2. The *Āaturvimsa* day is (in the form of) a foothold, a shallow place¹, such a one as (where the water reaches) either to the arm-pits or to the neck, whence, having rested, they enter² (the deep water). The *Abhiplava* is (a spot) suitable for swimming; and so is the *Prishṭhya* suitable for swimming.

3. The *Abhigit* is a foothold, a shallow place, such a one as (where the water reaches) either to the arm-pits, or to the neck, whence, having rested, they come out (of the water). The first *Svarasāman* is thigh-deep, the second knee-deep, the third knuckle-deep. The *Vishuvat* is a foothold (in the form of) an island. The first (*Svarasāman*) with reversed *Sāmans* is knuckle-deep, the second knee-deep, and the third thigh-deep.

4. The *Visvagit* is a foothold, a shallow place, such a one as (where the water reaches) either to the arm-pits or to the neck, whence, having rested, he enters (the deep water again). The *Prishṭhya* is suitable for swimming, and so is the *Abhiplava*, and so are the *Go* and *Āyus*, and so is the *Dasarātra*.

5. The *Mahāvratā* is a foothold, a shallow place, such a one as (where the water reaches) either to the arm-pits or to the neck, whence, having rested,

¹ *Gādhā* eva *pratishṭhā*,—it may be remarked that this is just the form in which an appositional compound is analyzed by native grammarians, as if it were '*gādhā-pratishṭhā*,' a foothold which is just a ford, a ford-foothold, as indeed it is written in paragraph 9. Cf. p. 66, note 4.

² Or, bathe,—'*prasnāti*,' indeed, would really seem to mean here 'he swims forward.'

they step out (of the water). The Udayantiya (concluding) Atirâtra is a flight of steps, for it is by a flight of steps that people step out (of the water): thus, when they perform the Udayantiya Atirâtra, it is just as if, having entered the sea by a flight of steps, they were to step out of it by a flight of steps.

6. Regarding this they say, 'How many Atirâtras are there in the year, how many Agnishômas, how many Ukthyas, how many Shodasins, how many Shadahas?'—Two Atirâtras, a hundred and six Agnishômas, and two hundred and forty Ukthyas,—thus in the case of those who perform the Svarasâmans as Ukthyas.

7. But in the case of those who perform them as Agnishômas, a hundred and twelve Agnishômas, two hundred and thirty-four Ukthyas, twelve Shodasins, and sixty Shadahas. This, then, is how the year is obtained.

8. There are twelve months in the year, and their vital energy and power are the *Prishthas*; and by performing the *Prishthas* month by month, they obtain, in monthly portions¹, that vital energy of the year.—'And how do they obtain the vital energy of the thirteenth (intercalary) month?' Well, subsequent to the Vishuvat day they perform the Visvaḡit Agnishôma with all the *Prishthas*², and thus indeed they obtain the vital energy of the thirteenth month.

9. Now, concerning this, Svetaketu Âruneya,

¹ Lit., by the month, i.e. by monthly instalments; cf. Tândya-Br. IV, 2, 9.

² On Soma-days with all the (six) *Prishtha*-sâmans, see part iii, introd., p. xxi.

knowing this, once said, 'I am now going to get myself initiated for one year.' His father, looking at him, said, 'Knowest thou, long-lived one, the fording-footholds of the year?'—'I know them,' he replied, for, indeed, he said this as one knowing it.

SECOND BRĀHMAṆA.

1. Here, now, they say, 'Whereby are the Abhiplavas possessed of light (*gyotis*) on both sides',

¹ The difference between the Abhiplava-shadāha and the *Prishthya*-shadāha was thus explained in part iii, introd., p. xxi, note 2:—'In both kinds of shadāha, the *Prishtha*-stotras (at the Mādhyandina-savana) are performed in the ordinary way—viz. either in the *Agnishōma* or the *Ukthya* way (see ib., p. xvi, note 2, as the correct reference is);—but whilst, in the Abhiplava-shadāha, the *Rathantara* and *Br̥hat-sāman* are used for the *Hotri's Prishtha*-stotra on alternate days, the *Prishthya*-shadāha requires a different *Prishtha*-sāman on each of the six days. The two kinds of shadāhas also differ entirely in regard to the sequence of Stomas prescribed for the performance of the Stotras.' It is this difference in the 'sequence of Stomas' which is referred to in our passage. On the six days of the Abhiplava-shadāha, the sequence of Stomas (the first four of which, viz. *Trivṛt*, *Pañkadasa*, *Saptadasa*, and *Ekavimsa*, are only used) varies from day to day in this way: 1. *Gyotishōma*; 2. *Goshōma*; 3. *Āyushōma*; 4. *Goshōma*; 5. *Āyushōma*; 6. *Gyotishōma* (for the difference between these, see part iv, p. 287, note 2). It will thus be seen that the Abhiplava has the '*gyotish* (stoma)' on both sides, on the first and the last days. For the *Hotri's Prishtha*-stotra on these successive days the *Rathantara-sāman* and *Br̥hat-sāman* are used; and, as the *Goshōma* and *Āyushōma* are *Ukthya*-days, the usual practice which requires the *Br̥hat-sāman* for such days, is not followed; just as the final *Gyotishōma* in this case requires the *Br̥hat-sāman*.—As regards the *Prishthya*-shadāha, each successive day requires for its stotras a single Stoma, in the ascending order: *Trivṛt*, *Pañkadasa*, *Saptadasa*, *Ekavimsa*, *Trinava*, *Trayastrimsa*;—a different *Prishtha*-sāman being used for the *Hotri's Prishtha*-

and the *Prishthya* of light on one side only?' Well, the Abhiplavas are these worlds, and these worlds are indeed possessed of light on both sides—through the fire on this side, and through the sun on yonder side; and the *Prishthya* is the seasons, and the seasons are indeed possessed of light on one side only: he who burns yonder (the sun) is their light.

2. Verily, those two wheels of the gods, established on the *Prishthya*¹, revolve crushing² the Sacrificer's evil; and, indeed, if during a sacrificial session any one speaks evil of such initiates as know this, those two wheels of the gods cut off his head: the (chariot-) seat is the Dasarâtra, and the two wheels are the *Prishthya* and Abhiplava.

3. Concerning this they say, 'Seeing that the two wheels (of a cart) are alike, and those stomas unlike, how are those stomas one after another performed alike for him?' Let him reply, 'Thereby, that there are six of the one, and six of the other.'

4. 'Let him make the *Prishthya* and Abhiplava two warps³,' said Paîṅgya; 'let him make their

stotra on each of the six days. Here only the first day has the same Stoma at the beginning, as the *Gyotishstoma*,—whence it has 'gyotis' on one side only.

¹ This '*prishthya*pratishthite' looks rather strange,—perhaps the correct reading is '*prishthya*pratishthite,' 'established on the *prishthya-sâmans*'; unless, indeed, 'pratishthita' has to be understood here to refer to the Abhiplava, as the established, or ordinary, *Shadaha*, which doubtless would make the best sense,—'those two wheels of the gods, the *Prishthya* and the established (Abhiplava-) *shadaha*.'

² Or, as we would rather say, whilst revolving, crush the Sacrificer's evil.

³ ? Or, possibly, two kinds of threads, those of the warp and the woof (or weft), which are combined into one web. The St. Petersh.

Stotras and Sastras run together : ' inasmuch as he makes them run together, these (channels of the) vital airs, though separate from one another, run together, with one and the same aim¹, into a common web ; but were he not to make them run together, the Sacrificer would be liable to perish ; and liable to perish, indeed, is one who is either blind or deaf.

5. The Agnishomas amount to nine in a month² ; —now, there are nine vital airs : it is the vital airs he thus lays into them (the Sacrificers) ; and thus they attain the full term of life, and so, indeed, they do not depart this world before the (full) term of life.

6. And the Ukthyas (amount) to twenty-one ; —now, there are twelve months in the year, five seasons, and three worlds, that makes twenty, and he who burns yonder (the sun) is the twenty-first³,

Dict., on the other hand, takes 'tantra' here in the sense of 'model form, type,'—and, indeed, the one meaning constantly passes into the other. The MS. of the comm. is too corrupt to be of much use.

¹ This is a doubtful rendering of 'ekoti.' Though, doubtless, the juxtaposition of 'ekoti' and 'samānam ūtim' cannot be accidental, the word 'ūti' may probably have a different derivation and meaning in the two occurrences. Cf. Kern, *Saddharmapundarika*, introd., p. xvii ; Journ. of the Pāli Text Society, 1885, pp. 32–38.

² During five complete months of the first half, and four complete months of the second half, of the year four Abhiplava-shadahas and one Prishthya-shadaha are performed. Now, the six days of the Abhiplava-shadaha consist of 1. Agnishoma ; 2–5. Ukthyas ; 6. Agnishoma ; and those of the Prishthya-shadaha of 1. Agnishoma ; 2. 3. Ukthya ; 4. Shodasin ; 5. 6. Ukthya. For the four Abhiplavas and the one Prishthya of each month this, accordingly, gives nine Agnishomas, twenty Ukthyas, and one Shodasin (counted, however, as an Ukthya in paragraphs 6 and 7).

³ The reason why the Sun is so often referred to as the twenty-first or twenty-one-fold, is not easy to discover. Possibly it may be from the fact that the Vishuvat day, or central day of the great session and the longest day of the year, is identified with the Sun,

—that consummation (he attains), and by that consummation he ascends month by month to the world of heaven, and gains, in monthly portions, the world of heaven, and the twenty-one-fold Stoma, and the *Bṛihati* metre¹.

7. The Agnish/tomas amount to thirty-four in a month²—for the obtainment of all the gods; for there are thirty-three gods, and Pragâpati is the thirty-fourth. And there is one Ukthya with the Shodasin (stotra); for the Ukthya means food, and the Shodasin vital strength.

8. By means of that food and vital strength the gods obtained all their desires, and secured all their desires; and in like manner does this (Sacrificer), by means of that food and vital strength, obtain all his desires, and secure all his desires: with a view to that object he who is initiated for (a sacrificial session of) a year should therefore perform the *Prishthya* and *Abhiplava* (-shadahas).

and that this day is flanked on both sides by ten special days which together with the central day, form a special group of twenty-one days. But, on the other hand, it may be exactly the other way, viz. that this central group was made one of twenty-one days because of the already recognised epithet of Âditya as the 'ekavimsa.' Cf. A. Hillebrandt, *Die Sonnenwendfeste in Alt-Indien*, p. 6 seq.

¹ Here the twenty-one Ukthyas are symbolically identified with the twenty-one-versed hymn-form; and the nine Agnish/tomas (of paragraph 5) with the *Bṛihati* metre which consists of four pâdas of nine syllables each.

² This number is evidently arrived at by counting the twenty Ukthyas as Agnish/tomas (hence 9 + 20), and adding thereto five more Agnish/tomas obtained by the calculation referred to in paragraph 12 (see note thereon), according to which the characteristic Stotras and Sastras of the Ukthya make one additional Agnish/oma in every four Ukthyas. The Shodasin, thus, is not taken into account in this calculation.

9. Now, the Âdityas and the Âṅgiras, both of them sprung from Pragâpati, were contending together saying, 'We shall be the first to reach heaven,—we shall be the first!'

10. By means of four Stomas, four *Prish/has*¹, and light (simple) hymn-tunes, the Âdityas sailed across to the heavenly world; and inasmuch as they sailed (*abhi-plu*) to it, they (these six-days' periods) are called *Abhiplava*.

11. By means of all the Stomas, all the *Prish/has*², and heavy (complicated) hymn-tunes, the Âṅgiras, coming after (the gods), as it were³, touched (reached) the heavenly world; and inasmuch as they touched (*sprish*) it, it (this six-days' period) is called *Prish/ha*⁴.

12. It is a six-days' *Abhiplava*, because it consists of six days; or a five-days' *Abhiplava*, because it consists of five days, for the last day is the same as the first; or a four-days' *Abhiplava*, for there are four Stomas (used) in it—the thrice-threefold (*trivrit*), the fifteen-versed, the seventeen-versed, and the twenty-one-versed one; or a three-days' *Abhiplava*, for it is of three orders—*Gyotis*, *Go*, and

¹ Besides the *Rathantara* and *Brîhat*, used on alternate days for the *Hotri's Prish/ha-stotra* at the *Abhiplava*, the *Vâmadevya* and *Kâleya-sâmans*, used on each day for the *Maitrâvaruna's* and *Akshâvâka's Prish/ha-stotras*, seem to be counted here as making up the four *Prish/ha-sâmans* of the *Abhiplava-shadaha*. For the four Stomas, see p. 148, note.

² See *ib.*, and part iii, introd., p. xxi.

³ The 'iva' would seem here (as, indeed, pretty frequently) to have the meaning of 'eva,' 'indeed,' thus—coming considerably after (the gods). Cf. *Ait.-Brâhm.* IV, 17, 5, where the Âṅgiras are said to have reached heaven sixty years after the Âdityas.

⁴ This etymology is of course not meant to be taken seriously, the word '*prish/ha*' being derived from '*prish/ha*,' 'back' (XII, 1, 4, 1).

Āyus¹; or a two-days' Abhiplava, for there are two Sāmans (used) in it—the *Brīhat* and the *Rathantara*²; or a one-day's Abhiplava, for it is performed with the Stomas of a one-day's (Soma-sacrifice³). Twelve Stotras and twelve Sastras of the four Ukthyas are in excess⁴—they make a seventh Agnishōma, and thus the Agnishōmas amount to seven.

13. Now, Proti Kausāmbeya⁵ Kausurubindi dwelt with Uddālaka Āruṇi as a religious student. The teacher asked him, 'My son, how many days did thy father⁶ consider that there are in the year?'

14. 'Ten,' he replied.—'Ten, indeed,' he said; 'for the *Virāḡ* consists of ten syllables, and the sacrifice is of *Virāḡ* nature;—

15. But how many are there really?'—'Nine,' he replied.—'Nine, indeed,' he said; 'for there are nine vital airs, and by means of the vital airs the sacrifice is performed;—

¹ See p. 148, note; part iv, p. 287, note 2.

² These two principal *Prishtha*-sāmans are used on alternate days of the Abhiplava-shadaha for the first (or *Hotri*'s) *Prishtha*-stotra at the midday-service.

³ Viz. with the four Stomas used at the ordinary Agnishōma-sacrifice.

⁴ Whilst the Agnishōma includes twelve Stotras and twelve Sastras, the Ukthya-sacrifice has three additional (Uktha-) Stotras and Sastras, which in the four Ukthya days of the Abhiplava-shadaha make up another twelve chants and twelve recitations.

⁵ That is, either a descendant of Kusāmba; or, as Harisvāmin takes it, a native of the city Kausāmbī; cf. Weber, Ind. Stud. I, p. 193.—*Prakṛish/abhūpati-kosāmbīnivāsi-kusurabinda-kapatyam*; MS. comm.

⁶ Harisvāmin applies to the father the epithet *mahayāgyaka*, or performer of the great sacrifices.

16. But how many are there really ?—‘ Eight,’ he replied.—‘ Eight, indeed,’ he said ; ‘ for the Gâyatri consists of eight syllables, and the sacrifice is of Gâyatri nature ;—

17. But how many are there really ?—‘ Seven,’ he replied.—‘ Seven, indeed,’ he said ; ‘ for there are seven metres (successively) increasing by four (syllables), and by means of the metres the sacrifice is performed ;—

18. But how many are there really ?—‘ Six,’ he replied.—‘ Six, indeed,’ he said ; ‘ six seasons make up a year, and the sacrifice is the year ; and one and the same day are those two, the opening and concluding (Atirâtra¹) :

19. But how many are there really ?—‘ Five,’ he replied.—‘ Five, indeed,’ he said ; ‘ the sacrifice is fivefold : the sacrificial animal is fivefold² ; there are five seasons in the year, and the sacrifice is the year ;

¹ In the scheme of the Gayâtrî-ayana, given above (p. 139, note 1), there is one day in excess of the year, viz. either the central Vishuvat day (XII, 2, 3, 6) or the final Atirâtra ; but by making this latter day identical with the opening Atirâtra, Uddâlaka would seem to bring the whole within the compass of one year of six seasons. In the next paragraph, on the other hand, the same result is obtained by the identification of the second and the last but one days of the session. Another, and perhaps more probable, explanation of Uddâlaka’s calculation would, however, be this. In the scheme of the sacrificial session there occur, as not included in the different sacrificial groups or periods (the shadahas, svarasâmans, &c.), seven special days—the opening and final Atirâtras, the *Katurvimsa* and *Mahāvratā* days, and the *Abhigit*, *Vishuvat*, and *Virvagit* days. These seven days he here successively reduces to six and five days. The further reduction of this number by the identification of the *Prishthya* and *Abhiplava*, as well as of the *Svarasâman* days, requires no explanation. Cf., however, the *Addenda*.

² For the ‘pânkta’ nature of the sacrifice, see III, 1, 4, 19. 20 ; XIII, 2, 5, 1, for the five kinds of sacrificial animals, VI, 1, 2, 32 seqq.

and one and the same day are those two, the *Katurvimsa* and the *Mahâvrata* ;—

20. But how many are there really ?—‘ Four,’ he replied.—‘ Four, indeed,’ he said ; ‘ animals are four-footed, and animals constitute a sacrifice ; and one and the same day are those two, the *Prishthya* and *Abhiplava* ;—

21. But how many are there really ?—‘ Three,’ he replied.—‘ Three, indeed,’ he said ; ‘ there are three metres, three worlds ; and the (Soma-) sacrifice consists of three services ; and one and the same day are those two, the *Abhigit* and *Visvagit* ;—

22. But how many are there really ?—‘ Two,’ he replied.—‘ Two, indeed,’ he said ; ‘ for man is two-footed, and the sacrifice is man ; and one and the same day are the *Svarasâmans* ;—

23. But how many are there really ?—‘ One,’ he replied.—‘ A day, indeed,’ he said ; ‘ the whole year is just that day after day :—this is the mystic import of the year ; and, verily, whosoever thus knows this mystic import¹ of the year grows more (and more) glorious up to (the end of) it ; he becomes possessed of a (new) body, he becomes the year, and in the shape of the year he joins the gods.

THIRD BRÂHMANA.

I. That year, doubtless, amounts to a *Brîhatî*.—there are two *shadahas* (12) of winning days² ; the

¹ Prof. Oldenberg (*Zeitschr. d. Deutschen Morg. Ges.*, vol. 50, p. 460) takes ‘upanishad’ in the sense of ‘worship’—‘this is the worship to be offered to the year.’ Perhaps ‘meditation’ might be the more appropriate rendering :—‘this is the form in which the year should be meditated upon.’ Cf. X, 4, 5, 1 ; 5, 1, 1.

² The term ‘*ârkshyat*’ is apparently a future participle of ‘*â-arg*,’

two, *Prishthya* and *Abhiplava* (12); the *Go* and *Âyus*, and the *Dasarâtra* (ten days)—that makes thirty-six; for the *Brîhati* consists of thirty six syllables, and by means of the *Brîhati* the gods strove to reach heaven, and by the *Brîhati* they did gain heaven; and in like manner does this one, by means of the *Brîhati*, now strive to reach heaven, and thereby gain heaven; he who knows this secures for himself whatever wish there is in the *Brîhati*.

2. And as to the *Katurvimsa* day, it is the same as either the seventh or the ninth (day) of the *Dasarâtra*¹. From out of the *Abhiplava* the *Prishthya* is formed, from the *Prishthya* the *Abhigit*,

hence 'calculated to procure, or win'. The *Ait-Br.* has 'Akshyat' instead. The two *Shadahas* (or periods of six days), here counted as such days, would seem to include the six *Svarasâman* days, and the special named days scattered over the session (the opening and concluding *Atikâtra* being apparently counted as one).

¹ *Katurvimsa* day is one in which the *Katurvimsa*-stoma, or twenty-four-fold hymn-form, is exclusively used in the chanting of the *Stotras*. The one usually denoted by that term is the second day of the *Gavâm ayatanam*. In the *Dasarâtra*, or ten-days' period, there is, however, likewise a day in which the *Katurvimsa*-stoma is used exclusively. That period consists of a *Prishthya-shadaha* (six days), three *Khandoma* days, and a final *Atyagnishoma*, called *Avivâkya*. The three *Khandoma* days (i.e. days fashioned after metres) have assigned to them as their exclusive *Stomas* the twenty-four-fold, the forty-four-fold, and the forty-eight-fold hymn-forms respectively; the first of them, or the seventh day of the *Dasarâtra*, being thus a *Katurvimsa* day. But in the second half of the year's session the regular order of the days of the minor sacrificial periods—the *Shadahas* and *Svarasâmans*—is reversed, the last day being performed first; and according to this paragraph the same is optionally to be the case in regard to the three *Khandoma* days, the *Katurvimsa* day being taken either first or last (see, however, *parag.* 9). Cf. also *Haug, Ait-Br., Transl.*, p. 347, note (where, in l. 3, read *Dasarâtra* instead of *Dvâdarâha*).

from the Abhigit the Svarasāmans, from the Svara-sāmans the Vishuvat, from the Vishuvat the Svara-sāmans, from the Svarasāmans the Visvagit, from the Visvagit the *Prishthya*¹, from the *Prishthya* the Abhiplava, from the Abhiplava the Go and Āyus, and from the Go and Āyus the Dasarātra.

3. And that Mahāvratā is a winning-day, for its Stoma is the *Pañkavimsa*, and a metre does not collapse from (excess or deficiency of) a syllable—neither from one nor from two (syllables); neither does a Stoma by (an excess of) one hymn-verse².

4. Prior to the Vishuvat they perform first the Abhiplava, and afterwards the *Prishthya*, for the Abhiplava represents the sons, and the *Prishthya* the father; whence in early life the sons subsist on (the resources of) their father. Subsequent to the Vishuvat they perform first the *Prishthya*, and afterwards the Abhiplava; whence in later life the father subsists on (the resources of) his sons; and, verily, the sons of him who thus knows this subsist on him in early life, and he subsists on his sons in later life.

5. Here, now, they ask, 'If he were to die after entering on the *Katurvimsa* day, how does he become one who has not merely (uttered) the Āgur-

¹ Here, the order of Abhiplava and *Prishthya* followed in the first half of the year is reversed.

² The author apparently claims for the *pañkavimsa*-stoma, or twenty-five-versed hymn-form, the same efficacy as for the *katurvimsa*-stoma, the hymn-form of what is practically the first day of the sacrificial session (cf. *Tāndya*-Br. XXV, 1, 1, where it is called *Katurvimsam prāyanīyam*), and which by the number of its stotriyā-verses, being that of the half-months in the course of the year (24), is supposed to represent the whole year; cf. *Ait.-Br.* IV, 12.

formula¹?' Let him say, 'In that they then perform the Opening Atirātra, thereby (he becomes such a one).'

6. As to this they ask, 'Seeing that there are the twelve months of the year, and that one day, to wit, the Vishuvat, is in excess, does this belong to those (months) that go before or to those that follow?' Let him say, 'Both to those that go before and to those that follow;' for the Vishuvat is the body (trunk) of the year, and the months are its limbs; and where the body is there are (or, that includes) also the limbs, and where the limbs are there is also the body; and neither is the body in excess of the limbs, nor are the limbs in excess of the body: and thus, indeed, that (day) belongs both to those (months) that go before and to those that follow.

7. But, indeed, that year is a great eagle: the six months which they perform prior to the Vishuvat are the one wing, and those which they perform subsequent thereto are the other; and the Vishuvat is the body; and, indeed, where the body is there are also the wings, and where the wings are there is also the body; for neither is the body in excess of the wings, nor are the wings in excess of the body: and thus, indeed, that (day) belongs both to those (months) that go before and to those that follow.

8. As to this they ask, 'Seeing that for six months prior to the Vishuvat they perform Stomas tending upwards, and for six (months) reversed

¹ See XI, 2, 5, 10 with note. The *Katurvimsa* day is, as it were, a promise on the part of the Sacrificer to perform the sacrificial session; whilst the *Prāyaṇīya* Atirātra not only represents the actual entering on the performance, but, as it were, implies the *Udayaniya* Atirātra (XII, 2, 2, 18).

(Stomas), how are these latter performed so as to tend upwards?' Let him say, 'In that they perform that Dasarâtra as one with upward tending Stomas, thereby they do so.' Now, the Mahâvrata did not yield itself to the gods saying, 'How is it, ye have performed the Vishuvat with upward tending hymns, and me with reversed ones?'

9. The gods said, 'Try ye to find out that sacrificial performance which has upward tending Stomas, and whereby we may gain this.' They saw that Dasarâtra with upward tending Stomas after the manner of the year: what *Prishthya*-shadaha there is in it that is the seasons, the (three) *Khandomas* are these worlds, and the tenth day is the year. Thereby they gained this (Mahâvrata), and it yielded itself to them; and, verily, the Mahâvrata yields itself to him who so knows this.

10. And in this way, indeed, there is an ascent of days:—by means of the Opening Atirâtra they ascend the concluding Atirâtra, by means of the *Katurvimsa* the Mahâvrata, by means of an *Abhiplava* a subsequent *Abhiplava*, by means of a *Prishthya* a subsequent *Prishthya*, by means of the *Abhigit* the *Visvagit*, by means of the *Svarasâmans* the subsequent *Svarasâmans*—but that one day is not ascended, to wit, the Vishuvat: and, verily, he who thus knows this ascends to (the state of) one more glorious, and no one inferior to him ascends (to be equal) to him.

11. And in this way, indeed, there is a descent of days:—the *Prâyantya* Atirâtra descends to the *Katurvimsa* day, the *Katurvimsa* day to the *Abhiplava*, the *Abhiplava* to the *Prishthya*, the *Prishthya* to the *Abhigit*, the *Abhigit* to the *Svarasâmans*, the

Svarasâmans to the Vishuvat, the Vishuvat to the Svarasâmans, the Svarasâmans to the Visvagî, the Visvagî to the *Prishthya*, the *Prishthya* to the Abhiplava, the Abhiplava to the Go and Âyus, the Go and Âyus to the Dasarâtra, the Dasarâtra to the Mahâvrata, the Mahâvrata to the Udayaniya Atirâtra, the Udayaniya Atirâtra to the world of heaven, to the resting-place, to plenty.

12. Such, indeed, are the wilds and ravines of sacrifice, and they (take) hundreds upon hundreds of days' carriage-drives; and if any venture into them without knowledge, then hunger or thirst, evil-doers and fiends harass them, even as fiends would harass foolish men wandering in a wild forest; but if those who know this do so, they pass from one duty to another, as from one stream into another, and from one safe place to another, and obtain well-being, the world of heaven.

13. As to this they say, 'How many onward, and how many backward days are there?' Well, those which are performed once each are onward days, and those which are performed repeatedly are backward days: let him at least consider these¹ as backward ones, for in accordance with the course of the *Shadahas* he himself moves.

FOURTH BRÂHMANA.

1. The Year, indeed, is Man;—the *Prâyanîya* Atirâtra is his breath, for by means of the breath men go forward (*prayanti*); and the *Ârambhanîya*

¹ Or, 'meditate upon these' (? worship these); see p. 155, note 1.

(opening) day¹ is speech, for by means of speech men undertake (ārabh) whatever they do undertake.

2. The Abhiplava-shaḍaha is this right hand². This (little finger) is the first day thereof,—this (upper joint³) is its morning-service, this (middle joint) its midday-service, and this (lower joint) its evening-service: it is in place of the Gāyatri, whence this (little finger) is the shortest of these (fingers).

3. This (third finger) is the second day,—this (upper joint) is its morning-service, this (middle joint) its midday-service, and this (lower joint) its evening-service: it is in place of the Trishṭubh, whence this (third finger) is larger than this (little finger).

4. This (middle finger) is the third day,—this is its morning-service, this its midday-service, and this its evening-service: it is in place of the Gagati, whence this is the largest of these (fingers).

5. This (fore-finger) is the fourth day,—this is its morning-service, this its midday-service, and this its evening-service: it is in place of the Virāḡ; for the Virāḡ is food, whence this (fore-finger) is the most food-eating⁴ of these (fingers).

¹ Hereby the *Kāturvimsa* day would seem to be meant (as, indeed, it is also taken by Harisvāmin), see p. 157, note 3; p. 167, note 1.

² The right hand is apparently taken here to represent the four limbs—the arms and legs. In Sanskrit the terms for finger and toe (as for thumb and large toe) are the same.

³ That is, apparently the bone joining the palm; though possibly the one forming the extreme end of the finger may be intended. But inasmuch as the morning-service has five stotras as compared with the two of the evening-service the former might be expected to be compared with the larger of the two bones.

⁴ Prof. Weber, *Pratigṛhasūtra*, p. 97, refers to II. 4, 2, 18, where, in his opinion, the passage '(thus) they ladle out (food) for men'

6. This (thumb) is the fifth day,—this is its morning-service, this its midday-service, and this its evening-service: it is in place of the Pañkti, for the Pañkti is broad¹, as it were, whence this (thumb) is the broadest of these (fingers).

7. This (right arm) is the sixth day,—this (fore-arm²) is its morning-service, this (upper arm) its midday-service, and this (shoulder-blade) its evening-service: it is in place of the Atikāandas, whence this (arm) is larger than those (fingers). That day is a Gâyatri one, whence this shoulder-blade is the shortest: this Abhiplava-shaḍaha (extends) in this, in this, in this, and in this, direction³; and the *Prishṭhya* is the body (trunk).

8. Now, as to this, Pañgya, knowing this, said, 'The Abhiplavas leap about (plavante), as it were, and the *Prishṭhya* stands (sthā)⁴, as it were; for

points to the fore-finger as the finger used most in eating. This is not improbable, though *Siyama*, as well as the commentary on *Kīty*. IV. 1, 10, it is true, does not interpret the passage in that way.

¹ Viz. inasmuch as it consists of five pādas, instead of three, as in the case of the Gâyatri, or four, as in that of the others.

² Thus also *Harisvāmin* hardly, the palm; but see p. 161, note 3).

³ Viz. in the direction of the two arms and the two legs. There being, in nine of the twelve months of the year, four Abhiplavas and one *Prishṭhya* in each month, the two kinds of six-days' performances as regards numbers, certainly offer an analogy to the limbs and the body.

⁴ This etymological quibble seems to refer to the fact that the Abhiplavas are performed before the *Prishṭhya* in the first half of the year, and after them in the second half; though the same feature of change might, vice versâ, be applied to the *Prishṭhya*. It is possible, however, that the author may refer here to other characteristic features of the two kinds of *Shaḍahas*; and it cannot be denied that the Abhiplava days are liable to much greater change than the *Prishṭhya* days. The constant change in the

this (man) leaps about, as it were, with his limbs, and he stands, as it were, with his body.'

9. The *Trivṛit* (stoma) is its head, whence that (head) is threefold (*trivṛit*)—skin, bone, and brain.

10. The *Pañkadasa* (fifteen-versed hymn-form) is the neck-joints,—for there are fourteen of these (joints)¹, and the vital force is the fifteenth; hence by means of that (neck), though being small, man bears a heavy burden: therefore the *Pañkadasa* is the neck.

11. The *Saptadasa* (seventeen-versed hymn-form) is the chest; for there are eight 'gatru'² on the one

'sequence of stomas' in the *Abhiplava* has already been referred to (p. 148, note 1). Another source of change, in the *Abhiplava*, is the peculiar way in which the *Brahmasāman* (or *Brāhmanākṣamsin's Prīsthastotra*) is varied from day to day. For, whilst during the months preceding the *Vishuvat* day, the *Abhivarta* tune is used for this stotra on each day, but with different *Pragātha* verses chanted thereto from day to day; during the second half of the year, on the other hand, the same text (*Sāma-veda* II, 806) is used throughout, whilst its tune is varied from day to day. Since in the second half of the year the order of the days of the *Prīsthyā-shadālia* must be reversed, whilst this is optionally the case as regards the *Abhiplava*, this feature can hardly be referred to here.

¹ The 'grīvāḥ' thus, as far as man is concerned, include not only the seven cervical vertebrae, but also the upper seven dorsal vertebrae, being those to which the true ribs are attached. It is worth remarking, however, that in large birds such as the eagle, the neck itself consists of fourteen vertebrae.

² The *St. Petersburg Dict.* takes 'gatru' in the sense of 'tuberculae costarum,' or tubercles of the ribs, the projections near the 'heads' of the ribs where these join the spinal vertebrae; this conjectural meaning being based on VIII, 6, 2, 10, where the ribs are said to be fastened on both sides to the *kikasāḥ* (?sternum) and the *gatravaḥ*. Against this conjecture (as the *Dict.* remarks) is the circumstance that the *gatravaḥ* are here said to form part of the chest; and, besides, the tubercle of the rib is not a separate bone, and would hardly be likely to be specially singled out in this

side, and eight on the other, and the chest itself is the seventeenth : therefore the Saptadasa (stoma) is the chest.

12. The *Ekaviṃśa* (twenty-one-versed hymn-form) is the belly, for inside the belly there are twenty 'kuntāpa',¹ and the belly is the twenty-first : therefore the *Ekaviṃśa* (stoma) is the belly.

13. The *Triṇava* (thrice nine-versed hymn-form) is the two sides (pârsva):—there are thirteen ribs (parsu) on the one side, and thirteen on the other², and the sides make up the thrice ninth : therefore the *Triṇava* (stoma) is the two sides.

14. The *Trayastrīṃśa* (thirty-three-versed hymn-

connection. Perhaps, therefore, the *gatravaḥ* may rather be the costal cartilages connecting the seven true ribs with the sternum, and along with them the ligament of the collar bone where it joins the sternum : in which case the former passage would have to be understood in the sense that the ribs are on both (the right and left) sides fastened on to the costal cartilages and (through them) to the 'kikasâḥ' the breast-bone, or rather the several bones or plates of which the sternum consists, as articulated with the clavicles and the true ribs. It is possible, however, that 'kikasâḥ' may have a different meaning from that here assigned to it, in acc. with the St. Petersburg Dict. Indeed, one would expect the 'kikasâḥ' and 'gatravaḥ' on different ends of the ribs.

¹ The meaning of 'kuntâpa' is likewise doubtful. The St. Petersburg Dict. suggests that certain glands may be intended thereby; but possibly the term may refer to the transverse processes (forming spikes, so to speak; cf. *kunta*) on both sides of the ten lower spinal vertebrae below the vertebra of the last true rib,—i.e. of the five lower dorsal, and the five lumbar vertebrae.

² The clavicle, or collar-bone, would thus seem to be classed along with the ribs. Rather peculiar, in the anatomical phraseology employed in the *Brâhmana*, is the collateral use of 'parsu' and 'prishî' for 'rib'; and it is by no means clear that there is no distinction between the two terms. In connection with the *Retaśik* bricks the term 'prishî' seems to be invariably used,—cf. VIII, 6, 2, 7, as against ib. paragraph 10 (parsu).

form) is the spine ; for there are thirty-two 'karū-kara'¹ of that (spine), and the spine itself is the thirty-third : therefore the Trayastrimśa (stoma) is the spine.

15. The Abhigīt is the same as this right ear ; the first Svarasāman is this white part of the eye, the second the black part, and the third the pupil ; the Vishuvat is the nose, the first backward Svarasāman is this pupil of the eye, the second the black, and the third the white part thereof.

16. The Visvagīt is the same as this left ear ; the Prishṭhya and Abhiplava have been told ; the Go and Āyus are the two downward breathings which there are (in the body) ; the Dasarātra the limbs, the Mahāvratā is the mouth ; and the Udayantiya Atirātra the up-breathing, for by means of the up-breathing men go upwards (ud-yanti) : such is that year as established in the body ; and, verily, whosoever thus knows that year as established in the body, establishes himself by offspring and cattle in this, and by immortality in the other, world.

THIRD ADHYĀYA. FIRST BRĀHMAṆA.

1. 'Seeing that all this threefold universe keeps passing into one another, O Bālāki, how is it that

¹ This is another term, the exact meaning of which is somewhat doubtful. The St. Petersburg Dict. takes 'karūkara' to refer to the vertebrae of the spinal column ; and if that be correct, the term would seem to include not only the twenty-four joints of the backbone down to the last lumbar vertebrae, but also the appendages of the spine, viz. the sacrum with its five, and the coccyx with its four pieces : this, it is true, yields thirty-three, instead of thirty-two, parts, but it seems scarcely possible in any other way—as, for instance, by taking into account the epiphysial plates between the vertebrae, along with the latter—to arrive at a total approximating that mentioned in the above passage.

these,—to wit, the sacrifice, Man, and Pragâpati,—do not exceed one another?

2. Seeing that the upward Stomas follow the sacrifice, fitting themselves by repetitions with Sāmans, how do they enter man, and how do they become united with the vital airs?

3. The Prāyanīya Atirātra, the Kāturvīṃsa day, the four Abhiplavas, and the Prishthya (shadaha):—how do these enter man, and how do they become united with the vital airs?

4. Fitted out with the Abhigit, the Svarasāmans join the Vishuvat on both sides:—how do these enter man, and how do they become united with the vital airs?

5. Setting out with the Trivṛt, fitted out with the (Pañkadasa and) Saptadasa, and ending with the Trayastriṃsa: with (the series of stomas increasing) successively by four (syllables¹):—how do these enter man, and how do they become united with the vital airs?

6. The Trivṛt is his head, the Pañkadasa his neck; and the chest, they say, corresponds to the Saptadasa: the Ekavīṃsa they make the belly, and

¹ The Trivṛt, or nine-versed stoma, is, however, followed by the Pañkadasa, or fifteen-versed stoma—the thirteen-versed form not being in ordinary use—and these are succeeded by the Saptadasa (17), Ekavīṃsa (21), &c. Possibly, however, this last sentence may refer to the six days of the Prishthya-shadaha for which the stomas consisting of 9, 15, 17, 21, 27 and 33 verses respectively are used. On the Abhigit day, each of the first four stomas is used in succession for three stotras, the four hymn-forms thus making up the twelve stotras of the Agnishoma. On the Virvagit day, on the other hand, only three stomas are used—the Trivṛt, Pañkadasa, and Saptadasa—four stotras being assigned to each of these three hymn-forms.

the two sides, by means of the *Trinava*, correspond to the ribs.

7. The *Abhiplavas* on both sides (of the *Vishuvat*) are his arms, the *Prishthya* is the back,—so say the wise ; and his spine the *Brāhmaṇas* fashion in the year by means of the (series of stomas increasing) successively by four (syllables).

8. The *Abhigit* and *Visvagit* are his ears ; and his eyes, they say, correspond to the *Svarasāmans* ; the *Vishuvat*, they say, is the breath of the nostrils ; and the *Go* and *Āyus* are those two downward breathings.

9. The *Dasarātra* they call his limbs, and the *Mahāvratā* the *Brāhmaṇas* fashion (arrange) so as to be the mouth in the year¹ ;—the Supreme Self has entered into that year endowed with all stomas and with all *sāmans* : having fashioned him alike with the body, the sage is seated free from pain² on the heights of the ruddy one (the sun).

¹ Though the *Mahāvratā* day is actually the last day but one of the one year's sacrificial session, whilst the *Katurvimsa* day is the second, these two days mark really the end and beginning of the year, whilst the nominal first and last days of the sessional performance may be considered as consisting of mere preliminary and concluding (winding-up) rites. The above symbolic identification of the *Mahāvratā* with the mouth of *Agni-Pragāpati*, the Year, might thus lead one to suppose (as, indeed, is done by Prof. Hillebrandt, *Die Sonnenwende in Alt-Indien*, p. 11) that if two such annual sessions were immediately to succeed each other, the *Mahāvratā* and *Katurvimsa* would fall on one and the same day. The *Mahāvratā*, representing (at least symbolically) the winter-solstice, would thus mark both the end and the beginning of two successive solar periods.

² Literally, with unborn pain (or, with the pain of one unborn).

SECOND BRĀHMANA.

1. The Year is Man¹ :—‘Man’ is one unit, and year’ is another, and these now are one and the same ;—there are in the year the two, day and night, and in man there are these two breathings, and these now are one and the same ;—there are three seasons in the year, and these three breathings in man, and these (two) now are one and the same ;— ‘ samvatsara (year) ’ consists of four syllables, and so does ‘ yagamāna (sacrificer),’ and these (two) now are one and the same ;—there are five seasons in the year, and these five breathings in man, and these (two) now are one and the same ;—there are six seasons in the year, and these six breathings in man, and these (two) now are one and the same ;—there are seven seasons in the year, and these seven breathings in man, and these (two) now are one and the same.

2. There are twelve months in the year, and these twelve breathings in man, and these (two) now are one and the same ;—there are thirteen months in the (leap-) year, and these thirteen (channels of) breathings in man, the navel being the thirteenth, and these (two) now are one and the same ;—there are twenty-four half-months in the year, and this man is twenty-four-fold, being possessed of twenty fingers and toes and four limbs ; and these (two) now are one and the same ;—there are twenty-six half-months in the (leap-) year, and this man is twenty-six-fold, the two feet making up the twenty-six ; and these (two) now are one and the same.

3. And there are three hundred and sixty nights

¹ Or, the man, identified with the Sacrificer.

in the year, and three hundred and sixty bones in man, and these (two) now are one and the same ;—there are three hundred and sixty days in the year, and three hundred and sixty parts of marrow in man, and these (two) now are one and the same.

4. And there are seven hundred and twenty days and nights in the year, and seven hundred and twenty bones and parts of marrow in man, and these (two) now are one and the same.

5. And there are ten thousand and eight hundred 'muhūrta' in the year ; and fifteen times as many 'kshipras' as there are 'muhūrta' ; and fifteen times as many 'etarhi' as there are 'kshipra' ; and fifteen times as many 'idāni' as there are 'etarhi' ; and fifteen times as many breathings as there are 'idāni' ; and as many spirations as there are breathings¹ ; and as many twinklings of the eye as there are spirations, and as many hair-pits as there are twinklings of the eye, and as many sweat-pores as there are hair-pits ; and as many sweat-pores as there are so many drops it rains.

6. Concerning this, Vârkali, knowing this, once said, 'I know the raining cloud extending over the whole earth, and the drops of that rain.'

7. It is with reference thereto that this verse is told,—Whilst whirling round, be it standing, or sitting, or even sleeping, how often does man, otherwise than from toil, breathe and expel the air regularly² by day and night ?

8. And in answer thereto this verse is told,—

¹ Perhaps the distinction between 'prāṇa' and 'ana' here is that of out-breathing and in-breathing.

² Or, uniformly (gleichmässig). The St. Petersburg Dict. here takes 'samena' in the sense of 'exactly.'

Inasmuch as man is what is measured a hundred hundred and eight hundred, therefore they say :—so often does man regularly¹ breathe and expel the air by day and night.

THIRD BRĀHMANA.

1. The gods were once performing the initiation ceremony for a (sacrificial session) of a thousand years. When five hundred years had passed with them, everything here was worn out—to wit, Stomas, and *Prishthas*, and metres (texts).

2. The gods then perceived that unexhausted element of the sacrifice, and by means of that unexhausted element they obtained what success there was in the Veda; and, verily, for him who thus knows this, the Vedas are unexhausted, and the work of the officiating priests is performed with the unexhausted threefold science.

3. Now, this is that unexhausted element of the sacrifice :—o-*srāvaya*, *astu srausha*!, *yaga*, *ye yagâmahe*, and *vausha*!². In these five utterances there are seventeen syllables :—o-*srāvaya* consists of four syllables, *astu srausha*! of four syllables, *yaga* of two syllables, *ye yagâmahe* of five syllables;

4. And the *Vasha*!-call consists of two syllables. This is the seventeenfold *Pragâpati*, as established in the deity and in the body, and, verily, whosoever thus knows that seventeenfold *Pragâpati*, as established in the deity and in the body, establishes himself by offspring and cattle in this, and by immortality in the other, world.

¹ See note 2 on p. 169.

² For these sacrificial calls, see part i, p. 142, note 2.

5. The gods then spake, 'Find ye out that sacrificial performance which shall be a substitute for one of a thousand years; for what man is equal thereto that he could get through with (a performance of) a thousand years?'

6. They saw the Visvagit with all the *Prishthas*¹ to be an accelerated Soma-feast in lieu of the *Prishthya-shadaha*, for there are those (same) Stomas, those *Prishthas*, and those metres.

7. They saw the *Prishthya-shadaha* to be an accelerated Soma-feast in lieu of the *Dvâdasâha*, for there are those (same) Stomas, those *Prishthas*, and those metres².

8. They saw the *Dvâdasâha* to be an accelerated Soma-feast in lieu of (a session of) a year³, for there are those (same) Stomas, those *Prishthas*, and those metres.

9. They saw the (session of a) year to be an accelerated Soma-feast in lieu of the *Tâpaskita*⁴, for there are those (same) Stomas, those *Prishthas*, and those metres.

10. They saw the *Tâpaskita* to be an accelerated Soma-feast in lieu of the thousand years' performance, for there are those (same) Stomas, those *Prishthas*, and those metres.

11. He passes a year with the rites of initiation,

¹ For such a day's performance with all the *Prishtha-sâmans*, see part iii, introd., p. xx seq.

² The *Dvâdasâha*, or twelve-days' performance, includes a *Prishthya-shadaha* as its second to seventh days.

³ The one year's session includes a *Dasarâtra*, or ten-days' performance, forming the central part of the *Dvâdasâha*; and the first and last days of the latter being, like those of the *Gavâm ayanam*, a *prâyaniya* and *udayaniya Atiratra*.

⁴ See part iv, p. 317, note 2.

a year with the Upasads, and a year with the pressings of Soma.

12. When he passes a year with the rites of initiation he thereby secures for himself the first part of the performance of a thousand years; and when he passes a year with the Upasads he thereby secures for himself the central part of the performance of a thousand years; and when he passes a year with the pressings he thereby secures for himself the last part of the performance of a thousand years.

13. Twelve months he passes with the rites of initiation, twelve with the Upasads, and twelve with the pressings, that makes thirty-six. Now the *Bṛīhati* (metre) consists of thirty-six syllables, and by means of the *Bṛīhati* the gods strove to reach heaven, and by means of the *Bṛīhati* they indeed attained heaven; and in like manner does this one, by means of the *Bṛīhati*, now strive to reach heaven, and by means of the *Bṛīhati* he indeed attains heaven; and whatever object of desire there is in the *Bṛīhati*, that he thereby secures for himself.

14. But, indeed, there is that triad that is performed together,—the Agni (fire-altar), the Arkyā, and the Mahad Uktham (great litany). When he passes a year with the rites of initiation, and a year with the Upasads, thereby the Agni and the Arka are secured by him; and when he passes a year with the pressings, thereby the Mahad Uktham is secured by him: this, then, to wit, the *Tāpasāita*, is the substitute for the performance of a thousand years, and this, to wit, the *Tāpasāita*, conduces to the procreation of creatures.

FOURTH BRĀHMANA.

1. Pragāpati once upon a time spake unto Purusha

Nārāyaṇa, 'Offer sacrifice! offer sacrifice!' He spake, 'Verily, thou sayest to me, "Offer sacrifice! offer sacrifice!" and thrice have I offered sacrifice: by the morning-service the Vasus went forth, by the midday-service the Rudras, and by the evening-service the Ādityas; now I have but the offering-place¹, and on the offering-place I am sitting.'

2. He spake, 'Offer yet sacrifice! I will tell thee such a thing that thy hymns shall be strung as a pearl on a thread, or a thread through a pearl.'

3. And he spake thus unto him, 'At the (chanting of the) Bahishpavamāna, at the morning-service, thou shalt hold on to the Udgātṛi from behind, saying, "Thou art a falcon formed of the Gâyatri metre, - I hold on to thee: bear me unto well-being!"

4. 'And at the midday Pavamāna thou shalt hold on to the Udgātṛi from behind, saying, "Thou art an eagle formed of the Trishubh metre,—I hold on to thee: bear me unto well-being!"

5. 'And at the Ārbhava-pavamāna, at the evening-service, thou shalt hold on to the Udgātṛi from behind, saying, "Thou art a Ribhu formed of the Gagat metre,—I hold on to thee: bear me unto well-being!"

6. 'And at the close of each pressing thou shalt mutter, "In me be light, in me might, in me glory, in me everything!"'

7. Now light, indeed, is this (terrestrial) world, might the air-world, glory the heavens, and what other worlds there are, they are everything (else).

8. And light, indeed, is Agni, might Vāyu (the

¹ ? That is to say, those deities have taken possession of everything else. Cf. J. Muir, Orig. Sansk. Texts, vol. v, p. 377.

wind), glory Âditya (the sun), and what other gods there are they are everything.

9. And light, indeed, is the *Rig-veda*, might the *Yagur-veda*, glory the *Sâma-veda*, and what other Vedas there are they are everything.

10. And light, indeed, is speech, might the breath, glory the eye, and what other vital airs there are they are everything.

11. Let him know this: 'All the worlds have I placed within mine own self, and mine own self have I placed within all the worlds; all the gods have I placed within mine own self, and mine own self have I placed within all the gods; all the Vedas have I placed within mine own self, and mine own self have I placed within all the Vedas; all the vital airs have I placed within mine own self, and mine own self have I placed within the vital airs.' For imperishable, indeed, are the worlds, imperishable the gods, imperishable the Vedas, imperishable the vital airs, imperishable is the All: and, verily, whosoever thus knows this, passes from the imperishable unto the imperishable, conquers recurrent death, and attains the full measure of life.

FIFTH BRÂHMANA.

1. Of old, indeed, they were wont to seize this victim as one dedicated to *Savitri*, but now they seize it as one dedicated to *Pragâpati*, saying, '*Savitri*, in truth, is the same as *Pragâpati*.' It is therefore after having thrown together the (sacrificial) fires that they ought to perform this (animal) sacrifice on the *Grihapati*'s own fires, thinking, 'May we also have a share in this tail (of the victim) wherewith they are now making offering together to the wives

(of the gods).’ They then perform the initiation ceremony whenever they choose.

2. Here now they say, ‘They ought to have separate hearths; and if one of the initiates were to be taken ill let him stay aside offering the Agnihotra. If he gets well again, they bring (the fires) together and invite him to join them; but if he dies they burn him by his own (three) fires¹ without an (ordinary) fire for (burning) a dead body; and the other sacrificers sit (through the sacrificial session);—such at least is the performance in the case of one who keeps up his sacrificial fires; but, indeed, they have their hearths in common: the theological explication of this is the same as in regard to the preparatory ceremonial².’

3. They also say, ‘Seeing that the performers of a year’s session become initiated for a year, how does their Agnihotra come to be uninterrupted?’ Let him reply, ‘By the fast-milk.’

4. They also say, ‘Seeing that the performers of a year’s session become initiated for a year, how does their Full-moon oblation come to be uninterrupted?’ Let him reply, ‘By the ghee and the sacrificial cake.’

5. They also say, ‘Seeing that the performers of a year’s session become initiated for a year, how does their New-moon oblation come to be uninterrupted?’ Let him reply, ‘By the sour curds and the cake.’

¹ This is the regular procedure in accordance with Gr̥hya rites, cf. Āsv. Gr̥hy. IV, 2, 11–13; whilst Pāraskara, III, 10, 11, merely says, ‘with the domestic fire they burn him who has established his (sacred) fire.’

² For the ‘puraskarava,’ see part iv, p. 337, note 2.

6. They also say, 'Seeing that the performers of a year's session become initiated for a year, how does their offering to the Fathers come to be uninterrupted?' Let him reply, 'By the Aupāsana (rites).'

7. They also say, 'Seeing that the performers of a year's session become initiated for a year, how does their offering of firstfruits come to be uninterrupted?' Let him reply, 'By Soma's pap².'

8. They also say, 'Seeing that the performers of a year's session become initiated for a year, how do their seasonal offerings come to be uninterrupted?' Let him reply, 'By the Payasyâ³.'

9. They also say, 'Seeing that the performers of a year's session become initiated for a year, how does their animal sacrifice come to be uninterrupted?' Let him reply, 'By the animal and the cake⁴.'

10. They also say, 'Seeing that the performers of a year's session become initiated for a year, how

Viz., by those rites which, during the time for which the Sacrificer is initiated, may be performed on his domestic (Āvasathya or Aupāsana) fire. Cf. Kāty. I, 1, 20-21. Whether the domestic offerings to the Fathers (śābhlha) may be so performed seems doubtful.

² For the ordinary performance of the Āgrayaneshū, see part i, p. 370 seqq. According to Kāty. IV, 6, 11 seq. the performance of a year's satura is to mark the time at which the offering of firstfruits would otherwise have taken place by using new grain for his vrata-food, as well as for two Rauhiza cakes at the Upasads, and for the cakes offered in the animal sacrifice of the Soma days; and that a pap of new syāmāka (millet) is to be offered to Soma at the proper season (during the rains, or autumn), and a pap of bamboo grain in summer.

³ For this dish, made by the addition of fresh boiled milk to sour curds, see part i, p. 381, note 2.

⁴ That is, by the animal offered on each successive Soma day, and the (savanfya) purodāśas offered subsequently; cf. IV, 2, 5, 14-22.

does their Soma come to be uninterrupted?' Let him reply, 'By the Soma-pressings.'

11. It is thus that these sacrificial rites enter into the year; and, verily, whosoever thus knows this entering of the sacrificial rites into the year becomes a sharer in the heavenly world.

12. In the year there should be known to be uniformity:—one Atirâtra they perform before, and one after, the Vishuvat; fifty-three Agnishômas they perform before, and fifty-three after, the Vishuvat; one hundred and twenty Ukthya days they perform before, and one hundred and twenty after, the Vishuvat, —thus at least in the case of those who perform the Svarasâmans as Ukthyas.

13. And in the case of those who (perform them) as Agnishômas, they perform fifty-six Agnishômas before, and fifty-six after, the Vishuvat; one hundred and seventeen Ukthya days they perform before, and one hundred and seventeen after, the Vishuvat; six Shodâsins they perform before, and six after, the Vishuvat; thirty Shadâhas¹ they perform before, and thirty after, the Vishuvat:—such, then, is the uniformity of that (year), and, verily, he who thus knows this goes through a course of sacrificial performance which is uniform, and not ineffectual, neither defective nor redundant.

¹ That is, counting the Prâyaniya Atirâtra, Katurvimsa, Abhigait, and three Svarasâmans as one six-days' performance, before the Vishuvat; and the three Svarasâmans, the Visvagait, Goshôma, Âyushôma, four days of the Dasarâtra (preceding and succeeding the central Shadâha), the Mahâvrata, and Udayaniya Atirâtra as two six-days' performances after the Vishuvat.

FOURTH ADHYÂVA. FIRST BRÂHMANA.

EXPIATORY CEREMONIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE AGNIHOTRA.

1. Verily, they who perform an Agnihotra enter upon a long sacrificial session:-- the Agnihotra, indeed, is a sacrificial session ensuring death in old age¹, for people are set free from it either by old age or by death.

2. Here, now, they say, 'If either a team (yukta) were to drive through, or people were to walk to and fro, between the two fires of such a one performing an Agnihotra, and (being thus) a performer of a long session, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' He may, indeed, perform an expiation, and also offer an ishî; but let him disregard it, for he who lays down his two fires doubtless spreads himself all over these worlds.

3. His Gârhapatya is this (terrestrial) world, his Anvâhâryapaçana (or southern fire) the air-world, and his Âhavanîya yonder (heavenly) world; and freely, indeed, birds, both combined (yukta) and single, pass to and fro in these worlds; and even if a whole crowd were to pass through between his fires, let him know that no harm and no hurt *will come to him*.

4. 'But, surely, there are three unclean animals, a vicious boar, a vicious ram², and a dog: if any

¹ Literally, as would seem, 'old-age-deathed' (garâmarya), or perhaps, 'having old age for its extreme limit (maryâ).' The author apparently takes it in the former sense, though interpreting the compound in his own way.

² According to Molesworth's Dictionary, 'edakâ' and 'memdhâ,' n Marâñhi, mean both 'ram,' but the former 'is ordinarily under-

one of these runs about between (the fires) whilst the Agnihotra-offering is put on (the fire), what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Well, some poke out the ashes from the Gârhapatya, and keep throwing it down from the Âhavanīya, with this verse (*Rig-veda* I, 22, 17), 'Here Vishṇu strode',¹ saying, 'Vishṇu is the sacrifice: by the sacrifice we thus continue the sacrifice, and with ashes we bestrew its track.' But let him not do it in this way, for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely this (priest) has scattered about² the Sacrificer's ashes: he will soon scatter his last ashes, the chief's household will be wailing,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

5. Let him proceed in this way:—Having taken either a bowl of water, or a pot of water, let him go on pouring it out from in front of the Gârhapatya up to the Âhavanīya, with this verse, 'Here Vishṇu strode;' for Vishṇu being the sacrifice, he thus continues the sacrifice by the sacrifice; and whatever is injured or unpropitiated in the sacrifice, for all that the water is the means of propitiation, and by water, as a means of propitiation, he thus propitiates it. Such, then, is the rite performed in that case.

6. They also say, 'If any one's Agnihotra (milk) were to be spilled whilst he gets it milked, what rite and what expiation would there be in that

stood of a ram trained to fight, or suffered to live long enough to obtain horns.'

¹ See III, 5, 3, 13.

² ? Or, thrown in (viz. into the pot, or urn). According to *Âsv. Gr̥hy.* IV, 5, 1 seqq., it is, however, only the bones which are collected and placed in the urn.

case?' Having touched (the spilled milk) with the (formula of) expiation for spilling, and poured water on it, let him make offering with what (milk) is left. But if the bowl were to be turned upside down, or if it were to break, let him touch (the spilled milk) with the (formula of) expiation, and, having poured water on it, let him make offering with what other (milk) he can procure.

7. Now, in case there should be a spilling (of milk), let him touch it with, 'It hath been shed, it hath been implanted: birth hath ensued:' for when (seed) is shed then it is implanted: and when it is implanted then birth takes place. And, indeed, this (earth) is a womb, and the milk is seed: he thus implants seed in that womb, and forthwith that shed seed of him who so knows this is born forth. And, indeed, it rains from yonder sky, and herbs and trees are produced here on earth; and seed flows from man and animals, and therefrom everything here is generated: let him therefore know that abundant production has accrued unto him, that he will be multiplied in offspring and cattle, and that he will become more prosperous.

8. And in case there should be a breaking (of the vessel), let him pour out a bowlful or potful of water, and, indeed, whatever is injured or unpropitiated in the sacrifice, for all that water is the means of propitiation, and by water, as a means of propitiation, he thus propitiates it. He does so with these utterances, 'Bhûr bhuvaḥ svar (earth, air, sky):' for these utterances are all-expiatory':

¹ Or, perhaps,—these (great) utterances are used with the 'Sarraṇāyaskittam' (libation for expiating every mistake). According to Kāty. XXV, 1, 10, five verses are also to be muttered after

he thus makes expiation with all this (universe). Having collected the potsherds let him throw them to where the ashes have been removed. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

9. They also say, 'If any one's Agnihotra-cow were to lie down whilst being milked, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Well, some make her get up by means of the Yagus-formula, 'The divine Aditi hath risen,'—Aditi, doubtless, is this (earth):—thus saying, 'It is this (earth) we thus raise for him;—'life hath she bestowed upon the lord of sacrifice,' thereby saying, 'It is life we thus bestow upon this (Sacrificer);—'giving unto Indra his share,' thereby saying, 'It is Indra's power we thus bestow upon him;—'and unto Mitra and Varuṇa,'—Mitra and Varuṇa, doubtless, are the in-breathing and the up-breathing:—thus saying, 'It is the in and up-breathing we thus bestow upon him.' At this offering he should present that (cow) to a Brāhmaṇa whom he does not intend to visit¹—(thus they enjoin) saying, 'It was, indeed, after perceiving the Sacrificer's suffering and evil that she lay down: we thus fasten the suffering and evil on this (Brāhmaṇa) :.'

the libation with the three 'great words.' As regards the libation itself, it is to be made in the Gārhapatya with 'bhûh,' in the Dakshinâgni with 'bhuvah,' and in the Âhavanīya with 'Svah'; cf. *ib.* sūtra 13.

¹ The commentators on Kāty. XXV, 1, 15 are divided in interpretation of this passage; whilst some take it in the above (and most natural) sense, others take it to mean—to the Brāhmaṇa who will not be coming again to his (the Sacrificer's) house.

² The reason why a Brāhmaṇ is thus chosen to serve as scape-goat doubtless is that his holy nature is supposed to be proof against such evil influences (cf. Weber, *Ind. Stud.* X, p. 64).

10. But on this point Yâgñavalkya said, 'Surely, the cow turns from them as from faithless ones, and they smite the offering with trouble; let him rather do it in this way:—Let him make her get up by pushing her with a staff.' And, indeed, as in the case of one driving about here, his horse, or his mule, or his ox yoked (to the car) might become weary, and, by its being urged forward by means of a staff or a goad, he completes the way he wishes to accomplish, even so does he, by that (cow) being urged forward by means of a staff or a goad, attain that heavenly world which he desires to reach.

11. And Āruṇi, indeed, said, 'His Agnihotra-cow, assuredly, is the sky, her calf is that blowing (wind), and the Agnihotra-vessel is this (earth). And, verily, the Agnihotra-cow of him who knows this does not perish, for how could yonder (sky) perish? Neither does the calf of the Agnihotra-cow of him who knows this perish, for how could that (wind) perish? Nor does the Agnihotra-vessel of him who knows this break to pieces, for how could this (earth) break to pieces? The rain-cloud showers down blessings: let him therefore think, "Unable to bear my glory and greatness, she (the Agnihotra-cow) has lain down: I shall become more glorious." Let him keep her for himself¹: he thereby takes glory (prosperity) to himself,'—thus spake Āruṇi. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

12. They also say, 'If any one's Agnihotra-cow were to low whilst he gets it milked, what rite and

¹ That is, he is not to give the cow to a Brāhmaṇa; cf. Kāty. XXV, 1, 17.

what expiation would there be in that case?' Let him pluck a bunch of grass and make her eat thereof. This is the rite performed in that case.

SECOND BRĀHMAṆA.

1. They also say, 'If any one's Agnihotra-cow were to milk blood, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Let him say 'Disperse!' and having made a stirring-spoon, let him order the Anvāhārya-paśana fire to be enclosed; and having boiled that (blood) thereon, let him silently offer it in an undefined (indistinct) way¹, for Pragâpati is undefined, and the Agnihotra is sacred to Pragâpati; and the undefined also means everything: he thus makes atonement with everything. At this offering he should give that (cow) to a Brāhmaṇa whom he does not intend to visit; for, indeed, she who milks blood milks it after perceiving the Sacrificer's suffering and evil: he thus fastens that suffering and evil upon this (Brāhmaṇa). Let him then make offering with what other milk he can procure: by that which is not unsound he thus throws out what is unsound in the sacrifice. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

2. They also say, 'If any one's Agnihotra-milk were to become impure² whilst being milked, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Now some think that it should be offered

¹ According to Kāty. XXV, 2, 2, it is to be offered on hot cinders of the Dakṣiṇāgni with the formula, 'To Rudra, hail!'

² Or rather, perhaps,—if anything impure were to get (to fall) into any one's Agnihotra-milk; cf. XII, 4, 2, 9.

(arguing that) it is ready (for offering), and it would be improper if it were not offered; and that the gods have no loathing for anything. But the gods have indeed loathings;—let him rather proceed in the following way. Having shifted some hot cinders from the Gārhapatya, let him silently pour that (milk) on these hot cinders. He then pours water thereon, and thus secures (âp) it by means of the water (âp). Let him then make offering with what other (milk) he can procure. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

3. They also say, 'If any one's Agnihotra-milk were to become impure after he has had it milked what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Let him shift back the coals which were shifted away (from the fire) and on which he was going to put (the Agnihotra-milk); and let him then pour it silently on these hot cinders. He then pours water thereon, and secures it by means of the water. Let him then make offering with what other (milk) he can procure.

4. They also say, 'If any one's Agnihotra-milk were to become impure after being put on the fire, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Let him offer it silently on the coals which were shifted away (from the fire), and on which it had been placed: thus it is both offered and not offered; for inasmuch as he offers it on those (hot coals) it is offered, and inasmuch as he extinguishes it along with them it is not offered. He pours water thereon, and secures it by means of the water. Let him then make offering with what other (milk) he can procure.

5. They also say, 'If the Sacrificer were to die

when the Agnihotra-milk has been put on the fire, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Having enclosed it, let him pour it out: and such, indeed, they say, is the expiation (in that case) for every Haviryagña. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

6. They also say, 'If any one's Agnihotra-milk were to be spilled after being ladled out into the offering-spoon, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Let him touch it with the (formula of) atonement for spilling, and, having poured water thereon, let him make offering with what (milk) there is left. And if the spoon be turned upside down, or if it were to break, let him touch (the spilled milk) with the (formula of) atonement for spilling, and, having poured water thereon, let him make offering with what (milk) is left in the pot.

7. Now some go back (to the Gârhapatya) and make offering with what (milk) is left in the pot; but let him not do this, for, indeed, that Agnihotra is conducive to heaven, and if any one, in that case, were to say of him, 'Surely, this one has descended again from the heavenly world: this (offering) will be in no wise conducive to heaven for him,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

8. Let him rather do it in this way:—let him sit down there and then, and let them ladle out and bring to him what (milk) there is left in the pot. Now some perplex him, saying, 'Surely, this (milk) is the remainder of an offering: surely, this is exhausted: offering should not be made thereof;' but let him give no heed to this; for, surely, when that (milk) is of unexhausted strength it is used for

curdling the offering-material¹: let them therefore ladle out and bring to him what (milk) there is left in the pot; and if there should not be any in it, let him put on the fire what other (milk) he can procure; and when he has made the light fall on it², and poured water to it, and taken it off (the fire),—then on that (former) occasion³ he (the Adhvaryu) says, ‘I will ladle out⁴;’ but on the present occasion let them ladle it out in the way it is (there) ladled out and bring it to him; and let him by all means make offering therewith. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

9. They also say, ‘If any one’s Agnihotra milk were to become impure after it has been ladled into the offering-spoon, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?’ Now some think it should be offered, on the ground that it is ready (for offering), and it would be improper if it were not offered, for the gods have no loathing for anything. And some fill it to overflowing and let it flow off;—but let him not do this; for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, ‘Surely, this (priest) has poured away the Agnihotra: this Sacrificer will be poured away,’ then that would indeed be likely to come to pass. Let him rather do it in this way:—let him put

¹ Literally, they make it the means of curdling the havis;—cf. XI, 1, 4, 1, where the sour milk from last night’s milking is so used. In the same way the milk not used for the Agnihotra might have served for curdling next morning’s milk.

² Viz. by means of a lighted straw, cf. II, 3, 1, 16.

³ Viz. at the evening-offering of the Agnihotra; the Sacrificer then replying, ‘Om, ladle out!’ At the morning-offering the Adhvaryu says, ‘I ladle out,’ instead. Cf. part i, p. 331, note 1.

⁴ Or, ‘shall I ladle out?’ as the Paddhati on Kâty. IV, 14, 8 takes it.

⁵ That is to say, they let the impure matter flow off.

fuel on the Âhavantya, and, having shifted some hot cinders away from the Âhavantya, let him silently pour it on these hot cinders. He then pours water on it, and secures it by means of the water; and let him then make offering with what other (milk) he can procure. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

10. They also say, 'If it were to rain upon (uparishât) any one's Agnihotra-milk when it has been ladled into the offering-spoon, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Let him know, 'Light (or sap) has come to me from above (uparishât); the gods have helped me: I shall become more glorious;' and let him by all means make offering therewith. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

THIRD BRÂHMANA.

1. They also say, 'If the fire were to go out after the first libation has been offered, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Having thrown down (on the fire-place) any log of wood he may find lying near by¹, let him offer thereon, saying, 'In every (piece of) wood there is a fire,' for, indeed, there is a fire in every (piece of) wood. But if his heart should at all misgive him, he may offer upon gold; for gold, doubtless, is Agni's seed; and the father is the same as the son, and the son is the same as the father: he may therefore offer upon gold. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

2. They also say, 'If, after being taken out (from the Gârhapatya), the Âhavantya were to go out

¹ Pratyāsanno viratli prativeraḥ samīpastaḥ, comm.

before the Agnihotra (has been offered), what rite and what expiation would there be in that case? Let him take it out (again) from the Gārhapatya (and bring it) forward, and, having laid it down (on the Âhavaniya hearth), let him offer the Agnihotra thereon. And were it to go out again and again, after being taken out even a hundred times, let him take it out (again) from the Gārhapatya, and, having laid it down, let him offer the Agnihotra thereon. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

3. They also say, 'If the Gārhapatya were to go out, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Well, some churn it out from a fire-brand, saying, 'Whereby man's (body) is destroyed in the end, it is therefrom he desires the expiation of this (mishap).' Let him, however, not do this; but let them proceed by taking either a fire-brand, or a piece from a fire-brand: let him do it in this way: having taken a coal from a fire-brand, let him crumble it on the two churning-sticks, for (in this way) he obtains both that desire which is contained in the (fire) churned out of a firebrand, and that which is contained in (the fire churned out from) the churning-sticks. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

4. They also say, 'If they take out fire for any one and put it with (the burning Âhavaniya) fire, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' When uniting, these two (fires), if unappeased, would indeed be liable to burn up the Sacrificer's family and cattle: let him therefore utter upon them the text (Vâg. S. XII, 57, 58), 'Unite ye two, and get ye on together, loving, radiant, well disposed, dwelling together for food and drink!—Together have I brought

your minds, together your rites, together your thoughts: O Agni Purishya, be thou the overlord, and bestow thou food and drink upon our Sacrificer!' He thereby bespeaks peace on the part of those two for the safety of the Sacrificer's family and cattle.

5. But if his heart should at all misgive him, let him prepare a cake on eight potsherds to Agni Agnimat (the fire possessed of a fire). The course of procedure thereof (is as follows):—he should recite seventeen kindling-verses; the two butter-portsions relate to the slaying of *Vṛitra*¹; the *sam-yāgyās*² are two *Virāg* verses; and the invitory and offering formulas (of the chief oblation) are as follows: (the *anuvākyā*, *Rig-veda* S. I, 12, 6), 'Agni is kindled by Agni, he, the sage, the youthful house-lord, the tongue-mouthed bearer of oblations;' and the *yāgyā*, 'For thou, O Agni, art kindled by Agni, priest, as thou art, by a priest, friend by friend.' He thereby bespeaks peace on the part of those two, for the safety of the Sacrificer's family and cattle. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

6. They also say, 'If any one's *Gārhapatya* were to go out when the *Āhavaniya* has not gone out, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Now, some take (a new fire) out from that same (*Āhavaniya* hearth, and carry it) forwards³.

¹ That is, their *Anuvākyās* refer to *Vṛitrahān*.

² That is, the *anuvākyā* (invitory formula) and *yāgyā* (offering-formula) recited for the oblation to Agni *Svishṭakṛit*. Cf. XIII. 4, 1, 13 note.

³ That is to say, they make the still burning *Āhavaniya* their *Gārhapatya* and take out a new offering-fire which they lay down on a place to the eastward of the former *Āhavaniya* (the former

saying, 'The fires are the vital airs: it is the vital airs we thus take up for him.' But let him not do this, for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely this one has obstructed the forward vital airs¹: this Sacrificer will die,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

7. And some, indeed, take (the Âhavanīya) back (to the Gârhapatya²), saying, 'These two are the out-breathing and the up-breathing.' But let him not do this; for conducive to heaven, indeed, is the Agni-hotra: and if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this one has descended again from the heavenly world: this (offering) will be in no wise conducive to heaven for him,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

8. And some, indeed, churn out another Gârhapatya: but let him not do this, for if, in that case, any one were to say of him, 'Surely, this one has raised a spiteful enemy from out of the fire³: speedily a spiteful enemy will be raised to him; he (the Sacrificer) will weep⁴ for him who is dearest to him,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

9. And some, again, extinguish (the Âhavanīya fire) and churn out another;—let him not yield to a desire for this; (for if, in that case, any one were to

Dakshinâgni being likewise transferred to a place south of the first third of the line between the new Gârhapatya and Âhavanīya, Kâty. XXV, 3, 5 comm.).

¹ ? Or, has forced them forward.

² That is, they take the burning Âhavanīya fire back to the Gârhapatya hearth, and then take out therefrom a fresh Âhavanīya.

³ Viz. inasmuch as he takes out a new Âhavanīya from the newly kindled Gârhapatya, and puts it on the still burning Âhavanīya fire.

⁴ Harisvâmin takes 'rotsyati' as from 'rudh'—rodhena mâranam lakshyate, mârayishyati artha.

say of him¹), 'He has caused to be extinguished even what was left him : no heir will remain to him,' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

10. Let him rather proceed thus :—having lifted the two fires on the two churning-sticks², let him betake himself northwards, and, having churned out (the fire), let him remain there offering ; for in this way he passes no censure on any one, and towards night offering is made by him at his new resting-place.

FOURTH BRĀHMANA.

1. And, in the morning, having taken out the ashes, and smeared (the fire-places) with cow-dung, he lifts the two fires on the churning-sticks, and returns (to the offering-ground). Having then churned out the Gârhapatya, taken out the Âhavanīya, and brought the Anvâhârya-pañana (to the southern hearth), he should prepare a cake on eight potsherds to Agni Pathikṛit (the path-maker). The course of procedure thereof (is as follows) :—he should recite those same seventeen kindling-verses ; the two butter-portions relate to the slaying of Vṛitra³ ; the samyâgyâs are two Virâg verses³ ; and the invitatory and offering formulas are as follows :—(the anuvâkyâ, *Rîg-veda* VI, 16, 3), 'For thou, most wise Agni, divine disposer, readily knowest the ways and paths at sacrifices ;' and the yâgyâ (*Rîg-veda* X, 2, 3), 'We have entered upon the path of the gods to carry on what we can do : the wise Agni shall sacri-

¹ There seems here to be an omission in the printed text, though MS. Ind. Off. 311, it is true, has the same reading.

² That is, by holding the sticks a moment near the fires.

³ See notes on XIII, 4, 1, 13.

fice, he shall be the priest, he shall order the sacrifices and their seasons;’ for Agni is the path-maker, the guide of paths: he, verily, guides him upon the path of sacrifice. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

2. They also say, ‘If any one’s fires were to come in contact with each other, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?’ If this burning (fire) were to come (to the other) from behind, he may know that light has come to him from beyond: that the gods have helped him, and that he will become more glorious. But if his heart should at all misgive him, let him prepare a cake on eight potsherds for Agni Vivīkī (the discerning). The course of procedure thereof (is as follows): he should recite those same seventeen kindling-verses; the two butter-portions relate to the slaying of *Vṛātra*: the *sazyāgyās* are two *Virāḡ* verses; and the invitatory and offering formulas are as follows:—(the *anuvākya*, *Rig-veda* VI, 6, 3), ‘Thy brilliant, wind-spiced flames, bright Agni, spread in every direction: the divine ninefold destroyers overpower the woods, boldly crushing them;’ and the *yāgyā* (*Rig-veda* V, 8, 3), ‘The tribes of men glorify thee, Agni, the discerning knower of offerings, and most liberal dispenser of treasures; thee, O wealthy one, dwelling in secret, yet visible to all, loud-sounding offerer of sacrifice, glorying in ghee!’ And if any one should desire to rid himself of his spiteful enemy, let him, with that object in view, perform this offering, and he verily will rid himself of him. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

3. If, however, this burning (fire) were to come from this side, he may know that he will overcome his spiteful enemy; that he will become more glorious. But if his heart should at all misgive him, let him prepare a cake on eight potsherds for Agni Samvarga (the despoiler). The course of procedure thereof (is as follows):—he should recite those same seventeen kindling-verses; the two butter-portions relate to the slaying of Vṛitra, the saṃyāgyās are two Virāḡ verses; and the invitatory and offering formulas are as follows:—(*Rig-veda* VIII, 75, 15; *Vāg. S.* XI, 71), ‘From the far region cross thou over to the near: protect thou that wherein I am!’ and the yāgyā (*Rig-veda* VIII, 75, 12), ‘Desert us not in this great strife, like as the bearer of a load: win thou the spoil (sam vargam gaya), win riches thou!’ And if any one desire to despoil his spiteful enemy, let him, with that object in view, perform this offering, and he verily will despoil him. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

4. They also say, ‘If the lightning were to burn any one’s (sacrificial fire), what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?’ Let him know that light has come to him from above; that the gods have helped him, and that he will become more glorious. But if his heart should at all misgive him, let him prepare a cake on eight potsherds for Agni Apsumat (abiding in the waters). The course of procedure thereof (is as follows):—he should recite those same seventeen kindling-verses; the two butter-portions relate to the slaying of Vṛitra; the saṃyāgyās are two Virāḡ verses; and the invitatory and offering formulas are as follows:

—(*Rig-veda* VIII, 43, 9; *Vâg. S.* XII, 36), 'In the waters, O Agni, is thy seat; as such thou clingest to plants: being in (their) womb, thou art born again;' and the *yâgyâ* (*Vâg. S.* XII, 37), 'Thou art the child of the herbs, the child of the trees, the child of all that is, O Agni, thou art the child of the waters;'—he thereby bespeaks peace on the part of those two (fires) for the safety of the Sacrificer's family and cattle. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

5. They also say, 'If any one's fires were to come in contact with impure (profane) fires, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Let him prepare a cake on eight potsherds for Agni *Sukî* (the bright),—the course of procedure thereof (is as follows):—he should recite those same seventeen kindling-verses; the two butter-portions relate to the slaying of *Vṛitra*; the *saṃyâgyâs* are two *Virâg* verses; and the invitatory and offering formulas are as follows:—(*Rig-veda* VIII, 44, 21), 'Agni of brightest work, the bright priest, the bright sage, brightly he shineth with offering fed;' and the *yâgyâ* (*Rig-veda* VIII, 44, 17), 'Up rise thy flames, the bright, the pure, the shining, thy lights, O Agni;'—he thereby bespeaks peace to those two (kinds of fires) for the safety of the Sacrificer's family and cattle. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

6. They also say, 'If the sun were to set on any one's *Āhavanīya* not yet having been taken out, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Verily, those rays (of the sun) are the All-gods: they go from him, and that (*Agnihotra*) fails

him, because the gods go from him; and after that failure—whether he know it or know it not—those two (fires) say, ‘He (the sun) has set on his unlifted (fire).’ In such a case let him proceed thus:—having fastened a piece of yellow gold to a plant of darbha grass, let him order it to be taken towards the back (west): thus it is made of the form of him who shines yonder; and that (sun) being the day, it is made of the form of the day. And darbha plants are a means of purification¹: he thus purifies it thereby. Having then kindled some firewood, let him order it to be taken forward (to the Âhavanīya hearth). A Brāhmaṇa descended from a R̥ishi should take it out, for a Brāhmaṇa descended from a R̥ishi represents all the deities: it is thus with the help of all the deities that he causes it (the fire) to succeed. Having laid it down, he returns, and having placed ghee on the Gârhapatya, taken it off, purified it and looked down on it², he takes ghee by four ladlings, and, having seized a log, he hastens up to the front; and, having put the log on the Âhavanīya, he bends his right knee, and offers with, ‘To the All-gods, hail!’ Even as one would call (back) to him a Brāhmaṇa staying at one’s dwelling, when he goes away offended, by (presenting him with) a cow longing for the bull, so he thereby calls to him the All-gods; and they indeed acknowledge, and

¹ Viz. inasmuch as they are used as strainers; see I, 1, 3, 5; cf. also part i, p. 84, note 2.

² Whilst, on ordinary occasions, in clarifying butter for offering, the priest would first make the lady of the house look down on the ghee taken from the fire, before he himself (or the Sacrificer) does so (I, 3, 1, 19; 26); on the present occasion—as at offerings to the Fathers (Kâty. II, 7, 4 comm.)—the priest alone does so.

turn to, him. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

7. They also say, 'If the sun were to rise over any one's *Āhavanīya* not having been taken out, what rite and what expiation would there be in that case?' Verily, those rays are the All-gods; and, having dwelt there, they now go from him, and that (*Agnihotra*) fails him, because the gods go from him; and after that failure--whether he know it or know it not--those two (fires) say, 'He (the sun) has risen on his unlifted (fire).' In such a case let him proceed thus: having fastened a piece of white gold (silver) to a plant of *darbha* grass, let him order it to be taken towards the front: thus it is made of the form of the moon; and, the moon being the night, it is made of the form of the night. And *darbha* plants are a means of purification: he thus purifies it thereby. Having then kindled some firewood, let him order it to be taken after (the piece of silver). A *Brāhmaṇa* descended from a *Rishi* should take it out, for a *Brāhmaṇa* descended from a *Rishi* represents all the deities: it is thus with the help of all the deities that he causes it (the fire) to succeed. Having laid it down, he returns, and, having placed ghee on the *Gārhapatya*, taken it off, purified it and looked down upon it, he takes ghee in the same way as it was taken before, and, having seized a log, he hastens up to the front; and, having put the log on the *Āhavanīya*, he bends his right knee and offers with, 'To the All-gods, hail!' The import is the same as before; and, verily, no hurt and no harm of any kind befalls where that expiation is made. This, then, is the rite performed in that case.

FIFTH ADHYĀYA. FIRST BRĀHMAṆA.

CEREMONIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE DEATH OF THE AGNIHOTRIN.

1. They also say, 'If that performer of a long sacrificial session—to wit, he who (regularly) offers the Agnihotra—were to die whilst staying abroad, are they to sacrifice for him or not?' Now, some indeed think that (his Agnihotra) should be offered till they get home¹; but let him not do so, for that (fire) does not submit thereto that they should offer to it, as for the burning of a dead body: it is rather to sacrifice and oblations that it submits, and, unable to endure it, it stays by him with impatience.

2. And some, indeed, say, 'They (the fires) should lie in the very same condition, kept up (with fuel) but without offering being made on them;' but let him not do so, for that (fire) does not submit thereto that they should kindle it as for the burning of a dead body: it is rather to sacrifice and oblations that it submits, and, unable to endure it, it stays by him with impatience.

3. And some, indeed, having lifted the two fires

¹ Prof. Delbrück, *Altind. Syntax*, p. 430, takes 'āgantoḥ' in the sense,—(thinking) he may still come; but cf. *Kāty. XXV. 8, 9* with comm., according to which, in case of an Agnihotrin dying away from home, his people are—if the place of his death be somewhere near his home—to take the body there; but if it be far from home, they are to kindle a fire by 'churning' and burn the body, and having collected the bones and taken them home, they are there to perform the punardāha, or second cremation; and in either case the Agnihotra is to be performed regularly for the deceased, in the evening and morning, 'till the body or the bones arrive at the house (*grihāgamanaparyantam*).' The force of 'iti' here evidently is,—(thinking), 'we will do so until the home-coming.' Harisvāmin rightly resolves 'āgantoḥ' by 'ā āgantoḥ.'

on the churning-sticks, lay them down, and churn it (the new fire) out on his being brought (home); but let him not do so, for that (fire) does not submit thereto that they should churn it out as for the burning of a dead body: it is rather to sacrifice and oblations that it submits, and, unable to endure it, it stays by him with impatience.

4. Let him rather proceed thus:—let him bid them seek for a cow suckling an adopted calf, and let him make offering with milk from her; for tainted is that milk which comes from a cow suckling an adopted calf, and tainted is the Agnihotra of one who is dead: by thus removing the tainted by the tainted, he becomes more glorious.

5. Concerning this there also is a simile: if two smashed cars were to (be made to) unite there would be at least one (fit) for driving.

6. The procedure of this same Agnihotra (is as follows):—He causes her to be milked whilst eastward invested¹; for, sacrificially invested, one gets (the Agnihotra-cow) milked for the gods, but in the case of the Fathers it is done thus.

7. He does not put (the milk) on the (burning) coals²; for were he to put it on coals he would be doing (what is done) for the gods: having shifted some hot cinders from the Gârhapatya towards the right (south) side, he puts it thereon, and thus makes it to be sacred to the Fathers.

¹ That is, wearing the Brâhmanical cord over the right shoulder, and under the left arm; instead of over the left shoulder, and under the right arm as is done at the sacrifice.

² For boiling the milk for the Agnihotra burning coals are shifted northwards from the Gârhapatya, and the pot placed thereon; see part i, p. 330, note.

8. He does not cause the light (of a burning straw) to fall upon it, nor does he pour water to it; for were he to make the light fall on it, and to pour water to it, he would be doing (what is done) for the gods. He does not take it off thrice, setting it down each time¹; for were he take it off thrice, setting it down each time, he would be doing (what is done) for the gods: only once he takes it off drawing it downwards², and thus makes it to be sacred to the Fathers.

9. He does not say, 'I will ladle out³!' nor does he ladle out (the milk) four times; for were he to say 'I will ladle out!' and were he to ladle out four times, he would be doing (what is done) for the gods: only once he silently turns it upside down (into the spoon), and thus makes it to be sacred to the Fathers.

10. He does not take it (to the Âhavaniya) whilst holding a kindling-stick over (the handle of the spoon⁴); for were he to take it (there) whilst holding a kindling-stick over it, he would be doing (what is done) for the gods: he takes it whilst holding (a billet) underneath, and thus makes it to be sacred to the Fathers.

11. He does not pass along the north side of the Gârhapatya⁵, for were he to pass along the north

¹ When a spoonful of water has been added to the Agnihotra-milk, and the light of a burning straw again thrown on it, the pot is taken up three several times and put down each time further north on the hot ashes; see part i, p. 331, note 1.

² That is, down from the ashes—towards the south (where the Fathers, or departed ancestors, are supposed to reside),—whilst in the case of the ordinary Agnihotra he would be shifting the pot more and more upwards, or northwards. Cf. Kâty. XXV, 8, 10.

³ See XII, 4, 2, 8.

⁴ See part i, p. 331, note 4.

⁵ Possibly we ought to translate,—he does not go to the north side of the Gârhapatya (but to the south side)—that is, if he makes

side of the Gârhapatya he would be doing (what is done) for the gods : he passes along the south side of the Gârhapatya, and thus makes it to be sacred to the Fathers.

12. And that sacrificial grass which (ordinarily) is lying with its tops towards the north he lays so as to have its tops towards the south, and thus makes (the offering) to be sacred to the Fathers. And having put a kindling-stick on the Âhavanîya, and bent his left knee, he silently turns (the ladle) once upside down (pouring the milk into the fire) and thus makes it to be sacred to the Fathers. He neither shakes (the spoon) upwards¹, nor wipes it, nor does he eat (the milk left in the spoon), nor does he throw it out : he thus makes it to be sacred to the Fathers.

13. They also say, 'If that performer of a long sacrificial session—to wit, he who (regularly) offers the Agnihotra—were to die whilst staying abroad, how would they supply him with his fires ?' Well, some, having burnt him, bring (the bones) home and make *the fires* smell him as he is brought ; but let him not do this, for this would be as if he were to seek to cause the seed implanted in one womb to be born forth from another womb. Having brought home the bones, let him throw them on a black antelope skin, and arrange them in accordance with man's form, and having covered them with wool and sprinkled with ghee, let him by burning unite him

two oblations, not only on the Âhavanîya, but also on the Gârhapatya (as well as on the Dakshinâgni), in which case the Adhvaryu would be standing north (or rather north-west) of the fire. Cf. Kâty. IV, 14, 22-25.

¹ Ordinarily, after the second libation, the priest twice jerks the spoon upwards, and then lays it down on a bunch of grass.

with his fires : he thus causes him to be born from his own (maternal) womb.

14. And some, indeed, burn him in (ordinary) fire (procured) in the village ; but let him not do this, for such fire is a promiscuous eater, an eater of raw flesh : it would be capable of devouring him completely, together with his sons and his cattle.

15. And some, indeed, burn him in a forest-fire ; but let him not do this ; for such fire is unappeased : it would be capable of burning him up together with his sons and his cattle.

16. And some, indeed, burn him in a firebrand ; but let him not do this ; for such fire belongs to Rudra : it would be capable of destroying him together with his sons and his cattle.

17. And some, indeed, build up a funeral pile in the midst of the (three) fires, and, by burning him, unite him with his fires, thinking, ' There,—to wit, in the midst of his fires,—assuredly is the Sacrificer's abode.' But let him not do this ; for if in that case any one were to say of him, ' Verily, this one has caused a cutting up in the middle of the village : the cutting up of him will speedily come about¹ : he will weep for his dearest ;' then that would indeed be likely to come to pass.

SECOND BRĀHMANA.

1. Now, Nāka Maudgalya once said, ' If he believe the Sacrificer to be about to die, let him take

¹ The burning of the dead body seems to be compared here with the cutting up of the victim which is done outside the sacrificial ground. Harisvāmin, indeed, takes ' grāma ' here, not in the sense of ' village,' but in that of ' agnisamūha '—in the midst of the (set of) sacrificial fires—which, if it were possible, would certainly make the comparison even more striking.

up the two fires in the churning-sticks, and, having churned out (a new fire), let him continue offering (the Agnihotra) at whatever place may have commended itself to him for the immolation¹. And if the Sacrificer should then depart this world,

2. Let him build a pile for him² in the midst of his fires, and, by burning him, unite him with his fires.' But let him not do this: for, verily, that (fire) does not submit thereto that they should make offering to it as for the burning of a dead body: it is rather to sacrifice and oblations that it submits, and, unable to endure it, it stays by him with impatience.

3. He should rather proceed thus: let him bid them seek three pots, and, having put therein either (dried) cowdung or straw³, let him place them separately on the (three) fires; and let them then burn him by means of the fires produced from that blaze: in this way he is indeed burned by (these) fires, though not visibly, so to speak.

4. Wherefore, also, it has been said by the *Rishi* (Vâg. S. XIII, 45⁴), 'The Agni who was born from Agni, from the pain of the earth or be it of the sky; whereby Visvakarman begat

¹ Literally, at any place at which the cutting up may have commended itself to him (to take place). Whether this 'cutting up' is here to be taken figuratively of the burning of the corpse (*dâhassthâne*, *Harisvâmin*), or of the sacrifice of a barren cow, which may be performed in such a case, or of both, is not quite clear.

² The construction would rather seem to be,—let him build him (i. e. the dead body) up as a pile amidst his fires.

³ The real meaning of 'sumbala' is not known,—acc. to the St. Petersburg Dict., some material which readily takes fire, such as straw or oakum. *Harisvâmin* takes it in the former sense,—*trinâny alpa-samsthitâni*. Cf. *Kâty.* XXV, 7, 12 (?dried cotton fibre or pods).

⁴ Cf. VII, 5, 2, 21.

living beings, him, O Agni, may thy wrath spare!' As the verse, so its explanation.

5. Now, in the first place, he cleanses him of all foul matter, and causes the foul matter to settle on this (earth); for this (earth) is indeed foul matter: he thus consigns foul matter to foul matter. For, indeed, from that intestine of his, filled with foul matter, when it is burnt, a jackal is produced: (hence he removes it), 'lest a jackal should be produced.' But let him not do this, or his family will be liable to starve. Having washed him out inside, he anoints him with ghee, and thus makes it (the body) sacrificially pure.

6. He then inserts seven chips of gold in the seven seats of his vital airs; for gold is light and immortality: he thus bestows light and immortality on him.

7. Having then built a pile for him in the midst of his fires, and spread out a black antelope skin with the hairy side upwards, and the neck-part towards the east, he lays him down thereon with the face looking upwards, and puts the *guhû*-spoon filled with ghee on his right, and the *upabhṛīt* on his left hand, the *dhruvâ* on the breast, the *Agni-hotra*-ladle on the mouth, two dipping-spoons on the nostrils, two *prâsitra-haravaśa*¹ on the ears, the cup used for carrying forward the lustral water on the head, two winnowing-baskets at the sides, on the belly the vessel used for holding the cuttings (of the *idā*), filled with clotted ghee, the wedge (yoke-pin) beside the male organ, two mallets beside the testicles, and behind them the mortar and pestle,

¹ That is, two bowls used for holding the Brahman's 'fore-portions'; see part i, p. 69, note 4.

the other sacrificial vessels between the thighs : and the wooden sword on the right hand.

8. Thus supplied with the sacrificial weapons (implements), that Sacrificer passes on to that place which has been won by him in heaven, even as if one who fears spoliation were to escape it : and, verily, those fires (which are) to be enkindled (will) lovingly touch him, even as sons lovingly touch their father when he comes home after staying abroad, and make everything ready for him¹.

9. If the Gârhapatya were to reach him first, one may know that the permanent fire has reached him first : that he will permanently establish himself, and that those behind him will permanently establish themselves in this world.

10. And if the Âhavanîya were to do so, one may know that the foremost fire has reached him first : that he has been foremost in conquering the (other) world, and that those behind him will be foremost in this world.

11. And if the Anvâhâryapaçana were to do so, one may know that the food-eating fire has reached him first : that he will eat food, and that those behind him will eat food (be prosperous) in this world.

12. And if they all (were to reach him) at the same time, one may know that he has conquered a blessed world. Such, then, are the distinctions in this respect.

13. This, then, is that offering of the Sacrificer's body which he performs at the end : from out of that place which has been won by him in heaven he arises immortal in the form of an oblation.

¹ That is, they make everything comfortable for him, make him feel at home :—*prakṛishṭam evainaṃ svarge kalpayanti pratishṭhitam ; nityasthitatvât pratishṭhâ gârhapatyaḥ ; comm.*

14. Whatever stone and earthen (vessels of the deceased) there are they may be given to a Brāhmaṇa¹; but, verily, he who accepts them is regarded as a remover of corpses. Let them rather throw these (vessels) into the water, for the waters are the foundation of all this (universe): he thus establishes him firmly on the waters.

15. Either a son (of the deceased), or a brother, or some other Brāhmaṇa then performs that offering², with (Vâg. S. XXXV, 22), 'From out of him thou (O Agni) art born: from out of thee let this N. N. be born again into the heavenly world, hail!' They then go away without looking back, and touch water.

SIXTH ADHYĀYA. FIRST BRĀHMANA.

EXPIATORY OBLATIONS OF SOMA-SACRIFICE.

1. Verily, Praçāpati, the sacrifice, is King Soma; and these deities to whom he offers, and these oblations which he offers, are forms of him.

2. If any part of the sacrifice were to fail, let him make an oblation with regard to that same deity for whom he may have intended (that part).—on the Âhavanīya, if it is during the initiation and the

¹ According to Kāty. XXV, 7, 32, 33 the stone and earthen implements are to be thrown into the water; and metal ones may optionally be given to a Brāhmaṇa (or likewise be thrown into the water).

² According to Kāty. XXV, 7, 34-37 a sterile cow may be offered prior to (or along with) the burning of the body: in which case the victim is to be killed by a blow behind the ear, and its kidneys are to be placed in the deceased's hands, whilst his face is to be covered with the omentum or membrane enclosing the intestines. The final offering referred to in the above passage consists of an oblation of ghee.

Upasads; on the Âgnidhra, if it is at the Soma-pressing;—for whatever joint of the sacrifice fails, that breaks; and whichever then is the deity in that (part of the sacrifice) through that deity he heals the sacrifice, through that one he makes the sacrifice complete again¹.

3. If, however, the sacrifice, resolved upon in his mind, were not to incline to him², let him perform an oblation with, 'To Paramesh//in hail!' for Paramesh//in (the most high) he (Soma³) then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

4. And if the sacrifice, bespoken by his speech⁴, were not to incline to him, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Pragâpati hail!' for Pragâpati (the lord of creatures) he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

5. And if any one's (people), having gone in quest of the King (Soma), do not come back bringing (Soma-plants), let him perform an oblation with, 'To the plant hail!' for the plant he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

6. And if, when acquired, (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Savitrî hail!' for Savitrî he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

7. And if during the initiation (his Soma) were

¹ Cf. IV, 5, 7, 6.

² That is to say, if untoward circumstances were to arise threatening to prevent the intended Soma-sacrifice. The mental resolve (*samkalpa*), on the part of the Sacrificer, is the first act in the performance of a sacrifice.

³ Or, it (the sacrifice), as Harisvâmin takes it.

⁴ That is, after he has announced his intention to perform a Soma-sacrifice, by saying 'Somena yakshye,' 'I will sacrifice by means of Soma.'

to meet with any mishap, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Visvakarman hail!' for Visvakarman he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

8. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap in regard to the (cow) given in exchange for the Soma, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Pûshan hail!' for Pûshan he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

9. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when forthcoming for the purchase, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Indra and the Maruts hail!' for Indra and the Maruts he (Soma) then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

10. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst being bargained for, let him perform an oblation with, 'To the Asura hail!' for the Asura he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

11. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap after he has been bought, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Mitra hail!' for Mitra he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

12. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst seated on (the Sacrificer's) lap¹, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Vishṇu Sipivishṭa hail!' for Vishṇu Sipivishṭa he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

13. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst being driven about, let him perform

¹ See III, 6, 3, 4. This particular ceremony is rather out of place here, as in its regular order it should come after paragraph 15.

an oblation with, 'To Vishṇu Narandhisha hail!' for Vishṇu Narandhisha he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

14. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when he has reached (the hall), let him perform an oblation with, 'To Soma hail!' for Soma he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

15. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when seated on the throne, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Varuṇa hail!' for Varuṇa he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him. •

16. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst staying in the Āgnidhṛa, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Agni hail!' for Agni he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

17. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst staying in the Havirdhāna, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Indra hail!' for Indra he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

18. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst being taken down (from the car), let him perform an oblation with, 'To Atharvan hail!' for Atharvan he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

19. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when thrown down (on the pressing-board) in (the shape of) the Soma-stalks, let him perform an oblation with, 'To the All-gods hail!' for the All-gods he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

20. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst being invigorated (moistened), let him perform an oblation with, 'To Vishṇu Âprītapâ hail!' for Vishṇu Âprītapâ (the protector of the appeased) he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

21. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst being pressed, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Yama hail!' for Yama he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

22. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst being gathered together¹, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Vishṇu hail!' for Vishṇu he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

23. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst being purified (strained), let him perform an oblation with, 'To Vāyu hail!' for Vāyu he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

24. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when purified, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Sukra hail!' for Sukra (the clear one) he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

25. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when mixed with milk, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Sukra hail!' for Sukra he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

26. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any

¹ See III, 9, 4, 19, 'Thrice he presses, and thrice he gathers (the beaten plants) together . . .'

mishap when mixed with barley-meal, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Manthin hail!' for Manthin (Soma mixed with meal) he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

27. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when drawn into the cups, let him perform an oblation with, 'To the All-gods hail!' for the All-gods he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

28. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when ready for the libation, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Asu hail!' for Asu (the breath of life) he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

29. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst being offered, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Rudra hail!' for Rudra he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

30. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when he has returned¹, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Vâta hail!' for Vâta (the wind) he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

31. And if, after being looked at, (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Nṛīkakṣhas hail!' for Nṛīkakṣhas (man-viewing) he then is: he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

32. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst being consumed, let him perform an oblation with, 'To Bhaksha hail!' for Bhaksha

¹ Viz. to the Havīrdhâna where the cups from which libations have been made are deposited on the mound (khara); cf. III, 1, 2, 24.

(drink) he then is : he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

33. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when contained in the Nârâsamsa (cups¹), let him perform an oblation with, 'To the Nârâsamsa Fathers hail!' for the Nârâsamsa (man-praising) Fathers he then is : he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

34. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when ready for the purificatory bath², let him perform an oblation with, 'To the Stream hail!' for a stream he then is : he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

35. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap whilst being taken down (to the water), let him perform an oblation with, 'To the Sea hail!' for a sea he then is : he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

36. And if (his Soma) were to meet with any mishap when immersed, let him perform an oblation with, 'To the Flood hail!' for a flood he then is : he repels evil, and the sacrifice inclines to him.

37. These, then, are the thirty-three oblations he performs ; for there are thirty-three gods, and Pragâpati is the thirty-fourth : with the help of all the gods he thus heals the sacrifice, and with the help of all the gods he makes it complete again.

38. The Brahman (superintending priest) himself should perform them, and no other than the Brahman ; for the Brahman sits on the right (south)

¹ See part II, p. 154, note 1.

² The pressed-out Soma-husks are taken down to (and thrown into) the water where the Sacrificer is to bathe, see IV, 4, 5, 1 seqq.

side of the sacrifice, and protects the sacrifice on the right side. If, however, the Brahman should not know (these formulas and oblations), any one who knows them may perform them; but (let him do so) after applying for leave to the Brahman, and with his permission. Now as to the meaning of these (formulas). Vasishṭha knew the Virāg¹: Indra coveted it.

39. He spake, 'Rishi, thou knowest the Virāg: teach me it!' He replied, 'What would therefrom accrue to me?'—'I would teach thee the expiation for the whole sacrifice, I would show thee its form.'—He replied, 'Well, but tell me, if thou wert to teach me the expiation for the whole sacrifice, what would become of him to whom thou wouldst show its form?'—'Verily, he would depart from this world to the heaven of the living.'

40. The Rishi then taught Indra that Virāg:—but the Virāg, they say, is this (earth), whence he who possesses most thereof is the most powerful.

41. And Indra then taught the Rishi this expiation from the Agnihotra up to the Great Litany. And formerly, indeed, the Vasishṭhas alone knew these utterances, whence formerly only one of the Vasishṭha family became Brahman; but since nowadays anybody (may) study them, anybody (may) now become Brahman². And, indeed, he who thus knows these utterances is worthy to become

¹ That is, the 'far-shining,' or 'far-ruling' (metre).

² Professor Delbrück, *Altindische Syntax*, p. 570, takes this clause thus:—'and therefore even now he who remains of them (i.e. of the Vasishṭha family) is (? becomes) Brahman.' This rendering takes, however, no account of the 'tu'; and, indeed, it will hardly fit in with the relative clause which precedes it.

Brahman, or may reply, when addressed as ' Brahman '¹

SEVENTH ADHYĀYA. FIRST BRĀHMANA.

THE SAUTRĀMANI².

1. Indra slew Tvashtri's son, Visvarūpa. Seeing his son slain, Tvashtri exorcized him (Indra), and

¹ That is to say, when, as superintending priest, he is addressed by another priest asking whether he may now begin some performance, or informing him that he is about to do so, he may give the desired direction. Such applications by the other priests begin with ' O Brahman ! ' cf. XIII, 1, 2, 4 ; and part i, p. 22, note 2.

² The Sautrāmanī is usually classed as one of the seven divisions of the Haviryagñā, though, in reality, it is much more than that ; its peculiarity consisting in a combination of the ordinary features of the Haviryagñā, or ishī (cf. XII, 7, 2, 21), with those of the animal sacrifice, whilst a third important element, viz. libations of spirituous liquor, imparts to it a certain resemblance, and doubtless an intended resemblance, to the Soma-sacrifice. Of this sacrifice we have already met with a variation in connection with the Rāgasūya (cf. part iii, p. 129 seq.), that form being usually called the Kāraka-Sautrāmanī, as being adopted from the ritual of the Kāraka-adhvaryus ; whilst the form described in the remaining portion of the present Kāṇḍa is, according to Lāṭy. Śraut. V, 4, 20, called Kaukili Sautrāmanī (cf. Āsv. Śr. III, 9, 9 comm. ; Weber, Ind. Stud. III, p. 385). The name itself is derived from ' sutrāman,' i.e. ' the good guardian,' as which Indra is worshipped in this sacrifice (cf. V, 5, 4, 1 seq.). The whole performance takes four days, during the first three of which the Surā-liquor is prepared and matured, and offerings of a rice-pap to Aditi, and a bull to Indra are performed ; whilst the main sacrifice takes place on the fourth day—the day of either full moon or new moon—the chief oblations offered on that day being three cups of milk, and as many of Surā-liquor, to the Āsvins, Sarasvatī, and Indra respectively ; of three animal victims to the same deities ; and of thirty-three libations of fat gravy, or liquid fat (vasā), obtained from the cooking of the victims, and offered by means of bull's hoofs used as cups. At the end of the sacrifice, a third bull is offered to Indra in his form of Vayodhas (giver of life), together with another pap

brought Soma-juice suitable for witchery¹, and withheld from Indra. Indra by force drank off his Soma-juice, thereby committing a desecration of the sacrifice. He went asunder in every direction, and his energy, or vital power², flowed away from every limb.

2. From his eyes his fiery spirit flowed, and became that grey (smoke-coloured) animal, the he-goat; and what (flowed) from his eyelashes became wheat, and what (flowed) from his tears became the kuvala-fruit³.

(karu) to Aditi and an oblation of curds to Mitra and Varuṇa. No mention is made of the Agnishomiya he-goat usually offered on the day preceding the Soma-pressing, the first bull offered to Indra probably taking its place on this occasion, whilst the bull to Indra Vayodhas would seem to take the place of the sacrifice of a barren cow (to Mitra and Varuṇa) which usually takes place at the end of a Soma-sacrifice. In an interesting variation (Sautrīmanya-yagña), described in Śāṅkh. Sr. XIV, 12-13, and performed as a real (Agnishōma) Soma-sacrifice, the final animal sacrifice indeed is that of a barren cow to Indra Sutrāman; only two other victims—a red-dish he-goat to the Asvins and a ewe to Sarasvatī—being mentioned.

¹ 'Exposed (liable) to witching,' Delbrück, *Altindische Syntax*, p. 401.

² 'Virya' (virile power) is constantly used to explain 'indriya.'

³ The words 'kuvala, badara, and karkandhu' are the names of three varieties of the jujube, or fruits of *Zizyphus Jujuba*, for a description of which see the comm. on Kāty. Sr. XIX, 17 seqq. According to Stewart and Brandis' *Forest Flora of North-West and Central India* (p. 87), 'this species varies exceedingly, in the shape and size of the fruits, the shape and tomentum of the leaves, and general habit;' 'the *Zizyphi* of North India want more investigation on the spot.' . . . 'Lakh is produced on this tree in Sindh, the Panjab, and Central India. The bark is used as dye-stuff; the root is a febrifuge in native pharmacy. A gum exudes from the trunk; and in Kangra a wild silkworm lives on the tree, the silk of which was much employed formerly to tie the barrel to the stock of the matchlock. But the tree is mainly cultivated for its fruit,

3. From his nostrils his vital power flowed, and became that animal, the ram; and what (flowed) from the phlegm became the Indra-grain, and what moisture there was that became the badara-fruit¹.

4. From his mouth his strength flowed, it became that animal, the bull; and what foam there was became barley, and what moisture there was became the karkandhu-fruit¹.

5. From his ear his glory flowed, and became the one-hoofed animals, the horse, mule, and ass.

6. From the breasts his bright (vital) sap flowed, and became milk, the light of cattle; from the heart in his breast his courage flowed, and became the talon-slaying eagle, the king of birds.

7. From his navel his life-breath flowed, and became lead,—not iron, nor silver; from his seed his form flowed, and became gold; from his generative organ his essence flowed, and became parisrut (raw fiery liquor); from his hips his fire flowed, and became surâ (matured liquor), the essence of food.

8. From his urine his vigour flowed, and became the wolf, the impetuous rush of wild beasts; from the contents of his intestines his fury flowed, and became the tiger, the king of wild beasts; from his blood his might flowed, and became the lion, the ruler of wild beasts.

9. From his hair his thought flowed, and became millet; from his skin his honour flowed, and became the asvattha tree (*figus religiosa*); from his flesh his force flowed, and became the udumbara tree (*figus glomerata*); from his bones his sweet drink flowed,

which is more or less globose on the wild and commoner sorts, and ovoid or oblong on the cultivated and improved kinds.'

¹ See note 3 on preceding page.

and became the nyagrodha tree (*ficus indica*); from his marrow his drink, the Soma-juice, flowed, and became rice: in this way his energies, or vital powers, went from him.

10. Now at that time he (Indra) had to do with Namuḍi, the Asura. Namuḍi bethought him, 'He has been undone once for all: I will seize upon his energy, his vital power, his Soma-drink, his food.' By (taking) that Surâ-liquor of his he seized upon his energy, or vital power, his Soma-drink, his food. He lay there dissolved. The gods gathered around him, and said, 'Verily, he was the best of us; evil has befallen him: let us heal him!'

11. They said to the two Asvins, 'Ye are Brahman physicians: heal ye this one!' They replied, 'Let there be a guerdon for us!' They spake, 'That he-goat there shall be your guerdon.' They said, 'So be it!' and hence the smoke-coloured (he-goat) is sacred to the two Asvins.

12. They (the gods) said to Sarasvatī, 'Verily, thou art healing medicine: heal thou this one!' She replied, 'Let there be a guerdon for me!' They spake, 'That ram there shall be thy guerdon!' She said, 'So be it!' and therefore the ram is sacred to Sarasvatī.

13. They then spake, 'Verily, there is even now as much in him (Indra) as that bull: that one shall belong to him himself.' They said, 'So be it!' and therefore the bull is sacred to Indra.

14. The two Asvins and Sarasvatī, having taken the energy, or vital power, from Namuḍi, restored them to him (Indra), and saved him from evil. 'Truly, we have saved him from evil so as to be well-saved (sutrāta),' they thought, and this became

the Sautrāmaṇi: and this is the (saving) nature of the Sautrāmaṇi—it saves the self from death, and repels evil for whosoever thus knows that (saving) nature of the Sautrāmaṇi. There are (for this sacrifice) thirty-three Dakṣiṇās (presents to priests), for thirty-three were the gods who healed him: whence they say, 'Dakṣiṇās are healing medicine.'

SECOND BRĀHMANA.

1. Verily, his fiery spirit, his energy, or vital power, depart from him whom Soma purges either upwards or downwards.

2. As to this they say, 'Truly, the Soma-juice is the Brāhmaṇa's food; and, indeed, it is not owing to Soma when a Brāhmaṇa vomits Soma; and he who vomits Soma is one who, whilst being fit to (gain) prosperity, does not gain prosperity, and who, whilst being fit to (gain) cattle, does not gain cattle', for Soma is cattle.'

3. Let him seize for sacrifice that grey (he-goat) of the Asvins, the ram of Sarasvatī, and the bull of Indra; for the Asvins are the physicians of the gods, and it is by them that he heals this (Sacrificer); and Sarasvatī is healing medicine, and it is with her help that he prepares medicine for him; and Indra is energy (indriya), or vital power, and it is with his help that he bestows energy, or vital power, on this (Sacrificer).

4. The two Asvins, indeed, are the eyesight,

¹ According to Kāty. XIX, 1, 4, the Sautrāmaṇi may also be performed by one who finds himself in the unfortunate position here referred to; as also (acc. to ib. 3) by a king who has been deprived of his kingdom.

fiery spirit; and inasmuch as there is (a victim) sacred to the Asvins, he (the priest) bestows eyesight, fiery spirit, on this (Sacrificer). And the ear also (he thereby bestows on him), for one and the same are the eye and the ear.

5. Sarasvati is the breath, vital power; and inasmuch as there is (a victim) sacred to Sarasvati, he bestows breath, vital power, on this (Sacrificer). And the off-breathing also (he thereby bestows on him), for one and the same are the breath (of the mouth) and the off-breathing.

6. Indra is speech, strength; and inasmuch as there is (a victim) sacred to Indra, he bestows speech, strength, on this (Sacrificer): and mind also, for one and the same are speech and mind.

7. 'He-goats are sacred to the Asvins, ewes to Sarasvati, and cows (and bulls) to Indra,' they say: if these animals are sacrificed, he, by means of those deities, gains those (three) animals.

8. There is a mare with a foal¹: the one hoofed (animal), glory, he thereby secures (for the Sacrificer²). There are hairs of wild beasts³, for the purpose of securing the wild beasts;—there are hairs of wolf: vigour, the impetuous rush of wild beasts, he thereby secures;—there are hairs of tiger: courage, the sway of wild beasts, he thereby secures;—there are hairs

¹ According to XII, 9, 2, 11, a milch cow with her calf are given as dakshinâ for the two paps offered to Aditi, whilst a mare and foal, according to XII, 7, 2, 21, are the fee for the offering of the three victims; though Kâtâyâna, it is true, makes no mention of this dakshinâ.

² Or, perhaps, he (the Sacrificer) secures for himself; but see paragraph 15, 'asmai avarunddhe.'

³ Hairs of a wolf, tiger, and lion are put into the cups of spirituous liquor from which libations are made.

of lion : might, the rule of wild beasts, he thereby secures.

9. There are grains of rice and grains of millet, grains of wheat and kuvala jujubes, Indra-grain and badara jujubes, grains of barley and karkandhu jujubes, malted rice and barley¹ : both cultivated and wild-grain food he thereby secures ; and by means of both kinds of food he duly lays energy and vital power into his own self.

10. With lead he buys² the malted rice, with (sheep's) wool the malted barley, with thread the (fried) rice-grain,—that lead is a form of both iron and gold, and the Sautrâmanî is both an ish/i-offering and an animal sacrifice, so that he thereby secures both of these.

11. With wool and thread³ he buys,—this, to wit, wool and thread, is women's work ; and work, indeed, means energy, or vital power, and this latter is extinct in women : he thus secures (for the Sacrificer) that energy, or vital power, which is extinct in women.

12. Here now, other Adhvaryus buy the malted rice with lead from a eunuch, saying, ' That is that⁴ ; for the eunuch is neither woman nor man, and the

¹ That is, rice and barley grain that has germinated, and subsequently become dry.

² As on the occasion of the purchase of Soma-plants (part ii, p. 63 seq.), the bargain is effected near the antaḥpātya-peg at the back of the Vēdi, where an ox-hide is spread for the purpose ; the Adhvaryu asking the seller, ' Seller of Surâ and Soma, hast thou Surâ and Soma for sale ? '

³ Thus ' ūrṇâ-sûtram ' is to be resolved, according to Kāty. XIX, 1, 18 ; the wool being used for buying malted barley, and the thread for buying fried rice.

⁴ That is, one is the same as the other.

Sautrāmaṇi is neither an ish/i-offering nor an animal sacrifice.' But let him not do so, for the Sautrāmaṇi is both an ish/i and an animal sacrifice, and the eunuch is something unsuccessful among men: they who do this thus place failure into the very mouth (opening) of the sacrifice. Let him rather buy them from a vendor of Soma, for the Sautrāmaṇi is Soma: he thus puts a form of Soma into the very mouth of the sacrifice so as to secure the sacrifice.

13. There is a pot (kumbhi) perforated with a hundred holes¹, for in many ways did that (Soma) flow out of (Indra); and a hundred-sized also, indeed, is the sacrifice: it is the sacrifice he thereby secures. There is a bowl (sata²): it is the real (or good) thing (sat) he thereby secures. There is a dish (kapyā) for him to secure food. There is a filter, for they cleanse him, (the Sacrificer, by this offering). There is a tail (-whisk) for turning away evil. There is gold for him to secure form (or colour); it weighs a hundred (grains), for man has a life of a hundred (years) and a hundred energies: life, and energy, vital power, he thus lays into his own self.

14. There is an asvattha (ficus religiosa) vessel: honour he thereby secures. There is an udumbara (ficus glomerata) one: force he thereby secures. There is a nyagrodha (ficus indica) one: sweet drink he thereby secures. There are (earthen) pots (sthāli): the food of the earth he thereby secures.

15. There are supernumerary³ (vessels) of palāsa

¹ For the use of this pot, see note on XII, 8, 1, 8.

² See XII, 8, 3, 14. 15.

³ At III, 7, 2, 1. 2, I would also now translate 'uparaya' by 'supernumerary' or 'additional':—there are eleven stakes, and a twelfth, rough-hewn, supernumerary one, &c.

wood: the palāsa (*butea frondosa*) is the Brahman (holy writ, holiness, the priesthood): it is by the Brahman that he gains the heavenly world. There are two feathers of a talon-slaying (bird)¹: courage, the sway of birds, he thereby secures. There are thirty-six of these (objects), for the *Brīhatī* consists of thirty-six syllables, and cattle are related to the *Brīhatī*: by means of the *Brīhatī* he thus secures cattle for him.

16. As to this they say, 'The victims have one set of deities, and the cakes another set of deities: this is an improper performance²; how does it become right and proper?' To Indra belongs the last of the victims, and to Indra the first of the cakes; and Indra, indeed, is energy (*indriya*), or vital power: through (Indra's) energy he thus confers on him energy, or vital power; and through (Indra's) energy he secures energy, or vital power.

17. There is a cake to *Savitṛi* for him to become impelled by *Savitṛi*; and one to *Varuṇa*, for it is *Varuṇa* that seizes him who is seized by evil: through *Varuṇa* he thus delivers him from *Varuṇa*'s power;—it is the final (cake): he thus delivers him finally from *Varuṇa*'s noose.

18. Indra's (cake) is one on eleven potsherds, in order that he may secure (Indra's) energy, or vital

¹ For the use of the two feathers of an eagle, see XII, 7. 3. 22.

² The rule (as laid down in III, 8, 3, 1) is that the *Paśu-puroḍāśa*, or animal cakes, offered after the animal portions, should belong to the same deities to whom the victims are sacred. On the present occasion this is, however, not the case; for while the three sacrificial animals of the main performance belong to the *Asvins*, to *Sarasvatī* and *Indra*, the three cakes are offered to *Indra*, *Savitṛi*, and *Varuṇa* respectively.

power; for the Trishvubh consists of eleven syllables, and the Trishvubh is energy, or vital power.

19. Savitr's (cake) is one on twelve potsherds, for there are twelve months in the year, and the year means constantly existing food: from the year he thus secures for him food.

20. Varuṇa's (cake) is one on ten potsherds, for the Virâḡ consists of ten syllables, and Varuṇa is Virâḡ (the widely ruling), the lord of food: through Varuṇa he thus secures food for him. In the middle (of the sacrifice) they proceed with (the offering of) these cakes, for the centre means their (mother's) womb: he thus causes them to be produced from their own (mother's) womb.

21. A mare with a foal is the sacrificial fee, for such a (mare) produces both the horse and the mule, and the Sautrâmanā is both an ishṭi-offering and an animal sacrifice: thus it is so in order that he may secure both of these.

THIRD BRÂHMANA.

1. By means of the Surâ-liquor Namukī, the Asura, carried off Indra's (source of) strength, the essence of food, the Soma-drink. He (Indra) hastened up to the Aśvins and Sarasvatī, crying, 'I have sworn to Namukī, saying, "I will slay thee neither by day nor by night, neither with staff nor with bow, neither with the palm of my hand nor with the fist, neither with the dry nor with the moist!" and yet has he taken these things from me: seek ye to bring me back these things!'

2. They spake, 'Let us have a share therein, and we will bring them back to thee.'—'These things

(shall be) in common to us,' he said, 'bring them back, then!'

3. The Asvins and Sarasvatī then poured out foam of water (to serve) as a thunderbolt, saying, 'It is neither dry nor moist;' and, when the night was clearing up, and the sun had not yet risen, Indra, thinking, 'It is neither by day nor by night,' there-with struck off the head of Namuki, the Asura.

4. Wherefore it has been said by the *Rishi* (*R̥g-veda* S. VIII, 14, 13), 'With foam of water, Indra, didst thou sever the head of Namuki, when thou wert subduing all thine enemies.' Now, Namuki is evil: having thus, indeed, slain that evil, his hateful enemy, Indra wrested from him his energy, or vital power. Let him who has an enemy perform the *Sautrāmaṇi*: he thereby slays that evil, his hateful enemy, and wrests from him his energy, or vital power. In his (Namuki's) severed head there was the Soma-juice mixed with blood. They loathed it. They perceived that (means of) drinking separately (one of) the two liquids,—'King Soma, the drink of immortality, is pressed';—and having thereby made that (Soma) palatable, they took it in (as food).

5. With (*Vāg. S. XIX, 1*), 'Thee, the sweet (liquor I mix) with the sweet (Soma),' he compounds (the ingredients for the preparation of) the *Surā-liquor*², and makes it palatable;—'the strong

¹ *Vāg. S. XIX, 72 seq.* On the myth cp. Muir, O. S. T., vol. v, p. 94.

² The preparation of the *Surā* is described in *Kāty. XIX, 1, 20-21* and comms., and by Mahidhara on *Vāg. S. XIX, 1*, in the following way. Having purchased (a) malted rice (*sashpa*), malted barley (*tokma*), and fried rice (*lāgāt*), and (b) various vegetable substances (called with the generic name of *nagnahu*) serving as spices and ferments, such as the bark of *Vatica robusta*, three

with the strong,' he thereby bestows energy on him (the Sacrificer);—'the immortal with the immortal,' he thereby bestows life on him;—'the honeyed with the honeyed,' he thereby bestows flavour to it (the liquor);—'I mix with the Soma,' he thereby makes it (the Surá-liquor) a form of Soma.

6. 'Thou art Soma: get thee matured for the Asvins! get thee matured for Sarasvatī! get thee matured for Indra Sutrāman!' for these were the deities who first prepared that sacrifice, and with their help he now prepares it: and, moreover, he thereby provides these deities with their share. He distils it with a view to (its being like) the Soma-pressing. For three nights it remains standing, for the Soma remains standing for three nights after it has been bought: he thus makes it a form of Soma.

myrobalans (rutmeg, areca-nut, and cloves), ginger, hog-weed, &c., he takes them into the fire-house, and pounds the two lots separately. He then prepares two gruels or mashes of rice and millet respectively, adding more water than is ordinarily used, puts them on the fire till they boil over, and catches the overflowing water in two separate vessels. He then adds thereto one-third part of the (still separate) pounded malted rice and barley and fried rice (or one-sixth part into each vessel), and likewise one-half of the spice (or one-fourth part into each vessel): this mixture, called *māsara* (serving both as malt and as flavouring matter), is allowed to dry and is then pounded. One-half of the remaining pounded malted rice and barley and fried rice, as well as the whole of the remaining spices, is then, in equal parts, added to the two mashes, which are thereupon poured into a large vessel, after which the pounded '*māsara*' is mixed with the compound whilst the above formula is pronounced; and the pot is deposited in a hole dug in the south-western corner of the fire-shed (*sâlâ*), where it remains standing for three days (and nights), during which the milk of one, two, and three cows respectively, and the remaining quantities of malted and fried grain are gradually added to it (see XII, 8, 2, 8-10).

7. There are two Vedis¹ (altar-grounds),—‘Two worlds in truth there are,’ they say, ‘the world of the gods, and the world of the Fathers.’ One (of the Vedis) is in the north, and the other in the south, for the world of the gods is in the north, and the world of the Fathers in the south: by the northern one he secures the world of the gods, by the southern one the world of the Fathers.

8. There are both milk and Surā-liquor; for milk is Soma, and the Surā-liquor food: through the milk he secures the Soma-drink, and through the Surā-liquor food. And milk is the nobility (chieftaincy), and Surā-liquor the peasantry (clan); the milk he purifies after purifying the Surā-liquor: he thus produces the nobility from out of the peasantry, for the nobility is produced from out of the peasantry.

9. With (Vāg. S. XIX, 3), ‘Purified by Vāyu’s

¹ The two Vedis are prepared, in front of the Âhavanīya, by the Adhvaryu and Prati-prasthâtri respectively in a way similar to those required for the Varuṇa-praghâśâh, see part i, p. 392, note. There is some space between them, but not more than will allow a seat to stand on both Vedis (XII, 8, 3, 6). The dimensions (of the northern altar-ground) are in accordance with those of the mahâ-vedi (measuring thirty-six prakramas or steps long, twenty-four on the hind (west) side, and thirty-six (or thirty) on the front (east) side), except that the unit of measure, in this case, is one-third prakrama,—the area being thus equal to one-ninth of the mahâ-vedi (some authorities, however, making it one-third). Behind the two Vedis two mounds (khara) are thrown up for the three cups of milk, or three cups of Surā-liquor respectively, to be deposited thereon. On the northern Vedi an utara-vedi (high-altar), occupying about one-third of its area, is prepared, on which a sacrificial fire (taken from the Âhavanīya) is afterwards laid down for the use of the Adhvaryu in making libations from the cups of milk; another fire being laid down on the southern mound for the use of the Prati-prasthâtri in making libations from the cups of Surā-liquor.

purifier is the backward-flowing, exceeding swift Soma,' he purifies (the liquor¹) in the case of one purged by Soma: in a suitable manner he thus purifies him (the Sacrificer);—'Indra's faithful companion:' whatever energy, or vital power, had passed away from him with that (Soma), that he now restores to him.

10. With, 'Purified by Vāyu's purifier is the forward-flowing, exceeding swift Soma,' he purifies (the liquor) in the case of one who has vomited Soma: in a suitable manner he thus purifies him (the Sacrificer);—'Indra's faithful companion:' whatever energy, or vital power, had passed away from him with that (Soma), that he now restores to him.

11. With (Vāg. S. XIX, 4), 'She purifieth thy liquor,' he, for prosperity, purifies (the Surā) in the case of one wishing for prosperity;—'thy Soma, she, the daughter of Sūrya:' the daughter of Sūrya (the sun) assuredly is Faith, and by faith that (liquor) becomes Soma-juice, and by faith he makes it to be Soma-juice;—'with the perpetual tail,' for with a tail-whisk that (liquor) is purified.

12. With (Vāg. S. XIX, 5), 'The Brahman

¹ This performance thus takes place on the fourth day. Behind the mound of the southern Veda a hole is dug, and an ox-hide spread over it. On this skin the unstrained liquor (parisrut) is either poured, a fine strainer (made of bamboo) being then laid thereon so that the clear liquor percolates through the holes, and the dregs remain below; or the strainer is placed on the skin, and the unstrained liquor is poured on it so as to allow the clear liquor to flow through on the skin. The liquor is then poured into a pan (sata), and further purified by a whisk of cow and horse-hair being drawn through it, or the liquor being strained through the hair.

and Kshatra he purifieth,' he purifies the milk¹: he thus produces the Kshatra from out of the Brahman, for from out of the priesthood the nobility is produced;—'the fiery spirit and energy;' fiery spirit and energy, vital power, he thus bestows on him;—'with the Surā the Soma,' for with the Surā-liquor is Soma;—'the juice, is distilled,' for from the distilled the juice is obtained;—'for joy,' to joy (intoxication), indeed, the Soma-juice contributes, and to joy also does the Surā-liquor: he thus secures both the joy of the Soma, and the joy of the Surā;—'with the pure juice, O god, satiate the deities!' that is, 'with the pure juice satisfy thou the deities;'—'with sap bestow thou food on the Sacrificer,' sap and food he thereby bestows on the Sacrificer. The cups of milk are taken first, then the cups of Surā-liquor: he thereby makes the peasantry obedient to the nobility.

13. With (Vâg. S. XIX, 6), 'Yea, even as the owners of barley cut their barley'. . .,' (the Adhvaryu) fills (three) cups of milk,—barley-stalks are Soma-stems, and milk is Soma-juice: by means of Soma he thus makes it Soma-juice. With a single (verse) he fills them: singly and solely on the Sacrificer he thus bestows prosperity, for milk is prosperity.

14. With (Vâg. S. XIX, 7), 'Separately, indeed, a seat, acceptable to the gods, hath been prepared for you two,' he fills the (three) cups

¹ This takes place on the northern Vedi, by means of a wooden (reed) vessel and a strainer of goat's and sheep's hair.

² For the complete verse, see V, 5, 4, 24.

of Surā-liquor; for separate, indeed, are the Soma-juice and the Surā-liquor; and 'acceptable to the gods' he says, because these two are indeed acceptable to the gods; and 'separately a seat hath been prepared' he says, because there are two altar-grounds;—'do not ye mingle in the highest heaven!' he thereby keeps him (the Sacrificer) from evil;—'the potent Surā-liquor thou art,' he thereby makes Surā to be Surā;—'and this is Soma,' he thereby makes Soma to be Soma;—'entering thine own seat, injure me not!' he thereby turns it (the Surā-liquor) away to its own seat for his own safety. With a single (verse) he fills them: singly and solely on the Sacrificer he thus bestows fame, for the Surā-liquor is fame.

15. Verily, the cups of milk are the nobility (chieftaincy), and the cups of Surā-liquor are the peasantry (clan): thus, were he to draw (the cups) without interlinking them, he would detach the peasantry from the nobility, and the nobility from the peasantry, and would cause confusion between the higher and lower, and a failure of the sacrifice. He draws them so as to be interlinked¹, and thereby combines the peasantry with the nobility, and the nobility with the peasantry, for the prevention of confusion between the higher and lower, and for the success of the sacrifice.

16. And the cups of milk are the vital airs, and the cups of Surā-liquor the body: thus, were he

¹ That is to say, in drawing the cups he draws alternately a cup of milk, and a cup of Surā; Kāty. Śr. XIX, 2, 21. According to ib. 22, the three cups of milk may, however, be drawn first, and then the cups of liquor.

to draw (the cups) without interlinking them, he would detach the body from the vital airs, and the vital airs from the body, and the Sacrificer would be liable to perish. He draws them so as to be interlinked, and thereby combines the body with the vital airs, and the vital airs with the body; and, indeed, he also lays vital power (or life) into him: whence he who has performed the Sautrâmanî, and even he who thus knows this, attains the full (measure of) life.

17. And the cups of milk are Soma, and the cups of Surâ-liquor food: thus, in that both cups of milk and cups of Surâ-liquor are taken, he indeed secures for himself both the Soma-drink and food.

18. And the cups of milk are cattle, and the cups of Surâ-liquor food: thus, in that both cups of milk and cups of Surâ-liquor are taken, he indeed secures for himself both cattle and food.

19. And the cups of milk are domestic animals, and the cups of Surâ-liquor wild animals: thus, in that both cups of milk and cups of Surâ-liquor are taken, he indeed secures for himself both domestic and wild animals. And he mixes the cups of milk with both cultivated and wild-growing (fruit), whereby both cultivated and wild-growing food is secured to the domestic animals.

20. As to this they say, 'In that there are those wild beasts, this is a form of that cruel deity; and if he were to mix the cups of milk with hairs of those beasts, he would thrust the cattle into the mouth of Rudra, and the Sacrificer would be without cattle: let him not mix them, or cattle would not be secured by him, for Rudra is the ruler of animals.' The cups of Surâ-liquor alone he mixes with hairs of those

beasts : he thus puts into the Surâ what belongs to Rudra, whence by drinking Surâ-liquor one becomes of violent (*raudra*) mind ; and on the wild beasts alone he thus directs Rudra's shaft so as to insure safety to the domestic animals ; and cattle are secured by him and he does not thrust the cattle into the mouth of Rudra.

21. [Vâg. S. XIX, 10; 11,] ' That dysentery which spareth both the tiger and the wolf, the winged eagle and the lion, may it spare this (Sacrificer) trouble !—Whereas, as a child, joyfully sucking, I chafed my mother, so now, O Agni, I become freed from my debt : unharmed by me are my parents.'

22. With two eagle-feathers, the Adhvaryu and Pratiprasthâtrî purify the Sacrificer, turned towards the east behind the altar-ground¹, both upwards and downwards,—this is a form of the in-breathing and the upward breathing : the in-breathing and the upward breathing he thereby secures ; for both upwards and downwards this breath passes along the body. With (Vâg. S. XIX, 11), ' Uniting ye are : unite me with happiness²!' he touches the cups of milk : with prosperity and fame he thereby endows him. With, ' Disuniting ye are : disunite me from evil!' he touches the cups of Surâ-liquor : he thereby keeps him from evil.

¹ That is, behind the mahâ-vedi, near the antaḥpâtya-peg, where the purchase of the ingredients for the preparation of the Surâ had taken place.

² Cf. V, 1, 2, 18, where the same two formulas are used whilst the Soma and Surâ-cups are first held together, and then withdrawn from each other ; and the terms '*samprik'*' and '*viprik'*' were accordingly taken in a passive sense, 'united' and 'disunited ;'

EIGHTH ADHYĀYA. FIRST BRĀHMANA.

1. Now, when Indra's energies, or vital powers, departed from him, the gods restored them by means of this very sacrifice. Both cups of milk and cups of Surâ-liquor are filled: they thereby restore to him his energies, or vital powers. On the northern fire they offer (from) the cups of milk, and thereby provide him¹ with the bright liquor, with the Soma-drink.

2. He (the Adhvaryu) offers (of the three cups of milk) with (Vâg. S. XIX, 32), 'By their devotions the buffalos quicken the sacrifice,'—the buffalos, doubtless, are the officiating priests, and devotion is sacrifice: through the priests he causes the sacrifice to prosper, and through the sacrifice the sacrificer²;—'the barhis-seated one, supplied with Surâ and goodly heroes.' supplied with Surâ, indeed, is this barhis-seated sacrifice, to wit, the Sautrâmanî: by means of the barhis (the sacred grass on the Vedit), and the sacrifice, he causes him to prosper;—'they who bestow Soma,'—they thus bestow the Soma-drink upon him;—'with the deities in heaven,'—they thus place him with the deities in heaven;—'may we enjoy ourselves,'—the Soma-juice, indeed, con-

whilst here the active sense seems preferable, the term '*viprik*' probably referring to the tendency of fiery liquor for producing broils.

¹ Or, cause him to prosper, render him successful by means of the liquor; MS. I. O. 311 reads '*samardhayanti*.'

² Or, perhaps, he provides the sacrifice with priests, and the Sacrificer with sacrifice. For obvious reasons the first two pâdas of the verse have been transposed in the translation.

duces to joy, and so does the Surā-liquor : both the joy of Soma and the joy of Surā he thus secures ;— ‘worshipping Indra with good hymns of praise!’—for the hymn of praise is food for the gods, and the sacrifice also is food : by sacrifice, by food, he thus makes him successful. Having sacrificed, they drink (of the milk), and thereby increase what is prosperous with him.

3. He drinks¹, with (Vâg. S. XIX, 34), ‘The (Soma) which the Asvins (brought away) from Namuki, the Āsura,’—for the two Asvins indeed brought away that (Soma-juice) from Namuki ;— ‘and Sarasvati distilled for the sake of Indra’s strength,’—for Sarasvati indeed distilled it for the sake of Indra’s strength ;— ‘that clear, sweet draught,’—for clear and sweet indeed is that draught, Soma ;— ‘King Soma I now drink,’—it is thus king Soma that comes to be drunk by him. The cups of Surā-liquor they offer (from) on the southern fire², and thereby keep him (the Sacrificer) from evil³.

4. He (the Pratiprasthâtṛi) offers (libations from the cups of Surā-liquor⁴), with (Vâg. S. XIX, 33), ‘What essence there is of thine, gathered from the plants,’ for this Surā-liquor, indeed, is the essence

¹ For particulars as to the persons who partake of the respective cups of milk and Surā-liquor, see XII, 8, 2, 22 seqq.

² That is, on the fire of the southern of the two special Vedis, see p. 225, note.

³ Viz. inasmuch as the libations of liquor are not made on the offering-fire proper, the (northern) Āhavanīya, where the oblations from the cups of milk are made.

⁴ These cups are of the same kind as those used for the draughts of Soma, being made of palāśa-wood, and resembling mortars in shape ; cf. part ii, p. 259, note 1, towards the end.

of both the waters and the plants: by the essence of both the waters and the plants he thus causes him to prosper;—‘the strength of the Soma-juice together with the Surâ-liquor,’—he thereby secures what strength there is in the Soma-juice and in the Surâ-liquor;—‘by that exhilarating drink quicken thou the Sacrificer,’—that is, ‘by that exhilarating drink gladden thou the Sacrificer;’—‘Sarasvatî, the Asvins, Indra, and Agni,’—by deities he (the priest) thus causes the sacrifice to prosper, and by deities and sacrifice the Sacrificer. Having made the offering, they drink (the liquor), and thereby cause to prosper what is unprosperous with him.

5. He drinks, with (Vâg. S. XIX, 35), ‘Whatever is mingled herewith of the juicy Soma,’—he thereby secures for him the essence (juice) of the effused (extracted) and the infused¹ (Soma);—‘which Indra drank with eagerness,’—for Indra, indeed, drank it with eagerness;—‘that (essence) thereof (I drink) with propitious mind,’—for unpropitious, as it were, to a Brâhmaṇa is that drink, the Surâ-liquor: having thus made it propitious, he takes it to himself;—‘King Soma I drink,’—it is thus king Soma that comes to be drunk by him.

6. Here, now, other Adhvaryus hire some Râganya or Vaisya with the view that he shall drink that (liquor); but let him not do this; for, indeed, this Soma-drink falls to the share of the fathers and grandfathers of whoever drinks (the liquor²) on

¹ For the distinction between ‘suta’ and ‘âsuta’ (not ‘asuta’), cf. XII, 8, 2, 12.

² According to Kâty. Sr. XIX, 3, 15, some authorities, however,

this occasion. Having shifted three coals of the southern fire to outside the enclosing-stones¹, he may there offer (of the liquor) with these (three) utterances (Vāg. S. XIX, 36) :—

7. 'To the Svadhâ-loving Fathers be Svadhâ, adoration!' he thereby places the Fathers with the Svadhâ in the world of the Fathers.—'To the Svadhâ-loving grandfathers be Svadhâ, adoration!' he thereby places the grandfathers with the Svadhâ in the world of the grandfathers.—'To the Svadhâ-loving great-grandfathers be Svadhâ, adoration!' he thereby places the great-grandfathers with the Svadhâ in the world of the great-grandfathers.

8. Having fetched water, he pours it (into the cups) with, 'The Fathers have drunk:' he thereby bestows food on them;—'the Fathers have enjoyed themselves:' he thereby causes them to enjoy themselves;—'the Fathers have become satisfied:' he thereby satisfies them;—'may the Fathers cleanse themselves!' he thereby purifies all of them from the first downwards, for the Sautrâmanî is a means of purification².

think the inhaling of the fumes of the liquor to be sufficient for this purpose.

¹ The coals are to be placed on the south side of the southern fire, from north to south, and the libation from the Âsvina cup is made on the northernmost coal, that from the Sârasvata cup on the central one, and that from the Aindra cup on the southern one. According to Kâty. XIX, 3, 17, and Mahîdhara on Vāg. S. XIX, 36, this is a fourth alternative of disposing of the liquor (in favour of the Fathers), the others being actual drinking, or smelling it, or hiring some one to drink it.

² At XII, 7, 2, 13 a perforated pot (with a hundred holes) was mentioned as being used at this sacrifice. According to Kâty. Sr.

9. By three implements of purification he purifies,—three in number are these worlds : by means of these worlds he thus purifies him.

10. With 'pāvamānti' (verses) they purify ; for pāvamānti are a means of purification : by a means of purification they thus purify him.

11. With three (verses) they purify each time,—there are three vital airs, the in-breathing, the up-breathing, and the through-breathing : it is by means of these that they purify him.

12. With nine (verses) they purify,—there are nine vital airs : by means of the vital airs they purify him, and when purified they establish him again in the vital airs.

13. They purify by means of a (goat's hair and sheep's wool) strainer,—such a strainer doubtless is a form (symbol) of goats and sheep : by means of goats and sheep they thus purify him.

14. They purify by means of a tail-whisk,—such a tail-whisk doubtless is a form of kine and horses : with kine and horses they thus purify him.

XIX, 3, 20, and Mahādhara on Vāg. S. XIX, 37, use is made of this pot at this juncture in much the same way as is described in V, 5, 4, 27 seqq. ; viz. two poles are driven into the ground north and south of the southern fire, and a bamboo stick laid thereon : on a string fastened to this stick the pot, containing a tail-whisk (for straining) and a piece of gold, is then made to hang over the fire, and the remains of the Surā-liquor poured into it ; and whilst it trickles through into the fire, the priest makes the Sacrificer pronounce the verses Vāg. S. XIX, 37-44, 52-60, addressed to the different kinds of departed ancestors.

¹ That is, verses recited at the Soma-sacrifice whilst the Soma-juice is clarifying ; the term being usually confined to the verses of hymns of the ninth *mandala* of the *Riksamhitā*, whence indeed most of the verses used on this occasion (Vāg. S. XIX, 37-44) are taken.

15. They purify by means of gold,—that (metal), to wit, gold, doubtless is a form of the gods: by means of a form of the gods they thus purify him.

16. They purify him by means of Surâ-liquor, for the Surâ is purified: they thus purify him by that which is purified; and even as the liquor, whilst being purified, is cleared of impure matter¹, so is that Sacrificer thereby freed from all evil who, knowing this, performs the Sautrâmanî, or who even knows this.

17. Here, now, they ask, 'Is the Sautrâmanî to be performed, or is it not to be performed, seeing that (in any case) they continuously repel from him all evil?' As to this Revottaras Sthapati Pá/ava Ā́akra once said, 'Even after making the surrender, one ought certainly to perform the sacrifice; for the Sacrificer is the body of the sacrifice, and the officiating priests are its limbs; and wherever the body is pure there the limbs also are pure; both of them, indeed, purify him, and both of them repel the evil from him: therefore even after making the surrender (of one's own self) one ought certainly to sacrifice.'

18. But, indeed, those who perform at the southern fire, go down to the world of the Fathers. He offers an oblation of ghee: ghee being (material of) sacrifice, it is by sacrifice that they establish themselves in the sacrifice.

19. He (the Sacrificer) offers, with (Vâg. S. XIX, 45), 'The Fathers who, one in form and one in mind, live in Yama's realm,—may their world,

¹ The term 'balkasa' (apparently connected with 'valkala') would seem to mean vegetable matter, esp. chaff or husks. The comm. explains it by 'kidisa' (? kilbisha or kinkasa).

the Svadhā, adoration, and sacrifice prosper among the gods!' he thereby commits the Fathers to Yama, and he also conquers the world of the Fathers. Having, all of them, invested themselves sacrificially¹, they betake themselves to the northern fire, for the northern fire² is this (terrestrial) world³: they thus establish themselves in this world. He offers an oblation of ghee: ghee being sacrifice, it is from out of the sacrifice that they establish themselves in the sacrifice.

20. He (the Sacrificer) offers, with (Vāg. S. XIX, 46), 'Mine own (people) who are one in form and one in mind, living among the living,—may their fortune prosper with me, in this world, for a hundred years!' he thereby secures the good fortune of his own people, and he also confers long life on them. Whilst they hold on to each other, he (the Adhvaryu) offers milk, for milk is vital air and food: in the vital air, in food, they thus finally establish themselves.

21. He offers, with (Vāg. S. XIX, 47), 'Two paths for mortals have I heard of, (that of the Fathers and that of the gods⁴).'—'two paths

¹ That is, by shifting their Brāhmanical cord so as to hang across the breast from the left shoulder to the right hip.

² That is, the fire on the utara-vedi of the northern of the two special Vedis, see p. 225, note.

³ They are supposed to return to the earth from the world of the Fathers below.

⁴ Not only is the second pāda of the verse omitted here (as also in MS. I. O. 311), but the construction of the first half of the verse is also rather peculiar, the most natural rendering being, 'Two paths of the Fathers have I heard of, (those) of the gods and of men.' The same verse occurs *R̥iks.* X, 88, 15 (with the reading 'dve sruṭi' instead of 'dve sṛiṭi'), where Grassmann translates,—

indeed there are,' they say, 'those of the gods and of the Fathers,'—'thereon all that liveth here passeth,' for thereon, indeed, everything living here passes;—'what there is between the father and the mother,'—the father, doubtless, is yonder (sky), and the mother is this (earth): by means of these two he leads the Fathers to the world of heaven. He (the Sacrificer) alone drinks what is left from the offering¹: to himself alone he thus takes prosperity, for milk is prosperity.

22.* He drinks it, with (Vāg. S. XIX, 48), 'May this oblation be productive for me,'—for productive indeed it is, whether it be milk or Soma;—'possessed of ten heroes,'—the ten heroes, doubtless, are the vital airs: vital airs he thus takes to himself;—'possessed of all the troops,'—all the troops, doubtless, are the limbs: it is limbs he thus takes to himself;—'for well-being: breath-winning,'—the breath of life he thus wins;—'race-winning,'—a race (offspring) he thus wins;—'cattle-winning,'—cattle he thus wins;—'place-winning,'—for it is for a place (in heaven) that he sacrifices: it is that he gains;—'safety-winning,'—the (place of) safety, doubtless, is the heavenly world: in the heavenly world he thus finally establishes himself;—'May Agni raise for me abundant offspring,

'Two paths there are, so the Fathers have told me, passable for gods and men;' whilst Ludwig takes it in the way just referred to. The above interpretation is that of Mahidhara, who refers to Sat-Br. I, 9, 2, 3; whilst Sâyana (on *Rîks.*) seems to take the two paths to be that of the Fathers and gods, and that of men (*pitṛnām devânām kotâpi martyânâm ka dve srut dvau mângau*); though he afterwards calls them 'devayâna' and 'pitriyâna.'

¹ That is to say, the milk which remains in the pot (*ukhâ*), from which the milk used for the oblation was taken.

and bestow ye upon us food, milk, and seed!' it is to those (priests) who offer for him that he thus says, 'Bestow ye all this upon me!' By means of gold they cleanse themselves¹; for gold is immortal life: in immortal life they thus finally establish themselves.

SECOND BRÂHMANA.

1. Pragâpati created the (Soma-)sacrifice. He took it and performed it. When he had performed it, he felt like one emptied out. He saw this sacrificial performance, the Sautrâmanî, and performed it, and then he was again replenished; and, indeed, he who performs the Soma-sacrifice is, as it were, emptied out, for his wealth, his prosperity is, as it were, taken from him.

2. Having performed a Soma-sacrifice one ought to perform the Sautrâmanî: as a cow that has been milked would replenish again, even so, indeed, does he replenish himself,—he replenishes himself by offspring and cattle; and, verily, he who, knowing this, performs the Sautrâmanî, or he who (even) knows this, establishes himself in this world, and wins the heavenly world.

3. As to this Suplan Sârṅgaya asked Prati-darsa Aibhâvata², 'Seeing that neither does one

¹ Kâty. Sr. XIX, 3, 27, 'Over the kâtvâla (pit) they cleanse themselves, with their wives, putting gold between;' that is to say, whilst the water is poured on their hands a piece of gold is held between, over which the water flows.

² Cf. II, 4, 4, 3-4, where the latter is called Prati-darsa Svaikna (king of the Svikna), whilst the former, after studying with him, is said to have been called Sahadeva Sârṅgaya.

become initiated, nor are Soma-shoots¹ thrown down (to be pressed), how then does the Sautrāmaṇī become a Soma-sacrifice ?'

4. He replied, 'The observance of the fast, assuredly, is the head of the sacrifice, and the initiation its body. And the truth, doubtless, is of the form of the fast-observance, and faith of that of the initiation. And mind is of the form of the Sacrificer, and speech of that of the sacrifice.'

5. Thus, when he enters upon the fast-observance, he thereby restores the head to the body of the sacrifice, and he puts truth into faith, and the Sacrificer into the sacrifice.

6. Therefore at this sacrifice (the Sautrāmaṇī) the fast-observance² is the initiation. Now, the fast-observance is a male, and the initiation a female; and the truth is a male, and faith a female; and the mind is a male, and speech a female; and the Sacrificer is the male to his wife, whence wherever there is a husband there is a wife: and at the very outset of the sacrifice he thus sets up couples with a view to production.

7. 'And, indeed, those (materials) are the Soma-shoots at this sacrifice,' they say, 'to wit, the malted rice, the malted barley, and the fried rice.'

8. The malted rice³, indeed, is of the form of the

¹ The 'Somāmsava iva' would seem to have here the force of 'Soma-shoots proper,' only substitutes (milk and liquor) being used instead.

² That is to say, the observance of the fast—by which the Sacrificer during the four days of the performance of the Sautrāmaṇī, lives solely on the remains of the Agnihotra—takes the place of the ordinary initiation of the Soma-sacrifice, there being no Dīkshā at the Sautrāmaṇī.

³ The malted rice, malted barley, and fried rice, referred to in

morning-pressing, for the morning-pressing is this (terrestrial) world, and the latter relates to the Asvins, and Âsvina milk he pours (into the Surâ-liquor) the first night: he thus provides him (the Sacrificer ¹) with the morning-pressing—with its own world, with its own deity, with its own form ².

9. And the malted barley is of the form of the midday-pressing, for the midday-pressing is the air, and the latter relates to Sarasvatî ³, and the Sârasvata milk he pours (into the Surâ) the second night: he thus provides him with the midday-pressing—with its own world, with its own deity, with its own form.

10. And the fried rice is of the form of the evening-pressing, for the evening-pressing is the sky, and the latter relates to Indra, and Aindra milk he pours (into the Surâ) the third night: he thus provides him with the evening-pressing—with its own world, with its own deity, with its own form.

11. The milk of one (cow) he pours (into the Surâ) the first night, the milk of two the second

this and the next two paragraphs, refer to the remnants of these materials, not used at first in the preparation of the Surâ, and amounting to one-third of the original quantity of each; these being added successively during the three nights during which the Surâ has to mature; cf. p. 223, note 2.

¹ Or, he renders him, the Sacrificer (or, perhaps, it, the sacrifice), successful by means of the morning-pressing.

² The literal translation would seem to be,—he thus provides him with the respective (sva) world, with the respective deity, and with the respective form,—(hence) with the morning-pressing. It may be remarked, however, that the deities here connected with the three services (the Asvins, Sarasvatî, and Indra) are not those elsewhere associated with them (Vasus, Rudras, and Âdityas, IV, 3, 5, 1; or Agni, Indra, Visve Devâh, XI, 5, 9, 7).

³ Viz. inasmuch as it is full of moisture (saras).

night, and the milk of three the third night : he thus provides him with the pressings, in accordance with their forms, and in accordance with their deities.

12. With (Vâg. S. XIX, 2), 'Hereof pour ye to the juice,' he pours in (the milk) for the sake of (conformity with) the Soma-pressing ;—'(to) the Soma who is the supreme offering,'—for this, to wit, Soma, is indeed the supreme offering (-material) : he thus makes it¹ to be the supreme offering ;—'the manly one who hath rushed into the waters,' for both with water and between it is he (Soma) indeed pressed out ;—'I have pressed out Soma by stones,' for by means of stones Soma is indeed pressed out : it is thus by means of stones he presses it out for the sake of (conformity with) the Soma-pressing.

13. As to this they say, 'That Sautrâmanî surely, is of the form of both effused (extracted) and infused² (Soma) :—to wit, that essence of both water and plants, the milk, is of the form of the effused (Soma) ; and that essence of food, the liquor, is of the form of infused (Soma) : by both (kinds of) pressings he thus expresses it, by both pressings he secures it.

14. As to this they say, 'Seeing that the Soma-juice is pressed out by stones, how as to the Sautrâmanî ?' Let him reply, 'By the directions³ and the

¹ The 'enam' must refer to the Surâ-liquor, treated as identical with Soma.

² I do not quite understand the distinction between 'suta' and 'âsuta' ; cf. XII, 8, 1, 5 ; unless the former be the pure Soma-juice, and the latter that mixed with other ingredients.

³ The 'praisha' are the directions by which the Maitrâvaruṇa calls on the Hotṛi to recite the offering-formulas (cf. part ii, p. 183, note 2). For the fore-offerings of the three victims, these directions are given, Vâg. S. XXI, 29-40. They all commence with 'Hotâ

Āpri-verses;’ for the directions (praisha) are in the *Bṛihatī* (metre), and the pressing-stones are of *bārhaṭa* nature: by means of stones the Soma-juice is indeed pressed out, and by means of stones he now presses it out for the sake of (conformity with) the Soma-pressing.

15. All (the praishas) contain (the word) ‘payas’ (milk), for in the form of milk Soma is (here) pressed¹; they all contain (the word) ‘Soma,’ for the sake of (conformity with) the Soma-pressing; they all contain (the word) ‘parisrut’ (spirituous liquor), for in the form of spirituous liquor Soma is (here) pressed; they all contain (the word) ‘ghṛita’ (ghee), for this—to wit, ghee—doubtless is manifestly a form of the sacrifice: he thus makes it to be manifestly a form of the sacrifice: they all contain (the word) ‘madhu’ (honey), for this—to wit, honey—is manifestly a form of Soma: he thus makes it to be manifestly a form of Soma.

16. They all refer to the *Asvins*², for the sake of healing-power³; they all refer to *Sarasvatī*, for the obtainment of food; they all refer to *Indra*, for the obtainment of energy, or vital power.

17. And, again, as to why they all refer to the *Asvins*, all of them to *Sarasvatī*, and all of them to *Indra*,—these, indeed, were the deities who first

yakṣat’ (may the *Hotri* worship!), and end with ‘payas somas parisrutā ghṛitam madhu vyantv āgyasya hotar yaga’ (milk, Soma, with parisrut-liquor, ghee, honey,—may they partake of the butter, *Hotri* worship!).

¹ ? Literally, ‘by (way of) milk’—or, perhaps, ‘by the admixture of milk—Soma is (here, as it were) produced.’

² In all the directions referred to, the three deities are named.

³ The two *Asvins* are the physicians of the gods. Cf. IV, 1. 5. 8 seqq.; XII, 7, 2, 3.

prepared this sacrifice (the Sautrâmanî): with the help of these deities he thus prepares it: and, besides, he also provides these deities with a share.

18. The invitatory and offering formulas are made continuous¹, and relate to the same deities,—for the sake of continuity and uninterruptedness of the race (offspring). All of them relate to the Asvins, all of them to Sarasvatî, and all of them to Indra: the significance of this is the same as before.

19. The Âpri-formulas² are anush/ubh verses; for the Anush/ubh is speech, and with speech Soma is pressed: he thus presses it with speech, for the sake of (conformity with) the Soma-sacrifice. All of them relate to the Asvins, all of them to Sarasvatî, and all of them to Indra: the significance of this is the same as before.

20. The anupraishas³ (after-directions) are in the

¹ This refers to the puroṣuvâkyâs and yâgyâs of the oblations of omentum (vapâ) of the three victims. For these formulas the three verses, Vâg. S. XX, 67-69, are used in such a way that verse 1 forms the anuvâkyâ, and verse 2 the yâgyâ, of the Asvins' oblation; verse 2 the anuvâkyâ, and verse 3 the yâgyâ, of Sarasvatî's oblation; and verse 3 the anuvâkyâ, and verse 1 the yâgyâ, of Indra's oblation. In each of the three verses all the three deities are mentioned.—In exactly the same way the three verses, XX, 70-72, are used as the anuvâkyâs and yâgyâs of the three parupuroḍâsas; and 73-75 as those of the chief oblations (havis) of meat-portions.

² The Âpri's (propitiatory verses, cf. part ii, p. 185) are the offering-formulas (yâgyâ) of the eleven (or twelve) fore-offerings (prayâga) of the animal sacrifice. Those used on the present occasion are the twelve verses given, Vâg. S. XX, 55-66; there being on this occasion (in the second and third places) fore-offerings both to Tanûnapât and Narâsamsa. In each of these verses, again, all three deities are referred to.

³ I do not exactly know what formulas are thereby referred to.

gâgata metre; for the *Gagati* is this (earth), and by means of her Soma is pressed: by means of her he thus presses it for the sake of (conformity with) the Soma-pressing. All of them relate to the Asvins, all of them to Sarasvati, and all of them to Indra: the significance of this is the same as before.

21. This *Sautrâmanî*, then, is manifestly a Soma-sacrifice; and were the Sacrificer alone to drink (the liquor), it would be either an *ishî*-offering, or an animal sacrifice; but, for the sake of conformity (of the liquor) to the Soma, all the priests drink thereof, for all the priests drink of the Soma-juice.

22. The *Adhvaryus*¹ drink (the contents of) the *Âsvina* (cup), for the Asvins are the *Adhvaryus* of the gods: they thus consume each his own share in his own abode.

23. The *Hotri*, Brahman, and *Maitrâvaruṇa* (drink that) of the *Sârasvata* (cup), for the *Hotri* is the voice of the sacrifice, the Brahman its heart, and the *Maitrâvaruṇa* its mind: they thus consume each his own share in his own abode.

24. The Sacrificer drinks (that of) the *Aindra* (cup), for this sacrifice, the *Sautrâmanî*, belongs to Indra, and even now he who sacrifices has his abode along with Indra: he thus consumes his own share in his own abode.

25. The *Âsvina* cup, indeed, is the eye, the *Sârasvata* one the vital air, and the *Aindra* one

It can hardly be the praishas of the *anuyâgas* (*Vâg. S.* XXI, 48-58), as these are not in the *gagati*, but in the (*ârshi*) *trish/ubh* metre; though certainly each of them contains the names of the three deities.

¹ Viz. the *Adhvaryu*, and his two assistants, the *Pratiprasthâtîr* and *Agnîdh*. Cf. XII, 8, 1, 3 seqq.

speech. From the Âsvina (cup) he pours (the remains) into the Sârasvata one, whereby he combines his eye with the vital airs; from the Sârasvata (cup) into the Aindra one, whereby he combines his vital airs with his speech, and also establishes his vital airs in (the channel of) speech, whence all the vital airs are established on speech.

26. Three (men) drink the Âsvina (cup), to wit, the Adhvaryu, Pratiprasthâtṛi, and Agnidh; for this eye is threefold—the white, the black, and the pupil: he thus bestows on him the eye in accordance with its form.

27. Three (drink) the Sârasvata (cup), the Hotṛi, Brahman, and Maitrâvaruṇa; for threefold divided is this vital air—the in (and out)-breathing, the up-breathing, and the through-breathing: he thus bestows on him the vital air in accordance with its form.

28. Singly the Sacrificer drinks the Aindra (cup), for single is that distinction of the vital airs, speech: singly and solely to himself does he take that distinction, speech; whence he who has performed the Sautrâmanî becomes singly and solely the most distinguished among his own people, and so does even he who knows this.

29. The officiating priests (*ṛitvig*), doubtless, are the seasons (*ṛitu*), and the draughts (of liquor) are the months;—six priests drink, for there are six seasons: by means of the priests he thus secures the seasons.

30. There are twelve draughts¹, and twelve

¹ Viz. inasmuch as three priests partake of each of the first two cups of milk, and of the first two cups of Surâ-liquor, and each priest drinks twice.

months: by means of the draughts he thus secures the months. The priests drink again and again by turns, whence the seasons and months succeed one another by turns.

31. The thirteenth draught the Sacrificer takes, for, indeed, that thirteenth month is manifestly the year itself: it is this he secures by obtaining (that draught). And, indeed, the Sautrāmaṇi is the same as the year, and by means of this he wins everything, and secures everything for himself.

32. There are three victims, for three in number are these worlds: it is these worlds he thereby secures,—to wit, this (terrestrial) world by that of the Asvins, the air by that of Sarasvati, and the sky by that of Indra: he thus wins and secures these worlds for himself in accordance with their (peculiar) form and deity.

33. There are three sacrificial cakes, for there are three seasons: it is the seasons he thereby secures,—to wit, the summer by that of Indra, the rainy season by that of Savitṛi, and the winter by that of Varuṇa: he thus wins and secures the seasons for himself in accordance with their (peculiar) form and deity.

34. There are six cups (of milk and liquor), for there are six seasons: it is the seasons he thereby secures,—to wit, the spring and summer by the two Âsvina (cups), the rainy season and autumn by the two Sârasvata ones, and the winter and dewy season by the two Aindra ones: he thus wins and secures the seasons for himself in accordance with their form and deity.

35. The invitatory and offering formulas are made continuous, and relate to the same deities—

for the sake of the continuity and uninterruptedness of the seasons. They are all of them invitational formulas and all offering-formulas¹, whence all the seasons pass onwards, and all of them return. All (the formulas) are first, all of them intermediate, and all of them last, whence all the seasons are first, all of them intermediate, and all of them last. All the cups have two (formulas, an) invitational and (an) offering-formula,—this is of the form of day and night : it is the day and the night he thus secures for himself : whence both the seasons and the months are established on day and night.

36. The Sautrâmanî, truly, is the same as the year, and the same as the moon ; and the Sacrificer is manifestly the sun : his vedi (altar-ground) is this earth, his utara-vedi the air, his barhis the sky, his officiating priests the quarters, his fuel the trees, his ghœe the waters, his oblations the plants, his fire Agni himself, his samsthâ (the particular form of sacrifice) the year—and, indeed, everything here, whatever there is, is the year ; whence he who has performed the Sautrâmanî wins everything, and secures everything for himself.

THIRD BRÂHMANA.

1. Tvashtri, seeing his son slain, brought Soma suitable for witchery, and withheld from Indra. Indra, committing a desecration of the sacrifice, by main force drank off his (Tvashtri's) Soma-juice. He went asunder in every direction,—from his mouth and vital airs his excellence and fame passed

¹ See p. 244, note 1, where it is shown that each of the three verses serves successively as puro-nuvâkyâ and as yâgyâ.

away, and entered the cattle, whence cattle are one's fame : and famous, indeed, is he who, knowing this, is consecrated¹ by the Sautrāmaṇi.

2. The two Asvins and Sarasvatī then prepared for him this sacrifice, the Sautrāmaṇi, for the purpose of healing him, and thereby consecrated him : thereby he became the highest of gods, and so does he who is consecrated by that (offering) become the highest among his own people.

3. He consecrates him on a black antelope skin ; for the black antelope skin is the sacrifice² : it is at the sacrifice he thus consecrates him ; on the hairy side (of the skin), for the hair is the metres : it is on the metres (or sacred writ) he thus consecrates him.

4. On a throne-seat he consecrates him, for imperial dignity is seated (established) on a throne-seat : by means of imperial dignity he thus causes him to attain imperial dignity.

5. It is made of udumbara wood, for the udumbara (*figus glomerata*) is strength : for the sake of strength he thus is consecrated. It is knee-high, for knee-high is this (terrestrial) world, and it is for (the rule of) this world that the Kshatriya is consecrated ; and the ruler (*kshatra*) indeed he becomes who is consecrated by the Sautrāmaṇi : therefore it is knee-high, and of unlimited size horizontally (in width and depth),—

6. For the throne-seat means royal dignity, and of unlimited prosperity is royal dignity. It is covered with plaited reed-work, for reed-grass is meet for sacrifice. Two of its feet stand on the

¹ Literally, sprinkled, i.e. anointed, with the 'vasā,' or fat gravy obtained from the cooking of the sacrificial animals.

² See part i, p. 23, note 2.

northern, and two on the southern altar-ground¹, for the northern vedi is this (terrestrial) world, and the southern one the world of the Fathers: he thus consecrates him for both worlds.

7. Concerning this, Gaurīviti Śāktya, knowing this, once said, 'Like rulers², assuredly, we shall be in yonder world!' Perhaps³ it was *Rīshabha Yāgñatura*, king of the *Svikna*, who had told him so.

8. He places the throne-seat, with (*Vāg. S. XX, 1*), 'Thou art the womb of the *Kshatra*, thou art the navel of the *Kshatra*!' for it indeed is the womb and navel of the *Kshatra* (ruling power).

9. He then spreads the black antelope skin thereon, with, 'May it not injure thee! do not

¹ For the two special Vedis, see p. 225, note 1.

² 'A kind of *Kshatriyas*,' Delbrück, *Altind. Synt.*, p. 494.

³ For this or some such meaning ('probably'—German, 'wohl' or 'vielleicht') which seems to me to suit best the use of '*sarvat*' in the *Brāhmanas*, see part iii, p. 98, note 2.—Thus, at I, 2, 3, 2, I would now translate 'and perhaps it was *Trita* who slew him,--*Indra* at all events was exonerated from that (guilt), for he is a god.' Similarly, I, 8, 1, 4, 'perhaps it was a *ghasha*, for that (fish) grows best (fastest);' II, 2, 1, 2, 'If, on the other hand, that oblation were not offered up in him, he would perhaps burn either the *Adhvaryu*, or the *Sacrificer*.' Somewhat peculiar is the passage, I, 6, 3, 10, where *sarvat* occurs both in the relative and in the demonstrative clause, and where we can hardly translate otherwise than 'If, perchance, he had said, "Grow thou, the foe of *Indra*!" he (*Vṛātra*) would perhaps have slain *Indra*.'—*Hätte er vielleicht (etwa) gesagt: "Wachse, du Feind Indras!" so würde er (Vṛātra) vielleicht (? gewiss) Indra erschlagen haben.*—If this be the right interpretation of these passages, they would have to be transferred, in the *St. Petersburg Dict.*, from meaning b (?) to c, where 'vielleicht' would have to be added, as it certainly suits better than 'gewiss' (most likely) the last of the foregoing passages, at all events. The comm. explains '*sarvat*' by '*bahukrīvāḥ*.'

injure me!' for the black antelope skin is the sacrifice: (thus it is spread) for the safety of the sacrifice and his own self.

10. He then mounts it, with a verse to Varuṇa (Vâg. S. XX, 2), for Varuṇa is the king of the gods: by means of his own deity he thus consecrates him¹,—'He hath sat down, the upholder of the sacred law, Varuṇa, in the home-steads, for supreme rule, he the wise!'

11. He then throws down a gold and a silver plate (beneath his feet, the silver one beneath the left foot) with, 'Protect (me) from death!' (the gold one beneath the right foot² with,) 'Protect (me) from lightning!' The Virâḡ, doubtless, is the rain, and of this there are these two terrible forms, lightning and hail; of these the gold plate is of the form of lightning, and the silver one of that of hail: against these two deities he affords protection to him, whence he who has performed the Sautrâmanî has no fear of these two deities, as he also who thus knows this.

12. He consecrates him by sprinkling him with the fat gravy of the sacrificial animals, for the gravy of the animals means excellence: with that excellence, the essence of cattle, he thus sprinkles him. But that gravy is also the highest kind of food: with the highest kind of food he thus sprinkles him.

13. There are hoof-cups (of gravy), for on hoofs cattle support themselves: he thus causes him to obtain a support. There are thirty-three (such)

¹ Cf. V, 4, 4, 5, where the verse is explained.

² Or, on the head, according to others. The plates are of the usual round shape.

cupfuls, for thirty-three in number are all the deities: by means of all the deities he thus consecrates him. He offers them with *gagati* verses, for animals are of *gâgata* (movable) nature: by means of the *Gagati* he thus secures cattle for him. With sixteen verses (*Vâg. S. XIX, 80-94*) he offers, for animals are of sixteen parts: he thus bestows excellence (or prosperity) on him part by part.

14. 'With lead the wise, with wool and thread' the sages weave the web, the sacrifice: the *Asvins*, *Savitri*, *Sarasvati*, and *Varuna* healed the form of *Indra*². Each time he has offered two (cupfuls) together, he pours the residue into a bowl (*sata*): he thereby establishes the days and nights, the half-months, the months, and the seasons in the year, and hence these days and nights, half-months, months, and seasons are established (contained) in the year.

15. The bowl is made of reed, for the reed has its birth-place in the waters, and the waters are all the deities: by means of all the deities he thus consecrates him.

16. A rubbing down (of the Sacrificer) with all manner of sweet-smelling substances takes place (before sprinkling him with fat), for such a rubbing down with all manner of sweet-smelling substances means supreme fragrance: with fragrance he thus consecrates (anoints) him.

17. He sprinkles him (with the fat gravy) in front while (himself) looking towards the back (west), for

¹ See p. 219, note 3.

² Only the first *pāda* of this, the first of the sixteen verses, is given in the text. Regarding the allusions in this verse, see XII, 7, 1, 10 seqq.; 2, 17; 7, 3, 3.

from the front food is visibly eaten. On every side (he sprinkles him) whilst moving round : he thus bestows food on him from all quarters, whence food is secured from all quarters by him who has performed the Sautrāmāṇi, or even by him who thus knows this.

18. With a formula to the Asvins he sprinkles him first¹, then with one to Sarasvatī, then with one to Indra : it is by means of these deities he thus consecrates him. Now, some consecrate him by means both of these deities and those utterances, 'bhûḥ, bhuvaḥ, svar,' 'for,' say they, 'these utterances ("earth, air, heaven") mean all this (universe) : it is by means of all this (universe) we thus consecrate him.' Let him, however, not do so, but let him only consecrate him by means of those deities, for those deities, indeed, are all this (universe).

19. He consecrates him prior to the Svishṭakṛt (offering), for the Svishṭakṛt is the Kshatra : he thus consecrates him by means of the Kshatra (or, by a Kshatriya). And he consecrates him between (the oblation to) the Lord of the Forest² and the

¹ According to Kāty. Sr. XIX, 4, 14-17, he sprinkles him up to the mouth, letting it flow down on all four sides; and with each sprinkling he pronounces one of the formulas, first, the Sāvitra one, Vāg. S. XX, 3, 'At the impulse of God Savitṛi (I consecrate) thee by the arms of the Asvins, and the heads of Pūshan!' followed by the Âsvina one, 'with the healing medicine of the Asvins I sprinkle thee for energy and holy lustre!' and the Sârasvata one, 'with the healing medicine of Sarasvatī I sprinkle thee for vigour and food!' Then a fourth time with a formula referring to all the deities (or with the three great utterances), or with the Aindra text, 'With Indra's power I sprinkle thee for strength, for excellence, and for fame!'

² For this oblation, see III, 8, 3, 33; IV, 5, 2, 11; in both cases it is followed immediately by the oblation to Agni Svishṭakṛt.

Svishṭakṛit, for the lord of the forest (or the tree) is Soma, and the *Svishṭakṛit* (maker of good offering) is Agni; he thus consecrates him after encompassing him by Agni and Soma; whence both those who know, and those who do not, say, 'A Kshatriya is the consecrator of a Kshatriya ¹.'

20. They then lift him up² knee-high, then navel-high, then as high as the mouth; for the *Vâgapeya* doubtless is the same as the consecration, and the *Sautrâmani* is a consecration; and even as there, at the *Vâgapeya*, he (the Sacrificer) mounts the sacrificial stake³, like that is this rite.

21. As to this they say, 'But, surely, he who is consecrated by the *Sautrâmani* moves away from this world.' Well, he descends again upon the black antelope skin, and, the black antelope skin being the sacrifice, he thus finally establishes himself on the sacrifice.

22. [He descends⁴, with *Vâg. S. XX, 10.*] 'Firmly⁵ I establish myself in the Kshatra (lordship), in royal sway,'—in lordship and royal sway he thus establishes himself so as not to lose lordship and royal sway;—'firmly in horses I establish

¹ Kshatriyo rāgño-bhishektâ bhavati, pûrvam hi rāgaiva vrâddha/kumâram kâbhishiñkatîty arthah; comm.

² According to *Kâty. Sr. XIX, 4, 19-21*, the *Adhvaryu* first touches him, with (*Vâg. S. XX, 4*), 'Thou art Ka, thou art Katama, —to Ka thee!' and the Sacrificer replies, 'O thou of good fame! O most propitious one! O true king!' and touches his limbs one after another with *XX, 5-9*.

³ See part iii, p. 32 (*V, 2, 1, 9 seqq.*).

⁴ That is, when the throne-seat has been lowered again, he rises from it and stands on the deer-skin.

⁵ The function of 'prati' here seems to be to strengthen the preposition in the verb 'prati-tishṭhâmi.'

myself, and in kine,'—in the midst of horses and kine he thus establishes himself so as not to lose horses and kine;—'firmly in the limbs I establish myself, and in the body,'—in the limbs and in the body he thus establishes himself so as not to lose his limbs and his body;—'firmly in the vital airs I establish myself, and in prosperity,'—in the vital airs and in prosperity he thus establishes himself so as not to lose the vital airs and prosperity;—'firmly in heaven and on earth I establish myself, and in the sacrifice,'—he thus establishes himself in these two, heaven and earth, within which is all this (universe).

23. He¹ then sings a Sâman (hymn-tune), for the Sâman means lordship (kshatra): with lordship he thus consecrates him; or the Sâman means imperial sway: by means of imperial sway he thus causes him to attain imperial sway. And, indeed, the Sâman is the essence of all the Vedas: he thus consecrates him with the essence of all the Vedas.

24. He sings it on a *bṛīhati* verse², for established on the *Bṛīhati*, as his excellence and foundation,

¹ According to the commentator on Kāty. XIX, 5, 1, the Brahman sings, whilst Lāty. V, 4, 16–19 gives directions from which the Udgâtri would seem to be expected to perform this duty. When the Sacrificer is being anointed, the Udgâtri is to step between the (northern and southern) fires and, as soon as he is called upon by the Adhvaryu, he is to commence the Sâman. It would probably depend on the Brahman's previous studies, whether or not he was sufficiently conversant with the complicated details of the hymnology.

² Viz. Vâg. S. XX, 30 (*Rīks*. VIII, 89, 1). 'To Indra, O Maruts, sing ye the great (hymn), most destructive to Vṛātra, whereby the promoters of sacred rites produced the light, the wakeful god for the god.'

that sun shines¹: he thus establishes him on the *Bṛihati*, as his excellence and foundation.

25. He sings it on a *bṛihati* verse relating to Indra, for this sacrifice, the *Sautrāmāṇi*, belongs to Indra, and even now he who sacrifices has Indra for his support: he thus consecrates him on his own support (or resting-place).

26. And as to why (these hymns) are called 'bracers²;' it is because by means of these *Sāmans* the gods braced Indra up to energy, or vital power: in like manner do the officiating priests, by means of these *Sāmans*, brace the Sacrificer up to energy, or vital power. 'Samsravase, visravase, satyasravase, sravase³'—these are the *Sāmans*: they proclaim

¹ Professor Weber, *Ind. Stud.* VIII, p. 42, refers to a parallel passage in *Tānḍya-Br.* VII, 4, 7:—'By means of the *Bahishpavamāna* (of the morning service) the gods carried off *Āditya*, the sun, to heaven; but he did not stop there. At midday they then fixed him by means of the *Bṛihati*, and for this reason the *Bṛihati* metre is used for the *Pavamāna-stotra* at the midday service.'

² Literally, sharpeners or sharpenings (*samsāna*).

³ These words—apparently meaning 'for fame all round, for fame far and wide, for true fame, for fame' (or, perhaps, 'for hearing, or, rather, being heard of all round.' &c.)—are used to form the *finales* (*nidhana*) in which all the priests are to join; cf. *Sāmav.*, Calc. ed., I, pp. 533-4, where the figured text is given. According to *Kāty.* XIX, 5, 4-5; *Lāty.* V, 4, 19, the words, 'samgityai, vigityai, satyagityai, gityai' (for complete victory, victory far and wide, &c.), and 'sampushyayai, vipushyayai,' &c. (for complete prosperity, &c.), are to be used instead, in the case of a *Kshatriya* and *Vaisya* respectively, either optionally or necessarily. Though these four words are here, and elsewhere, spoken of as so many different *Sāmans*, only the last of them ('*sravase*') forms the *finale* of a *Sāman* in the ordinary sense of the word; the others being merely combined with certain musical ejaculations, or expletives (*stobhas*). All the four '*Sāmans*' begin with the same phrase (varying only in the verb)—'*sam tvā hinvanti* (*rinanti*,

him in these worlds. There are four *finales*, for there are four quarters : they thus establish him in all the quarters. All (the priests) join in the *finale* : with one mind they thus bestow excellence upon him.

27. As to this they say, 'Seeing that this Sāman is sung, wherein then does the recitation (uktha) of this Sāman consist, and what is its foundation ; for unsuccessful is what is chanted unless it be followed by a recitation ?'

28. 'Thrice eleven are the gods;' this, indeed, is the recitation¹ belonging to that Sāman, this its foundation.

29. Or he (the Adhvaryu) takes a thirty-third cupful (of gravy), with (Vāg. S. XX, 11-12¹), 'Thrice

tatakshur, sisanti) dhītibhiḥ,' i.e. 'they make thee up (or urge thee on) with prayers,' serving as a kind of prelude (prastāva) the single words of which are given among the Stobhas (Sāmav., Calc. ed., II. p. 522, last line), as, indeed, the words 'samsrava-e,' &c., themselves are (ib., p. 520). In the first three Sāmans this phrase is followed by the *finale* consisting of the respective characteristic word preceded by the Stobha 'auhovā.' In the last Sāman, on the other hand, the introductory phrase is followed by the choral setting of the verse 'Bṛihad indrāya gāyata' (see p. 255, n. 2), which, in its turn, is followed again by the first phrase, with a slightly modified modulation, ending with 'auhovā sravase.' Whilst joining in the *finale*, the priests, according to Lāṭy. V, 4. 17, are to lay their hands on the head of the Sacrificer.

¹ According to Kāty. Śr. XIX, 4. 24 ; 5, 8 seq. ; 7, 1 seq., the thirty-third libation of gravy is taken with the text, XX, 32, 'yo bhūtānām adhipatiḥ (he who is the over-lord of creatures),' &c. ; whilst, on the conclusion of the Sastra, or Hotṛ's recitation, the Sacrificer offers the libation from that last cup with XX, 11-12, and drinks the remainder with XX, 13. The Sastra, recited in response to the Sāman, consists of the section of eleven verses, Vāg. S. XX, 80-90, the first and last verses of which are recited thrice ; whilst the 'āhāva' (somsāvom, 'let us praise, om !') is inserted by him before each triplet of the remaining nine verses. The two verses used whilst the Sacrificer offers (XX, 11-12) are likewise recited by the

eleven are the gods,'—for there are indeed thrice eleven gods;—'three-and-thirty, bountiful,'—for there are thirty-three gods;—'with *Bṛihaspati* for their Purohita,'—*Bṛihaspati* is the Brahman (n.) : he thus means to say, 'With the Brahman for their Purohita (family-priest);'—'at the impulse (sava) of the god *Savitri*,'—that is, 'impelled by the god *Savitri*;'—'may the gods protect me through the gods!' for the gods indeed consecrate him through the gods.

30. 'The first with the second,'—for the first (gods, on earth) consecrate him along with the second ones (in the air);—'the second with the third,'—for the second ones consecrate him along with the third ones (in the sky);—'the third with¹ the truth,'—for the third ones consecrate him with the truth;—'the truth with the sacrifice,'—for the truth consecrates him with the sacrifice;—'the sacrifice with sacrificial texts,'—for the sacrifice consecrates him with sacrificial texts;—'sacrificial texts with hymn-tunes,'—for sacrificial texts (yagus) consecrate him along with hymn-tunes;—'hymn-tunes with hymn-verses,'—for hymn-tunes consecrate him along with hymn-verses (*ṛik*);—'hymn-verses with invitatory verses,'—for hymn-verses consecrate him along with invitatory verses;—'invitatory verses with offering-verses,'—for invitatory verses consecrate him along with offering-verses;—'offering-verses with *Vashat*-calls,'—for offering-verses consecrate him

Hotri, as a 'nivid,' being either added at the end of the Sastra, or inserted before the ninth or tenth verse; the whole recitation thus consisting of seventeen verses.

¹ *Mahidhara* takes the instrumental throughout as a sociative (*saha satyena*).

along with Vasha/-calls;—'Vasha/-calls with oblations,'—for Vasha/-calls consecrate him along with oblations;—'May the oblations render successful my wishes! bhûh! svâhâ!—having thus consecrated him by means of those deities from first to last, he thus, by means of oblations, renders all his wishes successful. Having then solicited an invitation from the officiating priests, he (the Sacrificer) drinks ¹ (the remains of the cup of vasâ), for the officiating priests are the seasons: it is thus in the seasons that he solicits an invitation.

31. He drinks it, with (Vâg. S. XX, 13), 'My hair is endeavour², my skin submission and approach³, my flesh inclination, my bone wealth, and my marrow submission,'—for he who is consecrated by the Sautrâmāzi enters the worlds and among the deities; he now has himself invited amongst them⁴, and thus he arises (in the other world) complete, with a whole body, and with (all) limbs.

NINTH ADHYĀYA. FIRST BRÂHMĀNA.

1. Verily, from this sacrifice the man⁵ is born:

¹ According to Kâty. XIX, 5, 9, the priests themselves first smell the remainder of the fat gravy, with the text (XX, 34). 'The protector of my breath thou art,' &c. Cf. also XIV, 2, 2, 42, with note.

² The use of 'prayati' in this sense (here and Vâg. S. XVIII, 1) is peculiar; being apparently derived from 'pra-yam,' one would expect it to have some such meaning as 'offer, gift.' This and the other predicates, according to Mahîdhara, are to show the state of feeling of beings towards the (royal) Sacrificer. The repetition of 'ânati' (bowing, prostration, submission) is strange. A strong alliterative cadence is noticeable in the verse.

³ ? Hardly 'return' here; rather, perhaps, 'attaining to (the other worlds),' or, possibly, 'the turning to him, gathering round him (of the people).'

⁴ ? Or, he now calls these to himself in the meantime.

⁵ That is, the Purusha, Agni-Pragâpati; and the Sacrificer.

and whatever food a man consumes in this world, that (food), in return, consumes him in yonder world. Now this sacrifice is performed by means of spirituous liquor, and spirituous liquor (*parisrut*) is not to be consumed by a Brâhmaṇa : he thus is born from that which is not (to be) consumed, and the food does not, in return, consume him in yonder world. Therefore this (sacrifice), the *Sautrâmaṇi*, is a Brâhmaṇa's sacrifice¹.

2. The malted rice is the same as his (the man's) hair, the malted barley his skin, the fried rice his flesh, the filtering-cloth his bones, the mash his marrow, the raw liquor (*parisrut*) his life-sap (*serum*), the seasoning (and fermentative substances) his blood, the milk his seed, the mature liquor (*surâ*) his urine, and the impure matter the contents of the stomach.

3. Indra's cake is his heart, that of *Savitri* his liver, that of *Varuṇa* his lung, the *asvattha* and *udumbara* vessels his kidneys, the *nyagrodha* one his bile, the pan (*sthâli*) his intestines², the supernumerary (vessels) his bowels², the two eagle feathers² the milt, the throne-seat his navel, the pot his rectum, the (pan) perforated with a hundred holes, the male organ,—and inasmuch as that (pan) is much perforated, therefore that organ is much divided,—the bowl (*sata*) is his mouth, the strainer

¹ That is, because to a man of another caste the spirituous liquor would not be 'anâdyâ,' but consumable, and hence it would consume him in the other world.

² The two terms 'ântrâṇi' and 'gudâḥ' are usually taken as synonymous; the latter term probably means the lower or larger intestines; cf. *Vâg. S.* XIX, 86.

³ See XII, 7, 3, 22.

his tongue, the dish (kâpya) his anus, the tail (whisk) his bladder.

4. And the sacrificial animal of the Asvins is his limbs, that of Sarasvatî his trunk, Indra's bull his form,—whence they say that man's form (wealth) is king,—the gold (plate) is his vital strength; it is of the weight of a hundred (grains), whence man has a life of a hundred (years).

5. The two cups of the Asvins are his eyes, and the ground wheat and kuvala (jujubes) his eye-lashes; the two cups of Sarasvatî are his nostrils, and the ground Indra-grain and badara (jujubes) the hair in his nostrils; the two cups of Indra are his ears, and the ground barley and karkandhu (jujubes) the hair of his ears and his eyebrows.

6. And the hairs of wolf are the hair on his abdomen and that below; and the hairs of tiger are the hair on his chest and that of his armpits; and the hairs of lion are the hair of his head and his beard.

7. There are three sacrificial animals, for this body of man consists of three parts: it is the body he thereby wins (in heaven) for him;—what is below the navel (he wins) by that of the Asvins, what is above the navel and below the head by that of Sarasvatî and the head itself by that of Indra: both as to its (bodily) form and as to its deities he thus delivers his own self from death, and makes it immortal.

8. There are three sacrificial cakes, for this life of man consists of three parts: it is life he thereby wins for him;—the early life (he wins) by that of Indra, the middle (part of) life by that of Savitrî, and the last (part of) life by that of Varuṇa: both as to its (bodily) form and as to its deities he thus delivers his life from death, and makes it immortal.

9. There are six cups (of milk and liquor), for there are these six (channels of) vital airs in the head: it is the vital airs he thereby wins for him;—his eyes (he wins) by the two (cups) of the *Asvins*, his nostrils by those of *Sarasvati*, and his ears by those of *Indra*: both as to its (bodily) form and as to its deities he thus delivers his own self from death, and makes it immortal.

10. The invitory and offering-formulas are made continuous¹, and relate to the same deities—for the continuity and uninterruptedness of the vital airs. They are all of them invitory formulas and all offering-formulas, whence all the vital airs pass onwards and all of them backwards. All (the formulas) are first, all of them intermediate, and all of them last, whence all the vital airs are first, all of them intermediate, and all of them last. All the cups have two (formulas, an) invitory and (an) offering-formula,—this is of the form of the in (and out)-breathing and the up-breathing: it is the in-breathing and the up-breathing he thus secures for himself, and therefore all the vital airs are established on the in-breathing and the up-breathing.

11. Verily the *Sautrāmaṇi* is this body (of man): the Sacrificer is the mind, (that is) speech manifestly; the *vedi* (altar-ground) is the trunk, the *uttara-vedi* (high-altar) offspring, the *barhis* (grass-covering) cattle, the officiating priests the limbs, the fuel the bones, the ghee the marrow, the fire the mouth, the oblation is food, and the concluding rite is life, whence he who has performed the *Sautrāmaṇi* attains life.

¹ See p. 244, note 1.

12. And, verily, these two men that seem to be in the eyes, they belong to the Asvins, and the black (in the eye) belongs to Sarasvatī, and the white to Indra; and in that, when the victim of the Asvins is being (offered), he makes offering to these deities in common, thereby he puts those (parts of the body) together and takes them to himself.

13. Indra, assuredly, is the mind, Sarasvatī speech, and the two Asvins are the ears. Now, whatever one thinks in his mind of that he speaks with his speech, and what he speaks with his speech that one hears with one's ears: thus, in that, when the victim of Sarasvatī is being (offered), he makes offering to these deities together, thereby he puts these (parts of the body) together and takes them to himself.

14. Indra, assuredly, is the breath, Sarasvatī the tongue, and the two Asvins the nostrils; and inasmuch as through (the channel of) the breath (prāṇa) one introduces (prāṇī) food into himself that is the reason of its being (called) 'prāṇa.' By means of the tongue one distinguishes the essence (taste) of food, and the nostrils, indeed, are the path of the breath; and in that, when the victim of Indra is being (offered), he makes offering to these deities in common, thereby he puts those (parts of the body) together and takes them to himself.

15. Indra, assuredly, is the heart, Savitrī the liver, and Varuṇa the lung; and in that, when Indra's cake is being (offered), he makes offering to these deities in common, thereby he puts those (parts of the body) together and takes them to himself.

16. Savitrī, assuredly, is the breath, Varuṇa the

through-breathing, and Indra the generative organ; and whatever food one eats by means of (the channel of) the breath through that he breathes with his through-breathing, and by means of the generative organ he sheds the essence of food as seed; and in that, when Savitri's cake is being (offered), he makes offering to these deities in common, thereby he puts those (parts of the body) together and takes them to himself.

17. Varuṇa, assuredly, is the womb, Indra the seed, and Savitri the generator of the seed; and in that, when Varuṇa's cake is being (offered), he makes offering to these deities in common, thereby he puts those (parts of the body) together and takes them to himself. And whosoever thus knows this comes into being along with these deities, and is born again (so as to be) along with these deities; he increases in offspring and cattle; he becomes firmly established in this world, and wins the heavenly world, whosoever, knowing this, performs the Sautrāmaṇi, or whosoever thus knows this.

SECOND BRĀHMAṆA.

1. Having performed the sacrifice they betake themselves to the purificatory bath; for after a Soma-sacrifice they do betake themselves to the purificatory bath, and the Sautrāmaṇi is the same as the Soma (sacrifice).

2. [He plunges the mash-pot into the water, with Vāg. S. XX, 14-18¹,] 'Whatever contumely

¹ Of the first three verses the text quotes only the first pāda, the rest having been supplied in the translation.

against the gods, O divine gods, we have committed, from that sin may Agni deliver me; may he deliver me from all trouble!—he thereby delivers him from the sin committed against the gods.—‘Whether by day, whether by night we have committed sins, from that sin may Vāyu deliver me; may he deliver me from all trouble!’—he thereby delivers him from whatever sin he commits by day and night.—‘Whether waking, whether in sleep we have committed sins, from that sin may Sūrya deliver me; may he deliver me from all trouble!’—what is awake is men, and what is asleep is the Fathers: he thus delivers him from guilt against men and Fathers.

3. ‘Whatever sin we have committed in the village, in the forest’—for either in the village or in the forest sin is committed: therefrom he delivers him;—‘whatever in the assembly’—from the sin of the assembly he thereby delivers him;—‘whatever in our organs of sense’—from the sin against the gods he thereby delivers him;—‘whatever against the Sūdra or the Arya, whatever against the right of any one, thereof thou art the expiation,’—from all that sin he thereby delivers him.

4. ‘That we swear by the Inviolable Waters’, by Varuṇa, therefrom deliver us, O Varuṇa!’—he thereby delivers him from sin against Varuṇa.—[He then immerses the pot, with Vâg. S. XII, 18;

¹ Cf. III, 8, 5, 10, where the text varies slightly—‘That they say, we swear by the Inviolable (cows, or waters), by Varuṇa, therefrom deliver us, O Varuṇa!’

19.] 'O laving bath, laving thou glidest along,'—the bath, indeed, is that whirlpool (now produced) in the water, and that indeed is either Varuṇa's son or brother: it is him he thereby praises;—'with the help of the gods have I expiated' the sin committed against gods,'—he thereby expiates the sin committed against gods;—'with the help of mortals that committed against mortals,'—he thereby expiates the sin committed against mortals;—'preserve me, O God, from injury from the fiercely-howling (demon)!' whereby he means to say, 'Protect me against all afflictions!'

5. 'In the ocean, in the waters, is thy heart,'—for the ocean is the waters, and water is sap: with that sap he thus supplies him;—'may the plants and waters unite with thee!'—he thereby supplies him with both kinds of sap, that which is in plants, and that which is in water.—He goes two steps northward from out (of the water): for as much as the step is the briskness in man: with what briskness there is in him he thus leaves evil behind him.

6. With, 'May the waters and plants be friendly unto us!' he takes water in his joined hands; for water is a thunderbolt: he thus makes a covenant with the thunderbolt;—and with, 'May they be unfriendly unto him who hateth us, and whom we hate!' let him sprinkle it in whatever direction he who is hateful to him may be, and he thereby discomfits him.

7. With (Vāg. S. XX, 20), 'As one set free (is liberated) from the stake, as he who sweateth

¹ Cf. II, 5, 2, 47; IV, 4, 5, 22, where the formula has 'ava ayāśisham' (correct,—'with the help of the gods have I wiped out the sin committed against the gods') instead of 'ava yakshi.'

(is cleansed) from filth by bathing, as the ghee is purified by the strainer, so may the waters cleanse me from sin!' he causes his garment to float away: even as one would pluck out a reed from its sheath, so he plucks him from out all evil. He bathes, and (thereby) drives the darkness (of sin) from himself.

8. [He comes out ¹, with Vâg. S. XX, 21,] 'From out of the gloom have we risen,'—gloom is evil: it is gloom, evil, he thus keeps away;—'beholding the higher light²,'—this (terrestrial) world is higher than the water: it is on this world he thus establishes himself;—'God Sûrya, with the gods, the highest light,'—Sûrya, the highest light (*gyotis*), is the heavenly world: it is in the heavenly world he thus finally establishes himself. He walks along without looking back, and approaches the Âhavanīya,—

9. With (Vâg. S. XX, 22), 'Along the waters have I gone this day,'—the essence of the waters he thereby secures for himself;—'with their essence have we united,'—the essence of the waters he thus takes to himself;—'rich in sap, O Agni, have I come: do thou unite (supply) me with splendour, with offspring, and with wealth!' he thereby invokes a blessing.

10. With (Vâg. S. XX, 23), 'A kindler thou art:

¹ Having put on fresh garments, the Sacrificer and his wife are led out by the *Unnetri*, the mantra being muttered at the same time; and they then return with the priests to the offering-ground, whilst the *Âmatrīyâ*-hymn (on *Rig-veda* S. VIII, 48, 3, 'we have drunk Soma . . .') is sung: see part ii, p. 385, note 2; *Kāty. Śraut.* X, 9, 7.

² Mahidhara takes 'svar' in the sense of 'svarga,' heaven; whilst the *Brāhmaṇa* seems rather to take it as referring to the earth or dry land on which the Sacrificer now steps.

may we prosper¹! he takes a kindling-stick, for a kindler of Agni (the fire) the kindling-stick indeed is. With, 'Enkindling thou art, fire thou art: lay thou fire into me!' he puts the kindling-stick on the Âhavanîya: he thereby kindles the fire, and, thus kindled, it kindles him with fire (energy)².

11. Being about to offer a pap to Aditi³, he prepares it: Aditi being this (earth), he who offers Aditi's (pap) performs the sacrifice on this (earth), and by offering firmly establishes himself thereon. The sacrificial fee is a milch cow (with calf): the milch cow being this (earth), he milks out from the latter all his desires. The calf he gives away at the former (pap-offering to Aditi⁴), and the mother-cow at the latter; for when a calf sucks the mother-cow, the latter gives milk when she is given away, and from her, when given away, he thus milks all his desires.

12. As to this they say, 'Surely, he who goes down to the water for the purificatory bath falls away from this world!' Well, when he has come out from the bath, he offers a dish of curds to Mitra and Varuṇa; now Mitra is this (terrestrial) world,

¹ The text of the formula 'edho-sy edhishîmahî' is evidently meant to suggest a connection (real or alliterative) between 'edha' (root 'indh') and the final verb (root 'edh').

² According to Kâty. XIX, 5, 20, and Mahîdhara, he now offers on the kindling-stick an oblation of ghee, with the text, Vâg. S. XX, 23, 'Hither come the earth, the dawn, the sun, and all this world.'

³ See p. 213, note 2.

⁴ This offering takes place at the beginning of the performance of the Sautrâmanî, cf. Kâty. Sr. XIX, 1, 5-10. The dish of curds which according to this paragraph is to follow the second pap to Aditi, may, according to Kâtyâyana, be offered before it.

Varuṇa yonder world, and the dish of curds is what there is here between (those two): thus, when he offers the dish of curds to Mitra and Varuṇa, he establishes himself in these worlds. And Mitra, indeed, is the in-breathing, Varuṇa the off-breathing, and the dish of curds the food: thus when he offers the dish of curds to Mitra and Varuṇa, he finally establishes himself in the vital air, in food.

THIRD BRÂHMANA.

1. Now, Dush/āritu Paumsāyana had been expelled from the kingdom which had come down to him through ten generations; and the *Sriṅgayas* also expelled Revottaras Pātava Kākra Sthapati.

2. He said to Dush/āritu Paumsāyana, 'I will perform the Sautrāmaṇi for thee, and will confer upon thee that dominion over the *Sriṅgayas*.'—'So be it!' he replied. So he performed it for him.

3. Now Balhika Prâtipiya, the Kauravya king, heard (people say) this—'There is that Dush/āritu Paumsāyana who has been expelled from the kingdom which has come down to him through ten generations: for him that Kākra Sthapati wants to perform the Sautrāmaṇi and to confer upon him the dominion over the *Sriṅgayas*.'

4. He said, 'I will just tell him that if he wants to confer dominion upon him, he will indeed exclude him from dominion.' He came to him at that particular time (of the sacrifice) when the cups (of milk and liquor) are drawn.

5. He said, 'Sthapati Kākra, they say, Surā-liquor must not be offered in the Āhavanīya-fire, nor anywhere else than in the Āhavanīya: if thou offerest

Surâ-liquor in the Âhavantya thou wilt cause social confusion and a repetition in the sacrifice¹, and if anywhere else than in the Âhavantya thou wilt exclude him (the king) from dominion, and wilt neither place him in dominion, nor confer dominion upon him.'

6. He replied, 'I shall not offer Surâ-liquor in the Âhavantya nor anywhere else than in the Âhavantya : thus I shall not cause social confusion nor a repetition in the sacrifice, and shall not exclude him from dominion ; I shall place him in dominion, and shall confer dominion upon him.'

7. He said, 'How, then, wilt thou do it?' He then told him this:—At first, indeed, that Yagñā (sacrifice, m.), the Sautrāmanī, was with the Asuras. He went forth towards the gods. He came to the waters, and the waters welcomed him, whence people welcome a better man when he comes to them. They said to him, 'We pray thee, come, reverend sir!'

8. He said, 'Nay, I am afraid : lead ye me forward!'—'Whereof art thou afraid, reverend sir?' they asked.—'Of the Asuras,' he said.—'Be it, then!' they said. 'The waters led him forward, whence he who is the protector leads forward him who is afraid ; and inasmuch as the waters led him forward (pra-nī) therefore the waters (themselves) are 'led forward : ' this is the reason why they are (called) *Pranītāh*² ; and, verily, firmly established is he who thus knows that nature of the *Pranītāh*.

¹ Probably inasmuch as the cups of milk are offered there previously.

² For this jarful of consecrated water, used at the sacrifice, see part i, pp. 9, note ; 265.

9. Now, the fore-offerings had been performed, but the fire had not been carried round¹ (the oblations), when the Asuras came after him. By means of the circumambient fire the gods shut out their hostile rivals, the Asuras, from Yagña (the sacrifice); and in like manner does this one now, by means of the circumambient fire, shut out his spiteful enemy from the sacrifice.

10. Verily, that Âhavanīya is the womb (seat) of the gods, and those two fires² on either side thereof are its immortal wings: thus, when they perform the sacrifice on the Âhavanīya, they indeed perform the sacrifice for the gods in the womb of the gods; and, verily, the continued sacrifice inclines to him, and the sacrifice is not cut off from him who thus knows this, or for whom, knowing this, this sacrificial rite is performed.

11. On the northern fire they offer (libations from) the cups of milk, on the northern fire they cook the sacrificial animals: the sacrificial animals, whilst being mortal, he thus places in the immortal womb, and them that are mortal he causes to be born (again) from out of the immortal womb; and, verily, whosoever thus knows this, or he for whom, knowing this, this sacrificial rite is performed, wards off the recurring death of his cattle, and the sacrifice is not cut off from him.

12. On the southern fire they offer (libations from) the cups of Surâ-liquor, near the southern fire

¹ On the ceremony called 'paryagnikaravam,' see part i, p. 145, note; part ii, p. 187, note.

² See p. 225, note 1. Properly speaking, the two fires of the two special Vedīs are in front (or, rather, north-east and south-east) of the Âhavanīya.

they purify (the liquor) with triple strainers: the Fathers, whilst being mortal, he thus places in the immortal womb, and them that are mortal he causes to be born (again) from out of the immortal womb; and, verily, whosoever thus knows this, or he for whom, knowing this, this sacrificial rite is performed, wards off the recurring death of the Fathers, and the sacrifice is not cut off from him.

13. Now, inasmuch as these two fires are taken from the *Āhavanīya*, they are *Āhavanīyas* (offering-fires), and inasmuch as they do not again reach the *Āhavanīya*, they are not *Āhavanīyas*: he thereby obtains both kinds of oblations, that which is (offered) on the *Āhavanīya*, and that which is (offered) on what is not an *Āhavanīya*—both what is offered and what is not offered.

He (*Balhika Prātipiya*) then went home, and said, 'It is not so (as we had thought): that kingdom of the *Sriṅṅgayas* now belongs to *Dushṭaritu*;—in such and such a manner has that *Ā́akra Sthapati* this day performed at the sacrifice.'

14. On the northern fire they thus perform the rites of the sacrificial animals, the (animal) cakes, and the cups of milk, and what other (rite) there is: it is the gods, in the world of the gods, he thereby gratifies, and, thus gratified, they gratify him, and he wins the world of the gods.

15. In the southern fire they offer (libations from) the cups of *Surā*-liquor, near the southern fire they purify (the liquor) with triple strainers: it is the Fathers, in the world of the Fathers, he thereby gratifies, and, thus gratified, they gratify him, and he wins the world of the Fathers.

16. Verily, the *Sautrāmanī* is the same as the

body, whence it is (clearly) defined, for defined is the body. And (Indra) Vayodhas (the bestower of strength) is the world, whence he is undefined¹, for undefined is the world. The Sautrāmaṇi is the body (trunk), and the Aindra (victim) and (the one to) Vayodhas² are the two arms; and inasmuch as there are those two animal offerings on both sides (of the Sautrāmaṇi), therefore these two arms are on both sides of the body. And as the sacrificial animal, so the sacrificial stake; and inasmuch as there are those two stakes on both sides of the stake of the Sautrāmaṇi (bull of Indra), therefore these two arms are on both sides of the body³.

¹ The term 'vayodhas' is said to be undefined inasmuch as, though it is meant to apply to Indra, the name of this god is not mentioned along with it in the formulas.

² During the performance of the Sautrāmaṇi proper (on the fourth day) three victims are immolated, a he-goat to the Asvins, a ram to Sarasvatī, and another bull to Indra. But at the beginning of the whole performance—either before or after the first pap to Aditi (cf. XII, 9, 2, 11)—a bull is sacrificed to Indra; and at the end—after the second pap to Aditi and the dish of curds to Mitra and Varuṇa (see p. 252, note 4)—another animal sacrifice is performed to Indra Vayodhas. The sacrificial stakes for the first and last of the three victims sacred to Indra, are to be placed north and south of that of Indra's second bull, the one sacrificed as part of the Sautrāmaṇi proper.

³ The object of identifying different ceremonial acts and features with certain parts of the body is of course to impress upon the mind of the Sacrificer the efficacy of the Sautrāmaṇi in securing to him a new, complete body for the other life.

THIRTEENTH KĀṆḌA.

THE ASVAMEDHA, OR HORSE-SACRIFICE.

PRELIMINARY CEREMONIES¹.

FIRST ADHYĀVA. FIRST BRĀHMANA.

1. He (the Adhvaryu) cooks the priests' mess of rice²: it is seed he thereby produces. Having greased a rope with the ghee which is left over³, he takes it; for ghee is (a type of) fiery spirit, and the horse is sacred to Pragâpati⁴: he thus endows Pragâpati with fiery spirit. Impure, and unfit for sacrifice, indeed, is that (animal), to wit, the horse.

2. The rope consists of darbha grass (*poa cynosuroides*):—for darbha stalks⁵ are a means of purification: he thus purifies that (horse), and immolates it as one purified and meet for sacrifice.

3. Now, when the horse⁶ was immolated, its

¹ The ceremonies treated of in the first six chapters (*brâhmanas*) refer to the setting apart of the horse for its sacred office, a year before the sacrifice, and to the intervening period during which the horse is allowed to roam about, though under careful supervision.

² For further particulars regarding this opening ceremony of the sacrifice see XIII, 4, 1, 1 seqq.

³ Viz. from the ghee used for greasing the four dishes of cooked rice.

⁴ Or, the horse is of the nature of Pragâpati.

⁵ See above, p. 195, note 1.

⁶ That is, as would seem, Pragâpati in the form of a horse, see part iv, introd., p. xiv seqq.

seed went from it and became gold¹: thus, when he gives gold (to the priests) he supplies the horse with seed.

4. *Pragâpati* produced the sacrifice². His greatness departed from him, and entered the great sacrificial priests³. Together with the great priests he went in search of it, and together with the great priests he found it: when the great priests eat the priests' mess of rice, the Sacrificer thereby secures for himself the greatness of the sacrifice. Along with the priests' mess of rice he presents gold (to the priests); for the mess of rice is seed, and gold is seed: by means of seed he thus lays seed into that (horse, and Sacrificer). It (the gold⁴) weighs a hundred (grains); for man has a life of a hundred (years), and a hundred energies: it is life, and energy, vigour, he lays into his own self. At midday he takes *Vasativarî*⁵ water of four kinds; it is brought together from the (four) quarters, for food is in (all) the (four) quarters, and water is food: by means of food he thus secures food for him.

¹ *Pragâpati* is Agni, and gold is Agni's seed, cf. II, 1, 1. 5: III, 3, 1, 3 &c.

² That is, the *Asvamedha* sacrifice, and thus the immolation (or emptying out) of his own self, so to speak.

³ That is, the four principal officiating priests, *Brahman*, *Hotri*, *Adhvaryu*, and *Udgâtri*. Cf. VIII, 4, 3, 1 seqq., where it is the vital airs that, in their capacity as *Rishis*, assist *Pragâpati* in the first sacrifice.

⁴ That is to say, each piece of gold weighs as much. According to *Kâty.* XX, 1, 6 he is to give to the priests 4000 cows and as many *Satamâna* coins.

⁵ For this water used for the *Soma*-sacrifice where, however, it is taken from a cistern, or some course of flowing water, see part ii, p. 222 seqq.

SECOND BRĀHMANA.

1. Now, unsuccessful in the sacrifice, assuredly, is what is performed without a formula. (With Vāg. S. XXII, 2,) 'This rope did they take, at the first age of the truth, [the sages, at the rites: it hath been with us at this Soma-sacrifice, declaring the course in the gaining of the truth], he takes the halter of the horse in order to supply a formula for the success of the sacrifice. It (the rope) is twelve cubits long,—twelve months make a year: it is the year, the sacrifice¹, he secures.

2. Concerning this they say, 'Is the rope to be made twelve cubits long, or thirteen cubits long?' Well, that year is the bull among the seasons, and the thirteenth (or intercalary) month is an excrescence of the year: and this *Āsvamedha* is the bull among sacrifices; and inasmuch as the bull has an excrescence (hump), one may add on a thirteenth cubit to the rope as an excrescence to this (*Āsvamedha*): even as the bull's hump is attached² (to his back), suchlike would this be.

3. [He puts the halter on the horse, with Vāg. S. XXII, 3, 4.] 'Encompassing³ thou art,'—

¹ Or, possibly, it is for the space of a year that he secures the sacrifice, but see part iv, introduction, p. xxiii.

² Lit., spread out.

³ Some such meaning as this (or perhaps 'encompassed, encircled') seems to be assigned by the author to 'abhidhāḥ,' with evident reference to 'abhidhānī,' 'halter,' from 'abhi-dhā,' 'to fasten, enclose.' The St. Petersburg Dict., on the other hand, takes it in the sense of 'naming, denoting' (? inasmuch as the horse gives the name to the horse-sacrifice); whilst Mahidhara explains it by 'that which is named or praised.'

therefore the offerer of the *Asvamedha* conquers all the quarters¹;—‘the world thou art,’—the world he thus conquers;—‘a ruler thou art, an upholder,’—he thus makes him a ruler and upholder;—‘go thou unto Agni Vaisvânara,’—he thus makes him go to Agni Vaisvânara (the friend of all men);—‘of wide extent,’—he thus causes him to extend in offspring and cattle;—‘consecrated by Svâhâ (hail!),’—this is the *Vasha*-call² for it;—‘good speed (to) thee for the gods!’—he thus makes it of good speed for the gods;—‘for Praṇâpati,’—the horse is sacred to Praṇâpati: he thus supplies³ it with his own deity.

4. But, verily, he who fetters the horse without announcing it to the Brahman and the gods is liable to incur injury. He addresses the Brahman (the superintending priest) by saying, ‘O Brahman, I will fether the horse for the gods, for Praṇâpati: may I prosper therewith!’ and having made the announce-

¹ In epic times the *Asvamedha* is commonly performed by kings who have been successful in the ‘*digvijaya*,’ or conquest in all quarters.

² ‘*Vasha*’ is the sacrificial call uttered by the *Hotri* at the end of the ‘*yâgyâ*,’ or offering-verse of a regular oblation (*âhuti*) as distinguished from minor libations, such as *homas* and *âghâras*, which require no ‘*yâgyâ*,’ and for which the sacrificial call—marking the pouring out of the libation into the fire—is ‘*svâhâ*!’ The meaning of ‘*vasha*’ is doubtful; but it would seem to be connected either with the root ‘*vaksh*,’ to grow, to wax, or with ‘*vah*,’ to bear; and would thus mean either ‘may it prosper!’ or ‘may he (Agni) bear it (to the gods)!’ By the mention of the *Svâhâ* in our formula the horse is, as it were, marked as dedicated to the gods.

³ Or, perhaps, he causes it to succeed by means, or with the help, of its own deity.

ment to the Brahman, he ties up the horse, and thus incurs no injury. 'Fetter it for the gods, for Pragâpati: prosper thou therewith!' thus the Brahman urges him, and supplies it (the horse) with its own deity. He then sprinkles it (with water): the (symbolic) meaning of this is the same as before¹.

5. He sprinkles² it, with (Vâg. S. XXII, 5), 'I sprinkle thee (so as to be) acceptable to Pragâpati,'—for Pragâpati is the most vigorous of the gods: it is vigour he bestows on it, whence the horse is the most vigorous of animals.

6. 'I sprinkle thee, acceptable to Indra and Agni,'—for Indra and Agni are the most powerful of the gods: it is power he bestows on it, whence the horse is the most powerful of animals.

7. 'I sprinkle thee, acceptable to Vâyu,'—for Vâyu is the swiftest of gods: it is speed he bestows on it, whence the horse is the swiftest of animals.

8. 'I sprinkle thee, acceptable to the All-gods,'—for the All-gods are the most famous of gods: it is fame he bestows on it, whence the horse is the most famous of animals.—'I sprinkle thee, acceptable to all the gods.'

9. Concerning this they say, 'Seeing that the horse is sacred to Pragâpati, wherefore (does he say), "I sprinkle thee" for other deities also?' Well, all the gods are concerned in the horse-sacrifice;

¹ For the sprinkling of (the material for) oblations see I, 1, 3, 6 seq.; and an animal victim in particular, III, 7, 4, 3.

² According to Kâty. XX, 1, 37, he goes with the horse to stagnant water, and there sprinkles it. It would seem that the horse stands in the water during this ceremony.

when he says, 'I sprinkle thee for all the gods,' he makes all the gods take a concern in the horse-sacrifice; whence all the gods are concerned in the horse-sacrifice. But his wicked enemy seeks to lay hold of him who performs the horse-sacrifice, and the horse is a thunderbolt;—having killed the four-eyed dog, he—with 'Undone' is the man! undone is the dog!—plunges² it under the horse's feet: it is by means of the thunderbolt

¹ Mahîdhara explains 'paraḥ' by 'parâbhûtaḥ, adhaspadam nîtaḥ,' i.e. defeated, laid low. Perhaps it may mean, 'Away is the man, away the dog!' As given in the Vâg. Samh., this is only the last part of the formula, pronounced by the Sacrificer; whilst during the killing of the dog, he is made to say, 'Whosoever seeketh to slay the steed, him Varuṇa besetteth.'—According to Kâty. XX, 1, 38 seqq., the priest says to an Âyogava (the offspring of a Sûdra father and a Vaisya mother)—or, to a lewd man, according to others—'Kill the four-eyed dog!' whereupon the man kills a dog by means of a club of Sidhraka wood; and (the priest?), by means of a rattan hoop (? or mat, kaṭa, comm. kaṭaka), makes the dead dog float beneath the horse. According to the comment. on Kâty. XX, 1, 38, in case a four-eyed dog—i.e. a (two-faced) one 'yasya dve mukhe' and hence looking in the four (intermediate) directions (vidis), Sây.—is not available (!), a dog with marks about the eyes should be used. The mention of the 'four-footed' dog in the formula is, however, doubtless meant merely symbolically, as representing evil threatening the Sacrificer from every quarter.

² Harisvâmin seems to connect this with the sprinkling of the horse itself—prokshanam suna upaplâvanam ukṣate—perhaps in the sense that the water flowing down from the sprinkled horse would soak the dog, in which case the horse would apparently be supposed to stand on the dry ground. See, however, comm. on Kâty. XX, 2, 2, 'Svânam asvasyâdhaḥpradese galamadhye plâvayati târayati.' The 'offerings of drops' to be performed immediately after this ceremony might seem to be offered with reference to the drops of water flowing from the horse, and as it were falling outside the sacrifice; but see paragraph 5.

he thus stamps him down; and the wicked enemy does not lay hold of him.

THIRD BRÂHMANA.

1. Even as some of the havis (offering-material) may be spilled before it is offered, so also (part) of the victim is here spilled in that they let loose the sprinkled (horse) before it is slain. When he offers the Stoktyâs (oblations of drops), he offers that (horse) as a complete offering¹—so as to make good any spilling²; for unspilled is any (part) of the offered (material) that is spilled. A thousand (oblations of drops) he offers for the obtainment of the heavenly world, for the heavenly world is equal in extent to a thousand.

2. Concerning this they say, 'Were he to offer measured (a specified number of oblations), he would gain for himself something limited:' he offers unspecified (oblations) for the obtainment of the unlimited. And indeed Praḡâpati spake, 'Verily, upon the oblations of drops I establish the Asvamedha, and by it, when established, I pass upward from hence.'

3. [He offers, with Vâg. S. XXII, 6,] 'To Agni, hail!'—to Agni he thus offers it (the horse³);—'to Soma, hail!'—to Soma he thus offers it;—'to the joy of the waters, hail!'—to the waters he thus offers it;—'to Savitṛi, hail!'—to Savitṛi

¹ Cf. I, 1, 4, 3; 3, 3, 16 seqq.; IV, 2, 5, 1 seqq.

² Lit., for non-spilling, i.e. to neutralise any spilling that may have taken place.

³ Harisvâmin seems rather to lay the stress on the direct object:—agnaye param evâsvam guhoti na kevalam âgyam. The context, however, does not admit of this interpretation.

he thus offers it;—‘to Vâyu, hail!’—to Vâyu (the wind) he thus offers it;—‘to Vishṇu, hail!’—to Vishṇu he thus offers it;—‘to Indra, hail!’—to Indra he thus offers it;—‘to Brihaspati, hail!’—to Brihaspati he thus offers it;—‘to Mitra, hail!’—to Mitra he thus offers it;—‘to Varuṇa, hail!’—to Varuṇa he thus offers it:—so many, doubtless, are all the gods: it is to them he offers it. He offers them straight away¹ for the obtainment of the heavenly world, for straight away, as it were, is the heavenly world.

4. But, verily, he who offers the oblations straight away, would be liable to fall (pass) right away²: he turns back again³, and establishes himself in this (terrestrial) world. And this⁴ indeed he (Prajâpati) has declared to be the perfection of the sacrifice, so as to prevent falling away (spilling), for unspilled is what is spilled of the offered (material).

5. And even as some of the offering-material may be spilled before it is offered, so also (part) of the

¹ According to Kâty. XX, 2, 3-5, he offers either a thousand oblations, or as many as he can offer till the dripping of the water from the horse has ceased. For every ten oblations he uses the formulas here given, after which he begins again from the beginning. The ‘straight on’ apparently means that he is neither to break the order of the deities, nor to offer more than one oblation at a time to the same deity.

² That is, he would die: ‘praitīty arthaḥ.’ Comm. The St. Petersburg Dict., on the other hand, takes ‘īśvaraḥ pradaghaḥ’ in the sense of ‘liable to fall down headlong’ (abstürzen).

³ That is, by commencing the ten oblations again from the beginning.

⁴ Viz. repetition of performance,—etām eva ka sa prajāpatiḥ āvṛttimattām yagñasya samsthitiṁ (uvāka). On repetitions in the chanting of stotras, see III, 2, 5, 8; cf. also XII, 2, 3, 13.

victim is here spilled in that they let loose the sprinkled (horse) before it is slaughtered. When he offers (the oblations relating to) the Forms¹ (*rûpa*), he offers that (horse) as one that is wholly offered, so as to make good any spilling; for unspilled is what is spilled of the offered (material). With (*Vâg.S. XXII, 7-8*), 'To the Hiñ-call, hail! to the (horse) consecrated by Hiñ, hail!...

¹ These forty-nine oblations performed after the letting loose of the horse, are called *Prakramas* (i.e. steps, or movements); cf. XIII, 4. 3, 4; *Kâty. XX. 3. 3*.—*Harisvâmin* remarks, *asvarûpânâm hinkârâdinâm nishkramazâtîmikâ* (1) *rûpâkhyâ âhutaya uk-yante, tâ evâura prakramâ iti vakshyante*.

² These (rather pedantic) formulas, all of them ending in 'svâhâ,' occupy two *Kandikas* of the *Saṃhitâ*, consisting of 24 and 25 formulas respectively:—1. To the hinkâra, svâhâ! 2. To the one consecrated by 'hiñ' hail! 3. To the whinnying one, hail! 4. To the neighing, hail! 5. To the snorting one, hail! 6. To the snort, hail! 7. To smell, hail! 8. To the (thing) smelled, hail! 9. To the stabled one, hail! 10. To the resting one, hail! 11. To the clipped one, hail! 12. To the prancing one, hail! 13. To the seated one, hail! 14. To the lying one, hail! 15. To the sleeping one, hail! 16. To the waking one, hail! 17. To the groaning one, hail! 18. To the awakened one, hail! 19. To the yawning one, hail! 20. To the untethered one, hail! 21. To the upstarting one, hail! 22. To the standing one, hail! 23. To the starting one, hail! 24. To the advancing one, hail! 25. To the trotting one, hail! 26. To the running one, hail! 27. To the bolting one, hail! 28. To the flighty one, hail! 29. To the geecho, hail! 30. To the one urged on by geecho, hail! 31. To the prostrate one, hail! 32. To the risen one, hail! 33. To the swift one, hail! 34. To the strong one, hail! 35. To the turning one, hail! 36. To the turned one, hail! 37. To the shaking one, hail! 38. To the shaken one, hail! 39. To the obedient one, hail! 40. To the listening one, hail! 41. To the looking one, hail! 42. To the one looked at, hail! 43. To the out-looking one, hail! 44. To the winking one, hail! 45. To what it eats, hail! 46. To what it drinks, hail! 47. To the water it makes, hail! 48. To the working one, hail! 49. To the wrought one, hail!

(he offers them); for these are the forms (qualities) of the horse: it is them he now obtains.

6. Concerning this they say, 'The Forms are no offering: they should not be offered.' But, indeed, they also say, 'Therein assuredly the horse-sacrifice becomes complete that he performs (the oblations relating to) the Forms: they should certainly be offered.' And, indeed, one puts that (Sacrificer) out of his resting-place, and raises a rival for him when one offers for him oblations elsewhere than in the fire¹, where there is no resting-place.

7. Prior to the (first) oblation to Savitṛi², he (the Adhvaryu) offers, once only, (the oblations relating to) the Forms³ in the Āhavanīya, whilst going rapidly over (the formulas): he thus offers the oblations at his (the Sacrificer's) resting-place, and raises no rival for him. He offers at each opening of sacrifice⁴, for the continuity and uninterrupted performance of the sacrifice.

8. Concerning this they say, 'Were he to offer

¹ According to Kāty. XX. 3. 3, the Prakramas are to be offered in the Dakṣhīṇāgni; but our Brāhmaṇa, whilst mentioning, at XIII, 4, 3, 4, both that fire, and the horse's footprint as optional places of offering, there as well as here decides in favour of the Āhavanīya; whence Harisvāmin remarks:—*anyatrāgner iū anvāhāryapaṭane vāsvapade vā parilikhite vakshyamānakalpāntara-nindā*.

² See XIII. 1, 4, 2.

³ That is to say, without repeating them, when he has come to the end, as he did in the case of the 'oblations of drops.' Nor are they to be repeated day after day throughout the year, as some of the other offerings and rites are.

⁴ Viz., according to Harisvāmin, at (the beginning of) the *dikshatīyā*, *prāyanīyā*, *ātithyā*, *pravargya*; the *upāsads*, *agnishomīya*, *sutyā*, *avabhr̥tha*, *udayanīyā*, and *udavasānīyā* offerings (*ishā*). This view is, however, rejected by the author.

at each opening of sacrifice, he would be deprived of his cattle, and would become poorer.' They should be performed once only: thus he is not deprived of his cattle, and does not become poorer. Forty-eight (oblations) he offers:—the *Gāgati* consists of forty-eight syllables, and cattle are of *Gāgata* (movable) nature: by means of the *Gāgati* he (the *Adhvaryu*) thus wins cattle for him (the *Sacrificer*). One additional (oblation) he offers, whence one man is apt to thrive amongst (many) creatures (or subjects).

FOURTH BRĀHMAṆA.

1. *Pragāpati* poured forth the life-sap of the horse (*asva-medha*)¹. When poured forth, it went straight away from him and spread itself over the regions. The gods went in quest of it. By means of offerings (*ish/i*) they followed it up, by offerings they searched for it, and by offerings they found it. And when he performs *ish/is*, the *Sacrificer* thereby searches for the horse (*asva*) meet for sacrifice² (*medhya*).

2. They (the *ish/is*)³ belong to *Savitri*; for *Savitri* is this (earth): if any one hides himself thereon, if any one goes elsewhere⁴, it is on this

¹ Or, as it might also be translated, *Pragāpati* produced (created) the *Asvamedha*.

² Or, for the horse full of life-sap; or, simply, the sacrificial horse.

³ Viz. three oblations of cakes on twelve *kapālas* to *Savitri* *Prasavitri*, *Savitri* *Āsavitri*, and *Savitri* *Satyaprasava* respectively. For particulars see XIII, 4. 2, 6 seqq.

⁴ *Harisvāmin* seems to take this in the sense of 'who moves about elsewhere (in another sphere),' and mentions, as an instance, a bird which flies in (? up into) the air—*pakshyādir antarikshe gakkhati*—but is ultimately caught on earth.

(earth) that they find him; for no one (creature), whether walking erect or horizontally (like an animal), is able to go beyond it. Their belonging to Savitri thus is in order to find the horse.

3. Concerning this they say, 'Surely the horse disappears when it goes straight away; for they do not turn (drive) it back'.¹ Now when he performs the *Dhṛiti* offerings² in the evening—*dhṛiti* (keeping) meaning peaceful dwelling, and the night also meaning peaceful dwelling—it is by means of peaceful dwelling that he keeps it; whence both men and beasts rest peacefully at night. And when he performs offerings in the morning, he seeks that (horse); whence it is in daytime that one goes to seek for what is lost. And again when he offers the *Dhṛitis* in the evening, and the (*Savitri*) *ishṭis* in the morning, it is security of possession the Sacrificer thereby brings about, whence security of possession is brought about for the subjects where this sacrifice is performed.

FIFTH BRĀHMAṆA.

1. But, indeed, distinction, royal sway, departs from him who performs the horse-sacrifice: and when a man attains to distinction, the lute is played to him. Two Brāhmanical lute-players sing (and play) for a year; for that—to wit, the lute—is a form (attribute) of distinction: it is distinction they thus confer upon him.

¹ See XIII, 4, 2, 16.

² The four *Dhṛitis* are performed on the *Āhavaniya* after sunset on the first day; cf. XIII, 4, 3, 5. For the four formulas used with these oblations ('here is joy,' &c.), see XIII, 1, 6, 2.

2. Concerning this they say, 'Were both to be Brāhmaṇas who sing, noble rank (or political power) would depart from him; for he—to wit, a Brāhmaṇa—is a form of the priestly office; and the nobility takes no delight in the priestly office (or priesthood).

3. 'And were both to be Rāganyas (nobles), spiritual lustre would depart from him; for he—to wit, the Rāganya—is a form of noble rank, and spiritual lustre takes no delight in noble rank.' One of those who sing is a Brāhmaṇa, and the other a Rāganya; for the Brāhmaṇa means priestly office, and the Rāganya noble rank: thus his distinction (social position) comes to be guarded on either side by the priesthood and the nobility.

4. Concerning this they say, 'Were both to sing by day, his distinction would be apt to fall away from him: for that—to wit, the day—is a form of the priestly dignity; and when the king chooses he may oppress (despoil) the Brāhmaṇa, but he will fare the worse (or, become the poorer) for it.

5. 'And if both (were to sing) at night, spiritual lustre would fall away from him; for that—to wit, the night—is a form of the nobility, and spiritual lustre takes no delight in the nobility.' The Brāhmaṇa sings by day¹, and the Rāganya at night²; and thus, indeed, his distinction comes to be guarded on either side by the priesthood and the nobility³.

6. 'Such sacrifices he offered,—such gifts he gave!' such (are the topics about which) the

¹ Viz. at the fore-offerings of the three cake-offerings (*ish/sis*) to *Savitrī*, whilst staying in the south part of the sacrificial ground.

² Viz. during the performance of the *Dhṛtis* after sunset.

³ The 'iti' at the end belongs to the following paragraph.

Brāhmaṇa sings¹; for to the Brāhmaṇa belongs the fulfilment of wishes²: it is with the fulfilment of wishes he (the Brāhmaṇa) thus endows him (the Sacrificer). 'Such war he waged,—such battle he won!' such (are the topics about which) the Rāganya sings; for the battle is the Rāganya's strength: it is with strength he thus endows him. Three stanzas the one sings, and three stanzas the other, they amount to six,—six seasons make up a year: he thus establishes (the Sacrificer) in the seasons, in the year. To both of them he presents a hundred; for man has a life of a hundred (years), and a hundred energies: it is vitality and energy, vital power, he confers upon him.

SIXTH BRĀHMAṆA.

1. [The Adhvaryu and Sacrificer whisper in the right ear of the horse, Vāg. S. XXII, 19³.] 'Plenteous by the mother, strengthful by the father,'—its mother, doubtless, is this (earth), and its father yonder (sky): it is to these two he commits it;—'a horse thou art, a steed thou art,'—he thereby instructs it, whence clever subjects (or children) are born to him;—'a courser (atya) thou art, a charger thou art,'—he therewith leads it beyond (ati), whence the horse goes beyond (surpasses) other animals, and whence the horse attains to pre-eminence among animals;—'a runner thou art, a racer thou art, a prize-winner thou

¹ Cf. XIII, 4, 2, 8.

² The author apparently takes 'ish/āpūrta' in the sense of either 'sacrifice and fulfilment,' or 'the fulfilment of (the objects of) sacrifice.' Cf. Weber, Ind. Stud. IX, p. 319; X, p. 96.

³ See XIII, 4, 2, 15.

art,'—in accordance with the text is (the meaning of) this;—'a male thou art, well-disposed towards man, thou art,'—this is with a view to its (or, his) being supplied with a mate;—'Speedy thou art called, Child thou art called,'—this is the horse's favourite name: by its favourite name he thus addresses it; whence even if two enemies¹, on meeting together, address one another by name, they get on amicably together.

2. 'Go thou along the way of the Âdityas!'—to the Âdityas he thus makes it go. 'Ye divine guardians of the quarters, protect this horse, sprinkled for sacrifice to the gods!'—the guardians of the quarters are a hundred princes born in wedlock: to them he commits it;—'here is joy: here let it rejoice! here is safe keeping, here is its own safe keeping, hail!' For a year he offers the (four Dhṛiti) oblations²—(amounting to) sixteen nineties, for they are the horse's chain³, and it is therewith alone that he chains it; whence the horse when let loose returns to its chain: (they amount to) sixteen nineties⁴; for these (oblations of safe keeping) are the horse's chain, and it is therewith alone that he chains it, whence the horse, when let loose, does not (entirely) abandon its chain.

3. Verily, the Asvamedha means royal sway: it is after royal sway that these strive who guard the horse. Those of them who reach the end become

¹ Harisvâmin, perhaps rightly, takes 'âmitrau' in the sense of 'amitrayoḥ putrau,' 'the sons of two enemies.'

² See note on XIII, 4, 3. 5.

³ Or, place of confinement, stable,—'bandhanasthânam.' Harisv.

⁴ That is, four times 360.

(sharers in) the royal sway, but those who do not reach the end are cut off from royal sway. Wherefore let him who holds royal sway perform the horse-sacrifice; for, verily, whosoever performs the horse-sacrifice, without possessing power, is poured (swept) away.—Now, were unfriendly men to get hold of the horse, his sacrifice would be cut in twain, and he would become the poorer for it. A hundred men clad in armour guard it for the continuity and uninterrupted performance of the sacrifice; and he will not become the poorer for it; (but if it be lost) they should fetch another (horse), and sprinkle ~~it~~ this is the expiation in that case.

SEVENTH BRĀHMAṆA.

THE INITIATION OF THE SACRIFICER.

1. Praṣāpati desired, 'Might I perform a horse-sacrifice?' He toiled and practised fervid devotion. From the body of him, when wearied and heated, the deities departed in a sevenfold way: therefrom the Dīkshā (initiation) was produced. He perceived those Vaisvadeva² (oblations). He offered

¹ Or, 'might I make offering with the life-sap of the horse?' the natural, as well as the technical, meaning of the term 'asvamedha' being generally understood in these speculations.

² The oblations offered prior to the initiation—here, as at any Soma-sacrifice—are called Audgrabhāna (elevatory) oblations. On the present occasion he, in the first place, performs, on each of the first six days of the Dīkshā, the four oblations of this kind offered at the ordinary Soma-sacrifice (for which see III, 1, 4, 1 seqq.); whilst on the seventh day he offers, instead of these, the six corresponding oblations of the Agnikāyana (which forms a necessary element of the Asvamedha), see VI, 6, 1, 15–20; for a further and final oblation offered on all these occasions, see p. 292, note 1. He then performs on each day three additional oblations

them, and by means of them he gained the Dikshā : and when the Sacrificer offers the Vaisvadeva (oblations) it is the Dikshā he thereby gains. Day after day he offers them : day after day he thus gains the Dikshā¹. Seven of them he offers ; for seven were those deities that departed (from Pragâpati) ; it is by means of them that he (the priest) gains the Dikshā for him.

2. But, indeed, the vital airs depart from those who exceed (the duration of) the Diksha. For

(increased to four on the last day) which are peculiar to the Arvamedha, and vary from day to day in respect of the deities to whom they are offered. But whilst, in the *Srautasûtras*, these special oblations are likewise called *Audgrabhāna* (*Kāty.* XX, 4, 2-10), the author here applies to them the term *Vaisvadeva*, owing apparently to the fact of their being offered, not to the *Visve Devāḥ* properly speaking, but to different deities. In the dogmatic explanation of the *Audgrabhānas* of the ordinary sacrifice, reference was also made (at III, 1, 4, 9) to the *Visve Devāḥ*, but only incidentally. *Harisvāmin*, indeed, points out that the designation *Vaisvadeva* refers in the first place to the invocations (*Vāg. S.* XXII, 20) used with these special oblations (as is, indeed, evident from paragraph 2 ; cf. also part ii, p. 20, note 1) ; and the total of seven applied to them does not therefore refer here (as it does in paragraph 4) to the four ordinary and the three special *Audgrabhāna* oblations, but to the series of dedicatory formulas relating to the latter oblations, as explained p. 291, note 1 ; and, of course, by implication, to the oblations themselves.

¹ Though the Initiation only becomes perfect by the Sacrificer being girded with a hempen zone, whilst kneeling on a double black-antelope skin, and by a staff being handed to him (III, 2, 1, 1-32) ; on the present occasion, the Sacrificer is on each day, after the performance of the *Audgrabhāna* oblations, at least to sit down on the antelope skin ; whilst on the seventh and last day of the *Dik-hantīyeshā*, the remaining ceremonies take place, after which those of the *Agnikayana*, viz. the placing of the *Ukhā*, or fire-pan, on the fire and the putting of thirteen fire-sticks in the pan (VI, 6, 2, 1 seqq.), &c.

seven days they observe it; for there are seven (outlets of) vital airs in the head, and the Dikshā is the vital airs: it is by means of the vital airs he gains the Dikshā, the vital airs, for him. He makes offering by dividing (each) deity into three parts¹; for the gods are of three orders², and of three orders are these worlds: he thus establishes himself in these worlds in prosperity and vital power.

3. They amount to one and twenty (single invocations and oblations),—there are twelve months, five seasons, these three worlds, and yonder sun as the twenty-first,—that is the divine ruling-power, that is the glory: that supreme lordship, that summit of the fallow one (the Sun), that realm of light he attains.

4. Thirty Audgrabhaṇas³ he offers,—of thirty syllables the Virâḡ (metre) consists, and the Virâḡ means all food: thus (he offers) for the obtainment of all food. Four Audgrabhaṇas he offers (on each day), and three Vaisvadevas;—they amount to seven; for there are seven vital airs of the head, and the Dikshā is the vital airs: by means of the vital airs he thus gains the Dikshā, the vital airs.

¹ The *kandikā* XXII, 20 is made up of seven parts, each of which consists of three distinct invocations addressed to the same deity; the seven deities addressed in the whole formula being Ka, Pragâpati, Aditi, Sarasvatî, Pûshan, Tvashtri, and Vishnu; whilst the three invocations to Ka, for instance, are 'Kāya svāhā! Kasmai svāhā! Katamasmai svāhā!' Cf. XIII, 1, 8, 2 seqq.

² Viz. either the Vāsus, Rudras, and Âdityas (cf. IV, 5, 7, 2); or those of the sky, the air, and the earth, headed by Sûrya, Vāyu, and Agni respectively.

³ That is, the four Audgrabhaṇas of the ordinary Soma-sacrifice offered on each of the seven days of the Dikshā, and two more added thereto on the seventh day.

for him. A full (-spoon)-oblation¹ he offers last for the sake of invigoration and union.

EIGHTH BRĀHMANA.

1. Praṅāpati poured forth the life-sap of the horse². When poured forth, it weighed down the *rik* (hymn-verse) and the *sāman* (hymn-tune). The Vaisvadeva (offerings) upheld that (Asvamedha): thus, when he offers the Vaisvadevas, it is for the upholding of the Asvamedha.

2. With (Vāg. S. XXII, 20). 'To Ka hail! To the Who hail! To the Whoever hail!' he makes the one relating to Praṅāpati the first (or chief one), and thus upholds (the Asvamedha) by means of the deities with Praṅāpati as their chief.

3. 'Hail, meditation (we give) unto him meditated upon! Hail, the mind unto the Lord of creatures! Hail, thought unto him, the known³!' what the mystic sense of the former (utterances⁴) was that it is here.

¹ For a full discussion of this final Audgrābhana oblation, the only one, it would seem, offered with the regular offering-spoon (*guhū*) filled by means of the dipping-spoon (*sruva*), see III, 1, 4, 2; 16-23; cf. also VI, 6, 1, 21.

² See p. 289, note 1. It is here taken to be represented by the Yagus:—*asvamedham yagurātmakavigrahavantam sṛishāvân*, Harisv.—the larger number of sacrificial formulas used at the performances being too heavy for the recited and chanted texts.

³ Mahādhara takes 'ādhim ādhītāya' in the sense of 'ādhiānam prāptāya' (who has obtained a consecrated fire); and 'manah pragātaye' in the sense of 'manasi vartamānāya p.' (to P. who is in our mind); and 'kittam vigñātāya' in the sense of 'sarveshām kittasākshine' (to the witness, or knower, of all men's thoughts).

⁴ Harisvāmin probably is right in supplying 'vyāhr̥tīnām'; though possibly 'devatānām' (deities) may be understood.

4. 'To Aditi hail! To Aditi, the mighty, hail! To Aditi, the most merciful, hail!' Aditi, doubtless, is this (earth): it is by her that he upholds it.

5. 'To Sarasvatī hail! To Sarasvatī, the pure, hail! To Sarasvatī, the great, hail!' Sarasvatī, doubtless, is speech: by speech he thus upholds it.

6. 'To Pūshan hail! To Pūshan, the protector of travellers, hail! To Pūshan, the watcher of men, hail!' Pūshan, doubtless, is cattle: by means of cattle he thus upholds it.

7. 'To Tvashtri hail! To Tvashtri, the seminal, hail! To Tvashtri, the multiform, hail!' Tvashtri, doubtless, is the fashioner of the couples of animals: by means of forms he thus upholds it.

8. 'To Vishṇu hail! To Vishṇu, the protector of what grows¹, hail! To Vishṇu, the bald², hail!' Vishṇu, doubtless, is the sacrifice: by sacrifice he thus upholds it. With (Vâg. XXII, 21), 'Let every mortal espouse the friendship of the divine guide, . . .³,' he offers last of all a full (-spoon)-oblation; for the full-offering is this (earth): he thus finally establishes himself on this (earth).

¹ The meaning of 'nibhūyapa' is doubtful; Mahīdhara explains it by 'nitarām bhūtvā matsyādyavatāram krīvā pati.' Perhaps it may mean 'condescending protector,' though one expects a direct object with 'pa.'

² The word 'sipivish/a,' as applied to Vishṇu, is likewise of doubtful meaning. The native dictionaries assign both the meaning 'bald' and 'leprous' (or, affected with skin-disease) to it; whilst the first part 'sipi' is taken variously by commentators as meaning 'cattle,' or 'ray,' or 'water,' or 'living being.'

³ See III, 1, 4, 18; VI, 6, 1, 21; and p. 294, note 1.

NINTH BRÂHMANA.

1. [Vâg. S. XXII, 22¹], 'In the priestly office (brahman) may the Brâhmaṇa be born, endowed with spiritual lustre (brahmavarṇasa):' on the Brâhmaṇa he thereby bestows spiritual lustre, whence of old the Brâhmaṇa was born as one endowed with spiritual lustre².

2. 'In the royal order may the Râganya be born, heroic, skilled in archery, sure of his mark, and a mighty car-fighter:' on the Râganya he thereby bestows the grandeur of heroism³, whence of old the Râganya was born as one heroic, skilled in archery, certain of his mark, and a mighty car-fighter.

3. 'The milch cow:' on the cow he thereby bestows milk: whence of old the cow was born as one yielding milk.

4. 'The draught ox:' on the ox he thereby bestows strength, whence of old the ox was born as a draught (animal).

5. 'The swift racer:' on the horse he thereby bestows speed, whence of old the horse was born as a runner.

6. 'The well-favoured woman:' on the woman

¹ These formulas are muttered after the thirteen samidhs have been put in the ukhâ, or fire-pan. See p. 290, note 1.

² 'Whence formerly a Brâhmaṇa was at once born as Brahmanavarṇasin (whilst now he must study),' Delbrück, *Altindische Syntax*, p. 287. Perhaps, however, 'purâ' has here (as it certainly has in the following paragraphs) the force of 'agre'—at the beginning, from the first, from of old.

³ I take 'sauryam mahimânam' here (and 'gauram mahimânam' in paragraph 7) to stand in apposition to one another, with something of the force of a compound word. See above, p. 66, note 4.

he thereby bestows beautiful form, whence the beautiful maiden is apt to become dear (to men).

7. 'The victorious warrior:' on the Rāganya he thereby bestows the grandeur of victoriousness¹, whence of old the Rāganya was born as one victorious.

8. 'The blitheful youth:' he, indeed, is a blitheful (or, sociable) youth who is in his prime of life; whence one who is in his prime of life is apt to become dear to women.

9. 'May a hero be born unto this Sacrificer!' on the Sacrificer's family he thereby bestows manly vigour, whence of old a hero was born to him who had performed the (Asvamedha) sacrifice.

10. 'May Parganya rain for us whensoever we list!'—where they perform this sacrifice, there Parganya, indeed, rains whenever they list;—'may our fruit-bearing plants ripen!'—there the fruit-bearing plants indeed ripen where they perform this sacrifice;—'may security of possession be assured for us!'—where they perform this sacrifice there security of possession indeed is assured; whence wherever they perform this (Asvamedha) sacrifice, security of possession becomes assured to the people.

SECOND ADHYĀYA. FIRST BRĀHMANA.

THE FIRST SOMA-DAY (AGNISH/OMA)².

1. Praṇāpati assigned the sacrifices to the gods: the Asvamedha he kept for himself. The gods

¹ See note 3, p. 294.

² There are three Sutyās, or Soma-days, at the Asvamedha—viz. an Agnish/oma, an Ukthya, and an Atiātra—the most im-

said to him, 'Surely, this—to wit, the *Asvamedha*—is a sacrifice: let us have a share in that also.' He contrived these *Anna-homas* (food-oblations) for them: thus when he performs the *Annahomas*, it is the gods he thereby gratifies.

2. With ghee he makes offering, for ghee is fiery mettle: by means of fiery mettle he thus lays fiery mettle into him (the horse and Sacrificer). With ghee he offers: for that—to wit, ghee—is the gods' favourite resource: it is thus with their favourite resource he supplies them.

3. With parched groats he makes offering: for that—to wit, parched groats—are a form of the gods¹: it is the gods he thus gratifies.

4. With grain he makes offering: for this—to wit, grain—is a form of the days and nights²: it is the days and nights he thus gratifies.

5. With parched grain he makes offering: for this—to wit, parched grain—is a form of the *Nakshatras*³ (lunar asterisms): it is the *Nakshatras*

portant of which is the central day. The first day offers no special features, as compared with the ordinary *Agnish/oma*; except that the stotras are chanted on the '*katush/oma*' model (see note to XIII, 3, 1, 4); and that the animal sacrifice of this day requires twenty-one sacrificial stakes, with twice eleven victims, two of which are tied to the central stake; see note on XIII, 2, 5, 2. The offerings referred to in the present *Brāhmaṇa*, are performed, not during the day itself, but during the following night, as a preliminary to the important features of the second *Soma*-day.

¹ Viz., according to the commentary, because of the (particles of) groats being connected with each other.

² The commentary does not explain this comparison. It would seem to suit better the parched grain.

³ Viz. on account of the capability (*samarthatvāt*) of the (raw) grains; but whether this is meant to refer to their power of germinating and growing is not explained.

he thus gratifies. He offers whilst mentioning names, with (Vāg. XXII, 23-33), 'To the in- (and out-) breathing hail! to the off-breathing hail!' . . . he thus gratifies them by mentioning their names. [Vāg. S. XXII, 34], 'To one hail! to two hail! . . . to a hundred hail! to a hundred and one hail!' He offers in the proper order: in the proper order he thus gratifies them (the gods). He performs oblations successively increasing by one², for single, indeed, is heaven: singly he thus causes him (the Sacrificer) to reach heaven. Straight away³ he offers in order to the winning of heaven: for straight away, as it were, is heaven.

6. But, verily, he who offers the oblations straight

¹ These eleven anuvākas consist of altogether 149 such short dedicatory formulas—addressed to the vital airs, the regions, the waters, wind, fire, &c.—each ending with 'svāhā (hail).' These are followed, in anuvāka 34, by formulas addressed to the cardinal numbers from 1 to 101; succeeded by two formulas addressed to the dawn and to heaven respectively,—all of these again ending with 'svāhā.' The Annahomas themselves, offered by the Adhvaryu's assistant, the Prātiprasthātri, are not, however, limited to any number; but their performance is to be continued throughout the night in such a way that each of the four three-hours' watches of the night is to be taken up with as many oblations of one of the four kinds of offering materials—in the order in which they are enumerated in the text—as can be got into the space of three hours. The formulas addressed to the cardinal numbers—which are on no account to extend beyond 101—are apparently supposed amply to suffice to fill up the time till dawn, when the Adhvaryu makes an oblation of ghee to the Dawn, followed by one to Heaven (or the realm of light) after sunrise.

² That is, in offering with the formulas addressed to the cardinal numbers.

³ That is to say, without repeating any formula, or commencing again from the beginning, when the whole series is exhausted.

away¹, is liable to fall (pass) right away. He does not go beyond a hundred and one: were he to go beyond a hundred and one, he would deprive the Sacrificer of his vital power. He offers a hundred and one, for man has a life of a hundred (years), and his own self is the one hundred and first: he thus establishes himself in a self (or body), in vital power. With 'To the Dawn hail! to Heaven hail!' he offers the two last oblations; for the dawn is the night, and heaven (the realm of light) is the day: it is day and night he thus gratifies.

7. As to this they say, 'Were he to offer both either by day or by night, he would confound day and night with one another.' With 'To the Dawn hail!' he offers before the sun has risen, and with 'To Heaven hail' when it has risen, to avoid confusion between day and night.

SECOND BRĀHMAṆA.

THE SECOND SOMA-DAY (UKTHYA).

1. Verily, this—to wit, the Asvamedha—is the king of sacrifices. But, indeed, the Asvamedha is the Sacrificer, (for) the sacrifice is the Sacrificer: when he (the priest) binds victims to the horse (or, at the horse-sacrifice), he then, indeed, takes hold³ of the sacrifice at the sacrifice.

2. 'A horse, a hornless he-goat, and a Gomvīga'⁴

¹ That is, without stopping.

² There is no 'iti' here; and the quotation, therefore, may perhaps extend to the end of the paragraph.

³ Ārabhate prāpnoti, comm.; it might also be rendered by 'he enters upon the sacrifice.'

⁴ This (and the identical passage XIII, 5, 1, 13) looks like a quotation, as if quoted from Vāg. S. XXIV, 1; where are

these they bind to the central stake: thereby, indeed, he (the priest) sharpens the front of his (the Sacrificer's) army¹, whence the front of the king's army is sure to become terrible.

3. A black-necked (he-goat), sacred to Agni, in front (of the horse) to its forehead²: the original (hall) fire he makes it, whence the king's hall-fire is sure to be (efficient)³.

likewise found the references to the other victims and their places, in paragraphs 2-9. Possibly, however, the 'iti' may be used here with a kind of 'deictic' force (cf. the similar use in XIII, 2, 8, 1); if, indeed, it does not simply refer to 'gomṛga,' i.e. 'the animal called Gomṛga' (lit. 'bovine deer'), regarding which see note on XIII, 3. 4. 3.—Though the victims to be immolated on this day are first dealt with in this and the following Brāhmaṇas, their slaughter only takes place at the usual time at every Soma-sacrifice, viz. after the Sarpaṇam (XIII, 2, 3, 1 seqq.), the chanting of the Bahishpavamāna Stotra, and the drawing of the Āsvina-graha. On the present occasion these ceremonies are preceded by the drawing of the Mahiman cups of Soma (see XIII, 2, 11, 1 seqq.); whilst the chant is followed by the driving up of the victims, and the putting to of the horse, and the driving to the water, treated of in XIII, 2, 6, 1 seqq.

¹ Harisvāmin takes this to mean that he makes the (sacrificial) horse, i.e. the king, alone the head of the army.—rāgabdhūtam apy asvam senāmukham ekam karotīty arthaḥ.

² According to the comments on Vāg. S. XXIV, 1, and Kāty. XX, 6, 4, a rope is wound round the horse's body in the same way as it is done with a bottle-gourd (*lagenaria vulgaris*), and it is to this rope that these so-called 'paryāṅgyāḥ (circumcorporal),' or victims surrounding the (horse's) body, would then be tied.

³ The commentator explains 'bhāvuka' by 'sādhur bhavati'; and he adds that this is important inasmuch as numerous magic rites, such as rites for insuring success and averting evil (śāntika-paushika), and incantations (ābhikārika) are performed thereon. It is the name here assigned to this, the Āvasathya, fire, viz. 'pūr-vāgni' or, original fire—with its secondary meaning 'front-fire'—which is seized upon by the author for symbolically identifying it with the victim fastened in front (or to the front) of the horse.

4. An ewe, for Sarasvati, beneath the (horse's) jaws: he thereby makes women to be dependent, whence women are sure to be attendant upon man.

5. Two (he-goats), black on the lower part of the body¹, for the Asvins, (he ties) to the front legs: he thereby lays strength into the front legs, whence the king is sure to be strong in the arm².

6. A dark-grey (he-goat) for Soma and Pūshan at the (horse's) navel: a foothold he makes this one; for Pūshan is this (earth): it is thereon he establishes himself.

7. A white one and a black one, for Sūrya and Yama, on the flanks: a suit of armour he makes those two: whence the king, clad in mail, performs heroic deeds.

8. Two, with shaggy hind thighs, for Tvashtri, to the hind legs: he lays strength into the thighs, whence the king is sure to be strong in his thighs.

9. A white one, for Vāyu, to the tail,—an elevation he makes this one, whence people in danger betake themselves to an elevated place³;—a cow wont to cast her calf, for Indra, the ever active, in order to associate the sacrifice with Indra;—a dwarfish one for Vishnu; for Vishnu is the sacrifice: it is in the sacrifice he (the Sacrificer) thus finally establishes himself.

10. These, then, are the fifteen 'paryāṅgya' (body-encircling)⁴ animals,—for fifteenfold is the

¹ Mahidhara takes 'adhorāma' to mean 'white-coloured on the lower part of the body.'

² The word 'bāhu' means both 'arm' and 'front leg.'

³ That is, a mountain, a palace, high ground, &c., comm. ('vāyur hi skandhasyokkṛita ity abhiprāyaḥ').

⁴ Here the encircled horse itself, and the other two victims

thunderbolt, and the thunderbolt means manly vigour: with that thunderbolt, manly vigour, the Sacrificer now repels evil from in front¹ (of the sacrifice).

11. And fifteen (victims), indeed, are (bound) to each of the other (stakes);---for fifteenfold is the thunderbolt, and the thunderbolt means manly vigour: with that thunderbolt, manly vigour, the Sacrificer now repels evil on both sides² (of the sacrifice).

12. As to this they say, 'Does he really repel evil by these?' And, indeed, he does not make up the complete Praḡâpati, and does not here gain everything.

13. Let him rather bind seventeen animals to the central stake³; for seventeenfold is Praḡâpati, and the Asvamedha is Praḡâpati,—thus for the

tied directly to the central stake, are improperly included in the term 'paryāṅga.'

¹ Viz. inasmuch as the sacrificial stake to which the horse is tied (and hence the victims fastened thereto) is the so-called 'agnish/ta' stake, or the one standing opposite to (directly in front of) the Âhavanīya fire.

² Viz. inasmuch as these other stakes stand in a line to the north (left) and south (right) of the central stake. Whilst, in the case of a simple 'ekâdāsinī' (cf. III, 7, 2, 1 seqq.) there would be five stakes on each side of the central one, at the Asvamedha there are to be twenty-one stakes, or ten on either side of the central stake. See XIII, 4, 4. 5 seqq.

³ These seventeen victims do not include the twelve paryāṅgas which are tied to different parts of the horse's body, but only to those which are actually tied to the central stake,—viz. the horse and its two immediate neighbours (paragraph 2), then twelve victims (enumerated Vâg. S. XXIV, 2, beginning with three victims of different shades of red, rohiṭa), and lastly two beasts belonging to two sets of eleven victims finally superadded to the sets of fifteen victims tied in the first place to the stakes. Cf. note on XIII, 2, 5, 2.

obtainment of the Asvamedha. And sixteen (victims he binds) to each of the other (stakes), for of sixteen parts (kalâ) consists all this¹ (universe): all this (universe) he thus gains.

14. 'How is he to appease² these?' they ask. 'Let him appease them with the Bârhaduktha verses³, "Enkindled, anointing the lap of the faithful(f)...;" for Bârhaduktha, the son of Vâmadeva, or Asva, son of Samudra, saw these very (verses) to be the âpri-verses of the horse: it is by means of these we appease it,' so they say. But let him not do so; let him appease it with the Gâmadagna verses: for Gamadagni is Pragâpati, and so is the Asvamedha: he thus supplies it with its own deity:—let him therefore appease (the victims) with the Gâmadagna verses⁴.

15. Now some make the invitory-formulas and the offering-formulas (to be pronounced) separately for the 'paryângyas,' saying, 'For these we find (formulas)—for the others, on account of not finding any, we do not use them⁵.' Let him not do so:

¹ Regarding this division into sixteen parts, as applied to man, the animal, and the universe, see Weber, Ind. Stud. IX, p. 111 with note.

² Or, 'what Âpri (appeasing verses) is he to pronounce over them?' These verses are pronounced as the offering-formulas (yâgyâ) at the fore-offerings of the animal sacrifice. See part ii. p. 185, note 1.

³ Viz. Vâg. S. XXIX. 1-11.

⁴ Viz. Vâg. S. XXIX, 25-36, beginning, 'Enkindled in the house of man this day, a god, thou worshipping the gods, O Gâtavedas.'

⁵ The commentator takes this to mean that, inasmuch as these paryângyas—here improperly including the horse itself and the two other victims of Pragâpati at the central stake—are assigned to commonly invoked deities, formulas relating to these would easily

for the horse is the nobility (chieftain), and the other animals are the peasantry (clan); and those who do this really make the peasantry equal and refractory to the nobility; and they also deprive the Sacrificer of his vital power. Therefore the horse alone belongs to Pragâpati¹, and the others are sacred to the gods: he thus, indeed, makes the peasantry obedient and subservient to the nobility; and he also supplies the Sacrificer with vital power.

16. The slaughtering-knife of the horse is made of gold, those of the 'paryangyas' of copper, and those of the others of iron; for gold is (shining) light, and the Asvamedha is the royal office: he thus bestows light upon the royal office. And by means of the golden light (or, by the light of the gold), the Sacrificer also goes to the heavenly world; and he, moreover, makes it a gleam of light shining after him, for him to reach the heavenly world.

17. But, indeed, the horse is also the nobility; and this also—to wit, gold—is a form (symbol) of

be found; whilst in the case of the other twelve victims tied to the central stake (see p. 301, note 3), as well as those of the other stakes—though they, too, are assigned to definite deities—some of their deities (as in the case of three a year and a half old heifers assigned to Gâyatri, Vâg. S. XXIV, 21), are such as to make it difficult to find suitable formulas for them:—*eteshâm asvâdinâm pragâpatyâdikâ yâgyânuvâkyâs tâh kim iti na prâthak kurmaḥ: itareshâm rohitâdinâm na vindâmaḥ, tryavayo gâyatryâdayo devatâs taddevatyâs ka durlabhâ lakshanopetâ yâgyânuvâkyâ ity abhi-prâyaḥ.*

¹ The invitational-formula and offering-formula are, however, pronounced once for the 'paryangyas' (including the horse) in common, whilst a second pair of formulas are used for the other victims in common.

the nobility: he thus combines the nobility with the nobility.

18. And as to why there are copper (knives) for the 'paryaṅgyas,'—even as the non-royal king-makers, the heralds and headmen, are to the king, so those 'paryaṅgyas' are to the horse; and so, indeed, is this—to wit, copper—to gold: with their own form he thus endows them.

19. And as to why there are iron ones for the others,—the other animals, indeed, are the peasantry, and this—to wit, iron—is a form of the peasantry: he thus combines the peasantry with the peasantry. On a rattan mat (lying) north (of the Āhavanīya) they cut the portions of the horse(-flesh): for the horse is of anush/ubh nature, and related to the Anush/ubh is that (northern) quarter: he thus places that (horse) in its own quarter. And as to (his doing so) on a rattan mat,—the horse was produced from the womb of the waters¹, and the rattan springs from the water: he thus causes it to be possessed of its own (maternal) womb.

THIRD BRĀHMANA.

1. Now, the gods did not know the Pavamāna² at the Asvamedha to be the heavenly world, but the horse knew it. When, at the Asvamedha,

¹ See VI, I, 1, II (V, I, 4, 5).

² Pavamāna is the name of the pressed Soma while it is 'clarifying.' Hence the first stotra of each of the three Savanas of a Soma-day—chanted after the pressing of the Soma and the drawing of the principal cups—is called Pavamāna-stotra. Whether by the term 'Pavamāna' here the clarifying Soma is alluded to, as well as the stotra—which alone the commentator takes it to mean, and to which the second mention certainly refers—must remain

they glide along¹ with the horse for the Pavamāna (-stotra), it is for getting to know (the way to) the heavenly world; and they hold on to the horse's tail, in order to reach the heavenly world; for man does not rightly know (the way to) the heavenly world, but the horse does rightly know it.

2. Were the Udgātri to chant the Udgitha², it would be even as if one who does not know the country were to lead by another (than the right) way. But if, setting aside the Udgātri, he chooses

doubtful. The commentator, it would seem, accounts for this identification of the Pavamāna-stotra with heaven by the fact that the second day of the Asvamedha is an *ekavimsa* day (see XIII, 3, 3; Tāndya-Br. XXI, 4, 1), i.e. one on which all the stotras are performed in the twenty-one-versed hymn-form; and that the Sun is commonly called 'ekavimsa,' the twenty-first, or twenty-one-fold. The particular chant intended is that of the morning pressing, viz. the Bahishpavamāna, or outside-Pavamāna-stotra, so-called because at the ordinary one-day's Soma-sacrifice, it is chanted outside the Sadas. But, on the other hand, in the case of Ahina-sacrifices, or those lasting from two to twelve days, that stotra is chanted outside only on the first day, whilst on the others it is done inside the Sadas. An exception is, however, made in the case of the Asvamedha, which requires the morning Pavamāna, on all three days, to be performed in its usual place on the north-eastern part of Vedi, south of the Kātvala.

¹ For the noiseless way of sliding or creeping from the Sadas, and returning thither, and approaching the different Dhishṇyas, or fire-hearths, see part ii, p. 299, note 2. As has already been stated, it is only after the chanting of the Bahishpavamāna that the victims are driven up to the offering place.

² It is from this, the principal part of the Sāman, or chanted verse (cf. part ii, p. 310, note), that the Udgātri takes his name; this particular function of his being, on the present occasion, supposed to be performed by the whinnying of the horse. After this they make the horse step on the chanting-ground, apparently either as a visible recognition of the part it has been made to play, or because the horse thereby is made to go to heaven with which the Bahishpavamāna was identified.

the horse for (performing) the Udgitha, it is just as when one who knows the country leads on the right way: the horse leads the Sacrificer rightly to the heavenly world. It makes 'Hiñ¹', and thereby makes the Sāman itself to be 'hiñ': this is the Udgitha. They pen up mares, (and on seeing the horse) they utter a shrill sound: as when the chanters sing, such like is this. The priests' fee is gold weighing a hundred (grains): the mystic import of this has been explained².

FOURTH BRĀHMANA.

1. Pragāpati desired, 'Would that I might gain both worlds, the world of the gods, and the world of men.' He saw those beasts, the tame and the wild ones; he seized them, and by means of them took possession of these two worlds: by means of the tame beasts he took possession of this (terrestrial) world, and by means of the wild beasts of yonder (world); for this world is the world of men, and yonder world is the world of the gods. Thus when he seizes tame beasts he thereby takes possession of this world, and when wild beasts, he thereby (takes possession) of yonder (world).

2. Were he to complete (the sacrifice) with tame ones, the roads would run together³, the village-

¹ On the mystic significance of this ejaculation (here compared with the neighing of the horse) in the sacrifice, and especially in the Sāman, see I. 4, 1, 1 seqq.; II, 2, 4, 12.

² XII, 7, 2, 13.

³ The commentary remarks that by 'roads' here is meant those walking on them—as, in that case, peace and security would reign, men would range all the lands:—adhvabhir atrādhvasthā lakshyante; ksheme sati manushyāḥ sarvān deśān samkareyur ity abhiprāyaḥ.

boundaries of two villages would be contiguous¹, and no ogres², man-tigers, thieves, murderers, and robbers would come to be in the forests. By (so doing) with wild (beasts) the roads would run asunder³, the village-boundaries of two villages would be far asunder⁴; and there would come to be ogres, man-tigers, thieves, murderers, and robbers in the forests.

3. As to this they say, 'Surely that—to wit, the forest (beast)—is not a beast (or cattle), and offering should not be made thereof: were he to make offering thereof, they would ere long carry away the Sacrificer dead to the woods, for forest (or wild) beasts have the forest for their share; and were he not to make offering thereof, it would be a violation of the sacrifice.' Well, they dismiss them after fire has been carried round them⁵: thus, indeed, it is

¹ Harisvâmin takes 'samantikam' in the sense of 'near' and construes it with 'grâmayoh' (as he does 'vidûram' in the next paragraph) - 'the two village-boundaries would be near (far from) the two villages;' but see I. 4, 1, 22, where samantikam (and IX, 3, 1, 11, where 'samantikâtaram') is likewise used without a complement; as is 'vidûram' in I. 4, 1, 23.

² Harisvâmin takes 'rikshikâ' to mean 'a bear,'—*rikshâ eva rikshikâh*.

³ Hardly, as the commentary takes it, 'they would become blocked up,' and people would have to stay in their own country:—*adhvânâh pûrvadesâdayo vikrameyur viruddham krâmaveyuh* (!), *svadesa eva manushyâh samkareyur na desântare .py antarâlânâm . . bhinnatvâd akshematvâk ka vidûram grâmayor grâmântau syâtâm*.

⁴ Viz. because, for want of security and peace, the villages would be few and far between,—*aksheme hi sati praviralâ grâmâ bhavanti*, comm.

⁵ (On the 'paryagnikaravam' or circumambulation of an oblation in accordance with the course of the sun, whilst holding a fire-brand in one's hand, see part i, p. 45, note; part ii, p. 187, note.

neither an offering nor a non-offering, and they do not carry the Sacrificer dead to the forest, and there is no violation of the sacrifice.

4. He completes (the sacrifice) with tame (beasts),—father and son part company¹, the roads run together, the village-boundaries of two villages become contiguous, and no ogres, man-tigers, thieves, murderers, and robbers come to be in the forests.

FIFTH BRĀHMANA.

1. Praṣāpati poured forth the life-sap of the horse (asva-medha): when poured forth it went from him. Having become fivefold², it entered the year, and they (the five parts) became those half-months³. He followed it up by means of the fifteenfold (sets of victims⁴), and found it: and having found it, he took possession of it by means of the fifteenfold ones: for, indeed, they—to wit, the fifteenfold (sets)—are a symbol of the half-months, and when he seizes the fifteenfold ones, it is the

¹ Or, they exert themselves in different directions,—that is, as the commentator explains, because in peace they would not be forced to keep together, as they would have to do in troublous times. He, however, seems somehow to connect 'vy avasyatah' with the root 'vas':—*ksheme hi śati pitāputrāv atra vi prīthag vasatah; aksheme tu sambaddhāv apy etāv atra vasatah*.—Whilst in this passage the verb would hardly suggest an estrangement between father and son, this is distinctly the case in the parallel passage, Taitt. Br. III, 9, 1, 2, where, however, this contingency is connected with the completion of the sacrifice, not, as here, with tame, but with wild beasts.

² Or the Paṅkti metre, consisting of five octosyllabic pādas.

³ Viz. as consisting of thrice five days.

⁴ See above, XIII, 2, 2, 11.

half-months the Sacrificer thereby takes possession of.

2. Concerning this they say, 'But, surely, the year is not taken possession of by him who spreads out (performs sacrifice for) a year in any other way than by means of the Seasonal sacrifices¹.' The Seasonal sacrifices, doubtless, are manifestly the year: and when he seizes the Seasonal victims², he then manifestly takes possession of the year. 'And, assuredly, he who spreads out the year in any other way than with the (victims) of the set of eleven³ (stakes) is deprived of his offspring (or

¹ On this point, cp. II, 6, 3, 1.—'Verily, imperishable is the righteousness of him who offers the Seasonal sacrifices; for such a one gains the year, and hence there is no cessation for him. He gains it in three divisions, he conquers it in three divisions. The year means the whole, and the whole is imperishable (without end). Moreover, he thereby becomes a Season, and as such goes to the gods; but there is no perishableness in the gods, and hence there is imperishable righteousness for him.'

² The *Kāturmāsya*s are the victims enumerated Vāg. S. XXIV, 14-19. The first six of them are the last (of the set of fifteen) bound to the thirteenth stake; whilst the remaining victims make up all the seven sets of fifteen victims bound to remaining stakes (14-21)—thus amounting to 121 domesticated animals, cf. XIII, 5, 1, 13, seq. In counting the stakes the central one is the first, then follows the one immediately south, and then the one immediately north of it, and thus alternately south and north. The reason why the name '*Kāturmāsya*' is applied to the victims here referred to is that the deities for whose benefit they are immolated are the same, and follow the same order, as those to whom (the chief) oblations are made at the Seasonal sacrifices (viz. the constant ones—Agni, Soma, Savitṛi, Sarasvatī, Pūshan, and special ones, see II, 5, 1, 8-17; 5, 2, 7-16; 5, 3, 2-4; 5, 4, 2-10; 6, 1, 4-6; 6, 2, 9; 6, 3, 4-8).

³ That is to say, he who seeks to gain the year by immolating only the Seasonal victims, and the sets of fifteen victims, and does not offer likewise the victims of the set (or rather two sets) of eleven

subjects) and cattle, and fails to reach heaven.' This set of eleven (stakes), indeed, is just heaven¹, and the set of eleven (stakes) means offspring (or people) and cattle; and when he lays hands on the (victims) of the (two) sets of eleven (stakes) he does not fail to reach heaven, and is not deprived of his offspring and cattle.

3. Pragāpati created the Virāg; when created, it went away from him, and entered the horse meet for sacrifice. He followed it up with sets of ten²

stakes. These two sets of eleven victims, tied to the twenty-one stakes (two being tied to the central stake), are to constitute the regular 'savanyāḥ parayaḥ' of the pressing-days of the Asamedhyā; and in XIII, 5, 1, 3, and 5, 3, 11, the author argues against those who (on the first and third days) would immolate only twenty-one such victims, all of them sacred to Agni. As regards the second day, the author does not mention the particular victims, but this can scarcely be interpreted as an approval of twenty-one such victims, even though the number twenty-one certainly plays an important part on that day—seeing that Kātyāyana, XX, 4, 25, makes the two sets of eleven victims the rule for all three days. For the third day, on the other hand, the author of the Brāhmana (XIII, 5, 3, 11) actually recommends the immolation of twenty-four bovine victims as 'savanyāḥ parayaḥ'. The deities of the first set of eleven victims (as perhaps also of the second set (of the first day)) are the same as those of the ordinary 'ekādaśī' (see III, 9, 1, 6-21; and Vāg. S. XXIX, 58), whilst the second set (of the second day, at all events) has different deities (Vāg. S. XXIX, 61). On the central day these victims are added to the sets of fifteen victims bound there to each of the twenty-one stakes; the mode of distribution being the same as on the other two days, viz., so that the first victim of each set—that is the one devoted to Agni—is bound to the central stake, whilst of the remaining twenty victims one is assigned to each stake.

¹ Viz. inasmuch as the stakes stand right in front (to the east) of the sacrificial fire and ground, and the Sacrificer would thus miss the way to heaven if he were not to pass through the 'ekādaśīnī.'

² The Virāg metre consists of (three) decasyllabic pādas.

(beasts). He found it, and, having found it, he took possession of it by means of the sets of ten : when he seizes the sets of eleven (beasts), the Sacrificer thereby takes possession of the Virâg. He seizes a hundred, for man has a life of a hundred (years) and a hundred energies : vital power and energy, vigour, he thus takes to himself.

4. Eleven decades¹ he seizes, for the Trish/ubh consists of eleven syllables, and the Trish/ubh means energy, vigour : thus it is for the obtainment of energy, vigour. Eleven decades he seizes, for in an animal there are ten vital airs, and the body (trunk) is the eleventh : he thus supplies the animals with vital airs. They belong to all the gods for the completeness of the horse (sacrifice), for the horse belongs to all the gods. They are of many forms, whence beasts are of many forms ; they are of distinct forms, whence beasts are of distinct forms.

SIXTH BRÂHMANA.

1. [He puts the horse to the chariot², with Vâg. S. XXIII, 5], 'They harness the ruddy bay,

¹ After the (349) domesticated animals have been secured to the stakes, sets of thirteen wild beasts are placed on the (twenty) spaces between the (twenty-one) stakes, making in all 260 wild beasts. From the 150th beast onward (enumerated Vâg. S. XXIV, 30-40) these amount to 111 beasts which here are called eleven decades ; the odd beast not being taken into account, whilst in paragraph 3 above the first ten decades are singled out for symbolic reasons. These beasts are spread over the twelfth (only the last seven beasts of which belong to the first decade) and following spaces.

² Along with the sacrificial horse three other horses are put to the chariot, with the formula Vâg. S. XXIII, 6. Previously to this, however, the Hotri recites eleven verses in praise of the horse (cf. XIII, 5, 1, 16). Both the horses and the chariot are decorated

moving (round the moveless: the lights shine in the heavens);'—the ruddy bay, doubtless, is yonder sun: it is yonder sun he harnesses for him, for the gaining of the heavenly world.

2. Concerning this they say, 'Surely, the sacrifice goes from him whose beast, when brought up, goes elsewhere than the vedi (altar-ground).' [Let him, therefore, mutter Vāg. S. XXIII, 7.] 'Singer of praise, make that horse come back to us by that path!'—the singer of praise, doubtless, is Vāyu (the wind): it is him he thereby places for him (the Sacrificer) on the other side, and so it does not go beyond that.

3. But, indeed, fiery mettle and energy, cattle, and prosperity depart from him who offers the *Asvamedha*.

4. With (Vāg. S. XXIII, 8), 'May the Vasus anoint thee with the *Gāyatra* metre!' the queen consort anoints (the forepart of the unharnessed horse);—ghee is fiery mettle, and the *Gāyatri* also is fiery mettle: two kinds of fiery mettle he thus bestows together on him (the Sacrificer).

5. With, 'May the Rudras anoint thee with the *Traishṭubha* metre!' the (king's) favourite wife anoints (the middle part):—ghee is fiery mettle, and the *Trishṭubh* is energy: both fiery

with gold ornaments. The *Adhvaryu* then drives with the Sacrificer to a pond of water to the east of the sacrificial ground (an indispensable feature in choosing the place of sacrifice), and having driven into the water he makes him pronounce the formula XXIII, 7, 'When the wind hath entered the waters, the dear form of Indra, do thou, singer of praise, make that horse come back to us by that path;' whereupon they return to the sacrificial ground.

mettle and energy he thus bestows together on him.

6. With, 'May the Ādityas anoint thee with the *Gâgata* metre!' a discarded wife¹ (of the king) anoints (the hindpart);—ghee is fiery mettle, and the *Gagati* is cattle: both fiery mettle and cattle he thus bestows together on him.

7. It is the wives² that anoint (the horse), for they— to wit, (many) wives—are a form of prosperity (or social eminence): it is thus prosperity he confers on him (the Sacrificer), and neither fiery spirit, nor energy, nor cattle, nor prosperity pass away from him.

8. But even as some of the offering-material may get spilled before it is offered, so (part of) the victim is here spilled in that the hair of it when wetted comes off. When they (the wives) weave pearls (into the mane and tail) they gather up its hair. They are made of gold: the significance of this has been explained. A hundred and one pearls they weave into (the hair of) each part³; for man has a life of a hundred (years), and his own self (or body) is the one hundred and first: in vital power, in the self, he establishes himself. They weave them in (each) with (one of) the (sacred utterings) relating to *Pragâpati*, 'Bûh! bhuva! svar (earth, air,

¹ That is, a former favourite, but now neglected; or, according to others, one who has borne no son.

² The fourth and lowest wife of the King the *Pilâgali* (cf. XIII, 4, 1, 8; 5, 2, 8), though present at the sacrifice, does not take part in this ceremony, probably on account of her low-caste origin, as the daughter of a messenger, or courier.

³ Viz. either the mane on both sides, and the tail, or the hair of the head, the neck (mane) and the tail; each of the ladies apparently taking one of these parts.

heaven)!’ for the horse is sacred to Pragâpati: with its own deity he thus supplies it. With, ‘Parched grain, or parched groats?—in grain-food and in food from the cow’—he takes down the remaining food¹ (from the cart) for the horse: he thereby makes the (king’s) people eaters of food (prosperous);—‘eat ye, gods, this food! eat thou, Pragâpati, this food!’ he thereby supplies the people with food.

9. Verily, fiery spirit and spiritual lustre pass away from him who performs the Asvamedha. The Hotri and the Brahman engage in a Brahmodya² (theological discussion); for the Hotri relates to Agni, and the Brahman (priest) to Bṛhaspati, Bṛhaspati being the Brahman (n.): fiery spirit and spiritual lustre he thus bestows together on him. With the (central) sacrificial stake between them, they discourse together; for the stake is the Sacrificer³: he thus encompasses the Sacrificer on both sides with fiery spirit and spiritual lustre.

10. [The Brahman asks, Vâg. S. XXIII, 9.] ‘Who is it that walketh singly?’—it is yonder sun, doubtless, that walks singly⁴, and he is spiritual

¹ Viz. the material left over after what was taken for the Annahomas, XIII. 2, 1, 1 seqq.

² For a similar discussion between the four priests, prior to the offering of the omenta, see XIII, 5, 2, 11 seq.

³ ‘Tegas’ is pre-eminently the quality assigned to Agni.

⁴ It must be remembered that the sacrificial horse here represented by the stake is identified with both Pragâpati and the Sacrificer.

⁵ The actual replies to the questions in Vâg. S. XXIII, 9 and 11, are contained in the corresponding verses ten and twelve; being given here in an expository way, with certain variations and

lustre: spiritual lustre the two (priests) thus bestow on him.

11. 'Who is it that is born again?'—it is the moon, doubtless, that is born again (and again): vitality they thus bestow on him.

12. 'What is the remedy for cold?'—the remedy for cold, doubtless, is Agni (fire): fiery spirit they thus bestow on him.

13. 'And what is the great vessel?'—the great vessel, doubtless, is this (terrestrial) world: on this earth he thus establishes himself.

14. [The Hotri asks the Brahman, Vâg. S. XXIII, 11.] 'What was the first conception?'—the first conception, doubtless, was the sky, rain: the sky, rain, he thus secures for himself.

15. 'Who was the great bird¹?'—the great bird, doubtless, was the horse: vital power he thus secures for himself.

16. 'Who was the smooth one?'—the smooth one (pilippilâ), doubtless, was beauty (śrī²): beauty he thus secures for himself.

occasional explanatory words (such as 'vriṣhī,' rain, in paragraph 14). The answers to the first four questions are supposed to be given by the Hotri, and the last four by the Brahman.

¹ This is the meaning assigned here to 'vayas' by Mahidhara: but the other meaning of 'vayas,' viz. 'youthful vigour, or age, (generally),' would seem to suit much better, or at least to be implied. And Harisvâmin accordingly takes it in the sense of 'vârdhakam' (old age, or long life). Mahidhara, moreover, identifies the horse with the horse-sacrifice, which, in the shape of a bird, carries the Sacrificer up to heaven. On this notion cp. part iv, introduction, pp. xxi-xxii.

² Instead of 'śrīh,' the answer given to this question in Vâg. S. XXIII, 12 was 'avih' which would either mean 'the gentle, kindly one,' or 'the sheep (f),' but which Mahidhara (in the former sense)

17. 'Who was the tawny one?'—the two tawny ones, doubtless, are the day and the night¹: in the day and night he thus establishes himself.

SEVENTH BRĀHMANA.

1. When the victims have been bound (to the stakes), the Adhvaryu takes the sprinkling-water in order to sprinkle the horse. Whilst the Sacrificer holds on to him behind, he (in sprinkling the horse) runs rapidly through the formula used at the Soma-sacrifice², and then commences the one for the Asvamedha.

2. [Vāg. S. XXIII, 13.] 'May Vāyu favour thee with cooked kinds of food';—Vāyu (the wind) indeed cooks it³;—'the dark-necked one with he-goats,'—the dark-necked one, doubtless,

takes as an epithet 'to the earth which he also takes 'tri' to mean in the above passage of the Brāhmana; whilst to the *ἀνὰ δελφίνου* 'pilippilī' he assigns the meaning 'slippery' (ἰσχυρὰ) as applying to the earth after rain (deriving it from the root 'lip' to smear, anoint). Harisvāmin, on the other hand, takes 'pilippilā' to be an onomatopoeic word, in the sense of '(glossy), beautiful, shining':—*rūpānukarānaratelo'syam* + *bhurūpivilā* (? *bahurūpāvitā*) *udlyotavati*; and he adds:—*trīṇīṣṭratuḥ* (= *trīṇīṣṭrantu*) *aviḥ pippaloktau* (?) *sā tu trīṇīṣṭvā brāhmanā vivṛitam*, *katham, iyaṃ vā aviḥ prīthivī, sā ka trīḥ, trīṇī vā iyaṃ itī vakānāt*. Cf. VI, 1, 2, 33.

¹ Here the original text in Vāg. S. XXIII, 12, has simply 'the piraṅgilā was the night.' Mahidhara explains 'piraṅgilā' by 'pīraṅgila,' 'beauty-devouring,' inasmuch as the night swallows, or conceals, all beauty (or form). Neither this nor the other explanation (= piraṅga, ruddy-brown) suits the day; but Harisvāmin, who does not explain the name, remarks that the night here is taken to include the day. Cf. XIII, 5, 2, 18.

² Viz. Vāg. S. VI, 9; see III, 7, 4, 4-5.

³ The author seems to take 'paṭataih' in the sense of 'cooking.'

⁴ Viz. inasmuch as it causes the fire to blaze up, comm.

is Agni (the fire); and the fire indeed cooks it (the horse) together with the he-goats.

3. 'The Nyagrodha with cups,'—for when the gods were performing sacrifice, they tilted over those Soma-cups, and, turned downwards, they took root, whence the Nyagrodhas (*ficus indica*), when turned downwards (*nyaḥ*), take root (*roha* ¹).

4. 'The cotton-tree with growth,'—he confers growth on the cotton-tree (*salmalia malabarica*), whence the cotton-tree grows largest amongst trees ².

5. 'This male, fit for the chariot,'—he supplies the chariot with a horse, whence the horse draws nothing else than a chariot.

6. 'Hath come hither on his four feet,'—therefore the horse, when standing, stands on three feet, but, when harnessed, it pulls with all its feet at one and the same time.

7. 'May the spotless Brahman protect us!'—the spotless 'Brahman (m.)', doubtless, is the moon:

¹ Or, whence the Nyagrodhas grow downwards. This refers to the habit of the Indian fig-tree, of sending down from the branches numerous slender roots which afterwards become fresh stems. Cp. the corresponding legend in Ait. Br. VII, 30, told there by way of explaining why Kshatriyas, being forbidden to drink Soma, should drink the juice extracted from the descending roots of the Indian fig-tree. Another reason why the Indian fig-tree (also called 'vafa') is here connected with the priests' Soma-cups (*kamasa*), is that this is one of the kinds of wood used in making those cups (cf. Kāty. I, 3, 36 comm.).

² According to Stewart and Brandis, Forest Flora, p. 31, the cotton-tree (or silk-cotton tree) is a very large tree of rapid growth, attaining a height of 150 ft., and a girth of 40 ft.

³ Lit. 'the non-black Brahman,' explained as one who has no black spots; though it is difficult to see why the moon should be favoured with this epithet.

to the moon he thus commits it;—'Reverence to Agni!'—to Agni he thus makes reverence.

8. [Vāg. S. XXIII, 14.] 'Trimmed up is the car with the cord,'—with cord one indeed completes the car¹, whence a car, when enveloped (with cords²), is very handsome.

9. 'Trimmed up is the steed with the rein,'—with the rein one indeed completes the horse, whence the horse, when curbed by the rein, looks most beautiful.

10. 'Trimmed up in the waters was the water-born,'—the horse, indeed, has sprung from the womb of the waters³; with its own (mother's) womb he thus supplies it: 'Brahman(m.), with Soma for his leader,'—he thus makes it go to heaven with Soma for its leader.

11. [Vāg. S. XXIII, 15.] 'Thyself, fit out thy body, O racer,'—'Take thyself the form which thou wishest,' he thereby says to him;—'make offering thyself,'—sovereign rule (independence) he thereby confers on it;—'rejoice thou thyself,'—'enjoy (rule) thou thyself the world as far as thou wishest,' he thereby says to him;—'thy glory is not to be equalled by any one!'—with glory he thereby endows the horse.

12. [Vāg. S. XXIII, 16⁴.] 'Thou shalt not die

¹ In Indian vehicles the different parts are held together by cords. For a drawing see Sir H. M. Elliot, *The Races of the N.W. Provinces of India*, II, p. 342. The word for 'cord' and 'rein' is the same in Sanskrit.

² *Paryutah* = *parivesh/ito raggubhih*, comm.; hardly 'hung all round (with ornaments),' as the St. Petersburg Dict. takes it.

³ See V, 1, 4, 5; VI, 1, 1, 11.

⁴ The first two pādas of this verse form the first half-verse of *Rig-veda* S. I, 162, 21.

here, neither suffer harm,'—he thereby cheers it;—'on easy paths thou goest to the gods,'—he thereby shows him the paths leading to the gods;—'where dwell the pious, whither they have gone,'—he thereby makes it one who shares the same world with the pious;—'thither the god *Savitṛi* shall lead thee.'—it is, indeed, *Savitṛi* that leads him to the heavenly world. --Whilst whispering¹ 'I sprinkle thee, acceptable unto *Pragāpati*,' he then holds (the sprinkling water) under (its mouth).

13. [*Vāg. S. XXIII, 17.*] 'Agni was an animal: they sacrificed him, and he gained that world wherein Agni (ruleth): that shall be thy world, that thou shalt gain, drink thou this water!'—'As great as Agni's conquest was, as great as is his world, as great as is his lordship, so great shall be thy conquest, so great thy world, so great thy lordship,' this is what he thereby says to him.

14. 'Vāyu was an animal: they sacrificed him, and he gained that world wherein Vāyu (ruleth): that shall be thy world, that thou shalt gain, drink thou this water!'—'As great as Vāyu's conquest was, as great as is his world, as great as is his lordship, so great shall be thy conquest, so great thy world, so great thy lordship,' this is what he thereby says to him.

¹ Cp. I, 4, 5, 12: 'Hence whatever at the sacrifice is performed for *Pragāpati*, that is performed in a low voice (under the breath); for speech would not act as oblation-bearer for *Pragāpati*.' *Pragāpati*, as representing generation, is often spoken of as 'undefined' or 'unexpressed (secret)'; and so is what is muttered in a low voice.

15. 'Sūrya was an animal; they sacrificed him, and he gained that world wherein Sūrya (ruleth): that shall be thy world, that thou shalt gain,—drink thou this water!'—'As great as Sūrya's conquest was, as great as is his world, as great as is his lordship, so great shall be thy conquest, so great thy world, so great thy lordship,' this is what he thereby says to him. Having satisfied the horse, and consecrated again the sprinkling water, he sprinkles the other victims: thereof hereafter.

EIGHTH BRĀHMANA.

1. Now the gods, when going upwards, did not know (the way to) the heavenly world, but the horse knew it: when they go upwards with the horse, it is in order to know (the way to) the heavenly world. 'A cloth, an upper cloth, and gold,' this¹ is what they spread out for the horse²:

¹ The 'iti' seems superfluous; Harisvāmin explains it by 'etat trayam.' For a similar use of the particle, see XIII, 2, 2, 1.

² That is, they spread them on the ground for the horse to lie upon. Differently St. Petersburg Dict., 'they spread over the horse;' but see Kāty. XX. 6, 10 comm.; and Harisvāmin:—*vāso yad antardhānāyālam, adhivāso yad ākṣhādanāyālam, tak ka vāsasa upari staranīyam, tayor upari hiranyam nidheyam, tasmims traye enam adhi upari saṃgṇāpayanti*;—and he then remarks that these three objects here do not take the place of the stalk of grass which, in the ordinary animal sacrifice, is thrown on the place where the victim is to be killed and cut up (III, 8, 1, 14; Kāty. VI, 5, 15-16), but that the stalk is likewise put down on this occasion. Similarly the comm. on Kātyāyana, where it is stated that the stalk of grass (or straw) is first laid down, and then the others thereon. Indeed, as was the case in regard to the stalk of grass—representing the barhis, or layer of sacrificial grass on the vedi—so here the fourfold underlayer is intended to prevent any part of the sacrificial material (havis)—the victim in this case—from being spilt. The

thereon they quiet (slay) it, as (is done) for no other victim; and thus they separate it from the other victims.

2. When they quiet a victim they kill it. Whilst it is being quieted, he (the Adhvaryu) offers (three) oblations¹, with (Vāg. S. XXIII, 18). 'To the breath hail! to the off-breathing hail! to the through-breathing hail!' he thereby lays the vital airs into it, and thus offering is made by him with this victim as a living one².

3. With, 'Ambā! Ambikā! Ambālikā!' there is no one to lead me,—he leads up the (four)

upper garment (or cloth) must be sufficiently large to allow its being afterwards turned up so as to cover the horse and the queen consort.

¹ Prior to these, however, he offers the two 'Pariparavya,' i. e. 'oblations relating to the victim,'—or, perhaps, 'oblations performed in connection with the carrying of fire round the victim,' for this last ceremony is performed for all the victims (whereupon the wild beasts placed between the stakes are let loose) before the killing of the horse. See III, 8, 1, 6-16.

² For the symbolic import of this, see III, 8, 2, 4.

³ These are just three variants used in addressing a mother (Mutter, Mütterchen, Mütterlein), or, indeed, as here, any woman (good lady! good woman!). Acc. to Kāty. XX, 6, 12, this is the formula which the assistant priest (the Neshtri, or, according to others, the Pratiprasthātri, cf. Kāty. VI, 5, 27-28) makes the king's wives say whilst leading them up to the slain horse to cleanse it. It is, moreover, to be preceded by the formula used, at this juncture, at the ordinary animal sacrifice, viz. 'Homage be to thee, O wide-stretched one, advance unresisted unto the rivers of ghee, along the paths of sacred truth! Ye divine, pure waters, carry ye (the sacrifice) to the gods, well-prepared! may ye be well-prepared preparers!' (III, 8, 2, 2-3). The words 'Ambā!' &c. are, according to Mahādhara, addressed by the women to one another. The latter part of the formula as given in the Vāg. Samh. (viz. 'the horse sleeps near Subhadrikā, dwelling in Kāmpilā') is apparently

wives¹: he thereby has called upon them (to come), and, indeed, also renders them sacrificially pure.

4. With (Vāg. S. XXIII, 19), 'We call upon thee, the host-leader of (divine) hosts, O my true lord!' the wives walk round¹ (the horse), and thus make amends to it for that (slaughtering²): even thereby they (already) make amends to it: but,

rejected (? as antiquated, or inauspicious) by the author of the Brāhmaṇa. The ceremony of lying near the dead horse being looked upon as assuring fertility to a woman, the formula used here is also doubtless meant to express an eagerness on the part of the women to be led to the slaughtered horse, representing the lord of creatures, Prajāpati. On this passage compare the remarks of Professor Weber (Ind. Stud. I, p. 183), who takes the formula to be spoken by the queen consort to her three fellow-wives; and who also translates the words 'na mā nayati karāṇa' (nobody leads me) by 'nobody shall lead me thy force to the horse; but if I do not go, the (wicked) horse will lie near (another woman such as) the (wicked) Subadhrikā living in Kāmpīla'.—Harisvāmīn's commentary on this passage is rather corrupt, but he seems at all events to assume that each of the four wives apostrophizes the others with the above formula (probably substituting their real names for the words 'ambā' & c.): *lepsam* (? *lepsiām*) *tāvad eṣa patnīvakṛakāḥ* (? *patnīvakṛakāḥ*) *prāpnoti, katham, ekakā hi patnī varāś tatra āmanṛtya teshāḥ parilevayamānā drīryate*, he ambe he ambike he ambhāke yūyam apunṛyā nishpādote asya (?) *samīpam, sā ḥa pakshapāti kutsito evako mayi yushmākam sasasti meva* (?) *subhadrikām kāmpīlavāsinīm ita* (?) *ita* *surūpām na tu mām karṣit tatra nayatīti; sasastīty eva vartamānasāmīpye vartamānavat* (Pān. III, 3, 131) *ity āsannasevane drashavyah*.—This barbarous ceremony was evidently an old indigenous custom too firmly established in popular practice to be easily excluded from the sacrificial ritual. That it had nothing to do with Vedic religion and was distasteful to the author of the Brāhmaṇa is evident from the brief way in which he refers to it, and from the far-fetched symbolic explanations attached to the formulas and discourses.

¹ Viz. from their ordinary place near the Gārhapatya he leads them whilst holding jars of water in their hands.

² *Apahnuvate vismaranty evāsmāi etat pradakṣhināvartanena sangṛāpanam unnayanti, comm.*

indeed, they also fan¹ it. Thrice they walk round²; for three (in number) are these worlds: by means of these worlds they fan it. Thrice again they walk round³,—that amounts to six, for there are six seasons: by means of the seasons they fan it.

5. But, indeed, the vital airs depart from those who perform the fanning at the sacrifice. Nine times they walk round⁴; for there are nine vital airs: vital airs they thus put into their own selves, and the vital airs do not depart from them. 'I will urge the seed-layer, urge thou the seed-layer!' (the Mahishti says⁵);—seed, doubtless, means offspring and cattle: offspring and cattle she thus secures for herself. [Vāg. S. XXIII, 20.] 'Let us stretch our feet,' thus in order to secure union. 'In heaven ye envelop yourselves' (the Adhvaryu says),—for that is, indeed, heaven where they immolate the victim: therefore he

¹ Thus Harisvāmin:—*dhuvate dhūnane(na) upavāgayanī, evam aśvam rīgānam iva vyaganair etat*,—'they shake themselves.' St. Petersburg Dict.; and, indeed, it is doubtless by the flutter of the garments produced in walking round first one way and then another, that the fanning is supposed to be produced.

² Viz. in sunwise fashion (*pradakṣiṇā*), that is so as to keep the object circumambulated on one's right side.

³ Viz. in the opposite, the '*apradakṣiṇam*' way, as is done in the sacrifice to the departed ancestors. They do so with the text, 'We call upon thee, the dear Lord of the dear ones, O my true lord!'

⁴ Viz. another three times in the sunwise way. Having completed their circumambulation, the king's wives cleanse the horse's apertures of the vital airs (mouth, nostrils, eyes, &c.), as the Sacrificer's wife did at the ordinary animal sacrifice (III, 8, 2, 4), which they do with the text, 'We call upon thee, the treasure-lord of treasures, O my true lord!'

⁵ Cf. III, 5, 2, 1 seqq.

speaks thus.—‘May the vigorous male the layer of seed, lay seed!’ she says in order to secure union.

NINTH BRĀHMANA.

1. But, indeed, that glory, royal power, passes away from him who performs the *Asvamedha*.

2. [The *Udgâtā*?¹ says concerning the king’s favourite wife, *Vāg. S. XXIII, 26*] ‘Raise her upwards?’—the *Asvamedha*, doubtless, is that glory, royal power: that glory, royal power, he thus raises for him (the Sacrificer) upward.

3. ‘Even as one taking a burden up a mountain,’—glory (pomp), doubtless, is the burden of royal power: that glory, royal power, he thus fastens on him (as a burden): but he also endows him with that glory, royal power.

4. ‘And may the centre of her body prosper,’—the centre of royal power, doubtless, is glory: glory (prosperity), food, he thus lays into the very centre of royal power (or, the kingdom).

5. ‘As one winnowing in the cool breeze,’—the cool of royal power, doubtless, is security of

¹ The colloquy between the men and women, referred to in paragraphs 1–8, would seem to go on simultaneously. The verse addressed by the *Hotṛi* to the king’s discarded wife, *Vāg. S. XXIII, 28*, is omitted by the *Brāhmana*, as are also the verses spoken in reply by the women (with their attendants), and closely resembling those of the men in tone and wording. According to some authorities it is the attendant women alone who reply, not the king’s wives. *Kāty. XX, 6, 20*.

² *Mahādhara* takes the objective pronoun to refer to the *Vāvātā*, whilst *Harisvāmin*, on the other hand, supplies some such word as ‘*jāśikām*.’

possession : security of possession he procures for him.

6. [The Adhvaryu addresses one of the attendant maids, Vâg. S. XXIII, 22.] 'That little bird,—the little bird, doubtless, is the people (or clan).—'which bustles with (the sound) "ahalak,"—for the people, indeed, bustle for (the behoof of) royal power,—'thrusts the "pasas" into the cleft, and the "dhâarakâ" devours it,—the cleft, doubtless, is the people, and the 'pasas' is royal power; and royal power, indeed, presses hard on the people; whence the wielder of royal power is apt to strike down people.

7. [The Brahman addresses the queen consort. Vâg. S. XXIII, 24.] 'Thy mother and father,—the mother, doubtless, is this (earth), and the father yonder (sky): by means of these two he causes him to go to heaven;—'mount to the top of the tree,—the top of royal power, doubtless, is glory: the top of royal power, glory, he thus causes him to attain;—'saying, "I pass along," thy father passed his fist to and fro in the cleft,—the cleft, doubtless, is the people; and the fist is royal power; and royal power, indeed, presses hard on the people; whence he who wields royal power is apt to strike down people¹.

8. [The chamberlain addresses the king's fourth wife, Vâg. S. XXIII, 30.] 'When the deer eats the corn,—the grain (growing in the field), doubtless, is the people, and the deer is royal power: he

¹ The Mahishi: Thy mother and father are playing on the top of the tree like thy mouth when thou wilt talk: do not talk so much, Brahman!

thus makes the people to be food for the royal power, whence the wielder of royal power feeds on the people;—‘it thinks not of the fat cattle,’—whence the king does not rear cattle;—‘when the Sûdra woman is the Arya’s mistress, he seeks not riches that he may thrive’,—hence he does not anoint the son of a Vaisya woman.

9. But, indeed, the vital airs pass from those who speak impure speech at the sacrifice. [The queen consort having been made to rise by her attendants, the priests and chamberlain say, Vâg. S. XXIII, 32. *Rig-v. S. IV, 39. 6.*] The praises of Dadhikrâvan have I sung, (the victorious, powerful horse: may he make fragrant our mouths, and prolong our lives!),—thus they finally utter a verse containing the word ‘fragrant’: it is (their own) speech they purify², and the vital airs do not pass from them.

TENTH BRĀHMANA.

1. When they prepare the knife-paths, the Sacrificer makes for himself that passage across, a bridge, for the attainment of the heavenly world.

2. They prepare them by means of needles; the needles, doubtless, are the people³ (clañs), and the Asvamedha is the royal power: they thus supply him with people and royal power combined. They are made of gold: the meaning of this has been explained.

¹ Mahidhara interprets,—then he (her husband), the Sûdra, does not wish for wealth, but is unhappy.

² That is to say, they make amends for any breaches of decorum committed in the preceding colloquy.

³ Viz. because of the large number and the small size (insignificance) of the needles, or wires, (and the common people), comm.

3. Three kinds of needles are (used), copper ones, silver ones, and gold ones;—those of copper, doubtless, are the (principal) regions (of the compass), those of silver the intermediate ones, and those of gold the upper ones: it is by means of these (regions) they render it fit and proper. By way of horizontal and vertical (stitches¹) they are many-formed, whence the regions are many-formed: and they are of distinct form, whence the regions are of distinct form.

ELEVENTH BRĀHMAṆA.

1. Pragāpati desired, 'Would that I were great, and more numerous!' He perceived those two Mahiman (greatness) cups of Soma at the Asvamedha: he offered them; and thereby, indeed, became great and more numerous: hence whosoever should desire to become great, and more numerous, let him offer up those two Mahiman cups of Soma at the Asvamedha: and he indeed becomes great and more numerous.

2. He offers them on both sides (before and after) the omentum:—the Asvamedha, doubtless, is the Sacrificer, and that Mahiman (cup) is the king: it is with royal dignity he thus encompasses him on both sides. Some gods have the svāhā-call ('hail') in front, and the other gods have the svāhā-call behind: it is them he thus gratifies. With 'Hail

¹ It is doubtful what word, if any, has to be supplied here,—perhaps it means, by way of their being (in sewing) horizontal and vertical. The commentary is silent on this passage.

² The formula uttered whilst the first Mahiman cup is offered runs thus (Vāg. S. XXIII, 2): 'What greatness of thine there hath

to the gods!' and 'To the gods hail!' he makes offering by means of the king (Soma) on both sides of the omentum: he thereby gratifies those gods who are in this world, and those who are in the other, and thus gratified, both these kinds of gods lead him to the heavenly world.

THIRD ADHYĀYA. FIRST BRĀHMAṆA.

1. Praḡāpati's eye swelled; it fell out: thence the horse was produced; and inasmuch as it swelled (asvayat), that is the origin and nature of the horse (asva). By means of the Asvamedha the gods restored it to its place; and verily he who performs the Asvamedha makes Praḡāpati complete, and he (himself) becomes complete; and this, indeed, is the atonement for everything, the remedy for everything. Thereby the gods redeem all sin, yea, even the slaying of a Brahman¹ they thereby redeem; and he who performs the Asvamedha redeems all sin, he redeems the slaying of a Brahman.

2. It was the left eye of Praḡāpati that swelled: hence they cut off the (meat) portions from the left

been in the day and the year; what greatness of thine there hath been in the wind and the air; what greatness of thine there hath been in the heavens and the sun, to that greatness of thine, to Praḡāpati, hail, to the gods!' whilst that of the second Mahiman cup runs thus (XXIII, 4): 'What greatness of thine there hath been in the night and the year; what greatness of thine there hath been in the earth and the fire; what greatness of thine there hath been in the Nakshatras (lunar asterisms) and the moon, to that greatness of thine, to Praḡāpati, to the gods, hail!' cf. XIII.

5, 2, 23; 3, 7.

¹ See XIII, 3, 5, 3 seq.

side of the horse, and from the right side of other victims.

3. There is a rattan mat, for the horse was produced from the womb of the waters, and the rattan springs from the water: he thus brings it in connection with its own (maternal) womb.

4. The *Kātushṭoma*¹ is the form of chanting (on

¹ The term *Kātushṭoma* originally apparently means a sacrificial performance, or succession of chants, in which four different *Stomas*, or hymn-forms, are used. Hence, in *Tāndya-Br.* VI, 3, 16, the name is applied to the ordinary *Agnishṭoma*, for its twelve *Stotras*, or chants, require the first four normal *Stomas* (*Trivṛt*, *Pañcadāsa*, *Saptadāsa*, *Ekavimsa*). The term has, however, assumed the special meaning of a hymnic performance, the different *Stomas* of which (begin with the four-versed one, and) successively increase by four verses (cf. XIII, 5, 1, 1). In this sense, two different forms of *Kātushṭoma* are in use, one being applicable to an *Agnishṭoma*, the other to a *Shodasin*, sacrifice. Whilst this latter form requires only four different *Stomas* (of 4, 8, 12, 16 verses resp.) and thus combines the original meaning of '*kātushṭoma*' with its special meaning, the *Agnishṭoma* form, used on the first of the three days of the *Asvamedha*, requires six *Stomas*, ascending from the four-versed up to the twenty-four-versed one. In regard to this latter occasion, *Sāyana* on *Tāndya-Br.* XXI, 4, 1, curiously enough, seems to take '*kātushṭoma*' in its original senses, since he speaks of this first day of the *Asvamedha* as an *Agnishṭoma* with four *Stomas*, beginning with *Trivṛt*; whilst on ib. XIX, 5, 1 seq. he gives the correct explanation. As to the distribution of the six *Stomas* over the chants of the first day, see XIII, 5, 1, 1. The *kātushṭoma* has, however, another peculiarity, which, in *Lāṭy. S.* VI, 8, 1 (or at least by the commentator *Agnisvāmin* thereon), is taken as that which has given its name to this form of chanting, viz. that each *stotra* performed in it is chanted in four, instead of the ordinary three, *parāyāyas* or turns of verses (see part ii, p. 310 note). The *Bahishpavamāna-stotra* is to be performed on three *anushṭubh* verses (consisting each of four octosyllabic *pādas*) which, however, by taking each time three *pādas* to make up a verse, are transformed into four verses, constituting at the same time the four *parāyāyas* of the *Stotra*. As regards the exact

the first day); for a bee tore out¹ (a piece of) the horse's thigh, and by means of the *Kātush/oma* form of chanting the gods restored it: thus when there is the *Kātush/oma* mode of chanting, it is for the completeness of the horse. The last day is an *Atirātra* with all the *Stomas*²—with a view to his obtaining and securing everything, for an *Atirātra* with all the *Stomas* is everything, and the *Asvamedha* is everything.

SECOND BRĀHMAṆA.

1. Now this (Sacrificer), having conquered by means of the supreme *Stoma*—the *Kātush/oma*, the *Kṛita* among dice³,—on the next day establishes

text to be used there seems to be some doubt, *Sāmav.* S. II, 366-8 (*pavasya vāgasītaye*) being mentioned by *Sāyana* on *Tāndya-Br.* XXI, 4, 5; whilst on XIX, 3, 2 he gives S. V. II, 168-70 (*ayam pūshā rayir bhagāh*) as the text to be used—but apparently only when the performance is that of an *ekāha* (one day's sacrifice) proper, instead of one of the days of an *āhina* sacrifice, as is the case in the three days' *Asvamedha*. As regards the *Āgya-stotras* to be chanted on the eight-versed *Stoma*, the text of each of them consists of three *gāyatrī*-verses: these are to be chanted in four turns (*paryāya*) of two verses each, viz. either 1 and 2, 2 and 3, 1 and 2, 2 and 3:—or 1 and 1, 1 and 2, 2 and 2, 3 and 3,—(or 1 and 1, 1 and 1, 2 and 2, 3 and 3;—or 1 and 1, 2 and 2, 2 and 2, 3 and 3). By similar manipulations the subsequent *Stomas* are formed.

¹ Or, wounded, as *Sāyana* takes 'ā *br̥hat*,' on *Tāndya-Br.* XXI, 4, 4 (*vṛanam kakāra*).

² The *Atirātra sarvastoma* is arranged in such a way that the six principal *Stomas* are used successively first in the ascending, and then again in the descending, or reversed, order as is explained in XIII, 5, 3, 10.

³ For this and the other names of the dice, see part iii, p. 106, note 1.

himself on the *Ekavimsa*¹, as a firm foundation: from the *Ekavimsa*, as a firm foundation, he subsequently ascends to the next day, the seasons: for the *Prishtha* (-stotras) are the seasons, and the seasons are the year: it is in the seasons, in the year, he establishes himself.

2. The *Sakvari*² (verses) are the *Prishtha* (-stotra of the second day): there is a different metre for each (verse), for different kinds of animals, both domestic and wild ones, are immolated here on each (day). As to the *Sakvari* (verses) being the *Prishtha*, it is for the completeness of the horse (sacrifice): and different kinds of animals are immolated on different (days), because different stomas are performed on the different (days of the *Asvamedha*).

¹ Though applying in the first place to the second day of the *Asvamedha*, as an *Ukthya* sacrifice which is at the same time an *Ekavimsa* day, i. e. one the stotras of which are all chanted in the twenty-one-versed hymn-form, *Ekavimsa*, the twenty-first or twenty-one-fold, as is clear from XIII, 3. 3. 3, here also refers to the sun, of which it is a common epithet (cf. part iii, p. 265, note 2, also XIII, 4, 4, 11). This solar name seems to be derived from the fact that the sun is also identified with the central day of the year, the *Vishuvant* day, which is considered the central day of a twenty-one days' sacrificial performance—having one *prishthya-shadaha*, an *Abhigit* (or *Visvagit* day resp.) and three *svarasiman* days before and after it;—see p. 139, note; and A. Hillebrandt, *Die Sonnenwendfeste in Alt-Indien*, p. 6 seqq.

² That is to say, the so-called *Mahinamni* verses (*Sām. V.* ed. *Bibl. Ind.* II, p. 371), chanted on the *sakvara-sāman* (see part iii, of this transl., introd. p. xx, note 2), are to be used for the *Hotri's* *Prishtha*-stotra. For this purpose the *Rathantara-sāman* is ordinarily used in the *Agnishoma*, and the *Bṛihat-sāman* in the *Ukthya*, form of sacrifice.

³ The commentator takes this as an allusion to the 'potent' (*sakvara=sakta*) nature of the verses.

3. As to this they say, 'These—to wit, goats and sheep and the wild (beasts)—are not all animals¹; but those—to wit, the bovine (victims)—are indeed all animals.' On the last day he immolates bovine (victims), for they—to wit, bovine (victims)—are all animals: he thus immolates all animals. They are sacred to the All-gods², for the completeness of the horse, for the horse is sacred to the All-gods. They are many-formed (or, many-coloured), whence animals are many-formed; and they are of distinct forms (or colours), whence animals are of distinct forms.

THIRD BRĀHMAṆA.

1. Inasmuch as there are three Anushṭubh verses³ (on the first day), therefore the horse, when standing, stands on three (feet); and inasmuch as (they are made into) four Gāyatri verses, therefore the horse, when stepping out, scampers off on all (four) feet. For that Anushṭubh, doubtless, is the highest metre, and the horse is the highest of animals; and the *Kātushṭoma* is the highest of Stomas: by means of what is highest he thus causes him (the Sacrificer) to reach the highest position.

2. The Sakvari verses are the (Hotri's) *Prishtha* (of the second day): there is a different metre for

¹ That is to say, they do not fitly represent all kinds of animals, as the highest kind of animals, the bovine cattle, may be said to do. The argument as to the 'sarve paśavaḥ' is, of course, suggested by the 'arvasya sarvatvāya' of the preceding paragraph; and to bring out the parallelism, one might translate,—these . . . are not complete animals.

² See XIII, 5, 3, 11.

³ That is, for the *Bahishpavamāna-stotra* of the *Kātushṭoma*, see p. 329, note.

each (verse), for different Stomas are performed on each (day). And as to the Sakvart verse being the *Prishtha* (-stotra), it is for the completeness of the horse (sacrifice).

3. The central day is an *Ekavimsa* one, for the *Ekavimsa* is yonder sun, and so is the *Asvamedha*: by means of its own Stoma he thus establishes it in its own deity.

4. The *Vāmadevya* is the *Maitrāvaruṇa*'s *Sāman*¹; for the *Vāmadevya* is *Pragāpati*, and the horse is of *Pragāpati*'s nature: he thus supplies it with its own deity.

5. The *Pārthuraśma* is the *Brahma-sāman*²; for the horse is restrained by means of reins³ (*rasmi*), but when unrestrained, unchecked, and unsteadied, it would be liable to go to the furthest distance: thus when the *Pārthuraśma* is the *Brahma-sāman*, it is for the safe keeping of the horse.

6. The *Samkrīti*⁴ is the *Akhāvāka*'s *Sāman*:—

¹ That is, the hymn-tune of the second *Prishtha*-stotra chanted for the *Maitrāvaruṇa* (who responds thereto by the recitation of the second *Nishkevalya*-sastra): the *Mahā-Vāmadevya* on the text: 'kayā naś kīra ā bhuvat' (S. V. II, 32-34: figured for chanting in *Bibl. Ind.* ed. III, p. 89) is ordinarily used for this stotra both in the *Agnishōma*, and in the *Ukthya*, form of sacrifice.

² That is, the tune of the third, or *Brāhmaṇīkhaṁsin*'s, *Prishtha*-stotra. For the *sāmans* commonly used for this stotra see part ii, p. 434, note 1. The *Pārthuraśma-sāman* may be chanted on either of the texts *Sāmav.* II, 352-4 (figured ed. *Bibl. Ind.* vol. V, p. 395) or II, 355-7 (figured vol. V, p. 483). It is the latter text which is to be used on the present occasion. On the legendary origin of this *sāman* (which is said to represent 'strength,' and therefore to be appropriate to a *Rāganya*) see *Tāndya-Br.* XIII, 4, 17.

³ Or, is fastened by means of a rope.

⁴ The *Samkrīti-sāman* is used with the texts *Sāmav.* II, 663-4 (figured ed. *Bibl. Ind.* V, p. 407), II, 669-70 (ib. p. 482, wrongly

that Asvamedha, indeed, is, as it were, a disused sacrifice, for what is performed thereof, and what is not¹? When the *Samkr̥iti* is the *Akhāvaka*'s *Sāman*, it is for (bringing about) the completeness of the horse (sacrifice). The last day is an *Atirātra* with all the (six) *Stomas*, in order to his (the Sacrificer's) obtaining everything, for an *Atirātra* with all the *Stomas* is everything, and the *Asvamedha* is everything.

7. The fire-altar is the twenty-one-fold one², the *Stoma* the twenty-one-fold one, and there are twenty-one sacrificial stakes; even as bulls or stallions³ would clash together, so do these *Stomas*⁴, the

called *Samgati*, and II, 679-81 (ib. p. 515). It is probably the second of these texts that is to be used here, as it is also used for the same stotra on the second day of the *Garga-tritātra*.

¹ Cp. the corresponding passage, *Taitt. S. V.*, 4, 12, 3, 'that *Asvamedha*, indeed, is a disused sacrifice, for, say they, who knows if the whole of it is performed or not?' Perhaps, however, '*utsanna-yagña*' rather means 'a decayed sacrifice,' i. e. one which has lost (or in the usual performance is apt to lose) some of its original elements: whence the '*Samkr̥iti*' tune is to be used for the purpose of 'making up' the lost parts. Part of the commentary in this passage is not clear to me:—*uktatkalāpagrāmālau siddhasthāne satrasthito granthato r̥thatat ka yat yagña utsannayagña esha yah asvamedhah katham utsanna ity āta āha, kim vā hīti, yasya dharmāḥ pūrvayonau (?) pūrvayuge) prayugyante teshām kimkit kalau kriyate kimkin na kriyate, tatas ka samkr̥tir akhāvakasāma bhavati.*

² That is, an altar measuring twenty-one man's lengths on each of the four sides of its body.

³ The commentary seems to take both '*rishabha*' and '*vriṣhan*' here in the sense of 'bulls,' but cp. *Taitt. Br. III*, 8, 21, 1, '*yathā vā arvā varshabhā vā vriṣhānah sam sphureran*'—'even as if male horses or bulls were to clash together.'

⁴ That is, not only the twenty-one-fold *Stoma*, but also the other two twenty-one-fold objects, looked upon as *Stomas* (lit. 'means of praise').

twenty-one-versed, run counter to one another : were he to bring them together, the Sacrificer would suffer harm, and his sacrifice would be destroyed.

8. There may, indeed, be a twelvefold altar, and eleven stakes. When the altar is a twelvefold one—twelve months being a year—it is the year, the sacrifice, he obtains. When there are eleven stakes, then that Virâg (metre), the Ekâdasinī¹, is contrived ; and that which is its eleventh (stake) is its teat : thereby he milks it.

9. As to this they say, ' If there were a twelvefold altar, and eleven stakes, it would be as if one were to drive on a cart drawn by one beast.' There are the twenty-one-fold altar, the twenty-one-fold Stoma, and twenty-one stakes : that is as when one drives with side-horses.

10. That twenty-one-fold one, indeed, is the head of the sacrifice : and, verily, he who knows three heads on the Asvamedha, becomes the head of kings. There are the twenty-one-fold altar, the twenty-one-fold Stoma, and twenty-one stakes : these are the three heads on the Asvamedha : and, verily, he who thus knows them becomes the head of kings. And, indeed, he who knows the three tops on the Asvamedha, becomes the top of kings ;—there are the twenty-one-fold altar, the twenty-one-fold Stoma, and twenty-one stakes : these, indeed, are the three tops on the Asvamedha : and, verily, he who thus knows them becomes the top of kings.

¹ Viz. the set of eleven (stakes), here represented as a cow : but in order to assimilate it to the Virâg, or metre consisting of ten syllables, the eleventh stake is made the teat or udder of the cow.

FOURTH BRĀHMAṆA.

1. Verily, the horse is slaughtered for all the deities: were he to make it one belonging to Pragâpati (exclusively), he would deprive the deities who are co-sharers of their share. Having made ghee (to take the part of) portions (of the horse's body) he makes oblations¹ to the deities in mentioning them one by one with (Vâg. S. XXV, 19). 'The Grass (I gratify) with the teeth, the Lotus with the roots of the hair, . . . ' the deities who are co-sharers he thus supplies with their share. When he has offered the Aranye-nûkya (oblations)², he offers the last oblation to

¹ These oblations of ghee, apparently amounting to 132, are made, after the principal flesh-portions have been offered, viz. in the interval between the ghee-oblacion to Vanaspati (the lord of the forest, or the plant, Soma) and the Svishakrî oblation, for which see part ii, pp. 208-9: each formula, as a rule, containing the name of some divinity, and that of some part of the body of the horse supposed to be represented by the ghee (by four ladlings of which the offering spoon is filled each time). Mahidhara, apparently in accordance with the Brâhmana, supplies 'prizâmi (I gratify)' with each (complete) formula which then concludes with 'svâhâ (hail)!' According to other authorities, however, these formulas are each to be divided into two separate dedicatory formulas:—'To the Grass hail! To the Teeth hail!' &c.—The last of the 132 oblations (with the formula, 'To Gumbaka, hail!') is, however, withheld for the present to be offered (or perhaps the formula alone is to be muttered) at the end of the purificatory bath (avabhṛitha) towards the end of the sacrifice on the third day.

² The term 'aranye-nûkya' ('to be recited in the forest') we met before (IX, 3, 1, 24) as applying to the last of seven cakes offered to the Maruts immediately after the installation of Agni (the sacred fire) on the newly-built altar. The formula used for that cake is the so-called Vimukha-verse, Vâg. S. XXXIX, 7. This

Heaven and Earth ; for all the gods are established in heaven and on earth : it is them he thereby gratifies. Now the gods and the Asuras were contending together.

2. They (the gods) spake, ' We are the Agnayaḥ Svishṭakṛītaḥ¹ of the horse (sacrifice) : let us take out for ourselves a special share : therewith we shall overcome the Asuras.' They took the blood for themselves in order to overcome their rivals : when he offers the blood to the Svishṭakṛīts, it is in order to overcome (his own) rivals ; and the spiteful rival of him who knows this is undone by himself.

3. The first oblation (of blood) he offers² in the

verse is followed in the Samhitā by a series of twenty formulas (ib. 8-9) of a similar nature to those referred to in the preceding note (i. e. consisting each of a deity and a part of the body of the horse : ' Agni I gratify with the heart,' &c.), and these again by forty-two expiatory formulas (' To the hair, hail !' &c., ib. 10-13), ending with, ' To Yama, hail ! To Antaka (the Ender), hail ! To Death, hail ! To (the) Brahman, hail ! To Brahman-slaying, hail ! To the All-gods, hail ! To Heaven and Earth, hail !' These sixty-two formulas are used with as many ghee-oblations, which are to be performed immediately after the 131st of the previous set of oblations. Prior, however, again to the last of the forty-two expiatory oblations, (viz. the one made with ' To Heaven and Earth, hail !') there is another set of sixteen oblations (XIII. 3. 6, 1 seqq.), the so-called ' Asvastomiyā āhutayaḥ ' or ' oblations relating to the Stomas of the horse (sacrifice), ' each of which has a complete couplet for its offering-formula (Vāg. S. XXV. 24-39). To all these three sets of oblations the term ' arāṇye-nūṭya ' is here extended by the author. At the end of the third set this succession of ghee-oblations is concluded with the last expiatory oblation, that to Heaven and Earth ; whereupon the ordinary flesh-oblation to Agni Svishṭakṛī is performed.

¹ I. e. the (three) fires, the makers of good offering.

² The formula for each of these three special blood-oblations—

throat (gullet) of the *Gomṛiga*¹; for *Gomṛigas* are cattle, and the *Svishṭakṛit* is Rudra: he thus

offered immediately after the ordinary *Svishṭakṛit* oblation, and being, in fact, the special *Svishṭakṛit* of the *Arvamedha*—is ‘*Agnibhyaḥ svishṭakṛitbhyaḥ svāhā*, i.e. to the (three) Agnis, the makers of good offering, hail!’

¹ ‘*Gomṛiga*’ is usually taken by the commentators, and in our dictionaries, as another name of the ‘*Gavaya*,’ variously called *Gayā*, *Bos Gavaeus*, *Bos frontalis*, or *Bos cavifrons*, a species of wild cattle found in various mountain districts of India (especially on the eastern boundaries of Bengal, and in Malabar, as also in Ceylon), and frequently domesticated amongst the hill-tribes, by whom it is valued for its flesh and milk (cf. Colebrooke’s paper, *As. Res.* VIII, p. 511 *seqq.*). The *Gavaya* itself is, however, as Colebrooke remarks, confounded by some Sanskrit writers with the ‘*Riṣya*,’ which he takes to be the buck of the painted, or white-footed (or spotted leured) Antelope, the *Portax pictus* (or *Antelope picta*), also called by the vernacular names of *Nilgau* or (Mahr.) *Nilgāy*, whilst the female is called ‘*rohit*’ in Sanskrit. All these three animals occur amongst the wild animals to be used as quasi-victims, but ultimately released on the second day of the *Arvamedha*; and I am inclined to think that they are three different animals. To show that the *Riṣya* and the *Gavaya* cannot be the same animals, Colebrooke already refers to the fact that three *Riṣyas* (consecrated to the *Vasu*-) and three *Gavayas* (to *Brhataspati*) occur as victims side by side in *Vāgasaneyi-saṃhitā* XXIV (27 and 28); and in the same way a *Gomṛiga*, sacred to *Pragāpati* and *Vāyu*, is mentioned immediately after, *ib.* 30; whilst another, sacred to *Pragāpati*, was, as we saw, one of the two animals tied along with the horse to the central stake (see XIII, 2, 2, 2). Taitt. S. II, 1, 10, 2, treating of the sacrifice of a *Gomṛiga* to *Vāyu*, remarks that it is neither a domestic animal (or cattle, *paru*) nor a wild one; and *Sāyana* explains it as a cross between a female deer (or antelope, *mṛigī*) and a bull that has gone with his cows to graze in the forest; whilst, on Taitt. Br. III, 8, 20, 5, he leaves one to choose between its being a vicious bull (*dhūrtō bahvardaḥ*), dangerous to men, or an animal ‘of mixed breed, sprung from a cow and a male gazelle or antelope (*goharizayoh*, or possibly, from parent beasts of the bovine and antelope species).’ In this latter passage, the editor

shields the cattle from Rudra, whence Rudra does not prowl after the cattle where this oblation is offered at the Asvamedha.

4. The second oblation¹ he offers on a horse-hoof; for the one-hoofed (animals) are cattle, and the Svish/akr/it is Rudra: he thus shields the cattle from Rudra, whence Rudra does not prowl after the cattle where this oblation is offered at the Asvamedha.

5. The third oblation he offers in an iron bowl: for the people (subjects) are of iron², and the Svish/akr/it is Rudra: he thus shields the people from Rudra, whence Rudra does not prowl after the cattle where this oblation is offered at the Asvamedha.

FIFTH BRĀHMAṆA.

1. Verily, there are deaths³ connected with all the worlds; and were he not to offer oblations to them, Death would get hold of him in every world:

of the Brāhmaṇa (in the list of contents, p. 53) takes it to mean 'wild cattle (Nilgāo gom/ṛga, erroneously explained as a cross between a deer and a cow),' which would be a probable enough explanation, if the *Riṣya* were not the Nilgau: whilst otherwise the animal might belong to some other species of bovine antelopes no longer found in India.

¹ Whilst the first of these oblations must take place immediately after the ordinary Svish/akr/it of the animal sacrifice, the second may be postponed till after the 'after-offerings': and the third till after the 'Patnisamyāgas.' See also XIII, 5, 3, 8 seq.

² That is, their value—as compared with that of the king or nobles, and the Brāhmaṇas—is that of iron, compared with that of gold and silver; cp. XIII, 2, 2, 10.

³ That is, according to Sāyana, on Taitt. Br. III, 9, 15. 1, causes of death, such as diseases, &c.

when he offers oblations to the Deaths¹, he wards off Death in every world.

2. Concerning this they say, 'If, in offering, he were to name them all, saying, "To such² (a death) hail! To such (a death) hail!" he would make that manifold death his enemy³, and would give himself over to Death.' Only one oblation he offers to one of them, with, 'To Death, hail!' for there is indeed but one Death in yonder world, even Hunger⁴: it is him he wards off in yonder world.

3. A second oblation he makes with, 'To Brahman-slaying, hail!' for, doubtless, a murder other than the slaying of a Brahman is no murder: but that -to wit, the slaying of a Brahman—is manifestly murder: he thus manifestly wards off Death⁵.

¹ The oblations referred to in this Brāhmaṇa (§§ 1-4) occur towards the end of the second set of 'aranye-nûkya' oblations mentioned above, p. 336, note 2, where the formulas are given. According to Taitt. Br., l.c., however, these final oblations are to be performed—like that to Gumbaka (Varuṇa)—at the time of the purificatory bath, which, indeed, may also be intended by our Brāhmaṇa, though Kātyāyana and Mahīdhara seem to offer no indications to that effect. It is clear that these final oblations must have formed the subject of considerable discussion among the early ritualists.

² That is, according to Sāyana (Taitt. Br.), 'To death in the shape of disease, to death in the shape of poverty, &c.' Hari-śvāmin, on our passage, has merely, 'Amushmai pitr-lokāya mṛtyave'—'To death (in the shape of) the world of the Fathers,' which is not very clear.

³ Or, perhaps, he would make himself many a death-enemy (bahum mṛtyum amitram kurvīta), the two nouns being taken as in apposition to each other; cf. p. 146, note 1.

⁴ See X, 6, 5, 1.

⁵ Or, he thus wards off what is manifestly Death (Death in person).

4. *Mundibha Audanya*¹ it was who discovered this atonement for the slaying of a Brahman; and when one offers the oblation to the *Brahmahatyā* he prepares a remedy for the slayer of a Brahman by satisfying Death himself with an oblation, and making a protection² for him (the slayer). At whosoever's *Asvamedha*, therefore, this oblation is offered, even if in after-times³ any one in his family kills a Brahman, he thereby prepares a remedy (expiation) for him.

SIXTH BRĀHMANA.

1. When the horse was slaughtered, the life-sap⁴ went out of it; it became the *Asvastomiya* (set of oblations⁵): when he offers the *Asvastomiya* (oblations) he indeed supplies the horse with life-sap.

2. He performs it with ghee; for ghee is life-sap. and the *Asvastomiya* is life-sap: by means of life-

¹ That is, according to Harisvāmin, the son of Udanya (*Odana*. St. Petersburg. Dict.), *Taitt. Br.* III, 9, 15, 3, has *Mundibha Audanyava* (i.e. the son of Udanyu, *Sāy.*) instead. The *Taitt. Br.*, besides, makes the crime to be expiated here to be, not '*brahmahatyā*,' but '*bhrūṇahatyā*,' the killing of an embryo. *Sāyana*, however, there allows to '*bhrūṇa*' optionally its later meaning of 'a *Brāhmana* versed in the three Vedas and the sacrificial art (*kalpa*),' and the *Taitt. Br.* itself, at all events, takes this oblation to '*bhrūṇahatyā*' to atone likewise for the slaying of a *Brāhmana*.

² Harisvāmin explains '*paripānam*' by '*pariśiṣṭam vānantam pānam*' (?); whilst *Sāyana*, in *Taitt. Br.*, takes it in the sense of '*sarvataḥ pātram*,' i.e. having made the Sacrificer 'a thoroughly worthy person.'

³ Harisvāmin here unwarrantably takes '*aparīṣhū*' in the sense of 'in past times.'

⁴ Or, sacrificial essence.

⁵ See p. 336, note 2.

sap he thus puts life-sap into it. He performs with ghee, for that—to wit, ghee—is the favourite resource of the gods: he thus supplies them with their favourite resource.

3. Having performed the Asvastomiya (set of) oblations, he offers the Dvipadās¹; for the Asvastomiya is the horse, and the Dvipadā is man, for man is two-footed (dvipād), supported on two (feet): he thus supplies him with a support.

4. Concerning this they say, 'Is the Asvastomiya to be offered first, or the Dvipadā?' The Asvastomiya, surely, is cattle, and the Dvipadā is man: inasmuch as he performs the Dvipadās after performing the Asvastomiya, man subsequently establishes himself amongst cattle.

5. Sixteen Asvastomiya oblations he performs, for animals (cattle) consist of sixteen parts²: that is the measure of cattle, and he thus supplies cattle with their (right) measure. Were he to offer either less or more, he would deprive cattle of their (right) measure. Sixteen he offers, for cattle consist of sixteen parts: that is the measure of cattle, and he thus supplies cattle with their (right) measure. He offers no other as a final oblation³: were he to offer another as a final oblation, he would lose

¹ The formulas of the six dvipadās—i.e. (verses) consisting of two pādas—are found Vāg. S. XXV, 46-47.

² See XII, 8, 3, 13; for a highly artificial explanation of the sixteen parts of the man Pragâpati, probably intended here, X, 4, 1, 17. Elsewhere those of animals are explained as including head, neck, trunk, tail, the four legs and eight claws; see Weber, Ind. Stud. IX, p. 111, note.

³ This would seem to be directed against the practice of performing the oblation to Heaven and Earth immediately after the Asvastomiyās, see p. 336, note 2.

his support. The Dvipadās he offers last, for Dvipadās are a support: he thus finds a support (establishes himself). With, 'To Gumbaka hail!' he offers, at the purificatory bath, the last oblation¹; for Gumbaka is Varuṇa: by sacrifice he thus manifestly redeems himself from Varuṇa. He offers it on the head of a white-spotted², bald-headed (man) with protruding teeth³ and reddish brown eyes; for that is Varuṇa's form: by (that) form (of his) he thus redeems himself from Varuṇa.

6. Having stepped out (of the water) he prepares twelve messes of cooked rice for the priests, or performs twelve ish/īs. Concerning this they say. 'These—to wit, ish/īs—are a form of sacrifice: were he to perform ish/īs, the sacrifice would be ready to incline towards him; but he would become the worse for it, for, surely, of exhausted strength now are the metres (offering formulas) of him who has performed the Soma-sacrifice;—how could he make use of them so soon? For when the sacrifice is complete, Vāk (speech and sacred writ⁴) is wholly gained, and, being gained, it now is exhausted in strength, and, as it were, wounded and mangled; but sacrifice is speech: hence he should not make use of it.'

¹ See p. 336, note 1.

² ? Or, pale. Sāyana, on Taitt. Br. III, 9, 15, 3, explains 'rukla' by 'kṛitrin' (? having white spots, or affected with white leprosy). Harisvāmin does not explain the word.

³ Harisvāmin explains 'viklidha' by 'dantura,' i.e. one who has projecting teeth; whilst Sāyana, l.c., explains it by either 'given to perspiring (svedanasflasarīra),' or 'moist-bodied (? leprous, or, old, in bodily decay, viklinnadeha).'

⁴ Cf. V, 5, 5, 12 'that triple Veda is the thousandfold progeny of Vāk.'

7. Having stepped out (of the water) he should certainly prepare twelve messes of rice for the priests; for cooked rice is Pragâpati, and Pragâpati is the year, Pragâpati is the sacrifice: it is the year, the sacrifice, he thus gains, and the sacrifice becomes ready to incline towards him, and he does not become the worse for it.

SEVENTH BRĀHMANA.

1. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Strengthful: wherever they worship with this sacrifice, everything indeed becomes strong.

2. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Plenteous: wherever they worship with this sacrifice, everything indeed becomes plentiful.

3. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Obtainment: wherever they worship with this sacrifice, everything indeed becomes obtained.

4. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Distinction: wherever they worship with this sacrifice, everything indeed becomes distinct¹.

5. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Severance: wherever they worship with this sacrifice, everything indeed becomes severed².

6. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Food-abounding: wherever they worship with this sacrifice, everything indeed becomes abounding in food.

7. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Sapful:

¹ Svakarmasu bhâgena sthâpitam (? confined respectively to its own functions), comm.

² Harisvâmin supplies 'akâryebhyaḥ'—is kept away from what it is forbidden to do, or from what is not one's business.

wherever they worship with this sacrifice, everything indeed becomes rich in sap (or drink).

8. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Abounding in holiness: wherever they worship with this sacrifice, the Brāhmaṇa is born as one rich in holiness.

9. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Excelling in hitting: wherever they worship with this sacrifice, the Rāganya is born as one excelling in hitting (the mark).

10. Verily, this is the sacrifice called the Long (wide) one: wherever they worship with this sacrifice, a wide tract of forest-land will be provided¹.

11. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Fitness: wherever they worship with this sacrifice, everything indeed becomes fit and proper.

12. Verily, this is the sacrifice called Support (foundation): wherever they worship with this sacrifice, everything indeed becomes supported (firmly established).

EIGHTH BRĀHMAṆA.

EXPIATORY OFFERINGS.

1. Now, then, of the expiations. If the sacrificial horse were to couple with a mare, let him in addition prepare a milk (oblation) to Vāyu;—Vāyu doubtless is the transformer of seeds, for Vāyu (the wind) is the vital air, and the vital air is the transformer

¹ That is, as would seem, either as a protection from neighbouring countries, or as room for spreading, and as pasture-land. Cf., however, XIII, 2-4, 2, 4, where, as in Ait. Br. III, 44; VI, 23, such a belt of jungle is referred to as a source of danger to the inhabitants of a country.

of seeds: by means of seed he thus puts seed into it.

2. And if disease were to befall it, let him in addition prepare a pap to Pûshan, for Pûshan rules over beasts (cattle); and, indeed, he thereby gratifies him who owns cattle and rules over cattle; and it (the horse) thereby indeed becomes free from disease.

3. And if sickness without (visible) injury¹ were to befall it, let him in addition prepare for (Agni) Vaisvânara a cake on twelve potsherds, with the earth serving for potsherds²; for Vaisvânara is this (earth) · he thereby gratifies this (earth), and it (the horse) becomes free from disease.

4. And if an eye-disease were to befall it, let him in addition prepare a pap to Sûrya;—the Sun, doubtless, is the eye of creatures, for when he rises everything here moves: by means of the eye (of the world) he thus bestows the eye upon it. And as to why it is a pap (karu), it is because by means of the eye this self (body or mind) moves (kar).

5. And if it were to die in water, let him in addition prepare a barley pap to Varuna, for Varuna seizes him who dies in water: he thereby thus gratifies that very deity who seizes it, and, thus gratified, he approves his slaughtering another (horse), and he slaughters it as one approved by that (deity). And as to why it is (prepared) of barley, it is because barley belongs to Varuna.

6. And if it were to get lost, let him in addition

¹ Viz. such as fever, comm.

² That is, spreading them on the earth, or on clods of earth, comm.

perform an *ish/i* with three sacrificial dishes—a cake on one potsherd for Heaven and Earth, a milk (oblation) for Vāyu, and a pap for Sūrya;—for whatsoever is lost, is lost within heaven and earth; and the wind blows upon it, and the sun shines upon it; and nothing whatever is lost out of (the reach of) these deities. And even by itself¹ this (*ish/i*) is the recoverer of what is lost; and even if any other thing of his were to get lost let him perform this very offering, and he verily finds it. And if enemies were to obtain the horse, or if it were to die (either in any other way) or in water², let them bring another (horse) and consecrate it by sprinkling: this, indeed, is the expiation in that case.

FOURTH ADHYĀYA. FIRST BRĀHMANA.

1. Praṇāpati desired, 'Would that I obtained all my desires! would that I attained all attainments!' He beheld this three days' Soma-sacrifice, the Asvamedha, and took possession of it, and sacrificed with it: by sacrificing therewith he obtained all his desires, and attained all attainments: and, verily, whosoever performs the Asvamedha sacrifice obtains all his desires, and attains all attainments.

2. Concerning this they say, 'In what season is the beginning (to be made)?'—'Let him begin it in summer,' say some, 'for summer is the Kshatriya's season, and truly this—to wit, the Asvamedha—is the Kshatriya's sacrifice.'

3. But let him rather begin it in spring; for

¹ That is, even independently of the horse-sacrifice.

² That is to say, if it were to die by getting drowned, or in any other way.

spring is the Brāhmaṇa's season, and truly who-soever sacrifices, sacrifices after becoming, as it were, a Brāhmaṇa : let him therefore by all means begin it in spring.

4. And six days, or seven days, before that full-moon of Phālguna, the officiating priests meet together—to wit, the Adhvaryu, the Hotri, the Brahman, and the Udgātri; for under these¹ the other priests are.

5. The Adhvaryu prepares for them a priest's mess of rice sufficient for four persons : the meaning of this has been explained². Four bowlfuls, four double handfuls, four handfuls : twelvefold this is—twelve months are a year, and the year is everything, and the Asvamedha is everything—thus it is in order to his gaining and securing everything.

6. Those four priests eat it : the meaning of this has been explained. He (the Sacrificer) gives to them four thousand (cows) in order to his gaining and securing everything, for a thousand means everything, and the Asvamedha is everything. And (he gives them) four gold plates weighing a hundred (grains) : the meaning of this has been explained³.

7. The Adhvaryu then, hanging a gold ornament (nishka) round him, makes him mutter (Vāg. S. XXII, 1), 'Fire thou art, light and immortality,'—for gold, indeed, is fire, light⁴, and

¹ Or, along with these, included in them (are the assistant priests).

² See XIII, 1, 1, 1; 4 (cf. II, 1, 4, 4).

³ XII, 7, 2, 13.

⁴ Perhaps Mahīdhara is right in taking 'sukram' here in the sense of 'seed' (Agner vīryam); cf. II, 1, 1, 5; XIII, 1, 1, 4.

immortality: fire (fiery mettle), light (brilliance), and immortality he thus bestows upon him;— 'protector of life, protect my life!' he thereby bestows life (vital strength) upon him. With a view to commencing the sacrifice, he then says to him, 'Restrain thy speech!' for the sacrifice is speech.

8. Four (of the king's) wives are in attendance—the consecrated queen, the favourite wife, a discarded wife, and the Pālāgali¹, all of them adorned and wearing gold ornaments (neck-plates)—with the view of the completeness of conjugal union. With them he enters the hall of the sacrificial fires—the Sacrificer by the eastern, the wives by the southern, door.

9. When the evening-offering² has been performed, he lies down with his favourite wife behind the Gârhapatya hearth, with his head towards the north. At the same place³ the other (wives) also lie down. He lies in her lap without embracing her⁴, thinking, 'May I, by this self-restraint, reach successfully the end of the year!'

10. When the morning offering has been performed, the Adhvaryu performs a full-offering⁵ with a view to his (the Sacrificer's) gaining and securing everything, for the full means everything, and the Asvamedha is everything. At this (offering) he releases speech by (bestowing) a boon.

¹ See p. 313, note 2.

² That is the evening performance of the Agnihotra.

³ Tad eva tatraiva, comm.

⁴ So-ntarorū asaṃvartamānaḥ sete.

⁵ For particulars regarding the 'pūrṣāhuti,' or oblation of a spoonful of ghee, see part i, p. 302, note 2.

saying, 'I grant a boon to the Brahman (priest) : ' (this he does) with a view to his gaining and securing everything, for a boon is everything, and the Asvamedha is everything.

11. The gold ornament which is attached to his (neck) he then gives to the Adhvaryu : in giving it to the Adhvaryu he secures to himself immortal life, for gold means immortal life.

12. For the object of (gaining) the road, and in order not to lose the mouth (mukha) of the sacrifice, he then prepares an ish/i-offering¹ to Agni. For, indeed, all the deities have Agni for their mouth, and in the Asvamedha are (contained) all objects of desire : 'Having, at the outset (mukha²/a/), gratified all the gods, may I obtain all my desires ! ' so he thinks.

13. For this (offering) there are fifteen kindling-verses³ ; for fifteenfold is the thunderbolt, and the thunderbolt means vigour : with the thunderbolt (of) vigour the Sacrificer thus from the first repels evil. The two butter-portions relate to the slaying of Vṛitra³, with a view to the repelling of evil, for

¹ Viz. a cake (on eight kapālas) to Agni Pathikr̥t̥, 'the path-maker'—or, according to Āsv. Sr. X, 6, 3. to Agni Mūrdhanvat ('forming the head,' so called from the formulas used containing the word 'head.') For a similar special offering to the same deity see XII, 4, 4, 1 (cf. XI, 1, 5, 5).

² See part i, p. 95 seqq. (especially I, 3, 5, 5-7).

³ The two Āgyabhāgas, or butter-portions to Agni and Soma, are said to be 'Vṛitra-slaying' (vārtraghna), or to relate to the slaying of Vṛitra, when their anuvākyās, or invitational formulas, are the two verses *R̥ig-veda* VI, 16, 34 (agnir vṛitrāni gaṅghanat, 'May Agni slay the Vṛitras'), and I, 91, 5 (tvam somāsi satpatīs tvam rāgota vṛitrahā, 'Thou, O Soma, art the true lord, thou art the king and the slayer of Vṛitra,' &c.). This is the case at the Full-moon sacrifice, whilst at the New-moon sacrifice the two butter-

Vṛitra is evil. [The verses, *Vāg. S. XIII, 14, 15,* 'Agni, the head, the summit of the sky . . .¹' and 'Be thou the leader of the sacrifice and the realm of space (whither thou strivest with auspicious teams: thy light-winning head hast thou raised to the sky, and thy tongue, O Agni, hast thou made the bearer of the offering),' pronounced in a low voice, are the *anuvākyā* and *yāgyā* of the chief oblation. The one contains (the word) 'head,' the other (the verb) 'to be,'—for the head, assuredly, is he that shines yonder: thus it is in order to secure him (the Sun); and as to why (the other) contains (the verb) 'to be,'—he thereby secures that which is (the real, truly existent). The *Samyāgyās*² are two *virāg*-verses³; for that—to wit, the *Virāg*—is the metre

portions are said to be '*vṛidhanvant*,' or 'relating to growth,' because the *anuvākyās* used on that occasion are two verses containing forms of the root *vṛidh*, 'to grow,' viz. VIII. 44. 12 (*agnih̄ pratnena manmanā . . . kavir vipreṇa vāvṛidhe*, 'Agni has grown strong by the old hymn,—as the wise one by the priest') and I, 91, 11 (*Soma girbhish̄ tvā vayan̄ vardhayāmo vaṭovidah̄ . . .* 'O Soma, we magnify thee (make thee grow) by our songs, skillful in speech'). In the same way the one or the other form is used in different *ishṭis*. At I. 6, 2, 12, the translation, 'the two butter-
portions should be offered to the *Vṛitra*-slayer (Indra)' should therefore be altered to 'the two butter-
portions relate to the slaying of *Vṛitra*' (or, 'are *Vṛitra*-slaying').

¹ See VII, 4, 1, 41.

² That is, the two formulas used with the oblation to Agni *Svishṭakṛt*.

³ Whilst the normal performance of an *ishṭi* requires two *trishṭubh*-verses (*Rig-veda* X, 2, 1; VI, 15, 14; cf. part i, p. 202, notes 2 and 3) for the invitatory and offering formulas of the oblations to Agni *Svishṭakṛt*, two *virāg*-verses are frequently prescribed, certain verses of the *Virāg*-hymn *Rig-veda* VII, 1, being chiefly used for this purpose; e. g. v. 3 as the *anuvākyā*, and v. 18 as the *yāgyā* for the *Svishṭakṛt* of the oblation to Aditi at the

belonging to all the gods, and all objects of desire are (contained) in the Asvamedha : ' Having gratified all the gods, may I obtain all my desires ! ' so he thinks. The sacrificial fee is gold weighing a hundred (grains) : the meaning of this has been explained.

14. He then prepares a (pap) for Pûshan, for Pûshan is the overlord of roads : he thus secures successful progress to the horse. But Pûshan is also this (earth) : he thus makes this (earth) its guardian, for neither injury nor failure befalls him whom this (earth) guards on the way : and this (earth) he thus makes its guardian.

15. For this (offering) there are seventeen kindling-verses¹, for the obtainment of the Asvamedha, for Pragâpati is seventeenfold, and the Asvamedha is Pragâpati. The two butter-portions are possessed of 'growth', even for the growth of the Sacrificer. [The verses, Vâg. S. XXXIV. 41, 42,] ' Pûshan, in thy sway we [shall never suffer harm, we (who) here are singers of thy praises], ' and ' The hymn (?) lovingly composed by desire of praise hath reached

Âdhâna (see part i, p. 307, note 3), and the Dîk-hanîyeshî; and vv. 14, 15 as yâgyâ and anuvâkyâ of the Svish/akrî of the Prâyanîyeshî. It is doubtless the two former verses, commonly employed at special ishîs (cf. part i, p. 164, note 3), which are to be used on the present occasion.

¹ See part i, p. 112, note 1.

² That is, they are performed with two invitatory formulas containing the verb 'to grow,' see p. 350, note 3. Whilst our Brâhmana thus prescribes the two invitatory formulas used for the butter-portions of the New-moon sacrifice, Âsvalâyana (Sr. X, 6, 6) prescribes two verses containing the verb 'as' (or 'bhû'), viz. *Rîg-veda* V, 13, 4, *tvam agne saprathâ asi*; and I, 91, 9, *soma yâs te mayobhuva ûtaya! santi dârushe tâbhir no-vitâ bhava*.

the guardian of every path: (may he, Pūshan, grant unto us draughts of light (?), and fulfil our every prayer!), pronounced in a low voice, are the anuvākya and yāgyā of the chief oblation. The one contains (the word) 'sway,' the other (the word) 'path'; for sway is vigour: (thus it is) in order to his gaining and securing vigour; and as to why (the other) contains (the word) 'path,' he thereby secures successful progress to the horse. The invitatory and offering formulas of the Svishṭakṛit are two anushṭubh verses¹; for the Anushṭubh is speech, and Pragâpati is speech, and the Asvamedha is Pragâpati: thus it is for the obtainment of the Asvamedha. The priests' fee consists of a hundred garments, for that—to wit, the garment—is man's outward appearance, whence people (on seeing) any well-clad man, ask, 'Who can this be?' for he is perfect in his outward appearance: with outward appearance he thus endows him. There are a hundred of them, for man has a life of a hundred (years), and a hundred energies: life, and energy, vigour, he thus gains for himself.

SECOND BRĀHMAṆA.

1. Whilst this (offering to Pūshan) is being performed, the horse, having been cleansed, is led up—being one which is marked with all colours, or which is perfect in speed, worth a thousand (cows), in its prime, and without its match under the right-side yoke².

¹ Viz. according to Âsv. Sr. X, 6, 7,—*Rig-veda* I, 45, 6 (tvām kītrasravastama) and V, 25, 7 (yad vāsishṭham yad agnayē).

² Thus Harisvāmin,—'anyebhyo dakṣinādhuryebhya utkrish-

2. And as to its being one marked with all colours, it is for the sake of his (the Sacrificer's) obtaining and securing everything, for colour (outward appearance) is everything, and the Asvamedha is everything. And as to its being perfect in speed, it is for the sake of his obtaining and securing vigour, for speed is vigour. And as to its being worth a thousand (cows), it is for the sake of his obtaining and securing everything, for a thousand means everything, and the Asvamedha is everything. And as to its being in its prime, it is for the sake of his obtaining unlimited vigour, for such a one that is in the prime (of youth) increases to unlimited vigour. And as to its being without its match under the right-side yoke, it is for the sake of his obtaining yonder (sun), for that (horse) indeed is he that shines yonder, and assuredly there is no one to rival him.

3. As to this, Bhāllaveya, however, said, 'That horse should be of two colours, black-spotted¹, for that (horse) was produced from Pragâpati's eye, and this eye is of two colours, white and black: he thus endows it with its own colour.'

4. But Sâtyayagñi said, 'That horse should be of three colours, its forepart black, its hindpart white, with a wain for its mark in front;—when its forepart is black it is the same as this black of the eye; and when its hindpart is white it is the same as this white of the eye; and when it has a wain for its mark in front, that is the pupil: such

ah; ' hardly 'one which finds no (worthy) yoke-fellow' (St. Petersburg Dict.).

¹ Or, black with some other colour.

a one, indeed, is perfect in colour¹.² Whichever of these, then, should be ready at hand, either a many-coloured one, or one of two colours, or one of three colours with a wain for its mark, let him slaughter it: but in speed it should certainly be perfect.

5. In front (of the sacrificial ground) there are those keepers of it ready at hand,—to wit, a hundred royal princes, clad in armour; a hundred warriors armed with swords; a hundred sons of heralds and headmen, bearing quivers filled with arrows²; and a hundred sons of attendants³ and charioteers, bearing staves;—and a hundred exhausted, worn out horses⁴ amongst which, having let loose that (sacrificial horse), they guard it.

6. He then prepares an (ish/ti) offering to Savitri⁵—a cake on twelve potsherds to Savitri Prasa-vitri—thinking, ‘May Savitri impel this my sacrifice!’ for Savitri (the sun), indeed, is the impeller (prasavitri).

7. For this (offering) there are fifteen kindling-

¹ One would expect an ‘iti’ here.

² Or, furnished with bundles of arrows,—ishuparshinaḥ, for which Kāty. XX, 2, 11, has ‘kalāpinaḥ’ (=sarāvapanabhastrā-vantaḥ schol.). Harisvāmin explains it as if it were equivalent to ‘ishuvarshinaḥ,’ ‘showering arrows.’

³ Harisvāmin takes ‘kshātra’ as the body of revenue-officers (tax-gatherers, &c.), ‘āyavyayādhyakshasamūhaḥ.’

⁴ That is, according to Harisvāmin, over twenty-four years old; his explanation being based on the etymology of ‘nirash/am’ as ‘outside the eight’ (viz. characteristics of age in horses, each of which is supposed to hold good for three years).

⁵ The three ish/tis to Savitri, treated of in paragraphs 6–17, as well as the proceedings subsequent thereto, are repeated every day during the twelvemonth during which the sacred horse is allowed to roam about.

verses; and the two butter-portions relate to the slaying of *Vṛitra*¹. [The verses, *Rig-veda* V, 82, 9; VII, 45, 1], 'He who calleth forth all these beings (with his call, may he, *Savitri*, quicken us)!' and 'May the divine *Savitri* come hither, treasure-laden, (filling the air whilst driving with his steeds; holding in his hand many things meet for man; and laying to rest and awakening the world),' pronounced in a low voice, are the invitatory and offering formulas of the chief oblation. Those of the *Svishṭakṛit* are two *virâg*-verses². The priests' fee is gold weighing a hundred (grains): the meaning of this has been explained.

8. Whilst the fore-offerings of this (*ish/i*) are being performed, a Brâhman lute-player, striking up the *uttaramandrâ* (tune³), sings three strophes composed by himself (on topics⁴ such as), 'Such a sacrifice he offered,—Such gifts he gave: ' the meaning of this has been explained⁵.

9. He then prepares a second (offering)—a cake on twelve potsherds to *Savitri* *Āsavitri*—thinking, 'May *Savitri* propel this my sacrifice!' for *Savitri*, indeed, is the propeller (*āsavitri*).

¹ See p. 350, note 3.

² See p. 351, note 3.

³ Or, touching the *uttaramandrâ* lute,—literally, the 'upper deep' one, i.e. perhaps one the chords of which are pitched in the upper notes of the lower key. Cf. Scholl. on *Kāty.* XX, 2, 8 *uttaramandrâ ka gāyanaprasiddhâ*; — *uttaramandrâ-samgñâyâm vīnâyām*. Harisvāmin does not explain the term.

⁴ *Taitt. Br.* III, 9, 14, 3 mentions three topics—one for each stanza,—viz. 'thus (such and such gifts) thou gavest, thus (by such and such sacrifices) thou didst sacrifice, thus thou didst cook (i.e. with such and such food thou didst regale the priests).'

⁵ See XIII, 1, 5, 6.

10. For this (offering) there are seventeen kindling-verses; and the two butter-portions are possessed of that which is¹: the (truly) existent he thereby obtains. [The verses, *Rig-veda* V, 82, 5; VII, 45, 3.] 'All troubles, O divine Savitri, (keep from us, do thou send us that which is good)!' and 'May that mighty god Savitri (the lord of treasure, send us treasure; shedding wide-spread lustre, may he bestow upon us the joys of mortal life)!' pronounced in a low voice, are the invitatory and offering formulas of the chief oblation. Those of the Svish/akṛit are two anush/ubh verses². Silver is the priests' fee,—for the sake of variety of colour, and also for the sake of (the horse's) going outside³ and not going away. It weighs a hundred (grains), for man has a life of a hundred (years), and a hundred energies: it is life, and energy, vigour, he thus secures for himself.

11. Whilst the fore-offerings of this (ishṭi) are being performed, a Brāhman lute-player, striking up the uttaramandrâ (tune), sings three strophes composed by himself (on topics such as), 'Such a sacrifice he offered,—Such gifts he gave:' the meaning of this has been explained.

12. He then prepares a third (offering)—a cake

¹ That is, their anuvâkyâs contain forms of the root 'as' (or 'bhû'), to be; cf. p. 352, note 2.

² See XIII, 4, 1, 15, p. 353, note 1.

³ Viz. going outside the sacrificial ground, and yet not running away from its keepers,—this, according to the text, would be symbolically expressed by the gold (which was given as the priests' fee for the first offering) giving place to silver at the second offering, but coming in again at the third. •

on twelve potsherds to Savitri Satyaprasava ('of true impulse'); for that, indeed, is the true impulse which is Savitri's: 'May he impel with true impulse this my sacrifice!' so he thinks.

13. For this (ish/i) there are again seventeen kindling-verses. The two butter-portions are possessed of 'wealth¹, with a view to his obtaining and securing vigour, for wealth is vigour (strength). [The verses, *Rig-veda* V, 82, 7; IV, 54, 4.] 'The all-divine, true lord (we hope to gain this day by our hymns, Savitri of true impulsions),' and 'Indestructible is that (work) of the divine Savitri, (that he will ever sustain the whole world: whatever he, the fair-fingered, bringeth forth over the extent of the earth and the expanse of the sky, that is truly his own),' pronounced in a low voice, are the invitatory and offering formulas of the chief offering. Those of the Svishṭakṛit (he makes) the regular ones², thinking, 'Lest I should depart from the path of sacrifice:' he thus finally establishes himself in the well-ordered sacrifice. Trishubh-verses they are for the sake of his gaining and securing (Indra's) energy, vigour, for the Trishubh is the vigour in Indra. The priests' fee is gold weighing a hundred (grains): the meaning of this has been explained³.

14. Whilst the fore-offerings of this (ish/i) are

¹ That is, their invitatory formulas contain the word 'rayi' (wealth). What particular verses are intended here, I do not know.

² Viz. the trishubh-verses *Rig-veda* X, 2, 1; VI, 15, 14; see p. 351, note 3.

³ XII, 7, 2, 13;

being performed, a Brāhman lute-player, striking up the *uttaramandṛā* (tune), sings three strophes composed by himself (on topics such as), 'Such a sacrifice he offered,—Such gifts he gave:' the meaning of this has been explained.

15. When this (offering) is completed, the Adhvaryu and the Sacrificer rise, and whisper in the horse's right ear (*Vāg. S. XXII, 19*), 'Plenteous by thy mother, strengthful by thy father . . . !' the meaning of this has been explained'. They then set it free towards the north-east, for that—to wit, the north-east—is the region of both gods and men: they thus consign it to its own region, in order to its suffering no injury, for one who is established in his own home suffers no injury.

16. He says, 'O ye gods, guardians of the regions, guard ye this horse, consecrated for offering unto the gods!' The (four kinds of) human guardians of the (four) regions have been told, and these now are the divine ones, to wit, the *Āpyas*, *Sādhyas*, *Anvādhyas*² and *Maruts*; and both of these, gods and men, of one mind, guard it for a year without turning (driving) it back. The reason why they do not turn it back, is that it is he that shines yonder,—and who, forsooth, is able to turn him back? But were they to turn it back, everything here assuredly would go backward (go to ruin): therefore they guard it without turning it back.

17. He says, 'Ye guardians of the quarters, those who go on to the end of this (horse-sacrifice) will

¹ See XIII, 1, 6, 1 seqq., 3, 7. 1-2 seqq.

² On these divine beings see Weber, *Ind. Stud.* IX, p. 6, note.

become (sharers of) the royal power, they will become kings worthy of being consecrated; but those who do not go on to the end of this (sacrifice) will be excluded from royal power, they will not become kings, but nobles and peasants, unworthy of being consecrated: do not ye therefore be heedless, and keep it (the horse) from water suitable for bathing and from mares! And whenever ye meet with any kind of Brāhmaṇas, ask ye them, "O Brāhmaṇas, how much know ye of the Asvamedha?" and those who know naught thereof ye may despoil; for the Asvamedha is everything, and he who, whilst being a Brāhmaṇa, knows naught of the Asvamedha, knows naught of anything, he is not a Brāhmaṇa, and as such liable to be despoiled. Ye shall give it drink, and throw down fodder for it; and whatever prepared food there is in the country all that shall be prepared for you. Your abode shall be in the house of a carpenter of these (sacrificers¹), for there is the horse's resting-place.'

THIRD BRĀHMAṆA.

1. Having set free the horse, he (the Adhvaryu) spreads a cushion wrought of gold (threads) south of the Vedi: thereon the Hotri seats himself. On the right (south) of the Hotri, the Sacrificer on a gold stool²; on the right of him, the Brahman

¹ Thus Harisvāmin,—*teshām ka yagamānānām madhye rathakāro yas tasya grīhe yushmākam vasatah*. The plural is probably meant as including the subjects of the king (cf. XI, 8, 4, 1), and the villages within reach of which the horse will roam.

² At XI, 5, 3, 4; 7 '*kūrka*' seems to mean a bunch or pad of grass, used as a seat. In the present instance it is explained as

and Udgātri on cushions wrought of gold; in front of them, with his face to the west, the Adhvaryu on a gold stool, or a slab of gold.

2. When they are seated together, the Adhvaryu calls upon (the Hotri), saying, 'Hotri, recount the beings: raise thou this Sacrificer above the beings!'¹ Thus called upon, the Hotri, being about to tell the Pāriplava² Legend, addresses (the Adhvaryu), 'Adhvaryu!—'Havai³ hotar!' replies the Adhvaryu.

3. 'King Manu Vaivasvata,' he says;—'his people are Men, and they are staying here';—

a seat with feet (sapādam āsanam, Schol. on Kāty. XX, 2, 19), or as a seat or stool which has the appearance of a pad (pīṭham kūrākṛti, ? i.e. with a pad on it). According to Āsv. Sr. X, 6, 10 the king is surrounded by his sons and ministers.

¹ Or, perhaps, 'raise this Sacrificer above (or, up to) the things of the past;' but see paragraph 15.

² That is, the 'revolving, recurrent, or cyclic legend,' so called because it is renewed every ten days during the year.

³ Harisvāmin explains this interjection, as if it were 'hvayai' = pratihvayai, 'I will respond, I am ready to respond;' and, though this is probably a fanciful explanation, the arrangements made on this occasion are clearly such as to suggest a studied resemblance to the call and counter-call of the two priests on all occasions of a solemn utterance of sacrificial formulas, or the recitation of hymns, as at the Prātaranuvāka (part ii, p. 226 seqq.). Kāty. XX, 3, 2, accordingly, calls it the Adhvaryu's 'pratigara,' or response. Āsv. Sr. X, 6, 13 makes the Adhvaryu's answer 'ho hotar'; and Sāṅkh. Sr. XVI, 1 'hoi hotar.'

⁴ The Hotri's utterances on the ten days of the revolving period (as set forth in passages 2-14) occur also, with some variations of detail, in the manuals defining the Hotri's duties, viz. the Āśvalāyana (X, 7) and Sāṅkhāyana (XVI, 2) Sūtras (whilst the works of the Taittirīyaka seem to have nothing corresponding to this performance). Both Sūtras omit 'rāgā' each time. Āśvalāyana, moreover, omits also the 'iti' along with it, because he does not interrupt the formula by an insertion, as is done here (ity āha)

householders, unlearned in the scriptures, have come thither¹: it is these he instructs:—‘The *Rik* (verses) are the Veda²: this it is:’ thus saying, let him go over a hymn of the *Rik*, as if reciting it³. Masters of lute-players have come

and in the Sāṅkh. S. (iti prathame, &c.). Gārgya Nār'yaṇa, on Āsv. X, 7, 1, takes the opening words ‘prathame (&c.) dhani’ to form part of the formula:—‘on the first day Manu Vaivasvata (is king); but it is clear from the other two authorities that this cannot have been intended by the author of that Sūtra. The commentator on Sāṅkh. S. XVI, 2 remarks, ‘Manur Vaivasvato rāgety-evam-ādikam ākhyānam pariplavākhyam prathamāny ākashye . . . tasya rāgo manushyā virāḥ pragāś ta ima āsate dvāpi svadharmān na khalanti,’ thus apparently taking ‘rāgā’ to form part of the formula, or rather of the topic of which the legend to be recited was to treat. This commentary thus apparently assumes that the legend begins with ‘Manur Vaivasvato rāgā’; and that the subsequent clause leads on to the recitation of the Vedic text that is to follow (cf. note on paragraph 8);—though possibly this latter clause (as Professor M. Müller seems to take it) may only be an argumentative one, giving the reason why the householders are to be instructed. Cf. M. Müller, Hist. of Anc. Sansk. Lit., p. 37 seqq.

¹ ‘Householders should be brought thither’ (i. e. should be made to join this performance); Āsv.-sūtra. Sāṅkh. has merely ‘thereby he instructs householders.’ *Grihamedhinaḥ* are those who regularly perform the five great domestic sacrifices (*mahāyagña*).

² Or, more closely, the Veda is the, or consists of, *Rik* (verses). Sāṅkh. S. reads ‘*riko vedaḥ*’ (the Veda of the *Rik*, gen. sing.) instead of ‘*rikāḥ*’ (nom. pl.), and in the subsequent paragraph also, it repeats the word ‘veda’ (Yagurveda, Atharvaveda, Aṅgirasavedaḥ).

³ That is, as would seem,—as if he were to recite it (or, as when he recites it) in the course of the ordinary sacrificial performance—as in Sastras, the Prātaranuvāka, &c. The text would, however, also admit of the translation—‘thus saying, let him go over (the legend) as if he were reciting a hymn of the *Rik*,’ but it is not quite easy to see how a similar interpretation would suit subsequent paragraphs (11–14). Moreover, both Āsv. and Sāṅkh. omit ‘*vyākṣhāṇa* iti,’ and read ‘*nigadet*,’ ‘let him recite (a hymn),’

thither: these he calls upon, 'Masters of lute-players,' he says, 'sing ye of this Sacrificer along with righteous kings of yore¹!' and they accordingly sing of him; and in thus singing of him, they make him share the same world with the righteous kings of yore.

4. Having called (on the masters of lute-players), the Adhvaryu performs the Prakrama oblations², either on the southern fire, or on a footprint of the horse, after drawing lines round it—whichever is the practice there; but the former³ is the established rule.

instead of 'anudravet (let him run, or go, over=anupûrvam ukârayet, Harisv.)' Yet, the commentary on Sâṅkh. supplies the 'iva,' explaining as he does, 'sûktam kimîd âkâkshâṇa vânuvadet;' from which (if it is not simply quoted from our Brâhmana) it would almost seem as if he, too, thought of the legend rather than a hymn of the *Rik*. The verb 'vyâ-kaksh,' as against 'ni-gad,' seems to imply a clear articulation—perhaps even with all the stops or pauses, at the end of every half-verse, or pāda, as the case might be. Sâyana (on Taitt. Br. II. 2. 1, 4; 2. 6) explains 'vyâkâkshita' by 'vispashṭam ukârayet (or, paṭhet).' The available MS. of Harisvâmin's commentary on our text is, as usual, incorrect, but as far as it goes, it seems to favour the recitation of the legend at this place,—'vyâkâkshâṇa iti vâkyasas kîdan (r. kîndan) agais kâbhîdad (?) ity arthaḥ,'—which I take to mean that he is to pause after each sentence, as he would do when reciting a hymn.

¹ That is, according to Harisvâmin,—'Compare this Sacrificer in song with the old righteous kings.' Kâty. XX, 3, 8 refers to these latter as 'râgarshis,' or royal sages—in which case the recitation of the legend itself would only come in here.

² For the formulas used with this series of forty-nine oblations, see XIII, 1, 3, 5 with notes thereon.

³ That is to say, according to Harisvâmin, the course of procedure laid down in XIII, 1, 3, 7, according to which these oblations are to be made on the Âhavanîya, and not either on the southern fire, or on a footprint of the horse.

5. Prior to the (first) offering to Savitrî he offers, once only, the (oblations relating to the) Forms¹ in the Âhavanîya fire, whilst going rapidly over (the formulas). And in the evening, whilst the Dhrîtis² (oblations for the safe keeping of the horse) are being offered, a Râganya lute-player, striking up the uttaramandrâ (tune) south (of the vedi), sings three stanzas composed by himself (on topics³ such as), 'Such war he waged,—Such battle he won : ' the meaning of this has been explained.

6. And on the morrow, the second day, after those (three) offerings to Savitrî have been performed in the same way, there is that same course

¹ That is to say, the Prakramas which are only performed on the first day of the year, whilst the three oblations to Savitrî are repeated each day.

² See XIII, 1, 4, 3; 6, 2. These oblations are made just prior to the evening performance of the Agnihotra, when the Âhavanîya has been got ready for the latter. The Taittirîyakas seem to make these four oblations on the horse's feet at the place where the keepers pass the night (viz. the carpenter's house) during the greater part of the year; and only in the last month, when a stable of Arvattha wood has been put up for the horse near (or on) the offering-ground, these oblations take place on the Âhavanîya. See comm. on Taitt. Br. III, 8, 12 (p. 609; cp. p. 700). At III, 9, 14 (p. 703), on the other hand, it is stated that the Râganya's singing is to take place in the evening at the time of the Dhrîti-homas.

³ Taitt. Br. III, 9, 14, 4, again mentions three topics, one for each stanza—viz. 'thus (i. e. in the same way as Prîthu, Bharata, Bhagîratha, Yudhishthîra &c., comm.) didst thou overpower (the enemies), thus (i. e. surrounded by heroic warriors, fighting on elephants, steeds, chariots, and on foot, with bows and arrows, spears, swords, &c.) didst thou battle, thus didst thou fight such and such battle (i. e. like Yudhishthîra, Dushyanta, &c., having engaged in a battle attended by thousands of great heroes, thou, armed only with thy sharp sword, didst slay the king of Kashmir, Magadha, Pundra, &c., comm.).'

of procedure. 'Adhvaryu!' he (the Hotri) says.—'Havai hotar!' replies the Adhvaryu.—'King Yama Vaivasvata¹,' he (the Hotri) says, 'his people are the Fathers, and they are staying here;—old men have come thither: it is these he instructs;—'The Yagus-formulas are the Veda: this it is;' thus saying, let him go over a chapter (anuvâka) of the Yagus², as if reciting it. The Adhvaryu calls in the same way (on the masters of lute-players), but does not perform the Prakrama oblations.

7. And on the third day, after those (three) offerings have been performed in the same way, there is that same course of procedure. 'Adhvaryu!' he (the Hotri) says.—'Havai hotar!' replies the Adhvaryu.—'King Varuṇa Âditya,' he says: 'his people are the Gandharvas, and they are staying here;—handsome youths have come thither: it is these he instructs;—'The Atharvans are the Veda: this it is;' thus saying, let him go over one section (parvan) of the Atharvan³, as if reciting

¹ When the comm. on Sâṅkh. S. remarks, 'Yamo Vaivasvato râgety âheti divitiya evâhani Satapathe darsanât,' this would seem to refer to the addition of either 'râgâ,' or 'âhani,' but not to any legend of Y. V., since such a one does not occur in this work; though various passages in the *Rik* might no doubt have sufficed to construct some such legend as would have served on this occasion.

² The same commentator refers to the 'Âśvamedhika' as the section to be recited,—'prakaraṇât,' because of the treatment (therein of this subject).

³ Instead of 'atharvaṇām ekam parva,' the Sâṅkh. S. has 'bheshaḡam (medicine),' which the commentator—against the opinion of those who take it to mean the hymn *Rig-veda* X, 97 (treating of the magic powers of herbs)—makes a special work of the Âtharvaṇikas; whilst the Âśv. S. reads 'yad bheshaḡam niṣāntam

it. The Adhvaryu calls in the same way (on the masters of lute-players), but does not perform the Prakrama oblations.

8. And on the fourth day, after those (three) offerings have been performed in the same way, there is the same course of procedure. 'Adhvaryu!' he (the Hotṛi) says.—'Havai hotar!' replies the Adhvaryu.—'King Soma Vaishṇava',¹ he says: 'his people are the Apsaras, and they are staying here;—handsome maidens have come thither: it is these he instructs':—'The Āṅgiras are the Veda: this it is:' thus saying, let him go over one section of the Āṅgiras², as if reciting it. The Adhvaryu calls in the same way (on the masters of lute-players), but does not perform the Prakrama oblations.

9. And on the fifth day, after those (three) offerings have been performed in the same way, there is the same course of procedure. 'Adhvaryu!' he (the Hotṛi) says.—'Havai hotar!' replies the

syāt tan nigadet'—'let him tell some approved medicine (i. e. some specific, or charm against disease).'

¹ The comm. on Sāṅkh. S. remarks, 'Somo Vaishṇava iti katurthe; Somo Vaishṇavo rāgeti Satapathasrutē; pratikagrahānyāy etāni.' This seems to show clearly that he takes this as merely the opening words of the legend. Here, again, his words can hardly be taken to refer to a legend regarding Soma in the Satapatha-Brāhmaṇa.

² 'Yuvatiś robhanā upadīrati, tasyaitāś (? tasyaitābhyaś) sabhāyām anyāsām apraveśāt,' comm. on Sāṅkh. S.,—? because no other (Apsaras) but these come to his court.

³ The Sāṅkh. S. has 'let him recite the Ghora'—which the commentator again takes to be the title of a special work of the Atharvans—whilst the Ārv. S. reads 'let him recite some approved ghora (magic spell or operation).'

Adhvaryu.—‘King Arbuda Kâdraveya¹,’ he says; ‘his people are the Snakes, and they are staying here;’—both snakes and snake-charmers² have come thither: it is these he instructs;—‘The Sarpavidyâ (science of snakes) is the Veda: this it is;’ thus saying, let him go over one section of the Sarpavidyâ³ as if reciting it. The Adhvaryu calls in the same way (on the masters of lute-players), but does not perform the Prakrama oblations.

10. And on the sixth day, after those (three) offerings have been performed in the same way, there is the same course of procedure. ‘Adhvaryu!’ he (the Hotri) says.—‘Havai hotar!’ replies the Adhvaryu.—‘King Kubera Vaisravana,’ he says: ‘his people are the Rakshas, and they are staying here;’—evil-doers, robbers⁴, have come thither: it

¹ ‘Arbudah Kâdraveyo râgety âheti sruteh (thus also on the name of the next king),’ comm. on Sâṅkh. S.

² Lit. ‘(men) knowing about snakes’—which the comm. on Âsv. S. explains by ‘those knowing the Kâsyapîya and other treatises (tantra) on venoms.’ Instead of the conjunctive double ‘ka,’ the Sâṅkh. S. has a single ‘vâ’—the snakes, or (rather) snake-charmers—and Âsv. S. an explanatory ‘iti’—the snakes, i. e. snake-charmers.

³ The Sâṅkh. S. has, ‘let him recite the Sarpavidyâ’ (i. e. either the Gârudâ or Kaṅkanîyâ sarpavidyâ, as the comm. explains); the Âsv. S. ‘let him recite the Vishavidyâ (science of venoms).’

⁴ The etymology and exact meaning of ‘selaga’ is doubtful:—here, again, whilst ‘pâpakṛtaḥ’ is added either appositionally, or attributively (wicked selagas), the Sâṅkh. S. adds it by means of ‘vâ,’ and the Âsv. S. by ‘iti’—both apparently meant in an explanatory sense. The Ait. Br., on the other hand, has VII, 1, ‘selagâ vâ pâpakṛto vâ;’ and VIII, 11, ‘niṣhâdâ vâ selagâ vâ pâpakṛto vâ.’ The comm. on Âsv. S. explains ‘selaga’ by ‘maddened by a snake;’ the comm. on Sâṅkh. S. by ‘selagâḥ senyâgânyah (?) pâpakṛto vâ mletâh.’

is these he instructs;—'The Devaganavidyā¹ (demonology) is the Veda: this it is;' thus saying, let him go over one section of the Devaganavidyā, as if he were reciting it. The Adhvaryu calls in the same way (on the masters of lute-players), but does not perform the Prakrama oblations.

11. And on the seventh day, after those (three) offerings have been performed in the same way, there is the same course of procedure. 'Adhvaryu!' he (the Hotri) says.—'Havai hotar!' replies the Adhvaryu.—'King Asita Dhānva²,' he says; 'his people are the Asura; and they are staying here;—usurers have come thither: it is these he instructs;—'Magic' is the Veda: this it is;' thus saying, let him perform some magic trick. The Adhvaryu calls in the same way (on the masters of lute-players), but does not perform the Prakrama oblations.

12. And on the eighth day, after those (three) offerings have been performed in the same way, there is the same course of procedure. 'Adhvaryu!' he (the Hotri) says.—'Havai hotar!' replies the

¹ That is, the science, or knowledge of the divine (or supernatural) beings. The Śākh. S. has, 'the Rakshovidyā is the Veda, ... let him recite the Rakshovidyā'—on which the commentator remarks 'prasiddhaiva kuhukurûpā rakshovidyeti.' (? = 'kuhakarûpā,' cheats, or deceitful imps). Ārv. S. has 'yat kimñit pirāṭasamyuktam nirāntam,' 'some approved (spell or operation?) connected with the Pirāṭas, or demons.'

² Śākh. S. has 'Asita Dhānva.'

³ The two Sūtras read 'Asuravidyā'—asuravidyendragālādinaṁ tannirdeśaṁ māyām api kāmñit kuryād aṅgulinīyāsarûpām ('a trick by sleight of hand,' M. Müller), comm. on Śākh. S. On 'indragālavidyā' ('magic art, trickery'), cf. Dasakum., p. 26, l. 12. The association of the black art with the usurer or money-lender (kuṣṭhin) is rather curious.

Adhvaryu.—‘King Matsya Sāmmada ¹,’ he says; ‘his people are the water-dwellers, and they are staying here;’—both fish and fishermen ² have come thither: it is these he instructs;—‘the Itihāsa ³ is the Veda: this it is;’ thus saying, let him tell some Itihāsa. The Adhvaryu calls in the same way (on the masters of lute-players), but does not perform the Prakrama oblations.

13. And on the ninth day, after those (three) offerings have been performed in the same way, there is the same course of procedure. ‘Adhvaryu!’ he (the Hotri) says.—‘Havai hotar!’ replies the Adhvaryu.—‘King Tārکشya Vaipasyata ⁴,’ he says; ‘his people are the Birds, and they are staying here;’—both birds and bird-catchers ⁵ have come thither: it is these he instructs;—‘the Purāṇa ⁶ is the Veda: this it is;’ thus saying, let him tell some Purāṇa. The Adhvaryu calls

¹ ‘Matsyaḥ Sāmmada ity ashāme, Matsyaḥ Sāmmado rāgeti sruteḥ pratikagrahanam etaḥ,’ comm. on Sāṅkh. S.

² ‘Gātisambandhena matsyavidō vā, mainikān jātānādiviseshavikalpān vidanti ye tān vā,’ comm. on Sāṅkh. S.

³ Regarding the Itihāsa (cosmogonic account) and Purāṇa (ancient legend), see p. 98, note 4. The Āsv. S. connects the Itihāsa with the ninth, and the Purāṇa with the eighth day. ‘Itihāsam ātakshita, itihāsaṇḍasya prithagbhāvena darsanāt,’ comm. on Sāṅkh. S.

⁴ Āsv. S. has Tārکشya Vaipasyata.—‘Tārکشyo Vaipasyato rāgety āheti pratka(m) sruteḥ,’ comm. on Sāṅkh. S.

⁵ Lit., men acquainted with the science of birds (vāyavidyika). The two Sūtras, on the other hand, here identify the birds with ‘brahmaśiṣyaḥ’ or religious students.

⁶ According to the comm. on Sāṅkh. S., it is the Vāyupurāṇa (purāṇam vāyuproktam) that is to be recited (from), and not the hymn Rig-veda X, 130 (‘tasya vedaikadesaivāt’). This hymn is probably referred to in this connection chiefly on account of the passage ‘yagñe gāte purāṇe’ in verse 6.

in the same way (on the masters of lute-players), but does not perform the Prakrama oblations.

14. And on the tenth day, after those (three) offerings have been performed in the same way, there is the same course of procedure. 'Adhvaryu!' he (the Hotri) says.—'Havai hotar!' replies the Adhvaryu.—'King Dharma Indra¹,' he says, 'his people are the Gods, and they are staying here;—learned srottriyas (theologians), accepting no gifts², have come thither: it is these he instructs; 'the Sâman (chant-texts) are the Veda: this it is:' thus saying, let him repeat³ a decade of the Sâman. The Adhvaryu calls in the same way (on the masters of lute-players), but does not perform the Prakrama oblations.

15. [In telling] this revolving (legend), he tells all royalties, all regions, all Vedas, all gods, all beings; and, verily, for whomsoever the Hotri, knowing this, tells this revolving legend, or who-soever even knows this, attains to fellowship and communion with these royalties, gains the sovereign rule and lordship over all people, secures for himself all the Vedas, and, by gratifying the gods, finally establishes himself on all beings. This very same legend revolves again and again for a year; and inasmuch as it revolves again and again, therefore

¹ 'Dharma Indra iti dasame, Dharma Indro râgety âheti Satapathe pratikadarsanât,' comm. on Sâṅkh. S.

² The two Sûtras still further qualify them as 'young srottriyas who accept no gifts,' 'manu(shya)devâ hi ta ity abhiprâyât,' comm. on Sâṅkh.; cp. Sat. Br. II, 2, 2, 6, 'ye brâhmanâḥ susruvâmsa -nûânâs te manushyadevâḥ.'

³ The text has 'brûyât,' 'let him say;' whilst the two Sûtras read 'sâma gâyât,' 'let him sing a Sâman' ('yat kimîd anindyam evâsvâmedhikam vâ prakaranât,' comm. on Sâṅkh. S.).

it is (called) the revolving (legend). For thirty-six ten-days' periods he tells it,—the *Bṛihatī* (metre) consists of thirty-six syllables, and cattle are related to the *Bṛihatī* metre: by means of the *Bṛihatī* he thus secures cattle for him.

FOURTH BRĀHMANA.

1. When the year has expired¹, the *Dīkshā* (initiation) takes place. After the slaughtering of the victim sacred to *Pragāpati*², the (*ishā*) offerings³ come to an end. Some, however, say, 'Let him offer (them) on the fires of his *Purohita* (court-chaplain). But why should one who is initiated make offering? There are twelve *Dīkshā* (days), twelve *Upasads* (days) and three *Sutyās* (Soma-days), that amounts to the thrice-ninefold (*stoma*); but the thrice-ninefold, indeed, is a thunderbolt, and the horse is the nobility (*kshatra*), and the *Rāganya* is the nobility; and political power (*kshatra*) is won by the thunderbolt: thus he wins⁴ political power by means of the thunderbolt.

2. When the Initiation-offering has been completed, and Speech released in the evening, masters

¹ Viz. from the day of the setting free the horse, not from that of the mess of rice cooked for the four priests.

² That is, according to the comm., the he-goat offered to *Pragāpati* (along with one, or five, to *Vāyu*) in connection with the building of the fire-altar (which is required for the *Asvamedha*), see part iii. pp. 165 seqq., 171 seqq. The building of the altar, generally occupying the space of a year, is apparently compressed on this occasion within the time of the *Dīkshā* and *Upasads*.

³ Viz. the three *ishā*s to *Savitṛi* performed daily throughout the year.

⁴ One would expect here the middle (*sprīnute*) instead of the active (*sprīnōti*); cf. Delbrück, *Altind. Syntax*, p. 259.

of lute-players have come thither: these the Adhvaryu calls upon, 'Masters of lute-players,' he says, 'sing ye of this Sacrificer along with the gods!' and they accordingly sing of him in that manner—

3. Day by day, after speech has been released, when, on the completion of the Agnīshomīya (animal sacrifices), the Vasatīvari (water) has been carried round¹ (the sacrificial ground). The reason why they thus sing of him along with the gods is that they thereby make him share the same world with the gods.

4. On the Sutyā-days (they sing of him) along with Pragāpati in the same way day by day, after the Vasatīvari (water) has been carried round², and the Udavasāniyā (offering) has been finally completed. The reason why they thus sing of him

¹ See part ii, p. 222 seqq. Whilst there the offering of a he-goat to Agni and Soma took place on the Upavasatha, or day before the Sutyā or Soma-day, on the present occasion these preliminary animal sacrifices would also seem to be performed on each day from the completion of the Dīkṣhā up to the Upavasatha day inclusive (? i.e. on the Upasad days, cf. Kāty. Sr. XX. 3, 9; 4, 21). Moreover, though technically called Agnīshomīya, the sacrifice—on the Upavasatha day, at all events (XIII, 4, 4, 11)—is not one of a single he-goat sacred to Agni and Soma, but a set of eleven victims distributed over the central eleven stakes (of which twenty-one are required on the Soma-days) in the manner explained in III, 9, 1, 1 seqq.

² That is, at the end of each of the three Soma-sacrifices, see part ii, p. 454. The Udavasāniyā (completing offering) takes place before the carrying round of the sacred water (ib. p. 389 seqq.). According to Kāty. XX, 3, 10–11, however, this singing of the Sacrificer's praises along with those of Pragāpati is to take place not only at the juncture specified in the text, but also at the beginning of the animal sacrifice of the Soma-days, that is, as would seem, prior to the slaying of the victims, at the morning pressing. The wording of our text seems hardly to admit of this interpretation.

along with Pragâpati is that they thereby finally make him share the same world with Pragâpati.

5. There are twenty-one sacrificial stakes, all of them twenty-one cubits long. The central one¹ is of raggudâla² wood; on both sides thereof stand two³ pītudâru (deodar) ones, six of bilva wood (*Aegle Marmelos*)—three on this side, and three on that,—six of khadira (*Acacia Catechu*) wood—three on this side, and three on that,—six of palâsa (*Butea frondosa*) wood—three on this side, and three on that.

6. Then as to why these stakes are suchlike. When Pragâpati's vital airs had gone out of him, his body began to swell; and what phlegm there was in it that flowed together and burst forth from inside through the nose, and it became this tree, the raggudâla, whence it is viscid, for it originated from phlegm: with that form (quality) he thus endows it (the stake). And as to why it is the (stake) standing by the fire, it is because that one is the centre of the stakes, and that nose is the centre of the (channels of the) vital airs: he thus puts it in its own place.

7. And what watery (liquid) fire, and what fragrance there was, that flowed together and

¹ That is, the so-called 'agnish/ha,' 'standing by (or opposite) the (Āhavanīya) fire.' Cp. p. 301, note 1.

² The raggudâla (or rāggudâla, Sây. on Taitt. Br. III, 8, 19, 1) or 'sleshmâtaka' is the *Cordia Myxa* or *C. latifolia*, from the bark of which (according to Stewart and Brandis, *Forest Flora of N.W. and Centr. India*) ropes (raggu) are made, whence doubtless the above, as well as its scientific name, is derived; whilst 'the adhesive viscid pulp is used as bird-lime.'

³ That is, one on each side, right and left.

burst forth from the eye, and became that tree, the pītudāru; whence that (wood) is sweet-smelling, since it originated from fragrance, and whence it is inflammable, since it originated from fire: with that quality he thus endows it. And because these two (pītudāru stakes) are on the two sides of the central one, therefore these two eyes are on the two sides of the nose: he thus puts those two in their own place.

8. And what 'kuntāpa',¹ what marrow there was, that flowed together, and burst forth from the ear, and became that tree, the bilva; whence all the fruit of that (tree) is eatable² inside, and whence it (the tree, or wood) is yellowish, for marrow is yellowish: with that quality he thus endows it. The two (sets of) pītudāru (stakes) stand inside, and the bilva ones outside, for the eyes are inside, and the ears outside: he thus puts them in their own place.

9. From his (Pragâpati's) bones the khadira was produced, whence that (tree) is hard and of great strength³, for hard, as it were, is bone: with that quality he thus endows it. The bilva (stakes) are

¹ See p. 164, note 1. It would certainly seem to be something connected with the spinal cord.

² According to Stewart and Brandis, the Aegle Marmelos is cultivated throughout India, and valued for its fruit, which is 'globose, oblong, or pyriform, 2 to 5 in. diam., with a smooth, grey or yellow rind, and a thick, orange-coloured, sweet aromatic pulp.' The flowers are stated to be greenish white, and 'the wood light-coloured, mottled with darker wavy lines and small light-coloured dots.'

³ The wood of *Acacia Catechu* is described as dark red, and extremely hard and durable, and hence not liable to be attacked by white ants, and not touched by *Teredo navalis*; being much used for pestles, seed-crushers, cotton-rollers, wheel-wright's work, ploughs, bows, spear and sword-handles.

inside, and the khadira ones outside, for inside is the marrow, and outside the bones : he thus puts them in their own place.

10. From his flesh the palāsa was produced, whence that (tree) has much juice, and (that) red juice¹, for red, as it were, is flesh : with that quality he thus endows it. The khadira (stakes) are inside, and the palāsa ones outside, for inside are the bones, and outside is the flesh : he thus puts them in their own place.

11. And as to why there are twenty-one (stakes), twenty-one cubits long,—twenty-one-fold, indeed, is he that shines yonder²—there are twelve months, five seasons, these three worlds, and yonder sun is the twenty-first, and he is the Asvamedha, and this Pragâpati. Having thus completely restored this Pragâpati, the sacrifice, he therein seizes twenty-one Agnīshomiya victims : for these there is one and the same performance, and this is the performance of the day before (the first Sutyâ).

FIFTH ADHYĀYA. FIRST BRĀHMANA.

THE STOTRAS AND SASTRAS OF THE SOMA-DAYS.

1. Then, on the morrow, there is (used) Gotama's Stoma (form of chanting) successively increasing by four (verses)³ : the Bahishpavamāna thereof is on four, the Āgya (stotras) on eight, the Mādhyandina Pavamāna on twelve, the Prishṭha (stotras) on

¹ 'From natural fissures and incisions made in the bark (of *Butea frondosa*) issues during the hot season a red juice, which soon hardens into a ruby-coloured, brittle, astringent gum, similar to kino, and sold as Bengal kino.' Stewart and Brandis.

² See p. 331, note 1.

³ Regarding the *Katushōma*, see p. 329, note 1.

sixteen, the Ārbhava Pavamāna on twenty, and the Agnish/oma-sāman on twenty-four (verses).

2. Now, some make its Agnish/oma-sāman a Sāman of four (verses), saying, 'It is neither an Agnish/oma, nor an Ukthya ¹.' If they do so, let him (the Hotri).

¹ According to the practice here referred to, the Agnish/oma-sāman would not consist merely of the one triplet (usually Sāmav. II, 53-4, i.e. the so-called *yagñāyagñīya* triplet) ordinarily used for it, but of four different Sāmans, inasmuch as three of the triplets which may be used for the Uktha-stotras (of the Ukthya and other sacrifices) are added to that *yagñāyagñīya* triplet. In that case, however, the latter is not chanted to its own '*yagñāyagñīya*' tune, but the Vāravantiya tune is used for all the four triplets. This practice is somewhat vaguely referred to in Tāndya-Br. XIX, 5, 10-11. 'One Sāman (tune), many metres (texts): therefore one (man) feeds many creatures. Verily, the Agnish/oma (sāman) is the self, and the metres (hymn-texts) are cattle: he thus secures cattle for his own self. It is neither an Ukthya nor an Agnish/oma (sacrifice), for cattle are neither (entirely) domestic nor wild (viz. because though kept "in the village," they also freely graze "in the forest").' Here the passage 'One Sāman, many metres,' according to the commentary, refers to the Vāravantiya tune as being employed, on this occasion, for the texts of the *Yagñāyagñīya*, the Sākamarva (II, 55-57, here the Calc. ed., by mistake, calls the second tune figured for chanting, like the first, Sākamarva, instead of Vāravantiya), the Saubhara (II, 230-2, where the Calc. ed., by mistake, omits the name Vāravantiya), and the Tairaska (II, 233-5; curiously enough, the Tairaska is not mentioned, in Lāṭy. Sr. VIII, 9-10, amongst the Sāmans that may be used for the third—or the *Akkā-vāka*'s—Uktha, but Sāyana, on Sāmav. II, 233, states distinctly, '*tairaskam tritīyam uktham*'). Whilst, as Uktha-stotras, the last three texts would usually be chanted in the *ekavimsa*, or twenty-one-versed form, in the present instance, as part of the *Ātush/oma*, they would be chanted (along with the *Yagñāyagñīya*) in the twenty-four-versed form. Thus, though an Agnish/oma sacrifice, inasmuch as it has twelve stotras, yet it is not a regular one; neither is it an Ukthya, because the Ukthas are not chanted as so many Stotras, followed by the recitation of separate Sastras. In the Āsv. Sr. X, 6, different alternatives are proposed for the chanting of the Agnish-

after reciting the Stotriya ¹ (strophe) together, recite the Anurûpa (strophe) together: the Rathantara *Prishtha-sâman* ², the Sastra containing the Rathantara (text), and the Agnishoma sacrifice—thereby he makes sure of this world.

3. 'There are twenty-one Savanlya ³ victims, all of them sacred to Agni: for these there is one and the same performance,' so say some; but, indeed, he should immolate two sets of eleven (victims), with the view of his obtainment of whatever desired object there may be in (victims) belonging to a set of eleven.

4. When the Agnishoma is completed, and the Vasativari-water carried round, the Adhvaryu performs the Annahomas ⁴ (oblations of food): the import of these has been explained. With twelve

/oma-sâman in the 'Gotamastoma (i. e. *Katushoma*) antarukthya' and the corresponding Sastra, including apparently the employment of the *Yagñâyagñiya-sâman* either for all the four triplets, or for the *Yagñâyagñiya* triplet alone with the respective Sâmans used for the other triplets; different modes of recitation being thereby implied with regard to the Stotriya and Anurûpa pragâthas.

¹ For the *Âgnimâruta-sastra*, recited by the *Hotri* after the chanting of the Agnishoma-sâman, and containing, amongst various hymns and detached verses, the triplet which forms the text of the Stotra, i. e. the 'Stotriya pragâtha,' as well as a corresponding antistrophe, the 'Anurûpa pragâtha,' see part ii, p. 369 note. On the present occasion, however, this constituent element of the Sastra would have to include the triplets of all the four Sâmans, as well as four 'antistrophes' which are thus 'recited together.'

² Or, *Prishtha-stotra*, viz. the first stotra of that name at the midday-service, for which that Sâman is used in the Agnishoma sacrifice (part ii, p. 339, note 2).

³ That is, victims sacrificed on the Sutyâs, or Soma-days. Two complete sets of eleven such victims are, however, required on each of the three days, see p. 309, note 2.

⁴ See XIII, 2, 1, 1 seqq., and p. 297, note 1.

Anuvākas (Vāg. S. XXII, 23-34). 'To the in-breathing hail! To the off-breathing hail!' . . . (he offers)—twelve months are a year, and the year is everything, and the Asvamedha is everything: thus it is for his obtaining and securing everything.

5. The central day is an *ekaviṃśa* day¹; for the twenty-one-fold is yonder sun, and he is the Asvamedha: by means of his own Stoma he thus establishes him in his own deity,—therefore it is an *ekaviṃśa* day.

6. And, again, as to why it is an *ekaviṃśa* day:—man is twenty-one-fold—ten fingers, ten toes, and the body (self) as the twenty-first: by means of that twenty-one-fold self he thus establishes him in the twenty-one-fold (day) as on a firm foundation,—therefore it is an *ekaviṃśa* day.

7. And, again, as to why it is an *ekaviṃśa* day:—the *ekaviṃśa*, assuredly, is the foundation of Stomas, and manifold is that ever-varying performance which takes place on this day,—and it is because he thinks that that manifold and ever-varying performance which takes place on this day, shall take place so as to be established on the *ekaviṃśa* as a firm foundation, that this is an *ekaviṃśa* day.

8. Now, as to the morning-service of this day. The Hotri, having recited as the Āgrya (hymn²) in the Pañkti (metre) 'Agni I think on, who is good . . .,' recites thereto the one of a one-day's

¹ That is one on which all Stotras are chanted in the '*ekaviṃśa*' Stoma, or twenty-one-versed hymn-form.

² Viz. *Rig-veda* V, 6, forming the special feature of the Āgryasastra at the Asvamedha.

Soma-sacrifice¹. And the Bārḥata Praūga and the Mādhu~~k~~handasa one he recites both together² in triplets—(this being done) for the obtainment of the objects of desire which (may be contained) both in the Bārḥata and the Mādhu~~k~~handasa Praūga. The morning-service is (thus) set right.

9. Then as to the midday-service. For the obtainment of the Asvamedha, the atik~~k~~andas (verse, II, 22, 1), 'In the three troughs the buffalo drank the barley-draught,' is the opening verse of the Marutvatīya (śastra); for outstanding, indeed, is this atik~~k~~andas (hypercatalectic verse) amongst metres, and outstanding is the Asvamedha amongst sacrifices. This (verse), being recited thrice, amounts to a triplet, and thereby he obtains the object of desire which (may be contained) in the triplet. 'Here, O good one, is the pressed plant' (*Rig-veda* VIII, 2, 1–3) is the 'anukāra' (sequent triplet): this same (triplet) is the constant

¹ Viz. the Āgya-sūkta, *Rig-veda* III, 13, forming the chief part of the Hotri's Āgya-śastra, or first Śastra of the Agnishōma, for which see part ii, p. 327 note.

² The Bārḥata Praūga, or Praūga-śastra in the Br̥hatī metre,—being the one recited on the fifth day of the Prish~~h~~ya-sha~~h~~aha (Āsv. Sr. VII, 12, 7), and consisting of the seven different triplets, addressed to as many different deities,—is to be recited also on this occasion; and along with it (or rather, intertwined with it, triplet by triplet) the ordinary Praūga-śastra of the Agnishōma, made up of the two hymns *Rig-veda* I, 2 and 3 which are ascribed to Madhu~~k~~handas, and consist of nine and twelve verses, or together seven triplets. I do not understand why Harisvāmin mentions 'Vāyur agregāḥ' (? Vāg. S. XXVII, 31) as being the first triplet of the Mādhu~~k~~handasa Praūga, instead of I, 2, 1–3 'vāyav ā yāhi darsata.'—The Praūga is the Hotri's second Śastra of the morning-service, being preceded by the chanting of the first Āgya-stotra; see part ii, p. 325.

connecting link of the one-day's sacrifice¹. Having recited both the pañkti (verses, I, 80, 1-16) 'Here in the Soma-draught alone (the Brahman gave thee strength),' and the six-footed ones (VIII, 36, 1-7) 'The patron thou art of the offerer of Soma,' he inserts the Nivid in the (hymn) of the one-day's sacrifice. Thus as to the Marutvatīya (-sastra).

10. Then as to the Nishkevalya (-sastra²). The Mahānāmni (verses) are the *Prishtha* (-stotra); and he recites them along with the anurūpa (verses) and pragātha (-strophes), for the obtainment of all the objects of his desire. for in the Mahānāmni, as well as in the Asvamedha, are contained all objects of desire. Having recited the pañkti verses (I, 81, 1-9) 'Indra hath grown in ebriety and strength,' and the six-footed ones (VIII, 37, 1-7) 'This sacred work didst thou protect in

¹ See part ii, p. 337, where the same triplet forms the anukāra of this Sastra at the Agnishōma. It is followed there by the Pragāthas VIII, 53, 5-6; I, 40, 5-6 (read thus! each two counting as one triplet); three Dhāyā verses, and the Marutvatīya Pragāthas VIII, 89, 3-4 (!). These are to be followed up, on the present occasion, by the two hymns I, 80, and VIII, 36, after which the Indra hymn X, 73, the chief part of the normal Marutvatīya Sastra, is to be recited, with the Nivid formula inserted after the sixth verse.

² That is, the Sastra succeeding the chanting of the first, or Hotri's, *Prishtha*-stotra (see part ii, p. 339). Whilst, however, in the one-day's sacrifice, the Rathantara (or the *Bṛhat*) sāman is used for that stotra, the Mahānāmni verses (see part iii, introd. p. xx, note 2), with the Sākvara tune, are to be used as the Stotriyās on this occasion, and are therefore likewise to be recited by the Hotri as Stotriya-pragāthas (cf. Âsv. VII, 12, 10 seqq.), to be followed up by the antistrophe (anurūpa)—here consisting of the triplets I, 84, 10-12; VIII, 93, 31-3; I, 11, 1-3—and the Sāma-pragātha, VIII, 3, 1-2.

fighths with *Vṛitra*,¹ he inserts the Nivid in the (hymn) of the one-day's sacrifice¹. The midday-service is (thus) set right.

11. Then as to the evening-service. The *atikhandas* verse (*Vāg. S. IV, 25*), 'Unto that god *Savitri* within the two bowls (do I sing praises²),' is the opening verse³ of the *Vaisvadeva* (-sastra⁴): the mystic import thereof is the same as of the former (*atikhandas* verse). The *Anukāra*⁵ (*Rig-veda I, 24, 3-5*), 'Unto (*abhi*) thee, (the lord of treasures), O god *Savitri*, (ever helpful we come for our share . . .),' contains (the word) 'abhi,' as a form (sign) of victory (*abhibhūti*). Having recited the *Sāvitra* (triplet, *VI, 71, 4-6*). 'Up rose this god *Savitri*, the friend of the house . . .,' he inserts the Nivid in the (hymn) of the one-day's sacrifice⁶. Having recited the four verses to Heaven and Earth (*IV, 56, 1-4*), 'The mighty Heaven and Earth, the most glorious, here . . .,' he inserts the Nivid in the (hymn *I, 159*) of the one-day's sacrifice. Having recited the *Ārbhava* (hymn, *IV, 34*), '*Ribhu, Vibhvan, Indra, Vāga*, come ye to this our sacrifice . . .'

¹ Viz. after the eighth verse of the hymn *Rig-veda I, 32*, the chief part of the normal *Nishkevalya-sastra*.

² For the complete verse see *III, 3, 2, 12*.

³ This verse is again recited thrice, and thus takes the place of the ordinary opening triplet.

⁴ For this *Sastra*, recited after the *Ārbhava-Pavamāna-stotra*, see part ii, p. 361.

⁵ *Āsv. Sr. X, 10, 6* prescribes the ordinary *anukāra V, 82, 4-7*; whence *Sāyana* on *I, 24, 3 (-5)* offers no indication of the ritualistic use of that triplet on this occasion.

⁶ Viz. *IV, 54*, before the last verse of which the Nivid is inserted.

he inserts the Nivid in the (hymn, I, 111) of the one-day's sacrifice. Having recited the (hymn, V, 41) to the All-gods, 'Who is there righteous unto you, Mitra and Varuṇa? . . .,' he inserts the Nivid in the (hymn, I, 89) of the one-day's sacrifice. Thus as to the Vaisvadeva (-sastra).

12. Then as to the Āgñimâruta¹. Having recited the (hymn, VI, 7) to (Agni) Vaisvânara, 'The head of the sky, and the disposer of the earth . . .,' he inserts the Nivid in the (hymn, III, 3) of the one-day's sacrifice. Having recited the (hymn, V, 57) to the Maruts, 'Hither, O Rudras, come ye united with Indra . . .,' he inserts the Nivid in the (hymn, I, 87) of the one-day's sacrifice. Having recited the nine verses (VI, 15, 1-9) to Gâtavedas, 'This guest of yours, the early-waking . . .,' he inserts the Nivid in the (hymn, I, 143) of the one-day's sacrifice. And as to why the (hymns) of the one-day's sacrifice are used for inserting the Nivid, it is for the sake of his (the Sacrificer's) not being deprived of a firm foundation, for the *Gyotishōma* is a foundation.

13. For this (day) there are those sacrificial animals—'A horse, a hornless he-goat, and a *Gomrīga*²,' fifteen 'paryāṅgyas': the mystic import of these has been explained. Then these wild ones—for spring he seizes (three) *kapiṅgalas*³, for summer sparrows, for the rainy season partridges: of these

¹ Viz. the final Sastra of the evening-service, preceded by the chanting of the *Agnishōma-sāman*; see part ii, p. 369.

² See p. 298, note 4; p. 338, note 1.

³ The '*Kapiṅgala*' is a kind of wildfowl, apparently of the quail or partridge species—a hazel-cock, or francoline partridge. Some of the later authorities, however, identify it with the '*Ātaka*'

(wild animals) also (the mystic import) has been told¹.

14. Then those (victims) for the twenty-one (stakes). He seizes twenty-one animals for each of the (eleven) deities of the Seasonal offerings²; for as many as there are gods of the Seasonal offerings so many are all the gods; and all objects of desire are in the *Asvamedha*: 'by gratifying all the deities I shall gain all my desires,' so he thinks. But let him not proceed in this way.

15. Let him seize seventeen victims for the central stake³, in order that he may gain and secure every-

('cuculus melanoleucus'). With regard to some of the wild animals referred to in the corresponding section of the *Vāg. S.*, the commentator Mahīdhara significantly remarks (*Vāg. S.* XXIV, 20; cf. *Kāty.* XX, 6, 6 scholl.) that the meaning of such names as are not understood must be made out with the help of quotations (*nigama*), Vedic vocabularies (*nighanṭu*) and their comments (*nirukta*), grammar (*vyākaraṇa*), the *Uñādivṛtti*, and dictionaries.

¹ Viz. XIII, 2, 4, 1 seqq. It is not easy to see why the text should break off abruptly with the birds representing the rainy season. For autumn there are to be (three) quails, for winter 'kakara,' and for the dewy season 'vikakara.' Then follow, to the end of the 260 wild animals, a long series of divinities to each of which (or sometimes to allied deities) three animals are consigned. Thirteen of these wild animals are placed on each of the twenty spaces between the twenty-one stakes.

² Or, perhaps, for the (eleven) deities of the Seasonal offerings he seizes twenty-one animals for each (stake); which would certainly simplify the distribution of those animals. Regarding the victims actually consecrated to the deities of the *Āturmāsya* offerings, see p. 309. note 2.

³ This does not include the twelve 'paryāṅgyas' tied to the horse's limbs, but only the horse and two other victims sacred to *Pragāpati*, and twelve of a long series of beasts, of which three are dedicated to each successive deity (or allied group of deities). To these are afterwards added *Agni*'s two victims belonging to the two sets of eleven victims (of the other twenty of which one is assigned to each of the other stakes).

thing, for the seventeenfold is Praṇapati, and the seventeenfold (stoma) is everything, and the Asvamedha is everything;—and sixteen at each of the other (stakes) in order that he may gain and secure everything, for everything here consists of sixteen parts, and the Asvamedha is everything. Thirteen wild (beasts) he seizes for each intermediate space, in order that he may gain and secure everything, for the year consists of thirteen months, and the Asvamedha is everything.

16. Now, prior to the (chanting of the) Bahishpavamāna, they (the assistants of the Adhvaryu) bring up the horse, after cleansing it; and with it they glide along for the Pavamāna: the mystic import of this has been explained¹. When the Bahishpavamāna has been chanted, they make the horse step on the place of chanting: if it sniffs, or turns away, let him know that his sacrifice is successful. Having led up that (horse), the Adhvaryu says, 'Hotri, sing praises!' and the Hotri sings its praises² with eleven (verses, *Rig-veda* I, 163, 1-11)—

17. 'When, first born, thou didst neigh...'—thrice (he praises) with the first, and thrice with the last (verse), these amount to fifteen,—fifteenfold is the thunderbolt, and the thunderbolt means vigour: with that thunderbolt, vigour, the Sacrificer thus from the very first repels evil: thus³, indeed, it is to the Sacrificer that the thunderbolt is given in

¹ XIII, 2, 3, 1.

² The mode of recitation is similar to that of the kindling-verses (likewise eleven, brought up, by repetitions of the first and last, to fifteen), viz. by making a pause after each half-verse, but without adding the syllable 'om' thereto. *Ārv. Sr.* X, 8, 5.

³ Harisvāmin explains 'tad vai' as standing for 'sa vai' (līṅga-vyatayayena)—viz. that fifteenfold thunderbolt.

order to smite for him whoever is to be smitten.—[*Rig-veda* I, 163, 12. 13], 'The swift racer hath gone forward to the slaying...'—'The racer hath gone forward to the highest place...'—

18. Having omitted these two (verses), he inserts the hymn (I, 162), 'Never (shall forget us) Mitra, Varuṇa, Aryaman, Ayu...', in the Adhrigu¹ (litany). Some, however, insert this verse (I, 162, 18), 'Thirty-four (ribs) of the steed, akin to the gods, (doth the knife hit)...,' before the (passage,—'twenty-six are its) ribs,' thinking lest they should place the holy syllable 'om' in the wrong place², or lest they should suggest the plural by a singular³. Let him not proceed thus, but let him insert the hymn as a whole.—'The swift racer hath gone forward to the slaying...'—The racer hath gone forward to the highest place...'—

¹ On this recitation, consisting of a lengthy set of formulas, addressed to the slaughterers, see part ii, p. 188, note 2. The whole of the formulas are given Ait. Br. II, 6-7. The hymn, according to *Āśv.* X, 8, 7, is to be inserted either before the last formula of the litany, or somewhat further back—viz. before the formula 'shadvimsatir asya vaṅkrayas,' 'twenty-six are its ribs'—whilst our Brāhmaṇa rather allows the alternative of the eighteenth verse of I, 162 being inserted at the latter place,—unless, indeed, the insertion in that case is to be made immediately before the word 'vaṅkrayaḥ' which is scarcely likely.

² Harisvāmin seems to take this to mean that as this verse is of the same nature as the formulas of the Adhrigu litany, he is to treat it as such, as otherwise, in reciting he would have to pronounce 'om' after that verse, which is not done after those formulas.

³ Or, the plurality by the individual. Owing to the corrupt state of the MS., the commentator's explanation of this passage is not clear. He seems, however, at any rate, to take the 'plural' to refer to the formula 'shadvimsatir asya vaṅkrayas,' where apparently 'eshām' has to be substituted for 'asya' on this occasion, as many victims are immolated, and the ribs of a plurality of beasts are thus indicated, whilst in verse eighteen of the hymn, on the

SECOND BRĀHMANA.

1. Having uttered these two (verses), he pronounces what remains of the Adhrigu. 'A cloth, an upper cloth, and gold,' this is what they spread out for the horse¹: thereon they 'quiet' (slaughter) it. When the victims have been 'quieted,' the (king's) wives come up with water for washing the feet,—four wives, and a young maiden as the fifth, and four hundred female attendants.

2. When the foot-water is ready, they cause the Mahishi to lie down near the horse, and cover her up with the upper cloth, with 'In heaven ye envelop yourselves,'—for that indeed is heaven where they immolate the victim . . . , 'May the vigorous male, the layer of seed, lay seed!' she says² for the completeness of union.

3. Whilst they are lying there, the Sacrificer addresses the horse (Vāg. S. XXIII, 21), 'Utsakhyā ava gudam dhchi!' No one replies to him, lest there should be some one to rival the Sacrificer.

4. The Adhvaryu then addresses the maiden, 'Hey hey maiden, that little bird . . . '—The maiden replies to him, 'Adhvaryu! that little bird . . . '

5. And the Brahman addresses the Mahishi, 'Mahishi, hey hey Mahishi, thy mother and father mount to the top of the tree . . . '—She has a hundred daughters of kings attending upon her: these

contrary, only the ribs of one horse (thus forming a kind of unit) are referred to; and if that verse were recited, along with the whole hymn, before the final formula which refers to all the victims, the necessary connection would be interrupted.

¹ See XIII, 2, 8, 1.

² Nirātyāśvasya sisanam mahishy upasthe nidhatte 'vrishā vāgi retodhā reto dadhāt' iti mithunasyaiva sarvatvāya.

reply to the Brahman, 'Brahman, hey hey Brahman, thy mother and father play on the top of the tree...'

6. And the Udgātri addresses the favourite, 'Vāvâtâ, hey hey Vāvâtâ, turn upwards!' She has a hundred noble-women (râganyâ) attending upon her: these reply to the Udgātri, 'Hey hey Udgātri, turn upwards!'

7. And the Hotri says to the discarded wife, 'Parivṛiktâ, hey hey Parivṛiktâ, when large meets small in this amhubhed!...'—She has a hundred daughters of heralds and head-men of villages attending upon her: these reply to the Hotri, 'Hotri, hey hey Hotri, when the gods favoured the lalâmagu...'

8. Then the chamberlain addresses the fourth wife, 'Pâlâgali, hey hey Pâlâgali, when the deer eats the corn, one thinks not of the fat cattle...'—She has a hundred daughters of chamberlains and charioteers attending upon her: these reply to the chamberlain, 'Chamberlain, hey hey chamberlain, when the deer eats the corn, one thinks not of the fat cattle...'

9. These speeches, the derisive discourses, indeed are every kind of attainment, and in the Asvamedha all objects of desire are contained: 'By every kind of speech may we obtain all objects of our desire' thus thinking, they cause the Mahisht to rise. Those (women) then walk back in the same way as they had come; and the others finally utter the verse containing (the word) 'fragrant' (*Rig-v.* IV, 39. 6), 'To Dadhikrâvan have I sung praises...'

10. For, indeed, life and the deities depart from those who at the sacrifice speak impure speech: it is their speech they thereby purify so that the deities may not depart from the divine service.

1 Now (some) put the omentum of the Gomviga and that of the hornless he-goat upon the horse and then take it (to the Âhavantya), saying, 'The horse has no omentum.' Let him not do so: of the horse he should certainly take the fat; the (omenta of the) others are normal.

11. When the omenta have been roasted, and when they have performed (the oblations) with the Svâhâs¹, and returned to the back (of the sacrificial ground), they hold a Brahmodya² (theological discussion) in the Sadaś. Having entered by the front door, they sit down at their several hearths.

12. The Hotri asks the Adhvaryu (Vâg. S. XXIII, 45), 'Who is it that walketh singly'³? ...' He replies to him (ib. 46), 'Sûrya (the sun) walketh singly...'

13. The Adhvaryu then asks the Hotri (Vâg. S. XXIII, 47), 'Whose light is there equal to the sun'? ...' He replies to him (ib. 48), 'The Brahman (n.) is the light equal to the sun...'

14. The Brahman then asks the Udgâtri (Vâg. S. XXIII, 49), 'I ask thee for the sake of knowledge, O friend of the gods [if thou hast applied thy mind thereto: hath Vishnu entered the whole world at those three places at which offering is made unto him?]' and he replies (ib. 50), 'I too am at those three places [at which he entered the whole world:

¹ See III, 8, 2, 21-23.

² For a similar discussion between the Brahman and Hotri, prior to the binding of the victims to the stakes, see XIII, 2, 6, 9 seqq.

³ For the complete verse, comprising four questions, see XIII, 2, 6, 10-13; the answers being given there in the form of explanations.

daily do I, with the one body¹, go round the earth, the sky, and the back of yonder sky].'

15. The Udgâtri then asks the Brahman (Vâg. S. XXIII, 51), 'Into what (things) hath the Spirit² entered, [and what (things) are established in the spirit? this, O Brahman, we crave of thee: what answer dost thou give unto us thereon?]' and he replies (ib. 52), 'Into five (things) hath the spirit entered, and they are established in the spirit: this I reply unto thee thereon; not superior in wisdom art thou (to me).'

16. When this (verse) has been uttered, they rise and betake themselves from the Sadas eastwards to the Sacrificer. Having come to him, seated in front of the Havirdhâna³ (shed), they sit down in their several places.

17. The Hotri then asks the Adhvaryu (Vâg. S. XXIII, 53), 'What was the first conception⁴?...' and he replies (ib. 54), 'The sky was the first conception...'

18. The Adhvaryu then asks the Hotri (ib. 55), 'Who, pray, is the tawny one (pisaṅgilâ)? [who is the kurupisaṅgilâ? who moveth in leaps? who creepeth along the path?]' and he replies (ib. 56), 'The tawny one is the uncreated (night)⁵; [the kurupisaṅgilâ is the porcupine; the hare

¹ Or, with the one limb (ekenâṅgena) which Mahidhara takes to mean 'with the mind, in mind.' Possibly 'asya' may have to be taken together with it—'with the one body of his (Vishnu's).'

² Or, man (purusha). The five things, according to Mahidhara, are the vital airs, or breathings.

³ That is, behind the uttaravedi, according to Kâty. XX, 7, 12.

⁴ See XIII, 2, 6, 14 seqq.

⁵ Mahidhara takes 'agâ' (the eternal) here as meaning either the

moveth in leaps; the snake creepeth along the path].'

19. The Brahman then asks the Udgâtṛi (Vâg. S. XXIII, 57), 'How many kinds are there of this (sacrifice), how many syllables?—[how many oblations? how often is (the fire) enkindled? The ordinances of sacrifice have I now asked of thee: how many priests offer in due form?]' and he replies (ib. 58), 'Six kinds there are of this (sacrifice), a hundred syllables, [eighty oblations, and three kindling-sticks; the ordinances of sacrifice do I declare unto thee: seven priests offer in due form].'

20. The Udgâtṛi then asks the Brahman (Vâg. S. XXIII, 59), 'Who knoweth the navel of this world? [who heaven and earth and the air? who knoweth the birth-place of the great Sun? who knoweth the Moon, whence it was born?]' and he replies (ib. 60), 'I know the navel of this world, [I know heaven and earth and the air; I know the birth-place of the great Sun, and I know the Moon, whence it was born].'

21. The Sacrificer then asks the Adhvaryu (Vâg. S. XXIII, 61), 'I ask thee about the farthest end of the earth, [I ask where is the navel of the world; I ask thee about the seed of the vigorous steed; I ask thee about the highest seat of speech];' and he replies (ib. 62), 'This altar-ground is the farthest end of the earth; [this sacrifice is the navel of the world; this Soma-juice is the seed of the vigorous

night, or Mâyâ; cf. XIII, 2, 6, 17. Perhaps, however, 'agâ' may mean 'goat' here.

steed; this Brahman (priest) is the highest seat of speech].'

22. Verily, this is the complete attainment of speech, to wit the Brahmodya, and in the Asva-medha all desires are contained: 'By means of all speech may we obtain all our desires!' so (they think).

23. When the colloquy has been held, the Adhvaryu enters the (Havirdhâna), and draws Pragâpati's (first) Mahiman cup (of Soma) in a gold vessel. The Puroruk formula¹ thereof is (Vâg. S. XXIII, 1; Rig-v. X, 121, 1), 'The golden germ was first produced...' And its Puro-nuvâkyâ is (Vâg. S. XXIII, 63), 'Of good nature, self-existent at first (within the great ocean: I verily place the right germ whence is born Pragâpati).— 'May the Hotri offer to Pragâpati: [of the Mahiman Soma (cup); may he relish, may he drink the Soma! Hotri, utter the offering-formula!]' is the Praisha (ib. 64). The Hotri utters the offering-formula (ib. 65), 'O Pragâpati, none other than thee hath encompassed all these forms²...;' and as the Vasha³ is pronounced, he (the Adhvaryu) offers with (Vâg. S. XXIII, 2), 'What greatness of thine there hath been in the day, and the year, [what greatness of thine there hath been in the wind and the air; what greatness of thine there hath been in the heavens and the sun, to that greatness of thine, to Pragâpati, hail, to the gods³!]' He does not repeat the Vasha³, for he offers the cup of Soma all at once.

¹ That is, the preliminary formula, or formulas, preceding the 'upayâma' ('Thou art taken with a support...').

² See V, 4, 2, 9.

³ See XIII, 2, 11, 2 with note.

THIRD BRĀHMANA.

THE VAPĀ-OFFERINGS.

1. Now as to the offering of the omenta. 'They should proceed with them singly up to the omentum of the Vaisvadeva (victim)¹; and when the omentum of the Vaisvadeva has been offered, they should thereupon offer the others,' said Satyakāma Gā-bāla; 'for, doubtless, the All-Gods (Visve Devāḥ) are all (sarve) the gods: it is in this way he gratifies them deity after deity.'

2. 'When the omentum of the Aindrāgna (victim) has been offered, they should thereupon offer the others,' said the two Saumapa Mānutantavya; 'for, doubtless, Indra and Agni are all the gods: it is in this way he gratifies them deity after deity.'

3. 'When the omentum of the (victim) sacred to Ka has been offered, they should thereupon offer

¹ Whilst there are amongst the victims immolated on the second day, several others consecrated to the Visve Devāḥ, Indra and Agni, and Ka,—the Vaisvadeva, Aindrāgna, and Kāya victims, referred to in this and the following two paragraphs, belong to the *Kāturmāsya*, or Seasonal victims, being amongst those tied to the fourteenth and sixteenth stakes. Though the text speaks only of one Vaisvadeva &c. victim, there are really three such victims in each case. According to the views referred to in these paragraphs (cf. comm. on Kāty. XX, 7, 23), the omenta of all the preceding victims (from the 'paryāṅgya' onwards) up to the beginning of the *Kāturmāsya*s, would be offered together after (or along with) the vapās of those of the respective victims (Vaisvadeva &c.) specified in these paragraphs; and along therewith the vapās of all the subsequent Seasonal victims. The deities to which this heap of omenta would be offered, would thus be either the Visve Devāḥ, or Indra and Agni, or Ka, as representing all the deities. Āsv. S. X, 9, 7, assigns the omenta of all the victims, except the three *Prāgrāpatya* ones, to the Visve Devāḥ.

the others,' said Sailāli; 'for, doubtless, Ka is Pragāpati, and behind Pragāpati are all the gods: it is in this way he gratifies them deity after deity.'

4. 'Having gone through the twenty-one deities of the Seasonal¹ (victims), let them proceed by dividing (the omenta) into twenty-one parts²,' said Bhāllaveya; 'for as many as there are Seasonal deities so many are all the gods: it is in this way he gratifies them deity after deity.'

5. 'Let them proceed (with the omenta) singly and not otherwise,' said Indrota Saunaka; 'why, indeed, should they hasten? It is in this way he gratifies them deity after deity.' This, then, is what these have said, but the established practice is different therefrom.

6. Now Yāgñavalkya said, 'They should proceed simultaneously with the (omenta) of Pragāpati's³ (victims), and simultaneously with those consecrated to single gods: it is in this way that he gratifies them deity after deity, that he goes straightway to the completion of the sacrifice, and does not stumble.'

7. When the omenta have been offered, the Adhvaryu enters (the Havirdhāna shed) and draws

¹ See p. 309, note 2.

² According to this view, the omenta of all the victims after the three first (Pragāpatya) ones,—i. e. beginning from the 'paryāṅgya' animals (see p. 299, note 2) up to the end of the Kāturmāsya, or Seasonal victims, which are the last of the domesticated animals—would be put together in one heap and divided into twenty-one portions, which would then be offered to the first twenty-one deities of the Seasonal offerings, that is to say, to those of the Vaisvadeva, Varuṇapraghāsa, Sākamedha, and Mahāhavis offerings, thus omitting the deities of the Pitryeshī and the Sunāsīrīya offerings.

³ That is the first three victims, viz. the horse, the hornless he-goat, and the Gomṛiga.

Pragâpati's second Mahiman cup of Soma in a silver vessel. The Puroruk̐ thereof is (Vâg. XXIII, 3), 'He who by his greatness hath become the one king of the breathing and blinking world, [and who here ruleth over the two-footed and the four-footed: to the god Ka (Who?) will we pay homage by offering].' The Anuvâkyâ and Yâgyâ are interchanged so as to (ensure) unimpaired vigour¹, and the Praisha (direction to Hotri) is the same (as that of the first cup). As the Vashaḥ is uttered, he offers with (Vâg. S. XXIII, 4), 'What greatness of thine there hath been in the night, and the year, [what greatness of thine there hath been in the earth and the fire; what greatness of thine there hath been in the Nakshatras and the moon, to that greatness of thine, to Pragâpati, to the gods, hail²].' He does not repeat the Vashaḥ: the significance of this has been explained.

8. Of the blood of the other victims they make no sacrificial portions; of (that of) the horse they do make portions³. Of (the blood of) the others⁴ they make portions⁴ on the south side, of (that of) the horse on the north side (of the altar); of (the blood of) the others he makes portions on (a mat of) plaksha (*ficus infectoria*) twigs, of (that of) the horse on rattan twigs.

¹ By simple repetition this would be impaired.

² See XIII, 2, 11, 2 with note.

³ See XIII, 3, 4, 2-5.

⁴ This would be an alternative view. According to the scholl. on Kâty. XX, 8, 1-3, this would seem to refer to the other Prâgâpatya victims, in which case one would, however, expect the dual here, as there are only two of them besides the horse.

9. But concerning this, Sâtyayagñi said, 'They may indeed do it in either way, only one must not depart from the (right) path.' But the former, indeed, is the established practice. The sacrifice (of the second day) is an Ukthya : thereby he causes the air-world to prosper. The last day is an Atirâtra with all the Stomas, for him to obtain and secure everything, for the Atirâtra with all the Stomas is everything, and the Asvamedha is everything.

10. Its Bahishpavamâna (stotra) is in the Trivrit (9-versed Stoma), the Âgya (stotras) in the Pañkadasa (15-versed), the Mâdhyandina-pavamâna in the Saptadasa (17), the Prishthas in the Ekavimsa (21), the Trîtiya Pavamâna in the Trinava (27), the Agnishôma-sâman in the Trayastrimsa (33), the Ukthas in the Ekavimsa (21), the Shodasin in the Ekavimsa, the night (chants) in the Pañkadasa, the Sandhi (twilight chant) in the Trivrit (9). Whatever Sastra is (recited) for the second day of the Prishthya Shadaha that is (used at) the Atirâtra sacrifice¹; thereby he causes yonder (heavenly) world to prosper.

11. 'There are twenty-one Savanlya victims, all of them consecrated to Agni, and there is one and the same performance for them,' so say some; but let him rather immolate those twenty-four bovine (victims²) for twelve deities,—twelve months are a year, and the year is everything, and the Asva-

¹ In the same way Âsv. S. X, 4, 8 lays down the rule that the Sastras of the second day are those of the fifth day of the Vyûdha Prishthya-shadaha; cf. above, XIII, 5, 1, 7 seqq.

² See XIII, 3, 2, 3.

medha is everything: thus it is for the sake of his obtaining and securing everything.

FOURTH BRĀHMANA.

DIFFERENT ARRANGEMENTS OF THE CHANTS OF THE ASVAMEDHA.

1. Now, Indrota Daivâpa Śaunaka once performed this sacrifice for Ganamegaya Pârikshita, and by performing it he extinguished all evil-doing, all Brahman-slaughter; and, verily, he who performs the Asvamedha extinguishes (the guilt incurred by) all evil-doing, all Brahman-slaughter.

2. It is of this, indeed, that the Gâthâ (strophe) sings,—‘In Âsandivat¹, Ganamegaya bound for the gods a black-spotted, grain-eating horse, adorned with a golden ornament and with yellow garlands.’

3. [There are] those same first two days², and a Gytis³ Atirâtra: therewith (they sacrificed) for Bhîmasena;—those same first two days, and a Go Atirâtra: therewith (they sacrificed) for Ugrasena;—those same first two days, and an Âyus Atirâtra: therewith (they sacrificed) for Śrutasena. These are the Pârikshitîyas⁴, and it is of this that the Gâthâ sings,—‘The righteous Pârikshitâs, performing horse-sacrifices, by their righteous work did away with sinful work one after another.’

¹ Lit., (in the city, nagare, Harisvâmin) possessed of a throne. Cf. Ait. Br. VIII, 21.

² Viz., as stated before, an Agnishôma and an Ukthya.

³ As to the difference between the Gytis, Go, and Âyus forms of the Agnishôma sacrifice, see part iv, p. 287, note 2.

⁴ That is, according to Harisvâmin (and the Gâthâ), the brothers of (Ganamegaya) Pârikshita, though one would rather have thought of his sons, the grandsons of Parikshit.

4. Those same first two days, and an Abhigit¹ Atirātra,—therewith Para Ātñāra, the Kausalya king, once sacrificed: it is of this that Gāthā sings,—‘Ātñāra’s son, the Kausalya Para, Hairaṇya-nābha, caused a horse, meet for sacrifice, to be bound, and gave away the replete regions.’

5. Those same first two days, and a Virvagit¹ Atirātra,—therewith Purukutsa, the Aikshvāka king, once on a time performed a horse(daurgaha)-sacrifice, whence it is of this that the *Rishi* sings (*Rig-v.* IV, 42, 8).—‘These, the seven *Rishis*, were then our fathers when Daurgaha² was bound.’

6. Those same first two days, and a Māhāvratā³ Atirātra,—therewith Marutta Āvikṣhita, the Āyogava king, once performed sacrifice; whence the Maruts became his guards-men, Agni his chamberlain, and the Visve Devāḥ his counsellors: it is of this that the Gāthā sings,—‘The Maruts dwelt as guards-men in Marutta Āvikṣhita’s house, Agni as his chamberlain, and the Visve Devāḥ as his counsellors.’ And, verily, the Maruts become the guards-men, Agni the chamberlain, and the Visve Devāḥ the counsellors of him who performs the horse-sacrifice.

7. Those same first two days, and an Aptoryāma⁴ Atirātra,—it was therewith that Kraivya, the Pāñkāla king, once performed sacrifice,—for Krivis they formerly called the Pañkālās: it is of this that the Gāthā sings,—‘At Parivakrā, the

¹ Regarding the Abhigit and Virvagit, see part iv, p. 320, note 2.

² Sāyana, differently from our Brāhmaṇa, takes Daurgaha as the patronymic of Purukutsa (son of Durgaha).

³ See part iv, p. 282, note 5.

⁴ See part iii, introd. p. xx.

Pāñkâla overlord of the Krivis seized a horse, meet for sacrifice, with offering-gifts of a hundred thousand (head of cattle).'

8. And a second (Gâthâ),—' A thousand myriads there were, and five-and-twenty hundreds, which the Brâhmanas of the Pañkâlas from every quarter divided between them.'

9. The Agnishôma in the Trivrit (stoma); the Ukthya in the Pañkadasa; and the third day, with the Uktha (stotras), in the Saptadasa; the Shodasin (stotra) in the Ekavimsa, the night (stotras) in the Pañkadasa, and the Sandhi (stotra) in the Trivrit,—this is the (sacrifice) resulting in the Anushubh¹; it is therewith that sacrifice was performed by Dhvasan Dvaitavana, the king of the Matsyas, where there is the lake Dvaitavana; and it is of this that the Gâthâ sings,—' Fourteen steeds did king Dvaitavana, victorious in battle, bind for Indra Vritrahan, whence the lake Dvaitavana (took its name).'

10. The (three) Pavamâna (stotras) in the Kâturvimsa (stoma), and (those performed) by repetitions² in the Trivrit; the Pavamânas in the Katuskatvârimsa (44-versed stoma), and (those performed) by repetition³ in the Ekavimsa; the Pavamânas in

¹ Viz. inasmuch as, according to Harisvâmin, all the Stotras amount together to 798 verses, which make twenty-five anushubh verses (of 32 syllables each) or thereabouts.

² That is to say, all the remaining nine stotras of this, the Agnishôma, day, the so-called Dhuryas, viz. the Âgya-stotras, the Prishtha-stotras, and the Agnishôma-sâman, in all of which the respective Stoma is obtained by repetitions of the three stotriyâ-verses.

³ In this, the Ukthya, day, this includes also the three Uktha-stotras, as being, as it were, the Dhuryas of the Hotri's assistants

the *Ashṭākatvāriṃsa* (48), and (those performed) by repetition in the *Trayastrīṃsa* (33) up to the *Agnishṭoma-sāman*, the *Uktha* (stotras) in the *Dvāstrīṃsa* (32), the *Shodasin* in the *Ekavīṃsa*, the night (stotras) in the *Pañkadasa*, and the *Sandhi* (stotra) in the *Trivṛit* :

11. Suchlike is *Vishṇu's* striding¹,—it was there-with that *Bharata Dauḥshanti* once performed sacrifice, and attained that wide sway which now belongs to the *Bharatas*: it is of this that the *Gāthā* sings,—‘Seventy-eight steeds did *Bharata Dauḥshanti* bind for the *Vṛitra*-slayer on the *Yamunā*, and fifty-five near the *Gaṅgā*.’

12. And a second (*Gāthā*),—‘Having bound a hundred and thirty-three horses, meet for sacrifice, king *Saudyumni*, more shifty, overcame the other shiftless ones.’

13. And a third,—‘At *Nāḍapit*², the *Apsaras Sakuntalā* conceived *Bharata*, who, after conquering the whole earth, brought to *Indra* more than a thousand horses, meet for sacrifice.’

14. And a fourth³,—‘The greatness of *Bharata* neither the men before nor those after him attained, nor did the five (tribes of) men, even as a mortal man (does not touch) the sky with his arms.’

15. With the *Ekavīṃsa-stoma*⁴ *Riṣhabha Yâgñā-*

(cf. part iii, introd. p. xiv seqq.); whilst in the directions regarding the next day they are not included, as requiring a different *Stoma*.

¹ Just as there are here wide intervals between the *Stomas*, so *Vishṇu*, in his three strides, passes over wide distances, comm.

² This, according to *Harisvāmin*, is the name of *Kaṇva's* hermitage. Cf. *Leumann*, *Zeitsch. d. D. M. G.*, XLVIII, p. 81.

³ Cf. *Ait. Br.* VIII, 23; *Weber*, *Ind. Stud.* I, p. 202.

⁴ That is, using the 21-versed form throughout the three days.

tura, king of the Sviknas, performed sacrifice: it is of this that the Gāthā sings,—‘When *Rīshabha Yagñatura* was sacrificing, the Brahman-folk, having received wealth at the Asvamedha, divided the offering-gifts between them.’

16. With the *Trayastrimsa-stoma Sona Sātrāsāha*, the *Pāñkāla* king, performed sacrifice: it is of this that the Gāthā sings,—‘When *Sātrāsāha* performs the horse-sacrifice, the *Trayastrimsa* (stomas) come forth as (*Taurvasa*) horses, and six thousand mail-clad men’.

17. And a second (Gāthā),—‘At the sacrifice of thee, *Koka’s* father, the *Trayastrimsa* (stomas) come forth, each as six times six thousand ² (horses), and six thousand mail-clad men.’

18. And a third,—‘When *Sātrāsāha*, the *Pāñkāla* king, was sacrificing, wearing beautiful garlands, *Indra* revelled in *Soma*, and the *Brāhmanas* became satiated with wealth.’

19. *Satāntika Sātrāgita* performed the *Govinata* (form of *Asvamedha*), after taking away the

¹ This seems to be *Harisvāmin’s* interpretation of the verse:—*torvasā asvā gyesh/he tam api srīggyeran iti (?) trayastrimsā stomā udgakkhanti, sa hi Sonas trayastrimsān eva stomān trishv api divaseshu prayunkte nānyān iti te udgakkhantīty āha, sha/ tu sahasrāni varminām rāgaputrānām kavaḥkinām asvapālānām udīrata iti vartate varshe prāptā eva drash/avyāh.* The *St. Petersburg Dict.*, on the other hand, construes ‘*trayastrimsāh*’ along with ‘*sha/ sahasrāni*’=6033 (?) horses of mail-clad men). This interpretation seems to me to involve serious difficulties. The use of those *Stomas* doubtless is supposed to result in the advantages here enumerated.

² *Koko nāma nāthaḥ, ke te asvā udīrata iti prathamāyām gāthāyām uktam tad atrāpy anuvartate; teshām tatra parimānam noktam atra sha/trimsad asvasahasrāni rakshinām anukarabhūtāny udgakkhantīty āha; trayastrimsās kodīrate shad dhi(?) varminām padānetāsu (?) gakkhantīti.* *Harisvāmin.*

horse of the Kāśya (king); and since that time the Kāśis do not keep up the (sacrificial) fires, saying, 'The Soma-drink has been taken from us.'

20. The mode (of chanting) for this (Govinata form) is:—the Pavamāna (stotras) in the *Katurvimsa* (stoma), and (those chanted) by repetitions in the *Trivṛit*;—the Pavamānas in the *Katuskatvārimsa*, the Āgya (stotras) in the *Ekavimsa*, the Ukthas¹ in the *Trinava*, the *Prishṭhas* in the *Ekavimsa*;—the Pavamānas in the *Shaṭtrimsa* (36-versed), and (those chanted) by repetitions in the *Trayastrimsa* (33) up to the Āgnishṭoma-sāman, the Ukthas in the *Ekavimsa*, the *Shodasin* in the *Ekavimsa*, the night (stotras) in the *Pañkadasa*, and the Sandhi (stotra) in the *Trivṛit*.

21. It is of this that the Gāthā sings,—'Satānka Sātrāgita seized a sacrificial horse, in the neighbourhood, the sacrifice of the Kāśis, even as Bharata (seized that) of the Satvats.'

22. And a second,—'The mighty Satānka, having seized, in the neighbourhood, Dhṛitarāshṭra's white sacrificial horse, roaming at will in its tenth month, Satānka² performed the Govinata-sacrifice.'

23. And a fourth³,—'The greatness of the Bharatas neither the men before nor those after them attained, nor did the seven (tribes of) men, even as a mortal man (does not touch) the sky with his flanks.'

¹ Why these are here put before the *Prishṭhas*, is not clear.

² Perhaps we ought here to read 'Sātrāgita.'

³ Unless the Gāthā in the preceding paragraph (being in the Trishṭubh metre) is really counted as two, the author seems here purposely to have omitted a verse. Possibly, however, it may mean, 'the fourth,' viz. referring to paragraph 14.

24. Now as to the sacrificial gifts. Whatever there is towards the middle of the kingdom other than the land, the men, and the property of the Brāhmaṇa, of that the eastern region belongs to the Hotri, the southern to the Brahman, the western to the Adhvaryu, the northern to the Udgātri; and the Hotrikas share this along with them.

25. When the Udayanīyā (completing offering) is finished, he seizes twenty-one barren cows, sacred to Mitra-Varuṇa, the Visve Devāḥ, and Bṛihaspati, with the view of his gaining those deities. And the reason why those sacred to Bṛihaspati come last is that Bṛihaspati is the Brahman (n.), and he thus establishes himself finally in the Brahman.

26. And as to their being twenty-one of them,—the twenty-one-fold is he who shines yonder: twelve months, five seasons, these three worlds, and yonder sun as the twenty-first—this consummation (he thereby obtains).

27. When the Udavasānīyā (closing offering) is completed, they give, for a sacrificial gift, four women, with a maiden as the fifth, and four hundred female attendants according to agreement.

28. And during the following year he performs the animal sacrifices of the seasons,—six (victims) sacred to Agni in the spring, six to Indra in the summer, six to Parganya, or to the Maruts, in the rainy season, six to Mitra and Varuṇa in the autumn, six to Indra and Vishṇu in the winter, and six to Indra and Bṛihaspati in the dewy season,—six seasons are a year: in the seasons, in the year, he thus establishes himself. These amount to thirty-six animals,—the Bṛihatī (metre) consists of thirty-six syllables, and the heavenly world is established

upon the *Bṛihatī*: and thus he finally establishes himself, by means of the *Bṛihatī* metre, in the heavenly world.

SIXTH ADHYĀYA. FIRST BRĀHMAṆA.

THE PURUSHAMEDHA, OR HUMAN SACRIFICE.

1. *Purusha Nārāyaṇa* desired, 'Would that I overpassed all beings! would that I alone were everything here (this universe)!' He beheld this five-days' sacrificial performance, the *Purushamedha*, and took it¹, and performed offering therewith; and having performed offering therewith, he overpassed all beings, and became everything here. And, verily, he who, knowing this, performs the *Purushamedha*, or who even knows this, overpasses all beings, and becomes everything here.

2. For this (offering) there are twenty-three *Dīkshās*, twelve *Upasads*, and five *Sutyās* (Soma-days). This, then, being a forty-days' (performance), including the *Dīkshās* and *Upasads*, amounts to a *Virâḡ*², for the *Virâḡ* consists of forty syllables: [*Vâḡ. S. XXXI, 5.*] 'Thence³ *Virâḡ* (f.) was born, and from out of *Virâḡ* the *Pûrusha*.'

¹ That is, according to *Harisvâmin*, he brought its powers into play, and accomplished all his desires:—*tatsâdhanâny upâpâdayat, tenâyam yaganena samhitam sakalam sâdhitavân ity arthaḥ*.

² The *Virâḡ*-verse consists of decasyllabic *pâdas*, the most common form of the verse being one of three *pâdas* (or thirty syllables), whilst here the one consisting of four *pâdas* is alluded to, and *Virâḡ*-verses of one and two *pâdas* likewise occur. There is also a parallel form of the *Virâḡ*-metre consisting of (usually three) hendeca-syllabic *pâdas*.

³ That is, from the *Purusha*; cf. *Rig-v. S. X, 90, 5.*

This, then, is that Virāḡ, and from out of that Virāḡ he (the Sacrificer) generates the Purusha, the Sacrifice.

3. Now these (forty days) are four decades; and as to there being these four decades, it is for the obtainment of these worlds, as well as of the regions: by the first decade they¹ obtained even this (terrestrial) world, by the second the air, by the third the sky, and by the fourth the regions (quarters); and in like manner does the Sacrificer, by the first decade, obtain even this (terrestrial) world, by the second the air, by the third the sky, and by the fourth the regions—and, indeed, as much as these worlds and the regions are, so much is all this (universe); and the Purushamedha is everything: thus it is for the sake of his obtaining and securing everything.

4. On the Upavasatha² (day) there are eleven victims sacred to Agni and Soma: the performance for these is one and the same. There are eleven stakes,—the Trishṭubh (verse) consists of eleven syllables, and the Trishṭubh is a thunderbolt, and the Trishṭubh is vigour: with the thunderbolt, with vigour, the Sacrificer thus from the first repels evil.

5. On the Sutyā (days) there are the (Savanīya) victims of the set of eleven³ (stakes),—the Trishṭubh consists of eleven syllables, and the Trishṭubh is a thunderbolt, and the Trishṭubh is vigour: with the thunderbolt, with vigour, the Sacrificer thus from the first repels evil.

¹ Harisvāmin supplies 'pūrve purushāḥ' (? former men, or the first seven purushāḥ, the seven Rishis).

² That is, the day before the Soma-sacrifice.

³ See III, 7, 2, 1 seqq.

6. And, again, as to why there are (the victims) of the set of eleven (stakes): it is for the sake of his obtaining and securing everything, for the set of eleven (stakes) is everything, since the set of eleven (stakes) is Pragâpati, and Pragâpati is everything, and the Purushamedha is everything.

7. Now this Purushamedha is a five-days' sacrificial performance—the sacrifice is fivefold, the victim is fivefold, and five seasons are a year: whatsoever of five kinds there is, either concerning the deity or the self (body), all that he thereby obtains.

8. The first day thereof is an Agnishōma; then (follows) an Ukthya, then an Atirâtra, then an Ukthya, then an Agnishōma: this (sacrifice) thus has light (gyotis¹) on both sides, and an Ukthya on both sides (of the central Atirâtra).

9. It is a five-days' (sacrifice), like a barley-corn in the middle²; for the Purushamedha is these worlds, and these worlds have light on both sides—through Agni (the sacrificial fire) on this side, and through Âditya (the Sun) on the other: therefore it has light on both sides. And the Ukthya is food, and the Atirâtra the body (self); and because there are these Ukthyas on both sides of the Atirâtra, therefore this body is surrounded by food. And that Atirâtra which is the largest of them is in the middle, it is thereby that it (the body, or sacrifice) is like a barley-corn (yava) in the middle; and, verily,

¹ Viz. an Agnishōma form of the Gyotishōma order of sacrifice. Cf. part iv, p. 287, note 2.

² That is, becoming larger towards the middle, inasmuch as the Ukthya is—as far as Stotras and Sastras, and cups of Soma are concerned—a larger sacrifice than the Agnishōma; and the Atirâtra is the largest form of all.

whosoever knows this repels (yu) his hateful enemy :
' He alone exists, not his hateful enemy,' thus they say of him.

10. The first day is for it this same (terrestrial) world, and the spring season¹ also is this its (terrestrial) world; and the second day is what there is above this (terrestrial) world and below the air, and the summer season also is that (part) of it; and the central day is its air, and the rainy and autumn seasons also are its air; and the fourth day is what is above the air, and below the sky, and the winter season also is that (part) of it; and its fifth day is the sky, and the dewy season also is its sky: thus as to the deities.

11. Then as to the body: The first day is its feet, and the spring season also is its feet; and the second day is what is above the feet, and below the waist, and the summer season also is that (part) of it; and the central day is its waist, and the rainy and autumn seasons also are its waist; the fourth day is what is above the waist and below the head, and the winter season also is that (part) of it; and the fifth day is its head, and the dewy season also is its head:—thus these worlds, as well as the year and the (sacrificer's) self, pass into the Purushamedha for the obtainment and securing of everything, for, indeed, these worlds are everything, and the year is everything, and the self is everything, and the Purushamedha is everything.

¹ It should be borne in mind here that the sacrifice (Pragâpati) is identical with the Sacrificer on the one hand, and with the year on the other.

² Or, as to the self, viz. of Pragâpati (and the Sacrificer), which the sacrifice is supposed to reproduce.

SECOND BRĀHMANA.

1. And as to why it is called Purushamedha :— The stronghold (pur) doubtless is these worlds, and the Purusha (spirit) is he that blows here (the wind), he bides (st) in this stronghold (pur) : hence he is the Purusha. And whatever food there is in these worlds that is its 'medha,' its food ; and inasmuch as this is its 'medha,' its food, therefore (it is called) Purushamedha. And inasmuch as at this (sacrifice) he seizes ¹ men (purusha) meet for sacrifice (medhya), therefore also it is called Purushamedha.

2. He seizes them on the central day, for the central day is the air, and the air is the abode of all beings ; and, indeed, these victims are also food, and the central day is the belly : he thus puts food in the belly.

3. He seizes them by decades ² for the obtainment

¹ That is, he (symbolically) immolates them.

² The statement in paragraphs 3 and 4, according to which there are eleven decades of human victims, does not refer to the actual distribution of victims over the eleven stakes, but it is apparently made purely for symbolical reasons (viz. with reference to the Virâg and Trishatubh metres), and is probably based on the way in which the victims are enumerated in the Vâgasaneyi-samhitâ, XXX, 5-22 (see the Translation at the end of this chapter, where they are, however, numbered according to the stakes). There the first eleven Kandîkâs (5-15) are made up of the names and deities of ten victims each, hence together of eleven decades ; whilst of the subsequent Kandîkâs—k. 16 consists of twelve, ks. 17-21 of ten each, and k. 22 of twelve victims. The actual mode of distribution over the several stakes is that referred to in paragraphs 5-8, viz. the first forty-eight victims are tied to the central stake, after which eleven victims are tied to each of the other ten stakes. After these, amounting to 158 victims, the Samhitâ

of all food, for the Virāg consists of ten syllables, and the Virāg is all food¹.

4. Eleven decades² he seizes;—the Trish/ubh consists of eleven syllables, and the Trish/ubh is the thunderbolt, and vigour: with the thunderbolt, with vigour, the Sacrificer thus repels evil from within him.

5. Forty-eight he seizes at the central stake;—the Gagati consists of forty-eight syllables, and cattle are of Gāgata (movable) nature: by means of the Gagati he (the priest) secures cattle for him.

6. Eleven at each of the others;—the Trish/ubh consists of eleven syllables, and the Trish/ubh is the thunderbolt, and vigour: with the thunderbolt,

enumerates twenty-six additional victims, which, according to Mahidhara (cf. Kāty. XXI, 1, 10), are to be added to the eleven victims of the second stake,—viz. fourteen victims dedicated to various so-called deities; eight victims, sacred to Prāṇāpati and belonging neither to the Śūdra nor to the Brāhmaṇa castes; and finally four more victims, characterised in exactly the same way as the eight preceding ones. It will be seen that of these twenty-six victims only the first set of (eight) Prāṇāpatya victims are referred to in the Brāhmaṇa, and that as the victims seized last of all. This circumstance clearly characterises the last four victims of the Saṃhitā as not recognised by the Brāhmaṇa; and seeing that all four of these are such as have already occurred amongst the previously enumerated victims (though there assigned to different divinities) they must be considered (as they are by Prof. Weber, Ind. Streifen, I, p. 68) as having been added to the list of the Saṃhitā subsequently to the composition of the Brāhmaṇa. A similar inference will probably apply to the fourteen victims preceding the eight Prāṇāpatya ones, though all that can be urged against them is that they are not referred to in the Brāhmaṇa.

¹ Hardly,—and all food is virāg (widely ruling or shining). In double clauses with a middle term, such as this, the position of subject and predicate seems often reversed in the second clause (cf. for instance, XIII, 8, 1, 4).

² See note 2 on p. 407.

with vigour, the Sacrificer thus repels evil from about him.

7. Last of all he seizes eight;—the Gâyatri consists of eight syllables, and the Gâyatri is the Brahman (n.): he thus makes the Brahman to be the ultimate thing of this universe, whence they say that the Brahman is the ultimate thing of this universe.

8. These (eight) are sacred to Pragâpati,—Pragâpati assuredly is the Brahman, for Pragâpati is of the nature of the Brahman¹: therefore they are sacred to Pragâpati.

9. When about to bring up the victims, he offers those three oblations to Savitri, with (Vâg. S. XXX, 1-3), 'God Savitri, (speed the sacrifice, speed the lord of sacrifice unto his share)!—'May we obtain that glorious light of the God Savitri, (who shall inspire our prayers)!—'All troubles remove thou from us, O God Savitri; bestow unto us what is auspicious!' He thus pleases Savitri, and thus pleased with him, he (Savitri) impels (speeds) those (sacrificial) men, and he seizes them impelled by that (Savitri).

10. For the priesthood he seizes a Brâhmaṇa, for the Brâhmaṇa is the priesthood: he thus joins priesthood to priesthood²;—for the nobility he seizes a Râganya, for the Râganya is the nobility: he thus joins nobility to nobility;—for the Maruts (he seizes) a Vaisya, for the Maruts are the clans (peasants): he thus joins peasantry to peasantry;—

¹ That is, of the divine spirit, the world-soul, of which Pragâpati is, as it were, the personification, or phenomenal representative.

² Or, he perfects, completes, the priesthood by (adding to it a member of) the priesthood.

for (religious) toil (he seizes) a Sûdra, for the Sûdra is toil : he thus joins toil to toil ;—according to their particular form he thus supplies these divinities with victims, and, thus supplied, they supply him with all his objects of desire.

11. He makes offering with ghee, for ghee is fiery mettle: by means of fiery mettle he thus endows him (the Sacrificer) with fiery mettle. He makes offering with ghee, for that—to wit, ghee—is the dear resource of the gods: he thus supplies them with their dear resource, and, thus supplied, they supply him with all his objects of desire.

12. By means of the Purusha Nârâyana (litany), the Brahman priest (seated) to the right (south) of them, praises the men bound (to the stakes) with this sixteen-versed (hymn, *Rig-v.* X, 90, *Vâg. S.* XXXI, 1-16), 'The thousand-headed Purusha, thousand-eyed, thousand-footed' . . . ;—thus (he does) for the obtainment and the securing of everything, for everything here consists of sixteen parts, and the Purushamedha is everything: in thus saying, 'So and so thou art, so and so thou art,' he praises and thereby indeed magnifies him (Purusha); but he also thereby speaks of him, such as he is. Now, the victims had had the fire carried round them, but they were not yet slaughtered,—

13. Then a voice² said to him, 'Purusha, do not

¹ For a complete translation of this hymn, the Purusha-sûkta, see J. Muir, *Orig. Sanskrit Texts*, vol. i, p. 9 seqq. Cp. also part iv, introduction, p. xiv.

² 'A bodiless voice,' comm.; cf. XI, 4, 2, 16 where likewise 'an invisible voice' is introduced censuring the priest who burns the oblations. Perhaps, however, Vâk may be intended from whom Pragâpati, in the beginning, produced the waters; cf. VI, 1, 1, 9.

consummate (these human victims¹): if thou wert to consummate them, man (purusha) would eat man.' Accordingly, as soon as fire had been carried round them, he set them free, and offered oblations to the same divinities², and thereby gratified those divinities, and, thus gratified, they gratified him with all objects of desire.

14. He makes offering with ghee, for ghee is fiery mettle: with fiery mettle he thus bestows fiery mettle upon him.

15. He concludes with those of the set of eleven (stakes),—the Trishṭubh consists of eleven syllables, and the Trishṭubh is the thunderbolt, and vigour: with the thunderbolt, with vigour, the Sacrificer thus repels evil from within.

16. The Udayantīyā (concluding oblation) having been completed, he seizes eleven barren cows, sacred to Mitra-Varuṇa, the Visve Devâḥ, and Bṛhaspati³, with the view of winning these deities. And as to those of Bṛhaspati being last,—Bṛhaspati truly is the Brahman (n.), and thus he finally establishes himself in the Brahman.

¹ Thus (i. e. do not go through with this human sacrifice) the commentator, probably correctly, interprets 'samsthāpaya' (instead of 'do not kill,' St. Petersburg Dict., though, practically, it would, of course, come to the same thing),—Purusha, etān purusha-paśūn mā samtishṭipah, udānnyādikāny aṅgāny eshām mā krīṇhā ityarthah; yadi samsthāpayishyasi tataḥ seshabhakshānukāreṇa loke -pi purushaḥ purusham bhakshayishyati taḥ kṛtavyuktam ity abhiprāyaḥ. In the same way the verse ought accordingly to have been translated in III, 7, 2, 8.

² That is, he offers with the formulas 'To the Brahman, hail! to the Kshatra, hail! &c., running through the whole series of so-called divinities of the released victims.

³ Viz. three for each of the first two deities, and five for Bṛhaspati.

17. And as to why there are eleven of them,—the Trishṭubh consists of eleven syllables, and the Trishṭubh is the thunderbolt, and vigour: with the thunderbolt, with vigour, the Sacrificer thus repels evil from within. The Traidhātavi is the final offering (Udavasāntya): the mystic import is the same (as before¹).

18. Now as to the sacrificial fees. What there is towards the middle of the kingdom other than the land and the property of the Brāhmana, but including the men, of that the eastern quarter belongs to the Hotri, the southern to the Brahman, the western to the Adhvaryu, and the northern to the Udgātri; and the Hotrikas share this along with them.

19. And if a Brāhmana performs the sacrifice, he should bestow all his property in order to obtain and secure everything, for the Brāhmana is everything, and all one's property is everything, and the Purushamedha is everything.

20. And having taken up the two fires within his own self², and worshipped the sun with the Uttara-Nārāyana (litany, viz. Vāg. S. XXXI, 17-22), let him betake himself to the forest without looking round; and that (place), indeed, is apart from men. But should he wish to live in the village, let him take up again the two fires in the churning-sticks, and having worshipped the sun with the Uttara-Nārāyana (litany) let him dwell at his home, and let him offer such sacrifices as he may

¹ Viz. as set forth V, 5, 5, 6 seqq.

² Viz. by thrice inhaling the heat (or smoke) emitted by the fires. Cf. Mānava-Dh. VI, 38; Baudhāyana-Dharmas. II, 17, 26.

be able to afford. But, indeed, this (sacrifice) is not to be imparted to any and every one, lest one should impart everything to any and every one, for the Purushamedha is everything; but one may only impart it to one who is known to him, and who is versed in sacred writ, and who may be dear to him, but not to any and every one.

THE (SYMBOLICAL) VICTIMS OF THE PURUSHAMEDHA¹.

I. 1. To the priesthood (he consecrates) a Brāhmana—2. To the nobility a Kshatriya—3. To the Maruts a Vairya—4. To penance (hardship, tapas) a Sūdra—5. To darkness a thief—6. To hell a man-slayer—7. To evil a eunuch—8. To barter an unchaste woman (ayobhū²)—9. To desire a hardot (pumskalū)—10. To the shriek (atikrusha) a minstrel (māgadha)—11. To dancing a herald (bard, sūta)—12. To singing an actor (sailūsha)—13. To the law a counsellor (sabhākara)—14. To joking a timorous man—15. To fun (narma) a chatterer—16. To laughter (hasa) an artizan (kāri, ? singer of praises)—17. To pleasure (ānanda) a woman's friend—18. To enjoyment a maiden's son—19. To skill a wheelwright—20. To perseverance a carpenter—21. To heat (tapas) a potter—22. To craft a mechanic—23. To handsome form a jeweller—24. To beauty a barber³—25. To the arrow-shot an arrow-maker—26. To the weapon a bow-maker—27. To work a bowstring-maker—28. To fate a rope-maker—29. To death a huntsman—30. To the end (antaka) a dog-keeper—31. To rivers a fisherman (pauṇḍgish/ka)—32. To the ogress (of waste lands) a

¹ Comp. Prof. Weber's German translation (Zeitschr. D. M. G., XVIII, p. 262 seqq.; Indische Streifen, I, p. 76 seqq.), where the variants from the Taitt. Br. and the explanations of the commentaries are given. Not a few of the terms used (some of which are, indeed, explained in a different way by the commentators) are, however, still of doubtful meaning. Vāg. S. XXX, 5-22.

² ? The patronymic, or matronymic, of this, 'āyobhava' is said to be the son of a Sūdra from a Vaisya woman.

³ Or, as Mahādhara takes 'subhe vapam,' to well-being the seed-sower—einen Sämann dem Gedēihen, Weber.

Nishâda ¹—33. To the man-tiger (? werwolf) a mono-maniac—
 34. To the Gandharvas and Apsaras a roving outcast (vrâtya)
 —35. To the teams (? prayug) a madman—36. To serpents and
 demons a blockhead (? apratipad)—37. To dice a gambler—38.
 To impassibility ² a non-gambler—39. To the devils (pisâkas) a
 female cane-worker (basket-maker)—40. To the hobgoblins (yâtu-
 dhâna) a female worker in thorns—41. To intercourse a gallant—
 42. To the house a paramour—43. To trouble an unmarried elder
 brother whose younger brother is married—44. To calamity a
 younger brother married before his elder brother—45. To failure ³
 the husband of a younger sister whose elder sister is unmarried—
 46. To reparation an artiste in embroidery—47. To agreement
 a female practiser of love-spells—48. To garrulity (prakâmodya)
 an attendant.

II. 1. To colour a devoted adherent—2. To strength a giver
 of gifts—3. To excrescences ⁴ a hunchback—4. To merriment a
 dwarf—5. To the doors a lame one ⁵—6. To sleep a blind one
 —7. To injustice a deaf one—8. To the means of purification
 (? purging) a physician—9. To knowledge a star-gazer—10. To
 desire of learning one who asks questions—11. To the desire of
 adding to one's knowledge one given to ask questions about
 (everything).

III. 1. To the bounds (of land or propriety) an arbitrator—
 2. To ruins an elephant-keeper—3. To speed a groom—4. To
 thrift a cowherd—5. To vigour a shepherd—6. To fiery mettle a
 goatherd—7. To refreshment (? food) a cultivator of the soil—
 8. To the sweet beverage (? nectar) the distiller of liquor—9. To
 happiness the guardian of a house—10. To prosperity a possessor
 of wealth—11. To superintendence an assistant doorkeeper ⁶.

IV. 1. To the light a gatherer of fire-wood—2. To brilliance

¹ One of the wild aboriginal tribesmen.

² ? iryatâ, lit. the state of one requiring to be roused.

³ ? 'envy' St. Petersburg. Dict. (arâdhi).

⁴ The meaning of 'utsâda' is doubtful; it might be 'removal,' only the etymological meaning of 'ut-sad' having probably suggested the combination.

⁵ Mahidhara takes 'srâma' in the sense of one affected with ophthalmia (cf. srâva): in both senses the association of ideas is intelligible, though apparently (as in other cases) of a jocular nature.

⁶ Or, the assistant of a charioteer, according to Mah. and Sây. (cf. V, 3).

a fire-kindler—3. To the sun's sphere a sprinkler (anointer of a king)—4. To the highest heaven a distributor (of portions)—5. To the world of the gods a carver (of portions)—6. To the world of men a scatterer (? seasoner¹)—7. To all the worlds a pourer out (of drink²)—8. To decay and murder a churner³—9. To the (animal) sacrifice (or, sacrificial essence) a washer-woman—10. To concupiscence a female dyer—11. To quarrelling one of a thievish disposition.

V. 1. To manslaughter an informer—2. To discrimination a doorkeeper—3. To oversight an assistant doorkeeper⁴—4. To strength (cf. II, 2) an attendant—5. To plenty a servant—6. To the pleasant one speaking pleasantly—7. To security one mounted on a horse—8. To heaven (svarga loka) a dealer out of portions (cf. IV, 5)—9. To the highest heaven a distributor (of portions; cf. IV, 4)—10. To wrath one who makes iron red-hot—11. To anger an absconder (? a yielder, coward).

VI. 1. To application a yoker—2. To grief one ready to attack—3. To peaceful dwelling an unyoker—4. To up-hills and down-hills one standing on three legs (of firm character)—5. To bodily form a haughty one (?)—6. To virtue a woman who prepares unguents—7. To calamity (cf. I, 44) a woman who makes scabbards—8. To Yama (the god of death) a barren woman—9. To Yama⁵ one who bears twins—10. To Atharvan one who has miscarried—11. To the saṃvatsara (the first year of the five years' cycle) one in her courses.

VII. 1. To the parivatsara (the second year) one who has not yet borne children—2. To the idāvatsara (the third year) one who transgresses (the matrimonial bonds)—3. To the idvatsara (the fourth year) one who oversteps (the bounds of propriety)—4. To the vatsara (the fifth year) one who is worn out—5. To the year a gray-haired one—6. To the R̥bhus a furrier—7. To the Sādhyas a tanner—8. To the lakes a fisherman (dhaivara)—9. To stagnant (waters) a boatsman—10. To pools a Bainda⁶—11. To reed-marshes one living on dried meat (or fish).

¹ Mahādhara takes 'prakaritrī' in the sense of 'vikshepitrī'; Sāy. in that of 'sower of discord.'

² ? Sāy. makes 'upasektrī' a composer of feuds (!).

³ ? 'a stirrer up of discord,' Sāy.

⁴ Thus also Mahādhara; charioteer, Sāy.; cf. III, 11.

⁵ Yamī, Taitt. Br.

⁶ According to Mahādhara, a wild tribesman (inhabitant of the jungle); 'one living by the net,' Sāy.

VIII. 1. To the opposite bank a 'mārgāra' ¹—2. To the near bank a fisherman (kevara)—3. To shallows an Ānda ²—4. To uneven (? deep) places a fisher (maināla)—5. To sounds (svana) a Parnaka ³—6. To caverns a Kirāta (woodman)—7. To mountain-ridges a Gambhaka ⁴—8. To the mountains a Kimpurusha ⁵—9. To loathing a Paulkasa ⁶—10. To colour a worker in gold (cf. I, 23)—11. To the balance (pair of scales) a merchant.

IX. 1. To the latter part of the evening one exhausted—2. To all beings (spirits) a leper (sidhmala)—3. To good fortune a wakeful one—4. To ill-fortune a sleepy one—5. To trouble (cf. I, 43) a newsmonger—6. To adversity a spiritless one—7. To collapse a waster ⁷—8. To the king of dice a gambler (cf. I, 37)—9. To the *Kṛita* (-die) one who takes advantage of mistakes in the game ⁸—10. To the *Tretā* (-die) one who plays on a (regular) plan ⁹—11. To the *Dvāpara* (-die) one who plans to over-reach ⁹ (his fellow-player).

X. 1. To the Āskanda ¹⁰ (-die) a post of the gaming-room ¹¹—2. (cf. I, 29) one who 'approaches' a cow—3. To the end (antaka, cf. I, 30) a cow-slayer—4. To hunger one who goes begging of one cutting up a cow—5. To evil-doing a Kāraka-teacher—6. To evil (cf. I, 7) a robber—7. To the echo a reviler—8. To the noise a

¹ 'The son of a mṛigāri (? huntsman),' Mahādhara; 'one who catches fish with his hands,' Sāy.

² According to Mahādhara, the maker of 'bandhanāni (? strings, or dams);'—according to Sāy., one who catches fish by means of dikes.

³ ? A Bhilla (Bheel, mountaineer, woodman);—one catching fish by means of feathers (parṇa). Sāy.

⁴ Apparently a man of a voracious, flesh-eating tribe.

⁵ Apparently a low, despicable man.

⁶ Explained as one of very low birth, or more particularly, as the son of a Nishāda from a Kshatriya woman.

⁷ Lit. a cutter away (? a spendthrift).

⁸ Thus Mahādhara explains 'ādinavadarsa'; 'one who works for his fellow-player's ruin,' St. Petersburg Dict.

⁹ The terms 'kalpin' and 'adhikalpin' are of doubtful meaning—'arranger' and 'head-arranger,' Weber.

¹⁰ Lit. 'the assailer,' apparently another name for the die usually called Kali. On these dice see part iii, p. 106, note 1.

¹¹ Explained as a jocular expression for the habitual frequenter of the gambling-house.

growler—9. To the end (anta) a babbler—10. To the endless a dumb one—11. To articulate sound (śabda) a drum-beater.

XI. 1. To festive joy a lute-player—2. To the cry a flute-player—3. To the confused (noise) a conch-blower—4. To the forest a forester—5. To broken woodlands one who watches woods on fire—6. To fun (narma I, 15) a harlot (I, 9)—7. To laughter an artisan (I, 16)—8. To the sea-monster (?) a mottled woman¹ (?)—9—11. To power a village-headman, an astrologer, and a herald (? abhikrośaka).

XII. (Added to those at the second post):—1—3. To dancing (I, 11) a lute-player (XI, 1), a hand-clapper, and a flute-player (XI, 2)—4. To pleasure (I, 17) a musician—5. To fire a fat man—6. To the earth a cripple—7. To the wind a *Kāṇḍāla* (outcast)—8. To the air a staff-dancer²—9. To the sky a bald-headed one—10. To the sun a yellow-eyed one—11. To the stars one of variegated colour—12. To the moon a leprous one (kilāsa, cf. IX, 2)—13. To the day a light-coloured one with yellow eyes—14. To the night a black one with yellow eyes.—He then seizes these eight misshapen ones—15. One who is too tall—16. One too short—17. One too stout—18. One too lean—19. One too light-coloured—20. One too black—21. One too bald—22. One with too much hair:—these (are to be) neither Sūdras nor Brāhmanas, and are sacred to Pragāpati;—23. A minstrel (māgadha, I, 10)—24. A harlot (pumskāli, cf. I, 9)—25. A gambler (I, 37)—26. A eunuch (I, 7):—these (also are to be) neither Sūdras nor Brāhmanas, and are sacred to Pragāpati.

SEVENTH ADHYĀYA. FIRST BRĀHMANA.

THE SARVAMEDHA, OR ALL-SACRIFICE.

1. Brahman Svayambhu (the self-existent, n.) was performing austerities³. He said this much,—

¹ St. Petersburg. Dict. conjectures 'To lust a sportive woman (? dancer or singer).'

² 'Vamsanartin' explained by Mahādhara as one who practises dancing by means of a bamboo-staff (*vamsena nartanasila*); by Śāy. as one who makes his living by dancing on the top of a bamboo-staff (*vamsāgrānṛitagivin*); hardly a 'family-dancer, Monier-Williams.

³ Cf. J. Muir, Orig. Sanskrit Texts, vol. v, p. 372.

Verily, there is no perpetuity in austerities; well, then, I will offer up mine own self in the creatures, and the creatures in mine own self.' And, accordingly, by offering up his own self in the creatures, and the creatures in his own self, he compassed the supremacy, the sovereignty, and the lordship over all creatures; and in like manner does the Sacrificer, by thus offering all sacrificial essences¹ in the Sarvamedha, compass all beings, and supremacy, sovereignty, and lordship.

2. Now this Sarvamedha is a ten-days' (Soma-) sacrifice, for the sake of his gaining and winning every kind of food, for the Virâḡ consists of ten syllables, and the Virâḡ is all food. At this (sacrifice) he builds the greatest possible fire-altar, for this—to wit, the Sarvamedha—is supreme amongst all sacrificial performances: by means of the supreme (sacrifice) he thus causes him (the Sacrificer) to attain supremacy.

3. The first day thereof is an Agnish/ut Agnish/oma², for the sake of his gaining and winning all the gods, for the Agnish/ut Agnish/oma is Agni; and all the gods have Agni (the sacrificial fire) for their mouth. The cups of Soma thereat pertain to Agni, and so do the Puroruk³ formulas pertain to Agni, in order that everything should pertain to Agni.

¹ Or, all kinds of victims (medha).

² That is, a one-day's Soma-sacrifice (ekâha) of the Agnish/oma order, arranged so as specially to promote the praise of Agni. In the same way the next three ekâhas are intended to honour special deities.

³ That is, the formulas preceding the 'upayâma' ('Thou art taken with a support, &c.,' cf. part ii, p. 259, note 1) or formula with which the cup of Soma is drawn.

4. The second day is an *Indrastut Ukthya*, for the sake of his gaining and winning all the gods, for Indra is all the gods. The cups of Soma thereat pertain to Indra, and so do the *Puroruḥ* formulas pertain to Indra, in order that everything should pertain to Indra.

5. The third day is a *Sûryastut Ukthya*, for the sake of his gaining and winning all the gods, for Sûrya is all the gods. The cups of Soma pertain to Sûrya, and so do the *Puroruḥ* formulas pertain to Sûrya, in order that everything should pertain to Sûrya.

6. The fourth day is a *Vaisvadeva*, for the sake of his gaining and winning all the gods, for the All-gods (*Visve Devâḥ*) are all the gods. The cups of Soma pertain to the All-gods, and so do the *Puroruḥ* formulas pertain to the All-gods, in order that everything should pertain to the All-gods.

7. The fifth day is a central *Āsvamedhika*¹ one: at this (sacrifice) he seizes a horse meet for sacrifice, for the sake of his gaining the sacrificial essence of the horse.

8. The sixth day is a central *Paurushamedhika*² one: at this (sacrifice) he seizes men meet for sacrifice, for the sake of his gaining the sacrificial essence of man.

9. The seventh day is an *Aptoryâma*, for the sake of his gaining all kinds of Soma-sacrifices: at this (sacrifice) he seizes all kinds of (victims) meet for sacrifice, both what is animate and what is

¹ That is, an *Ukthya* sacrifice, cf. p. 259, note 2; XIII, 5, 1, 5 seqq.

² That is, an *Atirâtra*, cf. XIII, 6, 1, 9.

inanimate. Of those with omenta he offers the omenta, and of those without omenta they throw down pieces cut out of the skin¹, and of herbs and trees they do so after cutting them up,—every kind of food of both the dry and the fresh he offers, in order to gain every kind of food. Everything he offers, and to every one he offers in order to gain and to win everything. The omenta having been offered at the morning-service, and in the same way the oblations at the evening-service.—

10. The eighth day is a *Trinava* one², for the *Trinava* (stoma) is the thunderbolt, and by means of the thunderbolt, indeed, lordship (kshatra) is gained: by means of the thunderbolt he thus gains lordship.

11. The ninth day is a *Trayastrimsa* one³, for the sake of his gaining a foothold, for the *Trayastrimsa* (stoma) is a foothold.

12. The tenth day is a *Visvagit Atirâtra* with all the *Prishthas*⁴, for the sake of his gaining and winning everything, for the *Visvagit Atirâtra* with all the *Prishthas* is everything, and the *Sarvamedha* is everything.

13. Now as to the sacrificial fees: whatever there is towards the middle of the kingdom other than the property of the *Brāhmaṇa*, but including land and

¹ Lit., 'after cutting (pieces) out of the skin they throw down.'

² That is, one on which the *Trinava* (thrice-nine-versed) *Stoma* is used in chanting.

³ That is, one on which the thirty-three-versed hymn-form is used.

⁴ For a Soma-sacrifice with all the *Prishtha-sāmans*, see part iii, introd. p. xx seqq. On the two kinds of *Visvagit ekâhas*, the *Agnishoma* and the *Atirâtra Visvagit*, see part iv, p. 320, note 2.

men, of that the eastern quarter belongs to the Hotri, the southern to the Brahman, the western to the Adhvaryu, and the northern to the Udgātri; and the Hotrikas share this along with them.

14. Visvakarman Bhauvana once performed this sacrifice, and having performed it he overpassed all beings, and became everything here; and verily he who, knowing this, performs the Sarvamedha, or who even knows this, overpasses all beings, and becomes everything here.

15. It was Kasyapa who officiated in his sacrifice, and it was concerning this that the Earth¹ also sang the stanza;—‘No mortal must give me away; thou wast foolish, Visvakarman Bhauvana: she (the earth) will sink into the midst of the water; vain is this thy promise unto Kasyapa.’

EIGHTH ADHYĀYA. FIRST BRĀHMAṆA.

FUNERAL CEREMONIES.

1. They now² do what is auspicious for him. They now prepare a burial-place (smaśāna³) for him,

¹ Or, the ground, which Visvakarman Bhauvana gave away as sacrificial fee. On this legend cp. Ait. Br. VIII, 21; J. Muir, Orig. Sanskrit Texts, vol. i, p. 456; vol. iv, p. 369.

² The commentator is at pains to show that ‘atha’ here has not the force of ‘thereupon’—that is after the performance of the Sarvamedha—but that of introducing a new topic (‘Now, they do . . .’); and that therefore the directions about to be given are by no means intended to apply only to one who has performed the Sarvamedha, or even to the Agniṣṭi, or builder of a fire-altar, but also to others.

³ Yāska (Nir. III, 5) resolves this word into ‘sman’ (body) + ‘sayana’ (couch); whilst Prof. Weber, Ind. Stud. I, p. 189, proposes ‘asman’ (stone) + ‘sayana’ (couch). The smaśāna, or burial-place, sepulchre, is constructed in the form of a tumulus, or grave-mound.

(to serve him) either as a house or as a monument ; for when any one dies, he is a corpse (*sava*), and for that (corpse) food (*anna*) is thereby prepared. hence 'savâna,' for, indeed, 'savâna' is what is mystically called 'smasâna.' But 'smasâh' also are called the eaters amongst the Fathers, and they, indeed, destroy in yonder world the good deeds of him who has had no sepulchre prepared for him : it is for them that he prepares that food, whence it is 'smasâna,' for 'smasâna' is what is mystically called 'smasâna.'

2. Let him¹ not make it too soon (after the deceased man's death) lest he should freshen up his sin ; but let him make it a long time after, as thereby he obscures the sin ;—and when people do not even remember the years (that have passed²), as thereby one causes the sin to pass into oblivion. If they do remember³,—

¹ Viz. the Sacrificer, the performer of the funeral rites, being the next of kin.

² This is the way in which the scholiasts interpret the corresponding rule, Kâty. Sr. XXI, 3, 1 (*pitrimedhaḥ samvatsarâsmṛitau*), instead of 'when they do not remember it (even once) for years, he brings it about that the sin is forgotten, even in case they should remember it,' as Prof. Delbrück, *Altind. Syntax*, p. 351 translates the passage. For the subject of the verb 'they remember it,' Prof. Delbrück supplies '*pitaraḥ*,' i. e. the dead man's deceased ancestors, instead of the living people, which seems rather improbable. The comment is very corrupt, but it makes at least some allusion to 'people's talk':—*na srutiḥ srutyabhâvas (tām) tena kirakaraṇena agham pâpakaraṇam gamayati, kirât smasânam kurva-sraraṇam (? kurvataḥ sravanam) ganavâdo-pi na srinotīty (l) arthaḥ.*

³ In this way Harisvâmin, as well as the scholiasts on Kâty. XXI, 3, 2, construes the clause with the next paragraph, and it is difficult to see how otherwise any satisfactory sense could be extracted from it. At the same time, it can evidently only qualify the first specification of time, as the others will apply in any case.

3. Let him make it in uneven years, since the uneven belongs to the Fathers; and under a single Nakshatra¹, since the single Nakshatra belongs to the Fathers; and at new-moon, since the new-moon is a single Nakshatra;—for he (the Sacrificer) is a single (person); and in that all the beings dwell together during that night, thereby he obtains that object of desire which is (contained) in all Nakshatras.

4. Let him make it in autumn, for the autumn is the Svadhā, and the Svadhā is the food of the Fathers: he thus places him along with food, the Svadhā;—or in (the month of) Māgha, thinking, 'Lest (mā) sin (agha) be in us; '—or in summer (nidāgha), thinking, 'May thereby be removed (nidhā) our sin (agha) !'

5. Four-cornered (is the sepulchral mound). Now the gods and the Asuras, both of them sprung from Pragâpati, were contending in the (four) regions (quarters). The gods drove out the Asuras, their rivals and enemies, from the regions, and, being regionless, they were overcome. Wherefore the people who are godly make their burial-places four-cornered, whilst those who are of the Asura nature, the Easterns and others², (make them)

¹ That is, a lunar mansion consisting of a single star, such as Kṛtā and Pushya (in contradistinction to such in the dual, as Punarvasu and Virāḍhe, and to those in the plural number, as the Kṛttikās). As regards the symbolic connection of the uneven number with the deceased ancestors, the commentator reminds us of the fact that it is the father, grandfather, and great-grandfather who represent the Fathers.—The only available MS. of the commentary (Ind. Off. 149) terminates at this place.

² Yā āsuryaḥ prākyaḥ tvad ye tvat parimaṇḍalāni (smarānāni kurvate),—Prof. Weber, Ind. Stud. I, p. 189, takes this in the sense of 'part of the prākya, the āsuryaḥ prajāḥ of them (hence probably

round, for they (the gods) drove them out from the regions. He arranges it so as to lie between the two regions, the eastern and the southern¹, for in that region assuredly is the door to the world of the Fathers: through the above he thus causes him to enter the world of the Fathers; and by means of the (four) corners he (the deceased) establishes himself in the regions, and by means of the other body² (of the tomb) in the intermediate regions: he thus establishes him in all the regions.

6. Now as to the choosing of the ground. He makes it on ground inclining towards the north, for the north is the region of men: he thus gives him (the deceased) a share in the world of men; and in that respect, indeed, the Fathers share in the world of men that they have offspring; and his (the deceased man's) offspring will, indeed, be more prosperous.

7. 'Let him make it on ground inclining towards the south,' they say, 'for the world of the Fathers inclines towards the south: he thus gives him a share in the world of the Fathers.' Let him not do so, however, for, indeed, such a one is an opening tomb, and certainly another of these (members of the dead man's family) quickly follows him in death.

the non-Āryan portion of them), have round *śmaśāna*.' J. Muir, *Orig. Sansk. Texts*, vol. ii, p. 485, takes no account of the words '*tvad yē tvat*.' For our rendering of these words, cp. V, 3, 2, 2 *śūdrāms tvad yāms tvat*, '*Śūdras and others*,' or '*Śūdras and suchlike people*.'

¹ That is to say, its front side is towards the south-east. Cp. p. 428, note 4.

² That is, by means of the sides of the grave which are to face the intermediate points of the compass.

8. And some, indeed, say, 'Let him make it on a counter-cutting¹ in ground inclined towards the south, for such (a tomb) indeed becomes rising sin².' But one must not do so, for indeed such (a burial place) alone becomes rising sin which one makes on ground inclining towards the north.

9. On any level (ground) where the waters, flowing thither from a south-easterly direction³, and coming to a stand-still, will, on reaching that (north-westerly) quarter, without pressing forward⁴, join imperishable water⁵, on that (ground) one may make (the tomb); for, water being food, one thereby offers food to him from the front towards the back; and, water being the drink of immortality, and that region between the rising of the seven *Rishis*⁶ and the setting of the sun being the quarter of the living, one thereby bestows the drink of immortality upon the living:—and such a one, indeed, is a closing tomb; and verily what is good for the living that is also good for the Fathers.

¹ This is meant as a literal rendering of 'pratyarsha.' What is intended thereby would seem to be either a cutting made into southward sloping ground, in such a way as to make the cut piece of ground rise towards the south, or perhaps such a part of the southward inclined ground as naturally rises towards the south. The St. Petersburg Dict. suggests 'steep bank (escarpment), or side (of a hill).' Kāty. XXI, 3, 15 (kakshe) seems also to imply some kind of hollow ground, surrounded by bushes and trees.

² That is, apparently, lightened, or improving, sin.

³ It might also mean, in a south-easterly direction, but the comparison with food introduced into the mouth from the front (east) and the specification of the opposite direction evidently point to the above meaning.

⁴ That is, without urging forward the standing water which they join, but quickly flowing into it.

⁵ That is, apparently, such a lake as never dries up.

⁶ That is, *Ursa major*, the Great Bear, or Charles's Wain.

10. Let him make it in a pleasant (spot), in order that there should be pleasure for him; and in a peaceful (spot), in order that there should be peace for him. He must not make it either on a path, or in an open space, lest he should make his (the deceased's) sin manifest.

11. Whilst being secluded it should have the sun shining on it from above¹: in that it is secluded one hides his sin; and in that it has the sun shining on it from above—yonder sun being the remover of evil—he, indeed, removes the evil from him, and he also causes him to be endowed with the radiance of the sun.

12. Let him not make it where it would be visible from here², for assuredly it is beckoning, and another of these (members of his family) quickly follows (the deceased) in death.

13. Let there be beautiful objects³ at the back,—for beautiful objects mean offspring: beautiful objects, offspring, will thus accrue to him. If there be no beautiful objects, let there be water either at the back or on the left (north) side, for water is indeed a beautiful object; and beautiful objects, offspring, will indeed accrue to him.

14. He makes it on salt (barren) soil, for salt means seed; the productive thus makes him partake in productiveness, and in that respect, indeed, the

¹ That is, it should be in a place where at midday the rays of the sun do not fall obliquely on it, Kāty. XXI, 3, 15 comm.

² That is, from the village, cf. Kāty. XXI, 3, 18.

³ Or, beautiful ground (kṛita). According to the comments on Kāty. XXI, 3, 23 this means that the site of the grave should be so chosen that there are at the back (or west) of it, either woods of various kinds, or ground diversified by woods, hills, temples (!) &c.

Fathers partake in productiveness that they have offspring: his offspring assuredly will be more prosperous.

15. On such (ground) as is filled with roots, for to the Fathers belongs the (sod) filled with roots;—it is (sod) of *vṛina* (*Andropogon muricatus*) and other grasses, for thus the Fathers' share in this (earth) is not excessive¹; and he also thereby makes (the deceased's) sin to be restricted².

16. Let him not put it near (where grows) *Bhûmipâsa*³, or reeds, or *Asmagandhâ*⁴, or *Adhyândâ*, or *Prisniparni* ('speckled-leaf,' *Hemionitis cordifolia*); nor let him make it near either an *Asvattha* (*Ficus religiosa*), or a *Vibhitaka* (*Terminalia bellerica*), or a *Tilvaka* (*Symplocos racemosa*), or a *Sphûrgaka* (*Diospyros embryopteris*), or a *Haridru* (*Pinus deodora*), or a *Nyagrodha* (*Ficus indica*), or

¹ Whilst their share would have been excessive, if all the ground covered with vegetation were assigned to them. It is also worthy of note that Kâty. Sr. XXV, 7, 17, in enumerating the plants which are to be removed from the site of the funeral pile, mentions (apparently in the place of our *Bhûmipâsâ*) the *Visâkha*, explained by the commentator as identical with 'dûrvâ'; and Sir H. M. Elliott, *Races of the N. W. Province of India*, II, p. 303, remarks, on the *Dûb* grass (*Agrestis linearis*, or *Cynodon dactylon*), that 'its tenacity whenever it once fixes its roots has caused it to be used in a common simile when the attachment of Zamindârs to their native soil is spoken of.'

² Apparently lit. 'binding (itself),' ? i.e. either restricted in quantity, or limited to his own person, not transmitted to his son. Cf. XIII, 8, 3, 10. It can hardly be taken in the sense of 'binding the sin.'

³ Literally, 'Earth-net,' apparently some troublesome creeping plant corresponding to our rest-harrow (*Ononis arvensis* or *spinosa*), or couch-grass (*Triticum repens*), but of tropical dimensions.

⁴ Lit. 'rock-smell,' perhaps identical with *Asvagandhâ* (lit. 'horse-smell,' *Physalis flexuosa*).

10. Let him make it in a pleasant (spot), in order that there should be pleasure for him; and in a peaceful (spot), in order that there should be peace for him. He must not make it either on a path, or in an open space, lest he should make his (the deceased's) sin manifest.

11. Whilst being secluded it should have the sun shining on it from above¹: in that it is secluded one hides his sin; and in that it has the sun shining on it from above—yonder sun being the remover of evil—he, indeed, removes the evil from him, and he also causes him to be endowed with the radiance of the sun.

12. Let him not make it where it would be visible from here², for assuredly it is beckoning, and another of these (members of his family) quickly follows (the deceased) in death.

13. Let there be beautiful objects³ at the back,—for beautiful objects mean offspring: beautiful objects, offspring, will thus accrue to him. If there be no beautiful objects, let there be water either at the back or on the left (north) side, for water is indeed a beautiful object; and beautiful objects, offspring, will indeed accrue to him.

14. He makes it on salt (barren) soil, for salt means seed; the productive thus makes him partake in productiveness, and in that respect, indeed, the

¹ That is, it should be in a place where at midday the rays of the sun do not fall obliquely on it, Kâty. XXI, 3, 15 comm.

² That is, from the village, cf. Kâty. XXI, 3, 18.

³ Or, beautiful ground (*âitra*). According to the comments on Kâty. XXI, 3, 23 this means that the site of the grave should be so chosen that there are at the back (or west) of it, either woods of various kinds, or ground diversified by woods, hills, temples (!) &c.

Fathers partake in productiveness that they have offspring: his offspring assuredly will be more prosperous.

15. On such (ground) as is filled with roots, for to the Fathers belongs the (sod) filled with roots;—it is (sod) of *vṛina* (*Andropogon muricatus*) and other grasses, for thus the Fathers' share in this (earth) is not excessive¹; and he also thereby makes (the deceased's) sin to be restricted².

16. Let him not put it near (where grows) *Bhūmipāsa*³, or reeds, or *Asmagandhā*⁴, or *Adhyāndā*, or *Prisniparni* ('speckled-leaf,' *Hemionitis cordifolia*); nor let him make it near either an *Asvattha* (*Ficus religiosa*), or a *Vibhitaka* (*Terminalia bellerica*), or a *Tilvaka* (*Symplocos racemosa*), or a *Sphūrgaka* (*Diospyros embryopteris*), or a *Haridru* (*Pinus deodora*), or a *Nyagrodha* (*Ficus indica*), or

¹ Whilst their share would have been excessive, if all the ground covered with vegetation were assigned to them. It is also worthy of note that Kāty. Sr. XXV, 7, 17, in enumerating the plants which are to be removed from the site of the funeral pile, mentions (apparently in the place of our *Bhūmipāsā*) the *Viśākha*, explained by the commentator as identical with 'dūrvā'; and Sir H. M. Elliott, *Races of the N. W. Province of India*, II, p. 303, remarks, on the *Dūb* grass (*Agrestis linearis*, or *Cynodon dactylon*), that 'its tenacity whenever it once fixes its roots has caused it to be used in a common simile when the attachment of Zamindārs to their native soil is spoken of.'

² Apparently lit. 'binding (itself),' ? i.e. either restricted in quantity, or limited to his own person, not transmitted to his son. Cf. XIII, 8, 3, 10. It can hardly be taken in the sense of 'binding the sin.'

³ Literally, 'Earth-net,' apparently some troublesome creeping plant corresponding to our rest-harrow (*Ononis arvensis* or *spinosa*), or couch-grass (*Triticum repens*), but of tropical dimensions.

⁴ Lit. 'rock-smell,' perhaps identical with *Asvagandhā* (lit. 'horse-smell,' *Physalis flexuosa*).

any other (trees) of evil name¹, so as to avoid (such) names from a desire of good luck.

17. Now as to the order of procedure. For an Agniṣṭ (builder of a fire-altar) one makes the tomb after the manner of the fire-altar; for when a Sacrificer builds a fire-altar he thereby constructs for himself by sacrifice a (new) body for yonder world; but that sacrificial performance is not complete until the making of a tomb; and when he makes the tomb of the Agniṣṭ after the manner of the fire-altar, it is thereby he completes the Agniṣṭyâ.

18. One must not make it (too) large lest he should make the sin (of the deceased) large. 'Let him make it as large as the fire-altar without wings and tail,' say some, 'for like that of the fire altar is this his (the Sacrificer's) body.'

19. But let him rather make it just of man's size: he thus leaves no room for another; broader (variyaś) behind², for what is (left) behind is offspring: he thus makes the (dead man's) offspring more excellent (variyaś): and broader on the left (north⁴ or higher, utara) side, for the later (uttara)

¹ The commentator, on Kāy. XXI, 3, 20, and Vāg. S. XXXV, 1, instances the *śleṣmāntaka* ('antiphlegmatic,' i.e. *Cordia latifolia* or *myxa*) and the *kovidāra* ('bad for splitting,' *Bauhinia variegata*; which, according to Stewart and Brandis, shows vertical cracks in the bark).

² The grave being constructed in such a way that the four corners lie in the direction of the four quarters, the back, or west side of the grave would really mean the side facing the north-west.

³ Or, perhaps, more extended, more numerous or prosperous.

⁴ In reality, the north means here the side facing the north-east. The side of the tumulus is to form a quadrilateral, of which the two sides intersecting each other at the north corner, are to be longer than the two which intersect at the south corner; viz. each of the

are offspring: he thus makes the offspring more excellent. Having attended to this, he encloses it with cords twisted (and extended) in the non-sunwise way¹; for the (sacrificial) performance connected with the Fathers is done in the non-sunwise way.

20. He then bids them cut out (the earth). He should cut it out to whatever extent he intends to raise (the sepulchral mound), but let him rather cut it out so as to be just of man's size: he thus leaves no room for another. For, on the one hand², the Fathers are the world of plants, and amongst the roots of plants they (are wont to) hide; and, on the other², (he does so) lest he (the deceased) should be separated from this (earth).

SECOND BRÂHMAṆA.

1. Now, some bank up (the sepulchral mound) after covering up (the site). The gods and the Asuras, both of them sprung from Pragâpati, were contending for (the possession of) this (terrestrial) world. The gods drove out the Asuras, their rivals and enemies, from this world; whence those who

former is to measure one man's length plus 9½ āṅgulas (thumb's breadths), and each of the latter one man's length minus 9½ āṅgulas. See comm. on Vāg. S. XXXV, 1.

¹ That is, by twisting or spinning the strands from right to left, or contrary to the sun's course. The cord is extended round the grave from right to left (east, north, west, south) by means of pegs driven into the ground at the four corners; see XIII, 8, 4, 1.

² I do not see how the usual force of 'atho'—viz. that of introducing a new element or argument either analogous, or not quite conformable, to what precedes (cf. Delbrück, *Altind. Syntax*, p. 513)—can apply to this double use of the particle. The two 'atho' seem to introduce the reasons for his digging up the ground, and for his not digging up more than a man's size.

are godly people make their sepulchres so as not to be separate (from the earth), whilst those (people) who are of the Asura nature, the Easterns and others, (make their sepulchral mounds) so as to be separated (from the earth), either on a basin¹ or on some such thing.

2. He then encloses it by means of enclosing-stones: what those enclosing-stones (round the fire-hearths) are, that they are here². With a formula he sets up those, silently these: he thus keeps separate what refers to the gods and what refers to the Fathers. With (an) undefined (number of stones he encloses it), for undefined is yonder world.

3. He then sweeps that (site) with a palāsa (*Butea frondosa*) branch—what the sweeping (signified) on that occasion³, that (it does) here—with (Vāg. S. XXXV, 1), 'Let the niggards avaunt from hence, the perverse scorers of the gods!'—he thereby expels from this world the niggards, the perverse haters of the gods, the Asura-Rakshas;—'it is the place of this Soma-offerer,' for he who has performed a Soma-sacrifice is a Soma-offerer;—'(an abode) distinguished by lights, by days, by nights,'—he thereby makes him to

¹ I take the 'kanū' to be a shallow stone basin or trough, either solid or consisting of masonry (bricks) in the manner of our stone-lined graves.

² Cf. VII, 1, 1, 12 seq. 'The enclosing-stones are the womb: he thus encloses the seed here sown in a womb. . . And, again, the Gārhapatya hearth is this (terrestrial) world, and the enclosing-stones are the waters: he thus surrounds this world with water.'

³ Viz. in building the Gārhapatya hearth (VII, 1, 1, 11 seqq.); no such sweeping taking place in preparing the site for the Âhavanīya (VII, 3, 1, 7).

be of the world of the seasons, the days and nights;—

4. 'May Yama grant him an abode;'—for Yama has power over the abode in this (earth), and it is him he solicits for an abode therein for this (dead man). He throws out this (branch) to the right (south), the other¹ to the left (north) side: he thus keeps the divine separate from what belongs to the Fathers.

5. He (the Adhvaryu) then yokes (the team) to the plough on the south side,—some say on the north side: he may do as he chooses. Having given the order, saying, 'Yoke!' he (the Sacrificer) utters the formula (Vâg. S. XXXV, 2), 'May Savitṛi vouchsafe for thy bones a place in the earth!'—Savitṛi now indeed vouchsafes a place in the earth for his (the deceased man's) bones;—'Let the oxen be yoked therefore!' for it is indeed for this work that the oxen are yoked.

6. It is (a team) of six oxen,—six seasons are a year: on the seasons, on the year, as a firm foundation, he thus establishes him. Having turned round (the plough) from right to left², he ploughs the first furrow with (Vâg. S. XXXV, 3), 'May Vâyu purify!' along the north side (along the cord) towards the west³; with, 'May

¹ Viz. that used in sweeping the Gârhapatya, VII, 7, 1, 5.

² That is, having driven the plough round from the south side to the north, in the non-sunwise direction (i. e. keeping the sepulchral site on the left hand side).

³ In ploughing the site of the fire-altar, the first furrow was drawn along the south side from west to east; and then, in sunwise fashion, from the south-west corner round along the west, north, and east sides; see VII, 2, 2, 9 seqq.

Savitri purify!' along the west side towards the south; with, 'With Agni's lustre!' along the south side towards the east; with, 'With Sûrya's brilliance!' along the front side towards the north.

7. Four furrows he ploughs with a formula: he thereby establishes him in whatever food there is in the four quarters. And (as to why it is done) with a formula.-certain, assuredly, is the sacrificial formula (*yağus*), and certain are these quarters.

8. He then ploughs across the body (of the sepulchral site) he thereby establishes him in whatever food there is in the year¹—silently with (an) undefined (number of furrows), for undefined is yonder world.

9. Having performed the work for which he has put the team to that (plough), he now unfastens it: 'Let the oxen be unyoked!' he says, for it is for that work that the oxen were yoked. To the right (south) side² he removes this (plough and team), to the left (side) any other: he thus keeps the divine separate from what belongs to the Fathers.

THIRD BRÂHMANA.

1. He then sows (seed) of all (kinds of) herbs: what the all-herb (seed signified) on that occasion³, that (it does) here. With many (verses⁴) he sows

¹ The Sacrificer's body (trunk) or self, like that of *Pragâpati*, is as usual identified with the year (Father Time).

² Or rather to the south-west side, whilst at the *Agnikayana* (VII, 2, 2, 21) it was done towards the north-east.

³ Viz. that it means food of every kind, see VII, 2, 4, 14.

⁴ Viz. with fifteen verses (VII, 2, 4, 15 seqq.) of which the one here used formed part (part iii, p. 340, note 2, verse 5).

that (former seed), with a single one this,—he thus keeps the divine separate from what belongs to the Fathers,—with (Vāg. S. XXXV, 4), 'On the Asvattha tree is your abode, on the Parṇa dwelling is made for you, (possessed of cattle shall ye be, when ye save the Man):' for long life he thereby prays for these (the Sacrificer's family), and accordingly each subsequent one of them dies of old age¹.

2. He then pours out that (jarful of bones²): for this earth is the foundation: on this (earth), as a foundation, he thus establishes him. Before sunrise (he does so), for, in secret, as it were, are the Fathers, and in secret, as it were, is the night;—in secret, indeed, he does this, (but) so that (the sun) should rise over him doing it: on both day and night he thus establishes him.

3. [He does so, with Vāg. S. XXXV, 5-6.] 'May Savitṛi deposit thy bones in the mother's lap,'—Savitṛi thus deposits his bones in the lap of the mother, this earth;—'O Earth, be thou propitious unto him!' he thus says this in order that this (earth) may be propitious to him.—'In the deity Pragāpati I place thee, in the world nigh unto the water³, O N. N.,' therewith he mentions the name (of the deceased); for nigh to

¹ That is, they die of old age, just as do the herbs now sown to which the verse is, of course, addressed in the first place. Cf. Mahidhara on Vāg. S. XII, 79.

² On burning the dead body, immediately after death, the calcined bones were carefully collected and kept in an earthen vessel; cf. p. 117, note 3.

³ Or, in a place near water. The Saṃhitā adds (either before or after the dead man's name), 'May he (Pragāpati) burn away our sin!'

the water, indeed, is this (terrestrial) world: he thus places him in the deity Praṅāpati, in the world nigh unto the water.

4. He then says to some one, 'Proceed in that (southern) direction without drawing breath, and, having thrown down the jar, return hither without looking behind thee!' He then mutters (Vāg. S. XXXV, 7), 'O Death, go away another way, what second way there is of thine other than the path of the gods¹; I call unto thee that hast eyes and hearest: hurt not our family nor our men!' for long life he thereby prays for these, and accordingly each subsequent one of them dies of old age.

5. He then arranges him (the dead man) limb by limb, with (Vāg. S. XXXV, 8 9), 'Propitious be the wind unto thee, propitious the heat of the sun; propitious be the bricks; propitious be the fires unto thee, and may the earthly ones not scorch thee!—May the regions fit themselves to thee, and may the waters be most kind unto thee, and the rivers; and kind also the air: may all the regions fit themselves to thee!'—he thereby makes everything fit itself to him, and be auspicious for him.

6. Now thirteen unmarked² bricks, measuring a foot (square), have been made: they are just like those bricks in the fire-altar. Those (altar bricks) he lays down with a formula, silently these: he thus keeps the divine separate from what belongs to the Fathers.

¹ Viz. the 'pitriyāna,' or path of the Fathers. See I, 9, 3. 2.

² That is, not marked with lines, as those of the fire-altar are. As to the use of pebbles, instead of bricks, in the case of one who has not performed the Agnikayana, see XIII, 8, 4, 11.

7. There are thirteen of them,—thirteen months are a year: on the seasons, on the year, he thus establishes him, as on a firm foundation.

8. They measure a foot (square),—the foot is a foundation: a foundation he thus prepares for him. Unmarked they are, for in secret, as it were, are the Fathers, and in secret, as it were, is what is unmarked: he thus secretes what is in secret.

9. One of them he places in the middle, with the front side towards the east: this is the body (trunk);—three in front, fitted to (the position of) the head: that is the head;—three on the right: that is the right wing (side);—three on the left: that is the left wing;—three behind: that is the tail. Thus this his body, furnished with wings and tail, is just like that of Agni (the fire-altar).

10. He then bids them bring some soil from a cleft in the ground, for thus the Fathers' (share) in this (earth) is not excessive; and he also thereby makes the (dead man's) sin to be restricted¹. And some, now, dig in that intermediate (south-eastern) quarter, and fetch it from there: and others, again, do so towards the south-west, and fetch it northwards from there: he may do as he chooses.

11. Let him not make it (the sepulchral mound) too large, lest he make the (deceased's) sin large. For a Kshatriya he may make it as high as a man with upstretched arms, for a Brâhmaṇa reaching up to the mouth, for a woman up to the hips, for a Vaisya up to the thighs, for a Sûdra up to the knee; for suchlike is their vigour.

12. But let him rather make it so as to reach

¹ See XIII, 8, 1, 15.

below the knee : he thus leaves no room for another. While that (mound) is being made, they hold a bundle (of reed grass) to the left (north, *uttaratah*) of it,—that is offspring : they thus hold the (deceased's) offspring upwards (*uttaratah*). Do not let him throw it down either after holding it up, or after bringing it ; but let him set it up in the house¹ : he thus sets up offspring in the house.

13. Having prepared it, he sows barley grain (*yava*), thinking, 'May they ward off (*yavaya*) sin from me!' He covers it over with *Avakâ*-plants² in order that there may be joy (or moisture, *ka*) for him ; and with *Darbha* grass (*Poa cynosuroides*) he covers it for the sake of softness.

FOURTH BRÂHMANA.

1. They now fix pegs round it³,—a *Palâsa* (*Butea frondosa*) one in front, for the *Palâsa* is the Brahman (*n.*) : he thus makes him go to the heavenly world with the Brahman for his leader ;—a *Samī* (*Prosopis spicigera*) one on the left (north corner), in order that there may be peace (*sam*) for him ;—a *Varâsa* (*Crataeva Roxburghii*) one behind, in order that he may ward off (*vâraya*) sin from him ; --

¹ That is, fix it so as to stand upright, by means of a bamboo stick to which it is tied. Cf. *Kâty.* XXI, 3, 27 comm.

² *Blyxa* (or *Vallisneria*) *octandra* (*Roxburghii*), a grass-like plant with sword-shaped leaves (*A. K. Nairne*, *The Flowering Plants of Western India*, p. 318), growing freely on the margins of tanks. Cf. VII, 5, 1, 11 ; IX, 1, 2, 22 (where read '*Avakâ*-plant' instead of '*lotus-flower*').

³ According to *Kâty.* *Sr.* XXI, the pegs are driven in immediately after the measuring, and prior to the sweeping, of the site of the tumulus ; and this must certainly be the case, seeing that the cords by which the site is enclosed (XIII, 8, 1, 19) are fastened to the pegs.

and a *Vṛitra*-peg¹ on the right (south corner) for sin not to pass beyond.

2. On the right (south) side they then dig two somewhat curved (furrows²), and fill them with milk and water,—these, indeed, are two inexhaustible streams (that) flow to him in the other world;—and seven (they dig) on the left (north) side, and fill them with water, for sin not to pass beyond, for indeed sin cannot pass beyond seven rivers³.

3. They⁴ throw three stones each (into the northern furrows), and pass over them, with (*Vâg. S. XXXV, 10; Rig-v. X, 53, 8*): 'Here floweth the stony one: hold on to each other, rise, and cross over, ye friends: here will we leave behind what unkind spirits there be, and will cross over to auspicious nourishments;'—as the text so its import.

4. They cleanse themselves with *Apâmarga* plants⁵—they thereby wipe away (*apa-marg*) sin—

¹ The exact meaning of '*vṛitra-saṅku*' is doubtful. *Kāty. Sr. XXI, 3, 31* has '*deha-saṅku*' instead, to which the commentary assigns the rather improbable meaning of 'stone-pillar,' in favour of which he refers to *IV. 2. 5. 15* of our *Brāhmaṇa*—'Soma, in truth, was *Vṛitra*: the mountains and stones are his body;' whence he makes '*vṛitra*' = '*asman*' (stone).

² Or narrow trenches or ditches—*kuṣṭhe karṣhū*, *Kāty. XXI, 4. 20*. They are apparently semicircular, probably with their open part towards the grave.

³ These seven furrows are straight, running from west to east; thus separating the grave from the north, the world of men.

⁴ That is, the *Adhvaryu* and the members of the Sacrificer's family.

⁵ Lit. 'cleansing-plants' or 'wiping-plants,' *Achyranthes aspera*; also called the burr-plant (*Birdwood*), a common hairy weed found all over India, and much used for incantations and sacrificial purposes.

with (Vâg. S. XXXV, 11), 'O Apâmârga, drive thou away from us sin, away guilt, away witchery, away infirmity, away evil dreams!'—as the text so its import.

5. They bathe at any place where there is water. With (Vâg. S. XXXV, 12), 'May the waters and plants be friendly unto us!' he takes water with his joined hands,—for water is a thunderbolt: with the thunderbolt he thus makes friendship,—and with, 'Unfriendly may they be unto him who hateth us, and whom we hate!' he throws it in the direction in which he who is hateful to him may be, and thereby overthrows him.

6. And if it be standing water, it makes their (the bathers') evil stop; and if it flows, it carries away their evil. Having bathed, and put on garments that have never yet been washed, they hold on to the tail of an ox¹, and return (to their home),—for the ox is of Agni's nature: headed by Agni they thus return from the world of the Fathers to the world of the living. And Agni, indeed, is he who leads one over the paths (one has to travel), and it is he who leads these over.

¹ That is to say, one of them takes hold of the tail, whilst the others follow in single file, each holding on to the one walking in front of him. Prof. Weber, *Ind. Stud.* IX, p. 21, note, refers to the somewhat analogous practice of tying to the left arm of a dead man the tail of the *anustarāṇī*-cow slain at the funeral sacrifice, whereby the deceased is supposed to be led safely—across the river *Vaitarāṇī* (Styx); see Sây. on *Shadv. Br.*, as quoted *Ind. Stud.* I, p. 39; cf. also Colebrooke, *Misc. Essays*, second ed., p. 192—to the world of the Fathers. According to *Kâty. XXI, 4, 24* the ceremony of taking hold of the tail is performed with the verse, *Vâg. S. XXXV, 13*, 'For our well-being we hold on to the ox, sprung from *Surabhi*: even as *Indra* to the gods, so be thou a saving leader unto us!'

7. They proceed (towards the village) muttering this verse (Vâg. S. XXXV, 14), 'From out of the gloom have we risen'¹ . . . '—from the gloom, the world of the Fathers, they now indeed approach the light, the sun. When they have arrived, ointments for the eyes and the feet are given them: such, indeed, are human means of embellishment, and therewith they keep off death from themselves.

8. Then, in the house, having made up the (domestic) fire, and laid enclosing-sticks of Varana wood round it, he offers, by means of a sruva-spoon of Varana wood, an oblation to Agni Âyushmat², for Agni Âyushmat rules over vital power: it is of him he asks vital power for these (the Sacrificer's family). [Vâg. S. XXXV, 16,] 'Thou, Agni, causest vital powers to flow: (send us food and drink, and keep calamity far from us),' serves as invitatory formula.

9. He then offers, with (Vâg. S. XXXV, 17), 'Long-lived be thou, O Agni, growing by offering, ghee-mouthed, ghee-born: drinking the sweet, pleasant cow's ghee, guard thou these, as a father does his son, hail!' he thus says this so that he (Agni) may guard and protect these (men).

10. The sacrificial fee for this (ceremony) consists of an old ox, old barley, an old arm-chair with head-cushion—this at least is the prescribed Dakshinâ, but he may give more according to his inclination. Such, indeed, (is the performance) in the case of one who had built a fire-altar.

¹ See XII, 9, 2, 8.

² I. e. imbued with vital power, long-lived.

11. And in the case of one who has not built a fire-altar, there is the same mode of selecting the site (for the sepulchral mound) and the same performance save that of the fire-altar. 'Let him use pebbles (instead of bricks¹) in the case of one who keeps up a sacrificial fire,' say some, 'they are just what those pebbles used at the Agnyâdheya are².' 'Let him not use them,' say others; 'surely they would be liable to weigh heavily upon one who has not built a fire-altar.' Let him do as he pleases.

12. Having fetched a clod from the boundary, he³ deposits it (midway) between (the grave and the village), with (Vâg. S. XXXV, 15), 'This I put up as a bulwark for the living, lest another of them should go unto that thing: may they live for a hundred plentiful harvests, and shut out death from themselves by a mountain!'—he thus makes this a boundary between the Fathers and the living, so as not to commingle; and therefore, indeed, the living and the Fathers are not seen together here.

¹ See XIII, 8, 3, 6.

² See II, 1, 1, 8 seqq.

³ Viz. the Adhvaryu, according to Mahîdhara on Vâg. S. XXXV, 15. According to Kâty. XXI, 4, 25, this ceremony takes place whilst they are on their way back from the grave to the village; as indeed appears from the order in which the formula used appears in the Vâg. Samhitâ. It is difficult to see why the author should not have given it in its right place, unless it was done with a view to a good conclusion to the Kânda, or because he really wished it to be done after the performance of the offering. It is scarcely necessary to assume that this Kandîkâ is a later addition, perhaps based on the Kânva recension.

FOURTEENTH KÂNDĀ.

THE PRAVARGYA.

FIRST ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMANA.

1. The gods Agni, Indra, Soma, Makha, Vishnu, and the Visve Devâh, except the two Asvins, performed a sacrificial session¹.

2. Their place of divine worship was Kurukshetra. Therefore people say that Kurukshetra is the gods' place of divine worship: hence wherever in Kurukshetra one settles there one thinks, 'This is a place for divine worship;' for it was the gods' place of divine worship.

3. They entered upon the session² thinking, 'May we attain excellence! may we become glorious! may we become eaters of food!' And in like manner do these (men) now enter upon the sacrificial session thinking, 'May we attain excellence! may we become glorious! may we become eaters of food!'

4. They spake, 'Whoever of us, through austerity, fervour, faith, sacrifice, and oblations, shall first compass the end of the sacrifice, he shall be the most excellent of us, and shall then be in common to us all.' 'So be it,' they said.

5. Vishnu first attained it, and he became the

¹ For this legend, see J. Muir, *Orig. Sansk. Texts*, vol. iv, p. 124.

² Lit., they were sitting (for the session): 'âs' (like 'sad') is here used in its technical sense, and not in its ordinary sense 'to sit, to be';—'They were [there. They said].' J. M.

most excellent of the gods; whence people say, 'Vishṇu is the most excellent of the gods.'

6. Now he who is this Vishṇu is the sacrifice; and he who is this sacrifice is yonder Âditya (the sun). But, indeed, Vishṇu was unable to control that (love of) glory of his; and so even now not every one can control that (love of) glory of his.

7. Taking his bow, together with three arrows, he stepped forth. He stood, resting his head on the end of the bow. Not daring to attack him, the gods sat themselves down all around him.

8. Then the ants said—these ants (vamśi), doubtless, were that (kind called) 'upadikā'¹—'What would ye give to him who should gnaw the bowstring?'—'We would give him the (constant) enjoyment of food, and he would find water even in the desert: so we would give him every enjoyment of food.'—'So be it,' they said.

9. Having gone nigh unto him, they gnawed his bowstring. When it was cut, the ends of the bow, springing asunder, cut off Vishṇu's head.

10. It fell with (the sound) 'ghṛñ'; and on falling it became yonder sun. And the rest (of the body) lay stretched out (with the top part) towards the east. And inasmuch as it fell with (the sound) 'ghṛñ,' therefrom the Gharma² (was called); and inasmuch as he was stretched out (pra-vṛig), therefrom the Pravargya (took its name).

11. The gods spake, 'Verily, our great hero

¹ That is, a certain species of ants that are supposed to find water wherever they dig. Cf. Weber, Ind. Stud. XIII, p. 139.

² That is, the draught of hot milk boiled in the Mahāvira pot, and hence often used as a synonym for the latter or the Pravargya.

(mahân vīraḥ) has fallen :’ therefrom the Mahāvīra pot (was named). And the vital sap which flowed from him they wiped up (sam-mṛiḡ) with their hands, whence the Samrāḡ¹.

12. The gods rushed forward to him, even as those eager to secure some gain (will do)². Indra reached him first. He applied himself to him limb after limb, and encompassed him³, and, in encompassing him, he became (possessed of) that glory of his. And, verily, he who knows this becomes (possessed of) that glory which Indra is (possessed of).

13. And Makha (sacrifice), indeed, is the same as Vishṇu : hence Indra became Makhavat (possessed of makha), since Makhavat is he who is mystically called Maghavat⁴, for the gods love the mystic.

14. They gave to those ants the enjoyment of food ; but, indeed, all food is water, for it is by moistening (the food) therewith that one eats here whatever one does eat.

15. This Vishṇu, the (Soma-) sacrifice, they then divided amongst themselves into three parts : the Vasus (received) the morning-pressing, the Rudras the midday-pressing, and the Ādityas the third pressing.

16. Agni (received) the morning-pressing, Indra

¹ That is, emperor, or lord paramount, as the Pravargya is named, in the same way as the Soma-plant (and juice) is styled King.

² Cf. IV, 1, 3, 5. The construction is hardly so irregular as it is represented there.

³ That is, he enclosed him (in his own self), he took him in (gobbled him up).

⁴ I. e. ‘the mighty (lord),’ an epithet of Indra.

the midday-pressing, and the Visve Devâ/ the third pressing.

17. The Gâyatri (received) the morning-pressing, the Trishubh the midday-pressing, and the Gâgati the third pressing. The gods went on worshipping and toiling with that headless sacrifice.

18. Now Dadhyañk Âtharvava knew this pure essence¹, this Sacrifice, — how this head of the Sacrifice is put on again, how this Sacrifice becomes complete.

19. He then was spoken to by Indra saying, 'If thou teachest this (sacrificial mystery) to any one else, I shall cut off thy head.'

20. Now this was heard by the Âsvins, — 'Verily, Dadhyañk Âtharvava knows this pure essence, this Sacrifice, — how this head of the Sacrifice is put on again, how this Sacrifice becomes complete.'

21. They went up to him and said, 'We two will become thy pupils.' — 'What are ye wishing to learn?' he asked. — 'This pure essence, this Sacrifice, — how this head of the Sacrifice is put on again, how this Sacrifice becomes complete,' they replied.

22. He said, 'I was spoken to by Indra saying, 'If thou teachest this to any one else, I shall cut off thy head;' therefore I am afraid lest he should indeed cut off my head: I cannot take you as my pupils.'

23. They said, 'We two shall protect thee from him.' — 'How will ye protect me?' he replied. — They said, 'When thou wilt have received us as thy

¹ Viz. the Madhu ('honey') or sweet doctrine of the Pravargya, or pot of boiled milk and ghee.

pupils, we shall cut off thy head and put it aside elsewhere; then we shall fetch the head of a horse, and put it on thee: therewith thou wilt teach us; and when thou wilt have taught us, then Indra will cut off that head of thine; and we shall fetch thine own head, and put it on thee again.'—'So be it,' he replied.

24. He then received them (as his pupils); and when he had received them, they cut off his head, and put it aside elsewhere; and having fetched the head of a horse, they put it on him: therewith he taught them; and when he had taught them, Indra cut off that head of his; and having fetched his own head, they put it on him again.

25. Therefore it is concerning this that the *Rishi* has said (*R'ig-v.* I, 116, 12), 'That Dadhyañk Ātharvāna, with a horse's head, anywise spake forth unto you two the sweet doctrine:—'Unrestrainedly he spoke this,' is what is thereby meant.

26. One must not teach this to any and every one, since that would be sinful, and lest Indra should cut off his head; but one may only teach it to one who is known to him, and who has studied sacred writ, and who may be dear to him, but not to any and every one.

27. He may teach it to one dwelling with him (as a pupil) for a year: for the year is he that shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that (sun): it is him he thereby gratifies, and therefore he may teach it to one dwelling with him for a year.

28. For three nights he keeps the rule (of abstinence); for there are three seasons in the year, and the year is he that shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that one: it is him he thereby

gratifies, and therefore he keeps the rule for three nights.

29. Hot¹ (water) he sips, thinking, 'I will teach it as one practising austerities.' He teaches it whilst abstaining from flesh-food, thinking, 'I will teach it as one practising austerities;'

30. And whilst not drinking out of earthen (vessels); for whatever untruth (man) speaks on this (earth) is, as it were, immixed with her: therefore (one should do so) whilst not drinking out of earthen (vessels);

31. And whilst not coming into contact with Sûdras and remains of food; for this Gharma is he that shines yonder, and he is excellence, truth, and light; but woman, the Sûdra, the dog, and the black bird (the crow), are untruth: he should not look at these, lest he should mingle excellence and sin, light and darkness, truth and untruth.

32. And, verily, he that shines yonder is glory; and as to that glory, Âditya (the sun), that glory is just the sacrifice: and as to that glory, the sacrifice, that glory is just the Sacrificer; and as to that glory, the Sacrificer, that glory is just the officiating priests; and as to that glory, the officiating priests, that glory is just the sacrificial gifts: hence, if they bring up to him a dakshinâ he must not, at least on the same day, make over these (objects) to any one else lest he should make over to some one else that glory which has come to him; but rather on the morrow, or the day after: he thus gives it away after having made that glory his own, whatever it be—gold, a cow, a garment, or a horse.

¹ During the performance of the Pravargya ceremony boiling water has to be used whenever water is required.

33. And, verily, he who either teaches or partakes of this (Pravargya), enters that life, and that light. The observance of the rule thereof (is as follows). Let him not cover himself (with a garment) whilst the sun shines, lest he should be concealed from that (sun). Let him not spit whilst the sun shines, lest he should spit upon him. Let him not discharge urine whilst the sun shines, lest he discharge it upon him. For so long as he shines, so great he (the sun) is: thinking, 'Lest I should injure him by these (acts),' let him take food at night, after striking a light, whereby it is made to be a form of him who shines yonder. But on this point Âsuri used to say,—One rule the gods indeed keep, to wit, the truth: let him therefore speak nothing but the truth.

SECOND BRÂHMANA.

THE MAKING OF THE POT.

1. He equips (the Mahāvira) with its equipments:—inasmuch as he equips it therewith from this and that quarter, that is the equipping nature of the equipments¹ (sambhâra): wheresoever anything of the sacrifice is inherent, therewith he equips it².

2. He gets ready a black antelope-skin,—for the black antelope-skin is the sacrifice³: it is at the

¹ See part i, p. 276, note 1. Here, as formerly, it has not been thought desirable to adhere throughout to the technical rendering of 'sam-bhri.'

² Pravargya being masculine, the original would, of course, have 'him' here and throughout, the ceremony (just like the sacrifice in general) being indeed looked upon as a person.

³ See part i, p. 23, note 2. In making the Gharma, or Mahāvira,

sacrifice he thus prepares (the pot);—with its hairy side (upwards),—for the hairs are the metres : on the metres he thus prepares it ;— (spread out) on the left (north) side¹,—for the north is the quarter of men ;—on (the skin) with its neck-part to the east², for that (tends) towards the gods.

3. With a spade (he digs out the clay), for the spade is a thunderbolt, and the thunderbolt is vigour : with vigour he thus supplies and completes it (the Pravargya).

4. It is made of Udumbara (*Ficus glomerata*) wood, for the Udumbara is strength³ : with strength, with vital sap, he thus supplies and completes it.

5. Or of Vikaṅkata (*Flacourtia sapida*) wood ; for when Praṣāpati performed his first offering, a Vikaṅkata tree sprang forth from that place where, after offering, he cleansed (his hands) ; now an offering is a sacrifice, and (consequently) the Vikaṅkata is

pot, on the present occasion, the order of proceeding is to a considerable extent the same as that followed at the Agnikayana, in providing the materials for, and making, the fire-pan, for which, see VI. 3. 3. 1 seqq. Cf. also the Āpastamba Śrautas. XV, with Garbe's Translation and Notes, Journal of Germ. Or. Soc., vol. xxxiv.

¹ That is, immediately north of the lump of clay (previously prepared by a potter) and the other objects to be used for making the Mahāvira pot, which have been previously deposited near the antaḥpātya peg marking the middle of the west or hinder side of the Mahāvedi.

² The locative, instead of the accusative, is rather strange here. As it stands, the locative is evidently parallel to 'yagñe' and 'khandasū,' and one has therefore to supply—he collects (prepares) the Pravargya, viz. by putting the lump of clay and the other objects thereon.

³ See VI, 6, 3, 2 seqq.

the sacrifice : with the sacrifice he thus supplies and completes it.

6. It is a cubit long, for a cubit means the (fore-) arm, and with the arm strength is exerted : it (the spade) thus is composed of strength, and with strength he thus supplies and completes it.

7. He takes it up, with (Vâg. S. XXXVII, 1), 'At the impulse of the god Savitri, I take thee by the arms of the Asvins, by the hands of Pûshan : thou art a woman ;'—the import (of this formula) is the same as before¹.

8. Having placed it in his left hand, he touches it with the right, and mutters (Vâg. S. XXXVII, 2), 'They harness the mind, and they harness the thoughts, the priests of the priest, of the great inspirer of devotion ; the knower of the rites alone hath assigned the priestly offices : great is the praise of the god Savitri ;'—the import of this is the same as before².

9. He then takes the lump of clay with the (right) hand and spade on the right (south) side, and with the (left) hand alone on the left (north) side³, with (Vâg. S. XXXVII, 3), 'O divine Heaven and Earth,'—for when the sacrifice had its head cut off, its sap flowed away, and entered the sky and the earth : what clay (firm matter) there was that is this (earth), and what water there was that is yonder (sky) ; hence it is of clay and water that the Mahâvira (vessels) are made : he thus supplies and

¹ See I, 1, 2, 17 ; VI, 3, 1, 38 seq.

² See III, 5, 3, 11-12.

³ Between the two actions referred to in paragraphs 8 and 9, the digging up of the clay takes place, and hence the spade, or trowel, has changed hands. Cf. VI, 4, 2, 2.

completes it (the Pravargya) with that sap: wherefore he says, 'O divine Heaven and Earth,'— 'May I this day compass for you Makha's head,'—Makha being the sacrifice, he thus says, 'May I this day accomplish for you¹ the head of the sacrifice: '—'on the Earth's place of divine worship,'—for on a place of divine worship of the earth he prepares it:—'for Makha thee! for Makha's head thee!'—Makha being the sacrifice, he thus says, 'For the sacrifice (I consecrate) thee, for the head of the sacrifice (I consecrate) thee.'

10. Then an ant-hill² (he takes, and puts on the skin), with (Vāg. S. XXXVII, 4), 'Ye divine ants,'—for it was they that produced this: just in accordance with the way in which the head of the sacrifice was there cut off, he now supplies and completes it with those (ants): 'the first-born of the world,'—the firstborn of the world, doubtless, is this earth: it thus is therewith that

¹ The pronouns in this and the subsequent corresponding formulas (vām, yāh, te) are taken by Mahādharma as accusatives ('te' according to him standing for 'tvim') to which he supplies 'ādīya'—having taken you, may I this day compass Makha's head.' The pronouns are certainly somewhat awkward, as they can scarcely be taken as genitives of material—of you, of thee.

² See VI, 3, 3, 5, where 'valmikavapā' is qualified by 'sushirā,' hollow. The comm. on Kāty. XXVI, 1, 2 explains 'valmikavapā' as the vapā (omentum)-like inner lump (? surrounded by a kind of net) of an ant-hill: in the present case, this substance is likewise placed on the black antelope-skin to be mixed with the clay.

³ Whilst in the text of the formula this word must be taken as being plural 'prathamagāh,' the Brāhmaṇa (making use of the Sandhi-form) treats it as if it were singular 'prathamagā.' Mahādharma also, apparently influenced by the Brāhmaṇa, explains, 'the earth is the firstborn of creatures, and, from their connection with it, ants also are called firstborn.'

he supplies and completes it;—‘may I this day compass for you Makha’s head on the Earth’s place of divine worship:—for Makha thee! for Makha’s head thee!’—the import of this is the same as before.

11. Then (earth) torn up by a boar (he takes), with (Vâg. S. XXXVII, 5), ‘Only thus large was she in the beginning,’—for, indeed, only so large was this earth in the beginning, of the size of a span. A boar, called Emûsha, raised her up, and he was her lord Pragâpati: with that mate, his heart’s delight, he thus supplies and completes him¹;—‘may I this day compass for you Makha’s head on the Earth’s place of divine worship: for Makha thee! for Makha’s head thee!’ the import of this is the same as before.

12. Then Âdâra² (-plants), with (Vâg. S. XXXVII, 6), ‘Indra’s might ye are,’—for when Indra encompassed him (Vishnu) with might, then the vital sap of him, thus encompassed, flowed away; and he lay there stinking, as it were. He said, ‘Verily, after bursting open (â-dar), as it were, this vital sap has sung praises:’ thence Âdâra (-plants originated); and because he lay there stinking (pûy), as it were, therefore (they are also called) Pûtika; and hence, when placed on the fire

¹ That is, he supplies Pragâpati (and hence also his counterpart, the Sacrificer) with the Earth, his mate. See J. Muir, *Orig. Sansk. Texts*, vol. i. p. 53; vol. iv, p. 27; and cp. *Taitt. I.* 10, 8, where the earth is said to have been uplifted by a black boar with a thousand arms.

² At IV. 5, 10. 4 we met with this plant—here also called Pûtika, and explained, by the comm. on Kâty., as=the flowers (!) of the Rohisha plant (? *Guilandina*, or *Caesalpinia*, *Bonducella*)—as a substitute for Soma-plants.

as an offering, they blaze; and hence also they are fragrant, for they originated from the vital sap of the sacrifice. And inasmuch as Indra, on that occasion, encompassed him with might, therefore he says, 'Indra's might ye are;'—'may I this day compass for you Makha's head on the Earth's place of divine worship: for Makha thee! for Makha's head thee!' the import of this is the same as before.

13. Then goat's milk:—for when the sacrifice had its head cut off, its heat went out of it, wherefrom the goat was produced: it is with that heat¹ that he thereby supplies and completes it:—with, 'For Makha thee! for Makha's head thee!' the import of this is the same as before.

14. These, then, are the five equipments with which he equips (the Pravargya).—fivefold is the sacrifice, and fivefold the victims, and five seasons are in the year, and the year is he that shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that (sun): it is him he thus gratifies. These (objects), thus brought together, he touches with, 'For Makha (I consecrate) thee! for Makha's head thee!' the import of this is the same as before.

15. Now there is an enclosed space² on the north

¹ Thus perhaps 'śuk' should also have been rendered at VI, 4, 4, 7, where it is used in connection with the ass.

² Viz. a space five cubits square enclosed with mats on all sides, and with a door on the east side, the ground being raised in the middle so as to form a mound covered with sand (cf. III, 1, 2, 2). The object of this enclosed space is to prevent any unauthorised person (such as the Sacrificer's wife, and people uninstructed in the scriptures) from seeing the manufacturing of the Mahivîra (during which the door is kept closed), as well as the completed pot.

side: whilst proceeding towards that (shed) they mutter (Vâg. S. XXXVII, 7; *Rig-v.* I, 40, 3). 'May Brahmanaspati go forward!'—Brahmanaspati (the lord of devotion) doubtless is he that shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that one: it is him he thus gratifies; hence he says, 'May Brahmanaspati go forward;'—'may the goddess Gladness go forward!'—for the goddess Gladness she (Vâk¹) is;—'unto the hero², kindly to men and the dispenser of fivefold (offerings),'—he thereby praises and magnifies it (the Pravargya),—'unto the sacrifice may the gods lead us!'—he thereby makes all the gods its guardians.

16. It is an enclosed space;—for at that time the gods were afraid, thinking, 'We hope that the fiends, the Rakshas, will not injure here this our (Pravargya):' they accordingly enclosed for it this stronghold, and in like manner does this (Sacrificer) now enclose for it this stronghold.

17. He then deposits (the sambhâras³) on the mound with, 'For Makha thee! for Makha's head thee!' the import of this is, the same as before. He then takes a lump of clay and makes the Mahāvira (pot) with, 'For Makha thee! for Makha's head thee,'—the import of this is

The place is to the north of the antaḥpātya peg, the black antelope-skin being spread to the south of it (and immediately north of the materials used in making the pot).

¹ Thus Mahīdhara, on Vâg. S. XXXIII, 89.

² 'Vira,' apparently an allusion to 'Mahā-vira' (great hero), the name of the pot used at the Pravargya.

³ Viz. as placed on the black antelope-skin which is carried northwards to the enclosed place by the Adhvaryu and his assistants taking hold of it on all sides.

the same as before;—a span high¹, for the head is, as it were, a span high;—contracted in the middle², for the head is, as it were, contracted in the middle. At the top he then draws it out (so as to form) a spout³ of three thumbs' breadths (high): he thereby makes a nose to this (Mahāvira, or Pravargya). When it is complete, he touches it with (Vâg. S. XXXVII, 8), 'Makha's head thou art,'—for it indeed is the head of Makha Saumya (the Soma-sacrifice). In the same way (he makes) the other two (Mahāvira pots⁴); silently two milking-bowls (pinvana⁵), and silently two Rauhīna-plates⁶.

18. Verily this sacrifice is Pragâpati, and Pragâpati

¹ That is, from bottom to top, a belt (mekhalā) running round it at the distance of three thumbs' breadths from the top (Mahidhara, and comm. on Kāty.). This top part above the belt—here simply called 'mouth,' whilst in the Āpast. Sr. XV, 2, 14 it is called 'back' (śīrṣa)—ends in a hole for pouring the liquid in and out.

² This is, for taking hold of it (mekhalā-grahayogyam, comm. on Kāty.).

³ Mekha, for which Kāty. XXVI, 1, 16 has 'āśāṇa' explained by the commentator as a hole (guta), comm. on Āsv. Gṛhyas. IV, 3, 14a, apparently serving as the mouth, or open part of the vessel which seems to be otherwise closed. The edge of the hole would seem to project sufficiently from the surface to suggest a similarity to the nose. In making the vessel, it seems first to be left solid, the open part which is to hold the milk being then hollowed out by means of a reed from the top hole to the depth of less than the upper half, the remainder remaining solid. Cf. Āsv. Sr. XV, 3, 4.

⁴ Only the first of the three pots is, however, actually used; unless it gets broken by accident.

⁵ According to the comm. on Kāty. Sr., these vessels are of the form of the (hand-shaped) bowl of an offering-ladle (sruḥ, cf. part i, p. 67, note 2).

⁶ The Rauhīna-kapālas are two round, flat dishes for baking the Rauhīna cakes on.

is both of this, defined and undefined, limited and unlimited¹. Whatever one does with a Yagus formula, by that one makes up that form of him (Pragâpati) which is defined and limited; and whatever one does silently, by that one makes up that form of him which is undefined and unlimited: verily, then, whosoever, knowing this, does it on this wise, makes up that whole and complete Pragâpati. But he also leaves over a lump of spare (clay) for expiations.

19. He then smooths² it by means of Gavedhukâ grass (*Coix barbata*),—for when the sacrifice had its head cut off, its vital sap flowed away, and therefrom those plants grew up: with that vital sap he thus supplies and completes it;—with, 'For Makha thee! for Makha's head thee!' the import of this is the same as before. In the same way the other two (Mahāvira pots): silently the two milking-bowls, silently the two Rauhiṣa-plates.

20. He then fumigates these (vessels) with (Vâg. S. XXXVII, 9), 'With dung of the stallion, the impregnator, I fumigate thee,'—for the

¹ Cf. J. Muir, Orig. Sansk. Texts, vol. v, p. 393, where a passage is quoted from Prof. Cowell's translation of the Maitri-Upanishad (VI, 3), 'There are two forms of Brahma, the embodied (mūrta) and the unembodied (amūrta): the former is unreal (asatya), the latter real (satya).—Cf. Sat. Br. VI, 5, 3, 7.

² The Sûtras use the verbs 'ślakṣhayati, ślakṣhṇīkurvanti' (to make smooth, or soft), and this, I think, must indeed be the meaning of 'hinv.' It would also suit very well the passage III, 5, 1, 35, where it is said that the Veda is a woman, and that, by sprinkling the former with water, one 'makes her smooth' for the gods. The polishing of the vessels is done by rubbing them with Gavedhukâ grass, whether with the spike, stem, or leaves is not specified.

stallion is an impregnator, and the impregnator means vigour: with vigour he thus supplies and completes it,—‘on the Earth’s place of divine worship: for Makha thee, for Makha’s head thee!’ the import of this is the same as before. In the same way (he fumigates) the other two (Mahāvira pots): silently the two milking-bowls, and silently the two Rauhiza-plates.

21. He then bakes them, for what is baked belongs to the gods. He bakes them by means of bricks, for they it was that did so on that occasion¹: just in accordance with the way in which the head of the sacrifice was there cut off, he now supplies and completes it with those (bricks). But, indeed, let him bake them with anything² whereby they may become properly baked. Having laid down the fuel for baking³, he puts down the Mahāvira (pot), with, ‘For Makha thee, for Makha’s head thee!’ the import of this is the same as before. In the same way the other two Mahāvira (pots): silently the two milking-bowls, silently the two Rauhiza-plates. By day he should bury them (in the hole), and by day he should take them out, for the day belongs to the gods.

¹ That is, when the Ukhā was baked, cf. VI, 5, 4, 1; or, perhaps,—they it was that (the gods) made at this juncture. The former translation is more in accordance with what follows, though one would expect ‘etad’ to mean ‘at this time.’

² That is, without using bricks (?).

³ Viz. in a square hole dug for the purpose east of the Gārhapatya; the pot being then placed bottom upwards on the burning material, dry herbs, wood, &c. According to Āsv. Sr. XV, 3, 20 such materials are to be used as, whilst being burnt, dye red.

22. He takes out (the first pot) with (Vāg. S. XXXVII, 10), 'For the righteous one (I take) thee,'—the righteous one, doubtless, is yonder world, for the righteous one means truth; and he that shines yonder is the truth, and the first Pravargya is that (god): it is him he thus gratifies, and therefore he says, 'For the righteous one (I take) thee.'

23. With, 'For the efficient one thee' (he takes out the second pot),—the efficient one (sādhu), doubtless, is he (Vāyu, the wind) that purifies here by blowing, for as a permanent one (siddha) he blows through these worlds; and the second Pravargya is that (god): it is him he thus gratifies, and therefore he says, 'For the efficient one (I take) thee.'

24. With, 'For a good abode thee!' (he takes out the third pot),—the good abode, doubtless, is this (terrestrial) world, for it is in this world that all creatures abide; and the good abode also is Agni (fire), for Agni abides with all creatures¹ in this world; and the third Pravargya is that (god): it is him he thus gratifies, and therefore he says, 'For a good abode thee.' Silently (he takes out) the two milking-bowls, and silently the two Rauhiṇa plates.

25. He then pours goat's milk upon them² (the

¹ The accusative with 'kshi' (to inhabit) is rather peculiar here.

² As the pots are, however, standing with their open parts upwards, on sand north of the hole in which they were baked, it would chiefly be inside that they would receive the milk, being thereby cooled (cf. VI, 5, 4, 15). According to Āpastamba, sand is in the first place heaped up around them in the sunwise fashion, i.e. keeping them on the right side whilst strewing it.

first) with, 'For Makha thee! for Makha's head thee!' the import of this is the same as before. In the same way the other two; silently the two milking-bowls, and silently the two Rauhiṇa-plates.

26. And, verily, whosoever either teaches, or partakes of, this (Pravargya) enters that life, and that light: the observance of the rule thereof is the same as at the creation¹.

THIRD BRÂHMANA.

1. Now at the time when he there² proceeds with the guest-meal, he who intends to perform the Pravargya, prior to the Upasads, spreads Kusa grass with its tops directed towards the east, in front of the Gārhapatyā, and places the vessels thereon in pairs³:- the Upayamāni (tray) and the Mahāvira (pot), the pair of lifting-sticks⁴, the

¹ That is to say, as would some even as, in creating the universe, Prajāpati constructs his body, or constructs himself a new body, so the Sacrificer, in keeping up the observance of the Pravargya, constructs himself a new body for the future life.

This is, at the Soma-sacrifice, of the preliminary day (upavāsath) of which the guest-meal, or hospitable reception (ātithya) of King Soma forms part (see part II. p. 85 seqq.). The assumption here is, that the performance of the Pravargya takes place on that day before the Pressing-day, whilst in reality it has been performed for at least two days before that.

² See III. 4, 4, 1. The Upasads are performed twice daily, for at least three days, up to the day before the Soma-sacrifice; and if the Pravargya is to be performed likewise, it precedes immediately each performance of the Upasad. Cf. also XIV, 3, 1, 1 with note.

³ Prior to this, the doors of the *vāla* are to be closed, to keep the Mahāvira from being seen; see p. 452, note 2. The entire performance of the Pravargya indeed has to be kept secret from the eyes of unauthorised persons.

⁴ The 'pariśāsau' (also called 'aphau,' XIV, 2, 1, 16) are two

two milking-bowls, the two Rauhiṇa-plates, the two offering spoons for the Rauhiṇa (cakes), and whatever other (implement) there is,—these make ten, for the Virāḡ consists of ten syllables, and the sacrifice is Virāḡ: he thus makes this to be equal to the Virāḡ, the sacrifice. And as to their being in pairs,—a pair means strength, for when two take hold of each other they exert strength; and a pair (couple) means a productive union: with a productive union he thus supplies and completes it.

2. Then the Adhvaryu takes the (lustral) sprinkling water, and, stepping up, says, 'Brahman, we shall proceed: Hotrī, sing praises!' for the Brahman is seated on the right (south) side as the guardian of the sacrifice: to him he thus says, 'Sit thou undistracted: we are about to restore the head of the Sacrifice;' and 'Hotrī, sing praises!' he says, because the Hotrī is the sacrifice: he thus thereby says to him, 'Restore the head of the sacrifice!' and accordingly the Hotrī begins to recite—

3. [Vāg. S. XIII. 3.] 'The Brahman, firstborn from afore¹,—the Brahman, doubtless, is yonder

pieces of wood or laths apparently fastened together by a kind of clasp (or a cord) at one end, so as to serve the purpose of a pair of tongs (*pariśāsu sandamsākīrau*, comm. on Kāty. XXVI, 2, 10) for taking up the Mahāvira pot, which must not be handled in any other way. According to Haug, Ait. Br., Transl., p. 51, they are placed underneath the pot in lifting it, but this seems very improbable, seeing that, at the end of the sacrifice, the Adhvaryu, by means of them, turns the pot upside down so as to pour the remainder of its contents into the offering spoon (see Kāty. XXIV, 6, 17 with comm.): nor could the blackened pot in that way be cleansed properly and placed on the supporting tray (XIV, 2, 1, 16–17).

¹ For the complete verse, see VII, 4, 1, 14. For the complete

sun, and he is born day by day from afore (in the east); and the Pravargya also is that (sun): it is him he thus gratifies, and therefore he says, 'The Brahman (n.), firstborn from afore.' He then sprinkles (the vessels): the import of this is the same as before¹.

4. He sprinkles (the chief Mahāvira) with (Āg. S. XXXVII, 11), 'For Yama thee!' Yama, doubtless, is he who shines yonder, for it is he who controls (yam) everything here, and by him everything here is controlled; and the Pravargya also is that (sun): it is him he thus gratifies, and therefore he says, 'For Yama (I sprinkle) thee.'

5. 'For Makha thee!'—Makha, doubtless, is he who shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that one: it is him he thus gratifies, and therefore he says, 'For Makha thee.'

6. 'For Sūrya's heat thee!'—Sūrya, doubtless, is he who shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that one: it is him he thus gratifies, and therefore he says, 'For Sūrya's heat thee.'

7. Having taken out a post² by the front door (of the sāla), he drives it into the ground on the south side (of the sāla), so that the Hotrī, whilst singing praises, may look upon it; for the Hotrī is the sacrifice, and he thereby restores the sacrifice to this (earth), and she causes the Gharma (milk) to rise.

series of texts recited by the Hotrī, see Ait. Br. I, 19 seqq.; Āsv. Sr. IV, 6.

¹ Viz. he makes the vessels sacrificially pure (I. 3, 3, 1).

² For tying the cow that is to furnish the milk for the Gharma. Near it a peg is driven into the ground to tie the goat to whose milk is to be used afterwards.

³ That would be, south of the southern door (Āpast. XV, 6, 13).

8. Having turned round the Emperor's throne-seat¹ in front of the Āhavanīya, he places it south thereof, and north of the King's (Soma's) throne-seat², so as to face the east.

9. It is made of Udumbara wood, for the Udumbara means strength: with strength, with vital sap, he thus supplies and completes it (the Pravargya).

10. It is shoulder-high, for on the shoulders this head is set: he thus sets the head upon the shoulders.

11. It is wound all over with cords³ of Balvaga grass (*Eleusine indica*). When the sacrifice had its head cut off, its vital sap flowed out, and thence these plants grew up: with that life-sap he thus supplies and completes it.

12 And as to why he places it north (of Soma's seat),—Soma is the sacrifice, and the Pravargya is its head; but the head is higher (*uttara*): therefore he places it north (*uttara*) of it. Moreover, Soma is king, and the Pravargya is emperor, and the imperial dignity is higher than the royal: therefore he places it north of it⁴.

¹ The Pravargya is styled 'samrāḡ' or universal king, emperor: as distinguished from King Soma, for whose seat, reaching only up to the navel, see III. 3. 4. 26 seqq. (Cf. also that of the Ukhyā Agni, which is only a span high, VI. 7. 1. 1. 12 seqq.)—For a similar attribution of imperial dignity (*sāmraḡya*)—as well as royal dignity (*rāḡya*)—to him who is consecrated by the Sautrāmaṇi (where the seat used is knee-high), see XII. 8. 3. 4 seqq.

² Āpast. XV, 6, 10 places it in front (east) of the seat for Soma.

³ Cf. XII, 8, 3. 6.

⁴ According to Kāty. XXVI, 2, 17 (Āpast. XV, 6, 11), the black antelope-skin is then spread over the seat, and the two unused Mahāvīra pots (as well as the reserve piece of clay and the spade, Kāty.) placed thereon.

13. And when the Hotri recites this (verse, *Rig-v.* V, 43, 7), 'Whom the priests anoint, as if spreading him . . .,' he anoints that Mahāvira which is to be used, all over with ghee¹, with, 'May the god Savitri anoint thee with honey!' for Savitri is the impeller of the gods, and honey means everything whatever there is here: he thus anoints it (or him) all over with everything here, and Savitri, as the impeller, impels it for him, this is why he says, 'May the god Savitri anoint thee with honey!'

14. Now sand has been strewed on the north side of it: below that he (previously) throws (a plate of) white gold, with, 'Protect it from contact with the earth!' For at that time the gods were afraid lest the Rakshas, the fiends, might injure that (Pravargya) of theirs from below, and that, to wit, gold, being Agni's seed, it (serves) for repelling the fiends, the Rakshas. But, indeed, the Earth also was afraid of this lest this (Pravargya), when heated and glowing², might injure

¹ Kīvy. XXVI, 2, 4 refers to the pot as 'containing ghee (āpva-vant),' which the comm. takes to mean 'filled with consecrated ghee:' whilst Āp.st. XV, 7, 5 leaves the option between greasing it (caṅg) and filling it (abhipūr) with ghee. It would doubtless, at all events, be abundantly greased inside.

² North of the Gārhapatya and the Āhavanīya in the sālā two mounds (khara) are formed, covered with (or consisting of) sand. The one north of the latter fire is here alluded to.

³ That is, a silver plate weighing a hundred grains.

⁴ Though 'taptah' and 'susukānah' are here translated as if they were actually co-ordinate predicates, I am not sure whether we should not rather take the passage to mean,—that this glowing one, when heated; or rather, this one when heated so as to be glowing. Cf. XIV, 2, 1, 18; 3, 1, 14, where I prefer to subordinate one of the participles to the other.

her: he thus keeps it separate from her. White it is, for white, as it were¹, is this earth.

15. And when the Hotri recites this (verse, *R̥g-v.* 1, 36, 9), 'Sit thee down: thou art great . . . ' sheaths of reed-grass are kindled on both sides², and throwing them (on the mound), he puts (the Mahāvra pot) thereon. When the sacrifice had its head cut off, its life-sap flowed away, and therefrom these plants grew up: with that life-sap he thus supplies and completes it.

16. And as to why they are kindled on both sides: he thereby repels the Rakshas, the fiends, from all the quarters. Whilst this (pot) is being heated, the (Sacrificer's) wife covers her head, thinking, 'Lest this one, when heated and glowing, should rob me of my eyesight,' for it indeed becomes heated and glowing.

17. He puts it on with, 'Flame thou art, glow thou art, heat thou art:—for the Gharma is he who shines yonder, and he indeed is all that: it is him he thus gratifies, and therefore he says, 'Flame thou art, glow thou art, heat thou art.'

18. He (the Sacrificer) then invokes blessings on this (earth)³, for the sacrifice is this (earth): it is thus (whilst being) on her that he invokes blessings, and she fulfils them all for him.

¹ I read, 'ragateva'; cf. the corresponding 'hariniva hi dyauh.' XIV, 1, 3, 29.

² That is, by dividing the sheaths in the middle lengthwise, and lighting both halves in the Gārhapatya fire.

³ According to Kāty. XXVI, 3, 5 he makes a span (of thumb and index)—or spreads his hand with the palm downwards—over the pot whilst muttering the respective formulas: apparently changing the position of the hand according to the point of the compass referred to in the formula.

19. [Vāg. S. XXXVII, 12.] 'Unmolested thou art in front (in the east),'—for unmolested by the Rakshas, the fiends, indeed, this (earth) is in front;—'in Agni's over-lordship,'—he thus makes Agni her over-lord for the warding off of the fiends, the Rakshas;—'grant thou life unto me!'—he thus secures life for himself, and accordingly he attains the full (term of) life.

20. 'Possessed of sons towards the south,'—in this there is nothing hidden, so to speak:—'in Indra's over-lordship,'—he thus makes Indra her over-lord for the warding off of the fiends, the Rakshas;—'grant thou offspring unto me!'—he thus secures offspring and cattle for himself, and accordingly he becomes possessed of sons and of cattle.

21. 'Well to live on behind (towards the western region),'—in this there is nothing hidden, so to speak:—'in god Savitrī's over-lordship;'—the god Savitrī he thus makes her over-lord for the warding off of the fiends, the Rakshas;—'grant thou eyesight unto me!'—he thus secures eyesight for himself, and accordingly he becomes possessed of eyesight.

22. 'A sphere of hearing towards the north,'—'causing (sacrificial calls) to be heard',¹ is what he thereby means to say;—'in the creator's over-lordship,'—the creator he thus

¹ Or, calling for the 'srausha'; cf. part i, p. 131, note 2. The masculine form of the participle is somewhat peculiar as the term it is meant to explain refers to the earth. It has probably to be understood in the sense of, 'where he (viz. the Adhvaryu) calls for the srausha.' Mahidhara explains the term 'āsruti' by 'where they, the priests, utter the sacrificial calls,' i. e. 'meet for sacrifice.'

makes her over-lord for the warding off of the fiends, the Rakshas;—‘grant thou prosperity (increase) of wealth unto me!’—wealth, prosperity, he thus secures for himself, and accordingly he becomes wealthy and prosperous.

23. ‘Disposition above,’—‘disposing’ above’ is what he thereby means to say;—‘in *Bṛihaspati*’s over-lordship,—*Bṛihaspati* he thus makes her over-lord for the warding off of the fiends, the Rakshas;—‘grant me vigour!’—vigour he thereby secures to himself, and accordingly he becomes vigorous, strong.

24. On the right (south) side (of the *Mahāvira*) he (the Sacrificer) then makes amends by (laying down) the hand with the palm upwards, with, ‘Shield me from all evil spirits!’ whereby he means to say, ‘Protect me from all troubles!’ When the sacrifice had its head cut off, its life-sap flowed away, and went to the Fathers, but the Fathers are three in number²: it is with these that he thus supplies and completes it (the *Pravargya*).

25. Thereupon, whilst touching her (the earth)³,

¹ Here the masculine gender can hardly be understood otherwise than in the sense ‘where (*Bṛihaspati*, or *Brahman*) disposes on high.’ *Mahidhara* takes no notice of this interpretation of the *Brāhmaṇa*, but explains ‘*vidhr̥ti*’ as either ‘one who upholds (*dhārayati*) in an especial manner,’ or where ‘the offering spoon, &c., is held upwards (*uparishād dhriyate*,—? who holds it upwards),’—an explanation which can hardly commend itself.

² This specification of the number seems to have no other object but that of limiting the general term of ‘Fathers,’ or deceased ancestors, to the specific signification it has at the *Śrāddha*, where offering is made to the father, grandfather, and great-grandfather.

³ According to *Kāty.* XXVI, 3, 8, he does so whilst spanning the earth north of the *Mahāvira* pot.

'Thou art Manu's mare,' for, having become a mare, she (the earth) indeed carried Manu, and he is her lord, Pragāpati: with that mate, his heart's delight, he thus supplies and completes him (Pragāpati, the Pravargya, and Sacrificer).

26. He then lays pieces of (split) Vikaṅkata wood round (the Mahāvira), two pointing to the east¹, with (Vāg. S. XXXVII, 13), 'Hail! be thou encompassed by the Maruts!'--the call of 'hail!' he places first, and the deity last²; for the call of 'hail!' is he who shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that (sun): it is him he thus gratifies; and hence he places the call of 'hail!' first, and the deity last.

27. 'Be thou encompassed by the Maruts,' he says; for the Maruts are the (common) people: he thus surrounds the nobility by the people, whence the nobility here is surrounded on both sides by the people. Silently (he lays down) two pointing to the north³, silently (again) two pointing to the east, silently two pointing to the north, silently two pointing to the east.

28. He makes them to amount to thirteen, for there are thirteen months in the year, and the

¹ That is, along the north and the south sides of the pot, on the burning sheaths of reed grass; or rather on hot cinders heaped thereon. Kāty. XXVI, 3, 9. They would partly serve the purpose of the ordinary (three) enclosing-sticks; and Âpast., indeed, calls them 'paridhi.'

² Literally, the call of 'hail!' (svāhā-kāra) he makes to be the nearer, and the deity the farther.

³ That is, along the west and the east sides of the pot. According to Âpast. Sr. XV, 8, 1-4, two pieces of wood are laid down alternately by the Adhvaryu and the Pratiprasthātṛi, the last pieces being then laid down (on the south side) by the former priest.

year is he who shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that (sun): it is him he thus gratifies, and hence he makes them to amount to thirteen.

29. He then places a gold plate (weighing a hundred grains) on the top (of the pot), with, 'Protect it from contact with the sky!' For at that time the gods were afraid lest the Rakshas, the fiends, might injure that (Pravargya) of theirs from above; and that—to wit, gold—being Agni's seed, it (serves) for repelling the fiends, the Rakshas. But, indeed, the Sky also was afraid of this lest this (Pravargya), when heated and glowing, might injure it: he thus keeps it separate therefrom. It is yellow, for yellow, as it were, is the sky.

30. He (the Adhvaryu) then fans (the fire) thrice by means of (three) fans¹, whilst muttering, 'Honey!' each time; for honey means breath: he thus lays breath into it. Three (fans) there are, for there are three breathings, the out (and in)-breathing, the up-breathing and the through-breathing: it is these he thus lays into it.

31. They then fan it thrice² in the non-sunwise way. When the sacrifice had its head cut off, its life-sap flowed away, and went to the Fathers,—the Fathers being three in number³: with them he thus supplies it.

32. But, indeed, the breathings depart from those who perform the fanning at the sacrifice. They

¹ They consist of pieces cut from the black antelope-skin (with black and white hair, according to Âpast, XV, 5, 12), fastened to sticks.

² That is, the Adhvaryu, Pratiprasthâtri, and Agnidh then take each one of the fans, and move round the fire whilst keeping it on their left side (the Agnidh going in front).

³ See p. 465, note 2.

fan again thrice in the sunwise way,—this makes six; and six in number are these breathings (vital airs) in the head: it is these he thus lays into it. They cook the two *Rauhiṇa* (cakes). When a blaze is produced, he takes off the gold (plate).

33. And when the *Hotṛi* recites this (verse *Rig-v.* I, 112, 24), 'Successful, O *Āsvins*, make ye our voice,' the *Adhvaryu* steps up, and says, 'The *Gharma* is aglow¹.' If it be aglow, he may know that the Sacrificer will become more prosperous; and if it be not aglow, he may know that he will become poorer; and if it be neither aglow nor the reverse, he may know that he (the Sacrificer) will become neither more prosperous nor poorer: but indeed (the pot) should be fanned so (long) as to be aglow.

34. And, verily, whosoever either teaches, or partakes of, this (*Pravargya*) enters that life, and that light: the observance thereof is the same as at the creation².

¹ That is, apparently, red-hot, glowing (*aukīta*), or perhaps, entirely ablaze, enveloped in flames—outside as well as inside, owing to the ghee with which it was greased all over; hence hardly, 'bestrahlt' (illuminated, shone upon), as the *St. Petersburg Dict.* takes it; cf. *śukāna*, XIV, 2, 1, 18; 3, 1, 14. According to *Āpast. Sr.*, the three priests, having completed their circumambulation, sit down on the east, south, and north side respectively, and continue to fan the pot, at the same time oiling it with ghee, until the pot is ablaze, when the *Adhvaryu* takes off the gold plate. According to *Kāty.*, on the other hand, the *Pratiprasthātrī* proceeds with the baking of the cakes, whilst the *Adhvaryu* sprinkles the pot with ghee each time that the *Hotṛi*, in his recitation, utters the syllable 'om' at the end of a verse. Before the last verse, the twenty-fifth, of the same hymn concluding the first part of the recitation, a special verse, IX, 83, 3, is inserted. *Āsv. Sr.* IV, 6, 2-3.

² See p. 458, note 1.

FOURTH BRĀHMAṆA.

1. Now, when the Adhvaryu here steps up and says, 'The Gharma is aglow,' they step up and revere it (the Mahāvira) with the Avakāsa¹; but the 'avakāsa' are the vital airs: it is thus the vital airs he lays into it. Six of them² step up to it, for six in number are these vital airs in the head: it is these he thus lays into it.

2. [Vāg. S. XXXVII, 14.] 'The child of the gods,'—the child (garbha) of the gods, in truth, is he that shines yonder, for he holds (grabh) everything here, and by him everything here is held: and the Pravargya also is that (sun): it is him he thus gratifies, and therefore he says, 'The child of the gods.'

3. 'The father of thoughts,'—for he (the sun) is indeed the father of thoughts:—'the lord of creatures,'—for he is indeed the lord of creatures.

4. 'The god hath united with the god Savitrī,'—for the god (the Mahāvira) has indeed united with the god Savitrī (the sun):—'with Sūrya he shineth,'—for (equally) with Sūrya (the sun) he has indeed shone.

5. [Vāg. S. XXXVII, 15.] 'Agni hath united with Agni,'—for Agni (fire) has indeed united with Agni:—'with the divine Savitrī,'—for with the divine Savitrī he has indeed united:—'with Sūrya

¹ Avakāsa (looks, or possibly, apertures) is the technical designation of the verses Vāg. S. XXXVII, 14-20 a.

² Viz. the Sacrificer and the priests with the exception of the Prastotṛī.

he hath shone,'—for with Sûrya he has indeed shone.

6. 'Hail! Agni hath united with his heat,'—for Agni has indeed united with his heat; the ca¹ of hail he places first, and the deity last: the significance of this is the same as before;—'with the divine Savitrî,'—for with the divine Savitrî he has indeed united:—'with Sûrya he hath shed light,'—for with Sûrya he has indeed shed light.

7. These, then, are three 'avakâsa,' for there are three vital airs, the in (and out)-breathing, the up-breathing, and the through-breathing: it is thereby that he lays it (the vital air) into him.

8. [Vâg. S. XXXVII, 10.] 'The sustainer of the sky, and of heat upon earth, shineth forth,'—for as the sustainer of the sky, and of heat on earth, that (sun, and Mahāvira) indeed shines forth;—'the divine sustainer of the gods, he, the immortal, born of heat,'—for he is indeed the divine sustainer of the gods, the immortal one, born of heat;—'grant unto us speech, devoted to the gods!'—speech doubtless is worship: he thus means to say thereby, 'bestow upon us worship whereby we shall please the gods!'

9. [Vâg. S. XXXVII, 17; *Rîg-v.* I, 164, 31; X, 177, 3.] 'I beheld the guardian, the never-resting¹,'—he who shines yonder is indeed the guardian, for he guards everything here; and he does not lie down to rest: therefore he says, 'I beheld the guardian, the never-resting;'

¹ Or, as Mahîdhara and Sâyana take it, the never-falling.

10. 'Wandering on paths hither and thither,'—for he indeed wanders hither and thither on the divine¹ paths;—'arraying himself in the gathering and the radiating,'—for he indeed arrays himself in the gathering (converging) and the radiating regions, or rays;—'he moveth to and fro within the spheres,'—for again and again he wanders moving within these worlds.

11. [Vāg. S. XXXVII, 18.] 'O lord of all worlds, O lord of all thought, O lord of all speech, O lord of every speech!' that is, 'O lord of all this (universe);'—'Thou art heard by the gods, O god Gharma, as a god, guard thou the gods!' in this there is nothing hidden, so to speak.

12. 'Give thy countenance hereafter to the divine feast of you two,'—it is with regard to the two Āsvins that he says this, for it was the Āsvins that then restored the head of the sacrifice: it is them he thus pleases, and therefore he says, 'Give thy countenance hereafter to the divine feast of you two.'

13. 'Honey to the two lovers of honey! honey to the two longing for honey!'—for Dadhyañk the Ātharvavaṇa indeed told them (the Āsvins) the Brāhmaṇa called Madhu (honey), and this is their dear resource: it is by means of that (dear resource) of theirs that he approaches them, and therefore he says, 'Honey to the two lovers of honey! honey to the two longing for honey!'

14. [Vāg. S. XXXVII, 19.] 'To the heart

¹ One might expect 'dāsvaiḥ pathibhiḥ' or 'devaiḥ pathibhiḥ,' which Mahīdhara explains by 'devamārgaiḥ.'

(I consecrate) thee, to the mind thee, to the sky thee, to the sun thee: going upwards take thou the sacrifice to the gods in heaven!' in this there is nothing hidden, so to speak.

15. [Vâg. S. XXXVII, 20.] 'Thou art our father: be thou our father!'—for he who shines yonder is indeed the father, and the Pravargya is that (sun): it is him he thus gratifies, and therefore he says, 'Thou art our father: be thou our father!'—'Reverence be unto thee: injure me not!'—it is a blessing he thereby invokes.

16. Thereupon he uncovers the head of the (Sacrificer's) wife, and makes her say whilst she is looking at the Mahâvra, 'Together with Tvashtri will we serve thee: (bestow thou sons and cattle upon me! bestow thou offspring upon us! may I remain unscathed together with my husband!)'—the Pravargya (m.) is a male, and the wife is a female: a productive pair is thus produced.

17. And, verily, whosoever either teaches, or partakes of, this (Pravargya) enters that life, and that light: the observance thereof is the same as at the creation¹.

SECOND ADHYÂYA. FIRST BRÂHMANA.

THE BOILING OF THE GHARMA, AND THE OFFERINGS.

1. He now offers (the first of) the two Rauhiṇa (cakes)²:—(Vâg. S. XXXVII, 21), 'May the day

¹ See p. 458, note 1.

² According to the Sûtras and the Taitt. Âr., the southern cake

bè pleased with its brightness, the well-lighted with its light, hail!' with this text both (cakes are offered) in the morning;—'May the night be pleased with its brightness, the well-lighted with its light, hail!' with this text both (cakes are offered) in the evening.

2. And as to why he offers two *Rauhizā* (cakes).—the two *Rauhizās* doubtless are *Agni* and *Āditya* (the sun), for by means of these two deities sacrificers ascend (*ruh*) to heaven.

3. And, indeed, the *Rauhizās* are also day and night, and the *Pravargya* is the sun: he thus encompasses yonder sun by the day and the night, whence he is encompassed by the day and the night.

4. And, indeed, the *Rauhizās* are also these two

is offered at this juncture of the performance, whilst the northern one is offered later on (see XIV, 2, 2, 41). For both cakes one and the same text is used, viz. the first of the two here mentioned at the morning performance, whilst the second is used at the afternoon performance. The cakes, being one-*kaṣāla* ones (the two '*rauhizahavani*' ladles serving as *kaṣālas*), must be offered entire. Cf. *Kāty.* XXVI, 4, 14; 6, 18; *Āpast.* XV, 10, 10; 11, 5; 12, 7; *Taitt. Ār.* IV, 10, 4. Though our *Brāhmaṇa* expresses itself in a rather peculiar way, its statement, here and at XIV, 2, 2, 41, is perhaps meant to imply the same mode of procedure. If this is the case, the two paragraphs would mean:—at this juncture of the two performances he offers the two southern (northern, at XIV, 2, 2, 41) cakes, — the two cakes (the southern and the northern one) of the morning performance requiring the first, and those of the afternoon performance the second, text. It is not impossible, however, that the author intends a different mode of procedure or wishes to leave it purposely vague. If we were to read '*rauhizām*' for '*rauhizau*,' the text would be more in accordance with the practice prescribed in the *Sūtras*. Cf. also *Mahādh.* (on *Vāg. S.* XXXVII, 21)—where read '*rauhizau*' instead of '*pravargyau*'—who adopts the procedure here explained.

worlds, and the Pravargya is the sun: he thus encompasses yonder sun by these two worlds, whence he is encompassed by these two worlds.

5. And, indeed, the Rauhizas are also the two eyes, and the Pravargya is the head: he thus places the eye in the head.

6. He now takes a rope, with (Vāg. S. XXXVIII, 1), 'At the impulse of the divine Savitrī, I take thee, with the arms of the Asvins, with the hands of Pūshan: Aditi's¹ zone thou art:—the mystic import of this is the same as before:

7. He then calls the cow, whilst stepping behind the Gārhapatya (Vāg. S. XXXVIII, 2), 'Idā, come hither! Aditi, come hither! Sarasvatī, come hither!' for the cow is Idā, and the cow is Aditi, and the cow is Sarasvatī. And he also calls her by her (real) name, with these (formulas), 'N. N.², come hither!' thus thrice.

8. When she comes, he lays (the rope) round her (horns), with (Vāg. S. XXXVIII, 3), 'Aditi's zone thou art, Indrāzī's head-band;' for Indrāzī is Indra's beloved wife, and she has a most variegated head-band: 'that thou art' he thereby means to say, and that he indeed thereby makes it to be.

9. He then lets the calf to it (to suck), with, 'Pūshan thou art,'—Pūshan, doubtless, is he that blows here (the wind), for that one supports⁴

¹ The edition omits 'adityai,' and reads 'devabhyaḥ' for 'devasya.'

² See I, 2, 4. 4; 3, 1, 15.

³ As, for instance, Dhavālī, or Gaṅgā.

⁴ Or nourishes, makes grow, inasmuch as it brings about rain (Mahidhara).

(push) all this (universe); and the Pravargya also is that (wind): it is him he thus pleases, and therefore he says, 'Pūshan thou art.'

10. He then leads it (the calf) away¹ with, 'Afford (milk) for the Gharma!' for the Gharma, doubtless, is that fluid which this (cow) lets flow: he thus means to say thereby, 'Allow her a share!'

11. He then causes it to flow into the milking-bowl, with (Vāg. S. XXXVIII, 4), 'Flow for the Asvins!'—with regard to the Asvins he thus says this, for it was the Asvins who restored the head of the sacrifice: it is them he thus pleases, and therefore he says, 'Flow for the Asvins!'

12. 'Flow for Sarasvatī!'—Sarasvatī, doubtless, is Speech, and with speech the Asvins then restored the head of the Sacrifice: it is those (Asvins) he thus pleases, and therefore he says, 'Flow for Sarasvatī!'

13. 'Flow for Indra!'—for Indra is the deity of the sacrifice, and it was indeed by him who is the deity of the sacrifice that the Asvins then restored the head of the sacrifice: it is them he thus pleases, and therefore he says, 'Flow for Indra!'

14. The (spilt) drops he then consecrates with, 'Hail, possessed of Indra! hail, possessed of Indra!' for Indra is the deity of the sacrifice: he thus pleases him who is the deity of the sacrifice, and therefore he says, 'Hail, possessed of Indra! hail, possessed of Indra!' Thrice he says it, for threefold is the sacrifice. The call of 'hail!' he places first, and the deity last: the significance of this is the same as before.

¹ Whilst the calf is sucking, he secures the cow by tying together her hind legs.

15. He then touches her udder¹, with (Vāg. S. XXXVIII, 5; *Rig-v.* I, 164, 49), 'This ever-flowing, grateful udder of thine,'—that is to say, 'This udder of thine placed in secret';—'treasure-giving, wealth-granting, bountiful,'—that is to say, 'which is a giver of treasures, a granter of wealth, and precious';—'whereby thou furthest all desirable things,'—that is to say, 'whereby thou supportest all the gods and all creatures';—'O Sarasvatī, move that hither for us to suck,'—Sarasvatī, doubtless, is Speech, and so is this (cow) which yields the Gharma milk; and Speech is worship: thus he means to say, 'Grant us worship whereby we may please the gods.' He then steps up to the site of the Gārhapatya with, 'I pass along the wide aerial realm,'—the mystic import of this is the same as before².

16. He then takes the two lifting-sticks³, with (Vāg. S. XXXVIII, 6), 'The Gāyatri metre thou art, the Trishubh metre thou art,'—he thus takes them with both the Gāyatri and the Trishubh metres;—'with heaven and earth I encompass thee,'—for the two lifting-sticks are indeed these two, heaven and earth; and the

¹ Or, one of the teats (stanam): according to Mahīdhara, the part is used for the whole; and the Kāṇva recension indeed reads 'stanān' (the teats): cf. Kāty. XXVI, 5, 7, comm.

² The author apparently derives 'sasaya' (?perennial, inexhaustible) from 'si,' to lie, sleep, as does Mahīdhara.

³ Viz. as at I, 1, 2, 4. — According to Kāty. XXVI, 5, 10 seq., the Hotri says, 'Arise, Brahmanaspati!' whereupon the Adhvaryu rises; and the Hotri again calling, 'Hasten up with the milk!' he steps up to the Gārhapatya.

⁴ See.p. 458, note 1.

Pravargya is the sun : he thus encompasses yonder sun within these two, heaven and earth. Thereupon (having lifted up the pot) he sweeps it clean with a branch of reed grass : the mystic import of this is the same as before.

17. He then puts it on the 'supporting' tray¹ with, 'By the air I support thee,'—for the 'supporting' tray is the air, since everything here is supported by the air ; and the 'supporting' tray also is the belly, for all food and drink here is supported (held) by the belly : therefore he says, 'By the air I support thee.'

18. He then pours in the goat's milk² ; for that (Mahāvira pot) when heated, becomes glowing : he thus soothes it, and when soothed he pours the cow's milk into it—

19. With, 'O Indra and ye Asvins!'—for Indra is the deity of the sacrifice, and he thus pleases him who is the deity of the sacrifice ; and 'Ye Asvins' he says, because the Asvins at that time restored the head of the sacrifice, and it is them he thus pleases : therefore he says, 'O Indra and ye Asvins!'

20. 'Of bees' honey'—this is indeed honey ;— 'drink ye the Gharma (hot draught),'—that is to say, 'drink ye the liquor ;'— 'ye true ones,'—those (deities) are indeed true (vasu), for it is

¹ The 'upayamani' is apparently a kind of bowl, or hollow tray of hard (udumbara) wood, somewhat larger than the (bowls of the) spoons or ladles used on this occasion, and, indeed, also itself used as such.

² Whilst the Adhvaryu was milking the cow into the earthen bowl (pinvana), his assistant, the Pratiprasthâtri, silently milked a goat tied to the peg.

they that maintain (vâsaya) all this (universe);—
‘worship ye, vâ!’ thus this comes to be for him
as if it were offered with the Vasha/-call.

21. ‘Hail to Sûrya’s ray, the rain-winner!’
—for one of the sun’s rays is called ‘rain-winner,’
whereby he supports all these creatures: it is that
one he thus pleases, and therefore he says, ‘Hail
to Sûrya’s ray, the rain-winner!’ The call of hail
he places first, and the deity last: the significance
of this is the same as before¹.

22. And, verily, whosoever either teaches, or
partakes of, this (Pravargya) enters that life, and
that light: the observance thereof is the same as
at the creation².

SECOND BRÂHMANA.

1. And when the Hotri/ recites this (verse), ‘Let
Brahmazaspati go forward, let the goddess
Sûnritâ go forward,’—the Adhvaryu, stepping
forward, makes offering (by muttering) the wind-
names. For at this time the gods were afraid
lest the Rakshas, the fiends, might injure that
(Pravargya) of theirs in the middle (of the sacrifice):
they offered it with the Svâhâ-call before (its being
taken to) the Âhavaniya, being thus offered they
offered it (again) in the fire; and in like manner
does this one now offer it with the Svâhâ-call before

¹ According to Taitt. Âr. IV, 8, 4; Âpast. XV, 10, 2, this formula
is addressed to the steam rising from the Mahāvira pot—it being
accordingly modified to ‘I offer thee to Sûrya’s ray, the rain-
winner.’

² XIV, 1, 3, 26.

³ See p. 458, note 1.

(its being taken to) the Āhavanīya, and being thus offered he offers it (again) in the fire.

2. [Vāg. S. XXXVIII, 7.] 'To the wind Ocean (I offer) thee, hail!'—the (aerial) ocean (samudra) indeed is he who blows here, for from out of that ocean all the gods and all the beings issue forth (samud-dru): it is to him (Vāyu, the wind) he thus offers it, and therefore he says, 'To the wind Ocean (I consecrat :) thee, hail!'

3. 'To the wind Flood—thee, hail!'—the flood (sarira) indeed is he who blows here, for from out of that flood all the gods and all the creatures come forth together (saha irate): it is to him he thus offers it, and therefore he says, 'To the wind Flood—thee, hail!'

4. 'To the wind Unassailable—thee, hail! To the wind Irresistible—thee, hail!'—unassailable and irresistible indeed is he who blows here: it is to him he thus offers it, and therefore he says, 'To the wind. Unassailable—thee, hail! To the wind Irresistible—thee, hail!'

5. 'To the wind Favourable—thee, hail! To the wind Ogress-ridder—thee, hail!'—favourable and an ogress-ridder indeed is he who blows here: it is to him he thus offers it, and therefore he says, 'To the wind Favourable—thee, hail! To the wind Ogress-ridder—thee, hail!'

6. [Vāg. S. XXXVIII, 8.] 'To Indra, accompanied by the Vasus and Rudras, (I offer) thee, hail!'—Indra indeed is he who blows here: it is to him he thus offers it, and therefore he says, 'To Indra—thee;' and when he says, 'accompanied by the Vasus and Rudras,' thereby he allows a share to the Vasus and Rudras along with Indra; and,

moreover, it is thereby made to be like the morning Soma-pressing, and the midday-pressing¹.

7: 'To Indra, accompanied by the Ādityas,—thee, hail!'—Indra indeed is he who blows here: it is to him he thus offers it, and therefore he says, 'To Indra—thee;' and when he says, 'accompanied by the Ādityas,' thereby he allows a share to the Ādityas along with Indra; and, moreover, it is made like the evening-pressing¹.

8. 'To Indra, the slayer of the evil-minded,—thee, hail!'—Indra indeed is he who blows here: it is to him he thus offers it, and therefore he says, 'To Indra—thee;' and as to his saying, 'to the slayer of the evil-minded,' the evil-minded one being an enemy, he thereby means to say, 'To Indra, the slayer of enemies,—thee!' This is his (Indra's) special share: even as there is a share for a chief², so is this his (share) apart from the (other) gods.

9. 'To Savitṛi, accompanied by the Rībhus, the Vibhus (lords), and the Vāgas (powers),—thee, hail!'—Savitṛi (the sun) indeed is he who blows here: it is to him he thus offers it, and therefore he says, 'To Savitṛi, accompanied by the Rībhus, the Vibhus, and the Vāgas,—thee!' He thus allows a share therein to all the gods along (with Savitṛi).

10. 'To Bṛihaspati, accompanied by the All-gods,—thee, hail!'—Bṛihaspati indeed is he who blows here: it is to him he thus offers

¹ See III, 4, 5. 1, where it is stated that the morning-pressing belongs to the Vasus, the midday-pressing to the Rudras, and the third pressing to the Ādityas.

² Or; for the best (or eldest brother). Cf. III, 9, 4, 9.

it, and therefore he says, 'To Brīhaspati—*thee*;' and when he says, 'accompanied by the All-gods,' he thereby allows a share therein to all the gods along (with Brīhaspati).

11. [Vāg. S. XXXVIII, 9.] 'To Yama, accompanied by the Aṅgiras and the Fathers,—*thee*, hail!'—Yama indeed is he who blows here: it is to him he thus offers it, and therefore he says, 'To Yama *thee*:' and as to his saying, 'accompanied by the Aṅgiras and the Fathers,'—when the sacrifice had its head cut off, its life-sap flowed away, and went to the Fathers,—the Fathers being three in number¹: thus it is to these he thereby allows a share along (with Yama).

12. These are twelve names,—twelve months are in a year, and the year is he that shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that (sun): thus it is him he thereby pleases, and therefore there are twelve (names).

13. He then pours (the spilt milk and ghee) from the tray into the Mahāvira (pot) with, 'Hail to the Gharma!'—the Gharma (hot draught) is he who shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that (sun): thus it is him he thereby pleases, and therefore he says, 'Hail to the Gharma!'—the call of 'hail!' he places first, and the deity last: the significance of this is the same as before².

14. When it has been poured in, he mutters, 'Hail, the Gharma to the Fathers!' When the sacrifice had its head cut off, its life-sap flowed

¹ See p. 465, note 2.

² See XIV, 1, 3, 26.

away, and went to the Fathers --the Fathers being three in number: it is these he thus pleases. The call of 'hail!' he places first, and the deity last: the significance of this is the same as before.

15. He recites no anuvâkyâ (invitatory) formula, for once for all the Fathers have passed away: therefore he recites no anuvâkyâ. Having stepped across¹, and called (on the Âgnîdhra) for the Sraushat², he (the Adhvaryu) says (to the Hotri). 'Pronounce the offering-formula (yâgyâ) of the Gharma;' and on the Vashaṭ-call being uttered he offers—

16. With (Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 10), 'All regions (hath he worshipped), seated in the south,' that is to say, 'every region (has he worshipped), seated on the south;'— 'all gods hath he worshipped here' that is, 'every god has he worshipped here;'— 'of the sweet Gharma, consecrated by Svâhâ (hail'), drink ye, O Asvins!' --with regard to the Asvins he says this: for the Asvins restored the head of the sacrifice: it is them he thus pleases. The call of 'hail!' he places first, and the deity last: the significance of this is the same as before.

17. And, having offered, he (thrice) shakes (the Mahâvîra) upwards, with (Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 11), 'In heaven place thou this sacrifice! this sacrifice place thou in heaven!'—for the Gharma (hot milk-draught), the sacrifice, is yonder sun, and he indeed is 'placed' in the heavens, is

¹ Viz. past the Âhavanîya, along its back (or western) side, to the south side of the fire.

² See part i, p. 132, note; III, 4, 4, 11 seqq.

established in the heavens: it is thus him he thereby pleases, and therefore he says, 'In heaven place thou this sacrifice! this sacrifice place thou in heaven!' On the repetition of the Vashat, he offers—

18. With, 'Hail to Agni, worthy of sacrifice!'—this is in lieu of the Svishṭakṛit (offering), for Agni is the maker of good offering;—'may blessing result from the sacrificial texts!' for by the sacrificial texts that (sun) is established (as the Mahāvira) in this world: thus it is them he thereby pleases. The call of 'hail!' he places first, and the deity last: the significance of this is the same as before.

19. The Brahman (priest) pronounces the anumantṛa (formula of consecration); for the Brahman is the best physician among the officiating priests: thus he heals this sacrifice by means of him who is the best physician among the priests.

20. [He does so, with Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 12.] 'O Asvins, drink ye the Gharma!'—with regard to the Asvins he says this, for the Asvins restored the head of the sacrifice: it is them he thus pleases.

21. 'The hearty' one with daily-favours,—

¹ The exact meaning of 'hārdvānam' is doubtful. Mahidhara analyses it by 'hārd' = 'hr̥d' + 'vāna,' blowing, going, hence 'heart-wafting, going to the heart = dear to the heart.' The St. Petersburg Diet. takes the word to be 'hārd-van,' in the sense of 'herzstärkend' (heart-sustaining, invigorating — ? literally, 'possessed of heartiness'). The Taitt. Âr. has 'hārdvānam' instead. The author of the Brāhmaṇa apparently considers the term as obscure, and uses this circumstance for his own symbolic purposes.

² Perhaps the author means to characterise also the epithet

this is indistinct, for Praṇāpati is indistinct (undefined), and the sacrifice is Praṇāpati: Praṇāpati, the sacrifice, he thus heals:—

22. 'To the web-weaver,'—the web-weaver, doubtless, is he that shines yonder, for he moves along these worlds as if along a web; and the Pravargya also is that (sun): thus it is him he thereby pleases, and therefore he says, 'To the web-weaver'—

23. 'To Heaven and Earth be reverence!' he thus propitiates heaven and earth, within which everything here is contained.

24. Thereupon the Sacrificer (mutters),—the Sacrificer being the sacrifice, he thus heals the sacrifice by means of the sacrifice:

25. [Vāg. S. XXXVIII. 13.] 'The Asvins drank the Gharma,' he says this with regard to the Asvins, for the Asvins restored the head of the sacrifice: it is them he thus pleases.

26. 'Heaven and Earth have approved of it!'—he says this with regard to heaven and earth, within which everything here is contained;—'may gifts accrue here!' whereby he means to say, 'may there be riches for us here.'

27. The rising (milk) he then consecrates by the anumantṛaṇa¹, 'For freshness swell thou!'

'ahar-diva' (lit. 'day-daily,' cf. Germ. tagtäglich; Aberdonian 'daily-day') as obscure. Mahīdhara takes it to mean 'relating to morning and evening,' as applying to the two performances of the Pravargya.

¹ They approved of it by saying 'Well done'; Mahīdh.

² That is, as would seem, he speaks the anumantṛaṇa in order to consecrate whatever milk might have been spilled in bubbling over. Possibly, however, he is to do so at the time when the pot bubbles over (though the 'atha' would rather be out of place in that case). The Taittirīyas differ somewhat on this point of the performance.

— whereby he means to say, 'For rain . . . ;'—
 'for vigour swell thou!'—he thereby means
 the vigour, the life-sap, which results from the
 rain;—'for the Brahman swell thou!'—he
 thereby means the priesthood;—'for the Kshatra
 swell thou!'—he thereby means the nobility;—
 'for Heaven and Earth swell thou!'—he
 thereby means these two, the heaven and the
 earth, within which everything here is contained.

28. When it rises upwards, it rises for (the benefit
 of) the Sacrificer; when on the front side, it does
 so for the gods; when on the right (south) side,
 it does so for the Fathers; when at the back
 (west side), it does so for the cattle; when on the
 left (north) side, it does so for (the Sacrificer's)
 offspring: in any case no fault is incurred by the
 Sacrificer, for it always rises upwards; and in what-
 ever direction it rises in that it rises. When the
 drops cease,—

29. He steps out towards the north-east with,
 'A well-supporting support thou art,'—he who
 shines yonder is indeed a support, for he supports
 everything here, and by him everything here is
 supported; and the Pravargya also is that (sun):
 thus it is him he thereby pleases, and therefore
 he says, 'A well-supporting support thou art.'

30. He then places (the Mahāvira) on the mound
 with, 'Incapable of injuring, preserve thou
 our powers!'—'Not angry', preserve our wealth.'

After the Gharma-milk has been offered, the Pratiprasthâtri fills the
 Mahāvira pot, whilst it is held over the fire, with boiled sour curds
 and whey (dadhi), whilst muttering the text, 'The Asvins drank the
 Gharma . . . ,' and with the texts, 'For freshness swell thou,' &c.

1 The author apparently takes 'ameni' in the sense of 'amanyu.'

is what he thereby means to say;— 'preserve the priesthood, preserve the nobility, preserve the people!'— 'preserve all that,' is what he thereby means to say.

31. He then offers by means of the pieces of (split) wood¹,—the pieces of wood being the vital airs, it is the vital airs he thus bestows upon him;—

32. With (Vāg. S. XXXVIII, 15). 'Hail to Pūshan, to the cream!'—Pūshan, doubtless, is he who blows here, for he (the wind) supports (push) everything here; and the breath also is that (wind); it is breath he thus bestows upon him, whence he says, 'Hail to Pūshan, to the cream!' The call of 'hail' he places first, and the deity last: the significance of this is the same as before. Having offered (by means of the first piece) he leans it against the middle enclosing-stick² (paridhi).

33. 'Hail to the pressing-stones!'—the pressing-stones being the vital airs, it is the vital airs he thus bestows upon him. Having offered (with the second stick) he leans it against the middle enclosing-stick.

34. 'Hail to the sounding-holes'!—the

The St. Petersburg. Dict. assigns to it the meaning 'not shooting, incapable of shooting.'

¹ For these pieces of wood, or large chips, of Vikaṅkata wood (*Flacourtia sapida*) which were laid round the pot, see XIV, 1, 3, 26. They are dipped into the remains of the hot milk and ghee, the liquid adhering to them being then offered.

² That is, that one of the three fresh sticks enclosing the fire which is laid down first, along the back, or west side, and forms the base of a triangle the apex of which points eastwards. Cf. I, 3, 4, 1 seqq.

³ This meaning is, by the St. Petersburg. Dict., assigned to 'prati-rava'

sounding-holes (pratirava), doubtless, are the vital airs, for everything here is pleased (pratirata) with the vital airs: it is the vital airs he thus bestows upon him. Having offered (with the third stick) he leans it against the middle enclosing-stick.

35. 'Hail to the Fathers, (seated) upon the Barhis¹, and drinking the Gharma!'—even without offering he secretes (this, the fourth stick) under the barhis of the south part (of the vedi²) whilst looking towards the north³. When the sacrifice had its head cut off, its life-sap flowed away, and went to the Fathers—the Fathers being three in number: it is them he thus pleases. And

(otherwise 'echo'), the proper term for the sounding-holes being 'upa-rava,' cf. III, 5, 4, 1, where they are likened to the eyes and ears, as channels of the vital airs.

¹ If this rendering (St. Petersburg Dict.) of 'ūrdhvarbarhis' is correct—the term being apparently based on the Fathers' epithet 'barhishadaḥ,' 'seated on the barhis' (sacrificial grass-covering of the altar ground)—the force of 'ūrdhva' in the compound is very peculiar. Mahidhara takes it in the sense of 'having their barhis pointed upwards,' i. e. towards the east (!), the peculiar feature of the barhis in the present case—as far as the participation of the Fathers in the drinking of the Gharma is concerned—being its having the tops of the grass-stalks turned to the east instead of to the south, as is the case in all ceremonies relating to the Fathers. The term 'ūrdhvarbarhis' might possibly mean 'having their (special) barhis above,' i. e. in the world of the Fathers, where they would be supposed to partake of the libations of hot milk; whilst yet another (suggested by the next paragraph) would be that of 'having the barhis above them;' which would, however, be more appropriate if the secreting of the stick under the barhis applied to the present, instead of the next one.

² The comm. on Kāty. XXVI, 6, 14 calls this part of the barhis 'ātithyābarhis' (?).

³ And accordingly, without looking at it.

as to why he does not look at it,--once for all the Fathers have passed away.

36. 'Hail to Heaven and Earth!' heaven and earth being the out (and in)-breathing and the up-breathing, it is the out and up-breathing he thus bestows upon him. Having offered (with the fifth stick) he leans it against the middle enclosing-stick.

37. 'Hail to the All-gods!' the *Viśve Devâḥ* being the vital airs, it is the vital airs he thus bestows upon him. Having offered (with the sixth stick) he leans it against the middle enclosing-stick.

38. [Väg. S. XXXVIII, 16,] 'Hail to Rudra, praised by the Rudras¹!--even without offering (with this, the seventh stick), he, looking southwards, hands it to the *Pratiprasthātṛi*, and the latter throws it outside (the offering-ground) northwards to the north of the hall, for this is the region of that god: he thus gratifies him in his own region. And as to why he does not look at it, he does so thinking, 'Lest Rudra should do me harm.'

39. There are seven of these oblations, for seven in number are these (channels of the) vital airs in the head: it is these he thus bestows upon him.

40. He then pours (the remaining milk and ghee) from the *Mahāvira* into the supporting-tray with, 'Hail, light with light!' for light indeed the milk was in the one (vessel), and light it is in the other, and these two lights thus unite with each other. The call of 'hail!' he places first, and the deity last: the mystic import of this is the same as before.

¹ Or, 'having his praises sung by the chanters,' as *Mahādhara* takes '*rudrahūti*.'

41. He then offers (the second of) the two Rauhiṣa¹ (cakes) with, 'May the day be pleased with its brightness, the well-lighted with its light, hail!'—the mystic import of this is the same as before;—'may the night be pleased with its brightness, the well-lighted with its light, hail!'—the mystic import of this is the same as before.

42. He then hands to the Sacrificer the remainder of the Gharma. He, having solicited an invitation² (to the meal), drinks it with, 'Offered is the honey unto Agni, the greatest of Indras,'— 'Offered is the honey unto Agni, the most powerful,' he thereby means to say:—'let us eat of thee, god Gharma: reverence be unto thee, injure us not!'—a blessing he thereby invokes.

43. Now, on the south side sand has been strewn; there they cleanse themselves³; in this there is the

¹ Viz. XIV, 2, 1, 1. •

² Viz. at the hands of the officiating priests, by saying to each, 'Invite me, N. N.!' whereupon each of them replies, 'Thou art invited.' Cf. XII, 8, 3, 30. According to Âpaṣṭ. Sr. XV, 11, 12, the priests and the Sacrificer partake of the residue in the order—Hotrī, Adhvaryu, Brahman, Pratiprasthātṛī, Agnidh, and Sacrificer; or, optionally (ib. 14), only the Sacrificer drinks of it, whilst the priests merely smell it. Cf. the eating of the whey (of clotted curds), II, 4, 4, 25, to which the present eating of the remains is stated, by Kāty. XXVI, 6, 20, to be analogous; whilst the offering is said to be on the model of the Agnihotra.

³ The usual place to do so is over the pit (kūtrāla), cf. III, 8, 2, 30; XII, 8, 1, 22; whilst the utensils are cleaned in the Mārgāṅgīya. On the present occasion a mound of sand (or covered with sand)—the so-called 'ukḥḥiṣa-khara' (mound of remains)—is raised in the south part of the sālā, close to the mat or hurdle forming its wall, just east of the southern door. According to Kāty. XXVI, 6, 21 seqq., Âpaṣṭ. XV, 12, 1 seqq., the Mahāvra and the remaining

same significance as in the Mārgālyā. The pieces of wood he throws into the fire. They then proceed with the Upasad. And thus the head of the sacrifice has been set right in the very same manner in which the Asvins then restored it.

44. One must not perform the Pravargya at one's first Soma-sacrifice, since that would be sinful, and lest Indra should cut off his head; but at the second or the third (Soma-sacrifice); for at first the gods went on worshipping and toiling with the headless sacrifice, therefore (he should do so) at the second or the third (sacrifice). Moreover, it will become heated and ablaze:--

45. And were he to perform the Pravargya at the first Soma-sacrifice, that (Mahāvira) of his, when heated and ablaze, would burn up his family and cattle, and also his life, and the Sacrificer would be liable to perish: therefore (let him perform it) at the second or third (sacrifice).

46. Let him not perform the Pravargya for any and every one, lest he should do everything for every one, for the Pravargya is everything; but let him only perform it for him who is known, or to whoever may be dear to him, or who has studied sacred writ: by means of the study of sacred writ he would thus gain it.

47. One may perform the Pravargya for a thousand (head of cattle)¹, for a thousand means everything, and that (Pravargya) is everything. One may

apparatus are then in solemn fashion (carried round in front of the Āhavanīya, and) placed on the throne-seat, and consecrated (or appeased) by being sprinkled with water.

¹ That is, at a sacrifice for which this constitutes the sacrificial fee.

perform it for all (the Sacrificer's) property; for all one's property means everything, and this (Pravargya) is everything. One may perform it at a Visvagit with all the *Prishthas*¹; for the Visvagit (all-conquering day) with all the *Prishthas* means everything, and this (Pravargya) is everything. One may perform it at the Vâgapeya (and) Râgasûya, for such (a ceremony) means everything. One may perform it at a sacrificial session, for the session means everything, and this (Pravargya) is everything. These are (the occasions for) his performances of the Pravargya, and (let him perform it) nowhere else but at these.

48. Here now they say, 'Seeing that the Pravargya is headless, whereby, then, does the Agnihotra become possessed of a head for him?' Let him say, 'By the Âhavaniya.'—'How the New and Full-moon sacrifices?' Let him say, 'By the ghee and the cake.'—'How the Seasonal sacrifices?' Let him say, 'By the oblation of clotted curds².'—'How the animal sacrifice?' Let him say, 'By the victim and the cake.'—'How the Soma-sacrifice?' Let him say, 'By the Havirdhâna³.'

49. And they also say,—when the sacrifice had its head cut off, the gods on that occasion restored it as the hospitable reception⁴ (of King Soma), and verily for him who so knows this offering is not made with any headless sacrifice whatever.

¹ See p. 139, note 1; and XII, 3, 3, 6.

² For the 'payasyâ' see part i, p. 178, note 4; p. 381, note 2.

³ That is, the cart or carts on which the offering-material (including the Soma-plants) is contained, as also the shed in which they are placed.

⁴ See III, 2, 3, 20; 4, 1, 1.

50. And, again, they say, 'Seeing that at the sacrifice they lead forward the *Pravītā*¹ (water), wherefore do they not lead it forward on this occasion?' Well, this—to wit, the *Pravītā* (water)—being the head of the sacrifice, and the *Pravargya* also being its head, (he does so) thinking, 'Lest I cause the head to be overtopped by a head.'

51. And, again, they say, 'Seeing that elsewhere there are fore-offerings and after-offerings, wherefore are there not any on this occasion?' Well, the fore-offerings and after-offerings being the vital airs, and so also the *Avakāvas*², and the pieces of wood, (it is so) lest he should cause the vital airs to be overtopped by vital airs.

52. And, again, they say, 'Seeing that elsewhere they offer two butter-portions, wherefore does he not offer them on this occasion?' Well, those two—to wit, the butter-portions—being the eyes of the sacrifice, and so also the two *Rauhiṇa* (cakes)—(it is so) lest he should overtop eye by eye.

53. And, again, they say, 'Seeing that they make offering to the gods by means of wooden (vessels), wherefore does he offer this (*Gharma*) by means of one made of clay?' When the Sacrifice had its head cut off, its life-sap flowed away and entered the heaven and the earth. Now this (earth) is clay, and yonder (sky) is water; and the *Mahāvira* (vessels) are made of clay and water; thus he supplies and completes it (the *Pravargya*) with that life-sap.

54. But if it were made of wood, it would be

¹ See part i. p. 9, note.

² See p. 469, note 1.

burnt; and if of gold, it would dissolve; and if of copper, it would melt; and if of stone, it would burn the two handling-sticks; and that (Gharma) itself submitted to that (earthen vessel): therefore it is by means of an earthen one that he offers it.

55. And, verily, whosoever either teaches, or partakes of, this (Pravargya) enters that life, and that light: the observance thereof is the same as at the creation¹.

THIRD ADHYĀYA. FIRST BRĀHMANA.

THE SETTING OUT OF THE PRAVARGYA.

1. Now, on the third, or the sixth, or the twelfth day², having combined (the two performances of) the Pravargya and Upasads³, he 'sets out⁴' the Pravargya, for set out (removed), as it were, is this head (from the trunk). Having gathered together all around it⁵ (the Mahāvira pot), they

¹ See p. 458, note 1.

² That is, according to whether there are three, six, or twelve Upasad days to the particular form of Soma-sacrifice about to be performed. On each of these days there would be two performances of the Upasads,—and in case the Pravargya is to be performed— as many performances of that sacrifice.

³ On the day before the Soma-sacrifice, the two performances of the Pravargya and the Upasads are combined and gone through in the forenoon, instead of the forenoon and afternoon as is otherwise the case. Kāty. XXVI. 7, 1 does not refer to the performance of the Pravargya on this day, but merely remarks that 'at the end of the Upasads (i. e. of the combination of the Upasads, comm.) the removal of the Pravargya' takes place. Āpast. XV. 12, 4-6. on the other hand, states distinctly that the total number of performances of the Pravargya is to be double that of the Upasad days.

⁴ The 'setting out' (utsādana) of the Pravargya is the technical phrase for the removal and orderly laying out (in the form of a man) of the apparatus used for the Pravargya ceremony.

⁵ After collecting the implements they take them out of the sālā

meet together upon the Vēdi in the Sālā, (entering) by the front door.

2. The Āgnidhra then brings three bundles of faggots to the Āhavaniya, and kindling one of them, he offers (thereon) whilst holding it¹ on a level with (the Sacrificer's) mouth. When the sacrifice had its head cut off its heat went out of it, and entered these worlds: it is with that heat he thus supplies and completes it.

3. And as to why (it is held) on a level with the mouth,—well, what is level with the mouth is, as it were, above; and above, as it were, is yonder (heavenly) world: thus he thereby supplies and completes it (the Pravargya) with that heat which had entered yonder world.

4. [He offers, with Vāg. S. XXXVIII, 18.] 'What heavenly fire of thine there is, O Gharma,'—just the fire which is heavenly; 'what is in the Gāvatri and in the Havir-

and lay them down near the Antaḥpātya peg at a few steps from the front door (whilst Āpast. makes them to be put on the throne-seat placed north of the Āhavaniya).

¹ According to the comm. on Kāty. XXVI, 7, 4, it is the Adhvaryu who—after ladling four times into the offering-spoon—distributes this ghee successively over the three bundles of sticks,—viz. pouring some upon the first two whilst they are held, at the specified height over the Āhavaniya fire, by the Agnidh (who immediately after the offering throws them into the fire), and upon the third after it has been held knee-high by the Agnidh, and then thrown into the fire by the Adhvaryu. According to Āpastamba, who makes the Pratiprasāhtri and Adhvaryu the two performers, the third portion of the ghee is offered on the bundle of sticks whilst it is still held knee-high over the fire. As noted by Kātyāyana, the ceremony is analogous (though reversed as regards the order of height) to the offering on the three enclosing-stones at the Satarudriya ceremony, IX, 1, 1, 5 seqq.

dhāna,'—just that which is in the Gāyatri (metre) and Havirdhāna (shed);—'may that (fire) of thine increase and become firm: to that (fire) of thine, hail!' in this there is nothing hidden, so to speak.

5. Then, having kindled the second (bundle), he offers (thereon) whilst holding it navel-high: for in the middle, as it were, is what is navel-high, and in the middle, as it were, is the air-world: thus he thereby supplies and completes it with that heat which had entered the air-world.

6. 'What fire of thine is in the air,'—just the fire which is in the air;—'what is in the Trishṭubh and in the Āgnidhra,'—just that which is in the Trishṭubh (metre) and Āgnidhra (fire-shed);—'may that (fire) of thine increase and become firm: to that (fire) of thine, hail!' in this there is nothing hidden, so to speak.

7. Then, having put the third (bundle) on the fire, he offers on it whilst sitting: for below, as it were, is he who is sitting; and below, as it were, is this (terrestrial) world: thus he thereby supplies and completes it with that heat which had entered this (terrestrial) world.

8. 'What fire of thine is in the earth,'—just that fire which is in the earth;—'what is in the Gāgati and in the Sadas,'—just that which is in the Gāgati (metre) and the Sadas (shed);—'may that (fire) of thine increase and become firm: to that (fire) of thine, hail!' in this there is nothing hidden, so to speak.

9. He (the Adhvaryu) then steps out¹, with

Viz. out of the śālā, with the Sacrificer's wife in front of him,

(Vāg. S. XXXVIII, 10), 'Thee (we will follow) for the protection of the Kshatra,' for he who shines yonder¹ is indeed the divine ruler: 'for the protection of this human ruler,' he thereby means to say: 'guard thou the Brahman's body!'—that is to say, 'preserve thou the Brahman's person (ātman):' 'Thee (we will follow) as a stay for the Viś,' the Viś people, clan doubtless is the sacrifice: 'for the safety of the sacrifice,' he thus means to say, 'we will follow to new prosperity,' it is for the safety and the stability of the sacrifice that he says this.

10. He then says (to the Prastotri), 'Sing the Sāman!' or 'Recite the Sāman!' but let him rather say, 'Sing the Sāman!' for they indeed sing the Sāman. When he sings the Sāman it is in order that the fiends, the Rakshas, should not injure these

and followed by the others. According to Āpast. XV, 13, 4, the Prati-prasthātri now leads the Samīket's wife within the enclosure, and whilst attendants carry away the objects not immediately connected with the Pravargya ceremony (post, peg, strings, sand, &c.), the Adhvaryu places the throne-seat (with the chief vessels) so as to stand with two feet on the Vedi, and with the other two outside it, and calls on the Prastotri to sing the Sāman. This (as is usual in chanting) is done three times— the Adhvaryu, however, repeating his summons each time—and each time all of them (including the Patni) sing or utter a special finale, —the first time in the sālā, the second time midway between the sālā and the Uttaravedi, and the third time when they have arrived behind the Uttaravedi; the finales corresponding to the formulas of this paragraph, viz.—'For the protection (or protector) of heaven (we follow) thee!'—'For the protection of the Brahman—thee!'—'For the protection of the self—thee!'

¹ It should be borne in mind that the Mahāvīra by which they are supposing themselves to be led now, is looked upon as a symbol of the sun.

outside the sacrifice, the body; for the Sāman is a repeller of the fiends, the Rakshas.

11. He sings it on a (verse) relating to Agni, for Agni is the repeller of the Rakshas. On an *Atikkhandas* (verse) he sings it, for that—to wit, the *Atikkhandas* (redundant metre) is all metres, therefore he sings it on an *Atikkhandas* (verse).

12. He sings¹, 'Agni burneth, encountereth with flames, Ahāvo! Ahāvo!!'—it is thus he repels the fiends, the Rakshas, from here.

13. They walk out (from the sacrificial ground) northwards², along the back of the pit and the front side of the *Āgnīdhra* (fire-house)—for this is the gate of the sacrifice—and proceed in whatever direction from there water is (to be found).

14. Let him 'set out' that (Pravargya) on an island; for, when heated, it becomes burning-hot³; and were he to set it out on this (earth), its heat would enter this (earth); and were he to set it out on water, its heat would enter the water; but when he sets it out on an island—thus, indeed, it does not injure either the water or this (earth), for inasmuch as he does not throw it into the water, it does not injure the water; and inasmuch as the water flows all round it—water being a means

¹ The same Sāman is sung when they betake themselves to the expiatory bath at the end of the Soma-sacrifice, cf. IV. 4. 5. 8 where the stobha had better be altered to 'ahāvo' (though the Sandhi in the text is the same as of 'ahāvas'). As on that former occasion, all the priests, as well as the Sacrificer, join in the finale.

² In doing so, they take the Pravargya-vessels and implements along with them.

³ Hardly 'is suffering pain,' as it was taken at IX. 2. 1. 19: though 'susukāna' and 'suk' evidently refer to internal heat, or passion, cf. p. 464, note 4, p. 468, note 1.

of soothing—it does not injure this (earth) : let him therefore set it out on an island.

15. But let him rather set it out on the Uttara-vedi¹; for the Uttara-vedi is the sacrifice, and the Pravargya is its head: he thus restores to the sacrifice its head.

16. The first Pravargya (pot) he sets out so as to be close to (the front side of) the navel (of the Uttara-vedi), for the northern (upper) navel is the voice, and the Pravargya is the head: he thus places the voice in the head.

17. [He does so, with Vāg. S. XXXVIII, 20.] 'The four-cornered,'—four-cornered, indeed, is he who shines yonder, for the quarters are his corners: therefore he says, 'Four-cornered'; -

18. —'Mighty navel of the divine order,' the divine order being the truth, he thereby means to say, 'The mighty navel of the truth;'—'that mighty one (be) unto us of all life,'—'that mighty one (be) unto us (a bestower) of the complete (term of) life,' he thereby means to say²;

¹ Kātyāyana only lays down the rule that, in the case of the sacrifice not being accompanied with the building of a fire-altar, the Pravargya apparatus should be removed to the Uttara-vedi; whilst, in the case of one who likewise performs the Agnikāyana, he would doubtless follow the indication already laid down in the Brāhmaṇa, IX, 2, 1, 19; viz. that the pot may be removed to an island, but should rather be deposited on the fire-altar (in which case, however, the 'setting out' of the apparatus would apparently have to be deferred till after the performance of the Soma-sacrifice). Āpastamba treats of the Uttara-vedi as the place where the implements are to be deposited, but finally he allows an option of other places, including an island, but not the fire-altar.

² The words 'sa naḥ sarvāyuhḥ saprathāh,' being here used as explanatory of 'sa no visvāyuhḥ saprathāh,' have probably got by mistake into the Sāmhitā.

19. —‘from the hatred, from the guile,’—in this there is nothing hidden, so to speak;—‘of him of another law, let us free ourselves!’—another law, indeed, is his (Pravargya’s and the Sun’s), and another that of men¹: therefore he says, ‘Of him of another law, let us free ourselves.’ In this way the other two (pots are placed) east of it: this is threefold, for the head is threefold².

20. In front thereof (he places) the reserve (lump of) clay, whereby he puts flesh upon it (Pravargya); on the two sides thereof the two lifting-sticks, whereby he gives two arms to it; and on the two sides yet further away the two Rauhiṇa offering-ladles, whereby he gives two hands to it.

21. On the left (north) side (he places) the spade, for there is its place of rest; on the right (right) side the imperial throne, for there is its place of rest; on the left side the black antelope-skin, for there is its place of rest; on all sides (save the front side) the fans, for, the fans being the vital airs, he thereby bestows vital airs on it; there are three of them, for there are three vital airs, the out- (and in-) breathing, the up-breathing, and the through-breathing: it is these he thus bestows on him.

22. He then puts the cords and halter on the supporting-tray, and places (the latter) behind (the

¹ The author evidently understands the text more in accordance with Mahidhara’s interpretation which makes ‘anyavratasya’ to refer to the Supreme Spirit (paramātmā) whose law, or ways, are different from men’s, and construes it with ‘sākāma’ (we serve, are devoted, to that righteous one). The preceding part of the half-verse he would thus take independently of this:—‘Away hatred! away guile!’

² Viz. consisting of bone, skin, and hair.

navel) with its point towards the east: a belly he thus gives to it. On the two sides thereof the two milking-bowls (pinvana): two testicles he thereby gives to it, for by means of his testicles the male overflows (pinv). Behind (them he places) the post and peg: whereby he gives two thighs to it; behind (them) the two Rauhiṣa-plates, whereby he gives two knees to it; and as to their being single plates, it is because these knees consist, as it were, of single plates (bones). Behind (them) the two poking-sticks (dhṛiṣh/it), whereby he gives two feet to it, for with the feet one strikes out boldly (dhṛiṣh/am). On the left side the two mounds¹ used in the performance, for there is their place of rest: on the right side the Mārgāliya², for there is its place of rest.

23. He then pours milk into that (chief pot), with (Vāg. S. XXXVIII, 21), 'This, O Gharma, is the contents of thy bowels,' the contents of the bowels being food, it is food he thus puts into it;—'Grow thou, and fill out thereby!' in this there is nothing hidden, so to speak;—'and may we ourselves grow, and fill out!'—it is a blessing he thereby invokes.

24. Let him not pour in all (the milk), lest the food should turn away from the Sacrificer.—He leaves over half of it or more; and on that same afternoon he pours it to the fast-milk, and hands it to the Sacrificer: thereby he bestows food upon

¹ That is, the sand used for them, and brought thither in vessels.

² That is, the sand of the 'mound of remains' (ukkhish/akhara), see p. 489, note 3.

the Sacrificer, and thus, indeed, food does not turn away from the Sacrificer.

25. He then sprinkles it (the Pravargya apparatus) with water: water being a means of appeasement, he thus appeases it; he sprinkles it all over: all over he thus appeases it; three times he sprinkles, for threefold is the sacrifice.

26. He then says (to the Prastotrī), 'Sing the Vārshâhara Sâman!' - the fallow stallion¹ (*vrishâ hari*) doubtless is he who shines yonder, and the Pravargya also is that (sun): it is thus him he thereby pleases, and therefore he says, 'Sing the Vārshâhara Sâman'!

27. They then cleanse themselves at the pit. With (Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 23), 'May the waters and plants be friendly unto us,' he takes water in his joined hands; for water is a thunderbolt: he thus makes a covenant with the thunderbolt;—and with, 'May they be unfriendly unto him who hateth us, and whom we hate!' let him sprinkle it in whatever direction he who is hateful to him may be, and he, thereby overthrows him.

28. He (the Sacrificer) then steps out towards the north-east, with (Vâg. S. XXXVIII, 24), 'From out of the gloom have we risen,'—gloom is

¹ Or, bull.—The Vâg. S. (XXXVIII, 22) here inserts the verse *Rig-v.* IX, 2, 6, to be used during the sprinkling,—'The fallow stallion hath whinnied—or, the fallow bull hath roared—the mighty one, beautiful as Mitra, *the water-holding vessel* hath shone like unto the sun.' The italicised words, evidently added to suit the Mahāvira vessel, are wanting in the *Rik*.

² Kâty. XXVI, 7, 36 (doubtless in accordance with another sâkhâ) also prescribes here the Ishâhotrîya Sâman.

evil: it is gloom, evil, he thus drives away;--
 'beholding the higher light,'—this (terrestrial)
 world is higher than the water: it is on this world
 he thus establishes himself;—'God! Sūrya, wit
 the gods, the highest light,'—Sūrya, the highest
 light, is the heavenly world: it is in the heavenly
 world he thus finally establishes himself. He walks
 along without looking back, and puts a log of wood
 on the Āhavanīya¹, with (Vāg. S. XXXVIII, 25).
 'A kindler thou art, fire thou art: lay thou
 fire into me!' it is a blessing he thereby invokes.

29. And at a continued pressing of Soma they
 also perform the Gharma of curds and whey
 (Dadhi-gharma).—for Soma is the sacrifice, and
 the Pravargya is its head: he thus restores to the
 sacrifice its head,—at the midday-pressing, for that
 --to wit, the midday-pressing is Indra's special
 pressing: he thus pleases him in his own share:—
 when the Mādhyandina-pavamāna has been chanted,
 for the Mādhyandina-pavamāna is the breath: it is
 breath he thereby lays into him;—with the Agni-
 hotra-ladle, for the Agnihotra is the mouth of sacri-
 fices: he thus puts a mouth in the head.

30. On its being brought, he says, 'Hotâr, speak
 what thou hast to speak!' for the Hotâri speaks
 on this occasion. Then, stepping up, he says,
 'Cooked is the offering-food;' for cooked, indeed,
 it is. Having stepped, across (behind the Āha-
 vanīya), and called for the Srausha, he says,
 'Pronounce the offering-formula!' and offers on
 the Vasha being uttered. When the Vasha is

¹ The Sacrificer's wife (according to another sâkhâ) also silently
 puts one on the Gârhapatya fire.

repeated, he brings the draught, and hands it to the Sacrificer.

31. Having solicited an invitation¹ (and received an answer from the priests), he drinks of it, with (Vāg. S. XXXVIII, 27), 'May there be in me that great energy,'—a great energy, indeed, is he who shines yonder;—'in me the fitness, in me the intelligence,'—fitness and intelligence he thus secures to himself;—'the Gharma of triple fires shineth,'—for this Gharma of triple fires indeed shines;—'together with the shining light,' for together with the shining light (the sun) it indeed is:—'together with the fire, the Brahman,'—for together with the fire, the Brahman, it indeed is;—(Vāg. S. XXXVIII, 28), 'The seed of the milk hath been brought,'—for this is indeed the seed of the milk that has been brought;—'may we obtain the milking thereof year after year!'—it is a blessing he thereby invokes. They then cleanse themselves at the pit: the significance of this is the same as before.

32. Now, then, as to the sacrificial gifts. The gold plate he gives to the Brahman: for the Brahman is seated, and gold is settled² glory: therefore he gives the gold plate to the Brahman.

33. And that cow which yielded the Gharma-milk he gives to the Adhvaryu: for scorched, as it were, is the Gharma, and the Adhvaryu comes forth (from the sacrificial³ ground) like something scorched³: therefore he gives it to the Adhvaryu.

34. And that cow which yielded the Sacrificer's

¹ See p. 480, note 2.

² Lit., lying, i. e. not standing or moving.

³ Cf. XI, 2, 7, 32.

fast-milk he gives to the *Hotri*; for the *Hotri* is the sacrifice, and the Sacrificer also is the sacrifice: therefore he gives it to the *Hotri*.

35. And that cow which yielded the fast-milk for the (Sacrificer's) wife he gives to the chanters, for it is they, the *Udgātṛis*, that do, as it were, the wife's work on this occasion: therefore he gives it to the chanters.

36. And, verily, whosoever either teaches, or partakes of, this (*Pravargya*) enters that life, and that light: the observance thereof is the same as at the creation

SECOND BRĀHMAṆA.

EXPIATORY CEREMONIES.

1. Now this—to wit, the sacrifice—is the self of all beings, and of all gods: after its successful consummation the Sacrificer prospers in offspring (or, people) and cattle; but he whose *Gharma* (pot) is shattered is deprived of his offspring and cattle. In that case there is an expiation.

2. He offers an oblation of a full (spoon of ghee); for the full means everything: with everything he thus heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

3. [He offers, with *Vāg. S. XXXIX, 1*,] 'Hail to the vital airs with their over-lord!'—the over-lord of the vital airs, doubtless, is the mind (soul), for in the mind all the vital airs are established: it is thus by means of the mind that he thereby heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

4. 'To the Earth hail!'—the earth, doubtless, is a place of abode for all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

5. 'To Agni hail!'—Agni, doubtless, is the self of all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

6. 'To the Air hail!'—the air, doubtless, is a place of abode for all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

7. 'To Vāyu hail!'—Vāyu (the wind), doubtless, is the self of all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

8. 'To the Sky hail!'—the sky, doubtless, is a place of abode for all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

9. 'To Sūrya hail!'—Sūrya (the sun), doubtless, is the self of all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

10. [Vāg. S. XXXIX, 2.] 'To the Regions hail!'—the regions, doubtless, are a place of abode for all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

11. 'To Kāṇḍra hail!'—Kāṇḍra (the moon), doubtless, is the self of all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

12. 'To the Nakshatras hail!'—the Nak-

shatras (lunar asterisms), doubtless, are a place of abode for all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

13. 'To the Waters hail!'—the waters, doubtless, are a place of abode for all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

14. 'To Varuṇa hail!'—Varuṇa, doubtless, is the self of all the gods: it is thus by means of all the deities that he heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice.

15. 'To the Navel hail! To the Purified one¹ hail!'—This is undefined, for undefined is Praṇapati, and Praṇapati is the sacrifice: it is thus Praṇapati, the sacrifice, he thereby heals.

16. These are thirteen oblations, for there are thirteen months in the year, and the year is Praṇapati, and Praṇapati is the sacrifice: it is thus Praṇapati, the sacrifice, he thereby heals.

17. [Vāg. S. XXXIX. 3.] 'To the Voice hail!'—a mouth he thereby gives to it;—'to the Breath hail! to the Breath hail!'—two nostrils (a nose) he thereby gives to it;—'to the Eye hail! to the Eye hail!'—two eyes he thereby gives to it; 'to the Ear hail! to the Ear hail!'—two ears he thereby gives to it.

18. These are seven oblations,—now seven in number are these vital airs in the head: it is them he thereby gives to it. He offers a last oblation of a full (spoon),—the full means every-

¹ Mahidhara takes 'pîta' in the sense of 'the purifier (sodhaka)' and apparently the name of a god (as he does also the Navel (nâbhyai devatâyai)).

thing: with everything he thus heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice,—

19. With (Vâg. S. XXXIX, 4), 'The mind's purpose,'—by the mind, indeed, everything is gained here: by the mind he thus heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice;—

20. 'The truth of speech may I freely obtain,'—by speech everything is gained here: by speech he thus heals whatever has been unsuccessful in the sacrifice;—'may the form of cattle, the essence of food, fame, and prosperity accrue unto me, hail!'—a blessing he thereby invokes.

21. Thereupon, having pounded that spare (clay), and mixed it with powdered clay, he makes (a pot) in proper form, and bakes it in proper form for the purpose of the 'setting out': and let him perform (the sacrifice) with whichever of the two reserve (pots) may be firm.

22. The Pravargya, indeed, is the year: for the year is everything, and the Pravargya is everything: when it is placed on the fire then it is spring; when it is burning-hot then it is summer: when it is flowing over then it is the rainy season:—but, indeed, when the rains overflow, all the gods and all beings subsist thereon: and, verily, the rains overflow for him who thus knows this.

23. The Pravargya, indeed, is these worlds, for these worlds are everything, and the Pravargya is everything: when it is placed on the fire then it is this (terrestrial) world: when it is burning-hot then it is the air-world: and when it flows over then it is yonder (heavenly) world;—but,

indeed, when yonder world overflows, all the gods and all beings subsist thereon; and, verily, yonder world overflows for him who thus knows this.

24. The Pravargya, indeed, is those deities - Agni, Vāyu, and Āditya; for those deities are everything, and the Pravargya is everything: when it is placed on the fire then it is Agni; when it is burning-hot then it is Vāyu (the wind); and when it flows over then it is Āditya (the sun);—but, indeed, when yonder sun overflows, all the gods and all beings subsist upon him; and, verily, yonder sun overflows for him who thus knows this.

25. The Pravargya, indeed, is the Sacrificer, his own self, his offspring (or people) and cattle; for the Sacrificer is everything, and the Pravargya is everything: when it is placed on the fire then it is his own self; when it is burning-hot then it is his offspring; and when it flows over then it is his cattle;—but, indeed, when the cattle overflow (with milk) all the gods and all beings subsist thereon; and, verily, the cattle overflow for him who thus knows this.

26. The Pravargya, indeed, is the Agnihotra, for the Agnihotra is everything, and the Pravargya is everything: when it (the Agnihotra milk) is put on the fire then it is the (Gharma) placed thereon; when it is ladled out then it is the burning-hot (Gharma); and when it is offered then it is the overflowing (Gharma);—but, indeed, when the Agnihotra overflows all the gods and all beings subsist thereon; and, verily, the Agnihotra overflows for him who thus knows this.

27. The Pravargya, indeed, is the New and Full-moon sacrifices; for the New and Full-moon sacrifices

are everything, and the Pravargya is everything: when it (the havis) is put on the fire then it is the (Gharma) placed thereon; when it is standing ready then it is the burning-hot (Gharma); and when it is offered then it is the overflowing (Gharma);—but, indeed, when the New and Full-moon sacrifices overflow all the gods and all beings subsist thereon; and, verily, the New and Full-moon sacrifices overflow for him who thus knows this.

28. The Pravargya, indeed, is the Seasonal sacrifices, for the Seasonal sacrifices are everything, and the Pravargya is everything: when it (the havis) is put on the fire then it is the (Gharma) placed thereon; when it is standing ready then it is the burning-hot (Gharma); and when it is offered then it is the overflowing (Gharma);—but, indeed, when the Seasonal sacrifices overflow then all the gods and all beings subsist thereon; and, verily, the Seasonal sacrifices overflow for him who thus knows this.

29. The Pravargya, indeed, is the Animal sacrifice, for the Animal sacrifice is everything, and the Pravargya is everything: when it (the meat) is put on the fire then it is the (Gharma) placed thereon; and when it is standing ready then it is the burning-hot (Gharma); and when it is offered then it is the overflowing (Gharma);—but, indeed, when the animal offering overflows all the gods and all beings subsist thereon; and, verily, the animal offering overflows for him who thus knows this.

30. The Pravargya, indeed, is Soma, for Soma is everything, and the Pravargya is everything: when it is poured out then it is the (Gharma) placed on the fire; when it is drawn (into the

cups) then it is the burning-hot (Gharma); and when it is offered then it is the overflowing (Gharma);—but, indeed, when Soma overflows all the gods and all beings avail themselves thereof; and, verily, Soma overflows for him who thus knows this: and, verily, no sacrifice whatever is offered without the Pravargya for him who thus knows this.

31. And, verily, whosoever either teaches, or partakes of, this (Pravargya) enters that life, and that light: the observance of the rule thereof is the same as at the creation¹.

¹ See p. 458, note 1.

INDEX TO PARTS III, IV, AND V.

(KÂNDAS V—XIV.)

abhigit, Soma-day, Part IV, page 321 n.

abhiplava-shadaha, III, introd. xxi; V, 148; is the established (regular) shadaha, 149; used by Âdityas when contending with Añgiras, 152; etymology, 152, 162.

abhisheka, III, 68; the 'Vasor dhârâ' and Vâgaprasaviya oblations performed on completed fire-altar are a consecration-ceremony superior to the ordinary one, IV, 213 seq.; and including the consecration of both Rîgasûya and Vâgapeya, 225.

abhishekāniya, III, introd. xxvi; 68 seq.; stotras of, 69.

abhiivarta-sâman, III, 16.

abhri (spade), lies on left side of Âhavanîya, III, 199; made of bamboo, 199.

adâbhya-graha, is speech, up-breathing, ear, V, 105; etymology, 105-7.

âcâra, plants, how produced, V, 451; =pûtika, 451; they are fragrant and blaze up in fire, 452.

adhrigu, litany, V, 385 6.

adhvan, ghee-offering to, in the house of the courier, III, 64.

Adhvaryu, seated towards east, III, 108; his fee at Dazapeya a golden mirror, 119; their fee a sterile cow for pañkabala oblation to Mitra-Varuṇa, 122; spreads the sacrifice, 142; his fee at Sautrâmanî three garments; the Asvins the Adhvaryus of the gods, IV, 23; sings the

Sâmans over the completed altar, 181; in drawing the Soma-cup he takes Pragâpati's vital fluid, 282; must pronounce his Yagus indistinctly, 340; is summer whence he is as if scorched, V, 45; how he is to step past the vedi when calling or having called for the braushar, 57-8; initiated by Pratiprasthâtri for sattra, as the mind, 136; they drink the Âsvina cup of Sautrâmanî, the Asvins being the Adhvaryus of the gods, 245; is scorched, as it were, 503.

Aditi, by sixteen syllables gains the shodasa-stoma, III, 40; karu to, 60; is this earth, 60, 378; V, 6, 181, 293; the wife of the gods, III, 60; uru-grmâ (ot wide shelter), 90; Aditi and Diti, 93; prayugâm havis (paps), 125; reddish-white cow pregnant with calf her victim at oblation of teams, 125; is speech, 237; offers firepan to her sons, the gods, 238; gives (dad) everything here, 378; back of Aditi (the earth), IV, 27; Aditi and Pûshan, connected with trizava-stoma, 69; ruler of the Fathers, 74; (additional) pap at New moon, V, 5, 6; paps at Sautrâmanî, 213 n., 268.

Âditya (the sun), even rising burns up plants, III, 78; how created, 148; his union with sky, 149; with him the Âdityas placed in sky, 150; is the Agni on the altar, 152, 194; with Paramesh/kin connected with sky,

189; is space-filler, 189; regent of sky, 204, (286); a thunderbolt, 208; Agni, Vāyu, and Āditya all the light, 210; none other than the width of the sky can contain him, 216, 364; placed upwards from here in the east, 223, 275; is the truth, 265; the twenty-first, or twenty-onefold, 265, 308; IV, 62, 163; V, 37, 291; was Agni's protector against the Rakshas, III, 266; is the hook (āsaṅgana) to which the worlds are fastened by means of the quarters, 269; encompassed by the two worlds, 271; is the fire on Āhavanīya, fire-altar, 309; is the vigour that went from Praṇāpati, 312; white horse his representative, 350; kisses all creatures by his rays, 360; strings these worlds to himself on a thread (the winds), 362; IV, 141; is settled on earth by his rays, III, 365; is the Brahman, first-born in front (east), 366; man (purusha) in his disk (maṇḍala), 367; looks downward and gives warmth by his rays, 367; like a drop leaping to the sky and the earth, 368; moves round these worlds from left to right, 400; the brilliant face (front) of the gods, 408; he is (śūrya) the soul of everything that moves and stands, 408; is the all-embracer (all-expander, all-opener) and becomes the eye, IV, 8; is the upper region, 27; is placed within the southern region, 27; the sustainer of air and regions, and ruler of beings, 28; when he sets everything holds its peace, 62; is the sixteenfold wielder of the (fifteenfold) thunderbolt, 85; is the extent (vyākāśa), 88; is a bright razor (kshura bhīṛga), 89; unclimbable, 89; Agni, Vāyu, and Āditya move hitherwards and thitherwards, 90; is Indra, 92; all hymns are in praise of him, 92; has the earth as his foundation, 95; the all-embracer, connected with the west, 106; burns only on this side of

the sky, 130; the luminous Āditya is on the back of the sky, 131; shines for all the three worlds, 132; passes by these worlds and revolves incessantly round them from left to right, 134, 136; is the vital power (jyus), 142; animates all this universe, which is in his shadow, 142; Agni, Vāyu, and Āditya are the hearts of the gods, 16; is the heart of A. ni-Praṇāpati, the altar and universe, 180; Agni, Vāyu, and Āditya are the Pra-rṅga (vessels), 17; in the air, half-way between the two worlds, 106; keeps measuring in the middle of the sky, and even in rising fills the three worlds, 106; is a showering ocean, and a ruddy bird, 197; traversing guards the ends of these worlds, 197; connected with the Trishatbh, 197; Āditya the man (nara) of the sky as (part of) the All (vishva), 208; is the eye, 208; is the highest of all the universe, 240; is the Dhātṛi (orderer), 264; is the year and the one hundred and one-fold Agni (fire-altar), 313; his rays are a hundredfold, 313, 322; is established in the seven worlds of the gods, 314; is Agni (Praṇāpati), ascended to heaven, 349; is the Arka, 349; Agni considered as Āditya, 363, triad - Agni, Āditya, Prāna - are the eater, the Arka, the Uktha, the Purusha, 398, 399; Āditya one of the six doors to the Brahman, V, 66, 67; to Āditya offering is made in Agni at Agnihotra, 112 seq.; slaughtered by Praṇāpati as sacrificial animal, and consequently endowed with certain powers, 128 seq.; Agni, Āditya, Vāyu are light, might, glory (fame), 173; the Sacrificer is Āditya, 248; Āditya is the divine Kshatra, the glory (śrī), the supreme lordship, the summit of the fallow one, the realm of light, 291;—cf. Varuṇa Āditya, āditya-nāmāni (pārthāni), III, 83.

Ādityas, by fifteen syllables gain *paññadara-stoma*, III, 40; animal offering to (instead of to Aditi), 126; twelve, born from *Vāk*, 149; placed with *Āditya* in the sky, 150; fashioned the sky by means of *Gagatī*, 234; *pap* at *dikshā* of *Agnikavyana*, 247; produced, IV, 33; *Ādityas* and *Maruts*, connected with embryos and the *paññavimśa-stoma*, 68; *Vasus*, *Rudras*, and *Ādityas* separated and were the lords when heaven and earth separated, 75; lords of the western region, 101; connected with *Varuna*, *saptadara-stoma*, &c., 101; *Vasus*, *Rudras*, *Ādityas*, *Maruts*, *Vive Devāb* build on different sides of altar (E. S. W. N. Upper), 118; the twelve *Ādityas* enumerated, V, 116; *Ādityas* and *Āngiras* contending for getting first to heaven, 152; arise by performance of third pressing, 173; the sacrificial horse to go the way of the *Ādityas*, 288; consecrate king by the *Gagatī*, 313; obtain the part of *Vishva*, the sacrifice, corresponding to the evening-pressing, 443; *Indra*, with *Vasus*, *Rudras*, and *Ādityas*, receives offering of *gharma*, 479-80.

Āgātazatrava. See *Bhadrascāna*.

Agatazātru, king of *Kāśi*, III, 141.

age-grades (*vayāṁsi*), oblations relating thereto, forming part of *Vasor dhārā*, IV, 218.

āghāra (libation of ghee), III, 172.

Āgigarta, father of *Sunakṣepha*, III, 95.

Agni, by one syllable gains the breath, III, 40; is all deities, 44; the lower end, 44; the sacrifice, 45; gold his seed, and the fee for his oblations, 45, 59; is fiery spirit or brightness (*tejas*), 46, 82; with *Indra* smites the *Rakshas*, 51; is *Varuna* and *Rudra*, 51; the giver, 54; *Vaiśvānara*, twelve-kapāla cake to, 57; *Anikavat*, eight-kapāla cake to, 58; *Agni Girhapati*, eight-kapāla cake of quick-grown rice, 69, 89;

pārtha-oblation to, 82; to him belong shoulder-pieces of yoke, 101; *rathavimohaniya*-oblation to, 101; *Agni Dharmarāspati*, 112; assists *Varuna*, 113; at *upasad* eight-kapāla cake to, 118; *paññakābila* ditto on east part of *vedi*, 120, 121; fee is gold, 121; *prayugām* *havis*, eight-kapāla cake, 125; *Pragāpati*-*Agni*, the *Purusha*, 144; the *Brahman* (triple science) in *Agni's* mouth, 146; etymology (*agri*), 146; is *trivrit*, the altar consisting of nine substances, 147; *gāyatra*, 148, 161; union with earth, 148; with *Agni* the *Vasus* placed on earth, 150; restores *Pragāpati*, hence *Pragāpati* called *Agni*, 151, 152; *Agni Kīṭya*, 151 seq.; is the sun (as an *Āditya*), 152; *Pragāpati's* son and father, 154; is speech, 154; becomes a bird to bear sacrifice to sky, 157; his eight or nine forms (*Rudra*, *Sarva*, *Parupati*, *Ugra*, *Arani*, *Bhava*, *Mahān devaḥ*, *Lāna*, *Kumāra*), 159, 160; is all right (*Ātra*) things, 161, 369; his forms coveted by *Pragāpati*, 161; he-goat slain for him, 162; home prepared for him by slaying animals (and preparing food), 165; five *Ag* is (layers), 165; is this earth, 169; is the (ten) regions, 183; is *Savitrī*, 191; *Virāḡ*, 196; *Agni* the cattle, went away from the gods, and is searched for, 196 seq.; is cattle (animals), 197; is threefold, 197; enters seed, 198; regent of earth, 204, 286; *Agni*, *Vāyu*, and *Āditya* are all the light, 210; (the fire) belongs to *Indra* and *Agn*, 212, 253; is *Āditya*, 216; the child of the two worlds, 224; the sea-born child of the waters, 226; a conqueror, overpowering in battle, 259; burns up the evil (enemies) of the gods, 259; is the *brahman* and *kshatra*, 260; born from *Dyaus*, 272; nourished by day (dawn) and night, 273; shining moves between heaven and earth, 273; is sap and substance in this world,

chiefest of the fires of the five races of men, 269; Agni Vaisvânara, verses to, 276; Agni the gods' *prâṇa*, 295; is all objects of desire, 313; the nature of Agni as the vital airs, 331-3; Agni and Indra created as brahman and kshatra, 342; they joined each other as the gold min and the gold plate, 342; they are the light and immortal life, 343; they are the fire-altar, Agni what is baked by fire (bricks) and Indra the *purîsha*, 343; Agni and Indra are the *Vîve Devâh*, and the three are brahman, kshatra, and *viç*, 344; is *Pragâpati*, 345; Agni (= *Pragâpati*), on ascending, is *Âditya*, 349; the vital breath, 349; Agni considered as *Vâyo* or as *Aditya*, or as the year, 363; as speech, 364; as Death, 365; the direction in which Agni (the fire-altar) is to look, 390 seq.; (Agni) Vaisvânara, views regarding his nature, 393 seq.; is the *Purusha*, 398; triad - Agni, *Aditya*, *Prîva* - are the eater, the Arka, the *Uktha*, the *Purusha*, 398, 399; - Agni *Ditri*, eight-*kapâla* cake at New moon, V, 8; Agni *Pathikâit*, expiatory eight-*kapâla* cake at New moon, 10; ditto at *Agnihotra*, 191; at *Avamedha*, 350; Agni Vaisvânara, ditto twelve-*kapâla* one, 11; Agni created out of *Pragâpati* with a life of a thousand years, 15; Agni and Soma become eater and food, 16; Agni created by the Brahman and placed on earth, 27; takes *Sri's* food and receives (*mitra-vindâ*) oblation (eight-*kapâla* cake), 62-65; Agni (fire) one of the six doors to the Brahman, 66; Agni the teacher of the *brahmakîrim*, 86; evolved from the earth, and from him the *Rîg-veda*, 102; to Agni offering is made in *Âditya* at *Agnihotra*, 112 seq.; Agni's breath taken by the sun, whence fire has to be fanned, 130; triad - Agni, Ar-

kya, Mahad uktham, 172; Agni, *Vâyu*, and *Aditya* are light, might, glory (fame), 173; Agni *Vivîki*, expiatory eight-*kapâla* cake at *Agnihotra*, 192; Agni *Samvarga*, ditto cake, 193; Agni *Apsumat*, ditto, 193; Agni *Sûti* ditto, 194; the first of the ten deities ('all the gods') receiving oblations of drops, 280; Agni the dark-necked, 316; Agni sacrificed as animal victim, 319; Agni as the chamberlain of king Marutta, 397; oblation to Agni *Âyushmat*, 439; is the good abode, 457; is the self of all the gods and regent of the earth, 505.

Agnîdh, ox his fee at *Darapeya*, III, 119; gold for *pañkabîla* oblation, 121; bullock for *Saṭrâmani*, 142; - sprinkles fire-altar with water to appease it, IV, 169; is Agni, 169; follows the fire with the single sword (=line), 192.

Âgnîdhra (= *Agnîdh*), same as Agni, III, 122; is the spring season, V, 44; is under the Brahman, 137.

Âgnîdhra, n. (fire-shed), is the air, IV, 196; associated with *Trishubh*, V, 495; between it and *Âtîvâla* is the gate of sacrifice, 497.

Âgnîdhriya, III, 97; taken out of *Gârhapatya*, 265; is the wind in the air, 315, 317; the through-breathing, 317; prepared first of *dhiṣṭeya* hearths, IV, 242; at *Agnîdayana* built of eight bricks, 243.

Agnihotra, both oblations offered with the same formula, IV, 297; the offerer of the *Agnihotra*, in the other world, eats food in the morning and evening, 299, 325; to be offered by the Sacrificer himself on new and full moon, V, 21; the four oblations are what, in the *Avamedha*, are those to the horse's feet, 34, 35; esoteric theories on *Agnihotra*, 46 seq.; how performed when staying abroad, 47; six couples in *Agnihotra*, 48; disputation about *Agnihotra*, 79, seq., 112 seq.; speculations on the effect

of the two oblations, 114; expiations of mishaps, 178 seq.; Agnihotra a long sattra terminating with death or old age, 178; Agnihotra cow and calf are speech and mind, 16; the sky and wind, 182; Agnihotra cow is Aditi, the earth, 181; Agnihotra is conducive to heaven, 190; directions in case of Agnihotrin dying whilst from home, 197 seq.; is the mouth of sacrifices, 302.

Agnīkāvāna, III, introd. xxvi, xxvii, 143 seq.; is a uniform (comprehensive) ceremony, 143; IV, introd. xvi seq.; includes all sacrificial acts, IV, 266; shown in detail, 256 seq.; not to be performed for another, 279.

Agnīśī, is born in the other world as the male of 200, IV, 298; next to that of the fire of the fire, says so, 299; he becomes of Agni's form and a fool belongs to him, 299; he becomes the deity Agni, and hence immortal, 296; in the other world eats food every hundred years or not at all, 299.

Agnīśī, a supernumerary special-rite, III, 216.

agnik-hetra, preparation of ploughing, &c., III, 325 seq.

agnināruta-śastra, connected with Brhaspati, the Visve Devāḥ, the upper region, &c., IV, 107; on second day of Asvamedha, V, 352.

agnināruta-stotra = yagnīyagñīya, IV, 252 n.

Agni-nāmāni (pārthāni), III, 82.

Agninetrāb (devāḥ), seated in east, III, 148.

Agni-Pūshan, eleven-kapāla cake to, III 55.

Agnirahasya, IV, 281 seq.

Agnīśava, IV, 298.

Agnishomīya, animal offering, IV, 245; is without Samishrayagus, 260; twenty-one at Asvamedha, 372, 375; eleven at Purushamedha, 404.

Agnishroma, III, introd. xii seq.; victim of, 11; the stomas used,

127; three different modes of its performance, IV, 287; V, 140; the stomas and śastras of Gyotishroma Agnishroma form a bird, hence equal to Mahāvratasāman and Mahad uktham, IV, 287, 289; a hundred and six or a hundred and twelve in the year's session, V, 147.

Agnishroma-sāman, III, introd. xii seq., 12; IV, 282; on first day of Asvamedha, V, 376.

Agnishrut Agnishroma, V, 418.

Agni-Soma, eleven-kapila cake to, III, 45, 56, 69; animal offering to, 68; cake at Full moon, V, 6.

Agni-Vishnu, eleven-kapila cake to, III, 44, 54; ditto at dusk of Agnīkāvāna, 247.

agniyogana (cycling of fire-altar), IV, 249 seq.

Agnīvilhāna, not to be performed under special nakṣatras; but at new moon of Varāḥa or other, V, 1, 2.

āgrayama-graha, III, 6; produced from nḍānavates-sāman, and from it the trivra and trays-trivra, IV, 11.

āgrayageshī, offering of first-fruits, instituted by the gods, III, 46.

āgur, formulas, V, 32, 157.

agūrtin, V, 32; 37 n.

āgyabhāga, at animal sacrifice, V, 124.

āgya-śastra, connected with Agni, the Vasus, the east, trivra, and rathantara, IV, 100.

Āhavaniya: (Gādhavya) set up on cart, III, 104; head of sacrifice, 233; (in ukthā) sacrificer's divine body, 262; if it goes out, is again taken out of Gārhapatya, 265; is the sun (or heavenly Agni), 309; its hearth is the sky, its fire the sun and moon, 315; is the world of the gods, 344; the sky, IV, 196; V, 178; or fire-altar, is the Sacrificer's divine body, IV, 226; place for, 307; atonement for Āhavaniya going out, lest the eldest son die, V, 82; ditto for Agnihotra fire going out, 187 seq.; is the (immortal) womb of the gods, 271.

- ahîna, III, introd. xix, xx.
 âhuti, oblation, etymology, V, 27.
 Arbhâvata. See Pratidarsa.
 aida-sâman, produced from the anushrubh, and from it the manthin (graha), IV, 10; how chanted, ib.
 Aikshvâka. See Purukutsa.
 Aindravâyava-graha, III, 6.
 air (antariksha), its union with Vâyu, III, 148; connected with Indrâgni, Vîsvakarma, and Vâyu, 188; heals what is injured and torn in the earth, 221; air-world fashioned by Rudras by means of trishrubh, 234; the home of the waters, 416; supported by the sun, IV, 28; is of trishrubh nature, 57; is the expanse (varivasi), 88; is the lower abode, 203; three oblations of air (or wind, vâta) on chariot, thereby yoking it, 235; air, space, invisible, V, 17; steadied by birds and sun-motes (2 sunbeams), 126; connected with Sarasvatî, 241; is a place of abode for all the gods, 505.
 aers, vital. See pîâza.
 Aishvarya, a family of priests, V, 45.
 Akkavâka, cart laden with barley and yoked with ox his fec at Darapeya, III, 119; is under Hetu, V, 137.
 akshara, III, 158; part of speech, 203; (the imperishable) is the one brick constituting Agni, the great Brahman into which all beings pass, IV, 343.
 aksharapânkti metre, is the heavenly world, IV, 88.
 akshâvâpa (keeper of dice) one of king's ratnâni, III, 63, 107.
 akshâvâpana, III, 64.
 Akûkshya, III, 153.
 all-herb seed, sown on site of burial ground, V, 432.
 alms, begging of, by Brahmaçârin, V, 49, 50.
 altar. See fire-altar.
 amâvâsyâ, the night of the sun and moon's staying together; new moon, V, 9.
 ambâ, ambikâ, ambâlikâ, V, 321.
 amrita, the nectar of immortality. See immortality.
 amritavâkâ, a certain bird, (keeps most apart of birds), produces the kshiprayena (quick eagle), V, 370.
 Amsa, pârtha-oblation to, III, 82.
 amsu-graha, drawing of, III, 5; is Pragâpati, the body of the sacrifice, the mind, the out-breathing, the eye, V, 105, 106.
 anaddhâ-purusha (sham-man), III, 197, 206; looked at, 227.
 aṅgali, joining of hands, a sign of reverence, IV, 165.
 Ângiras, is the breath, III, 254; Ângiras and Âdityas contending for getting first to heaven, V, 152; the Veda of the Apsaras, 366; with Yama and the Fathers receive offering of Gharma, 481.
 anika, III, 58.
 anikavat, III, 58.
 animal, domestic, seven kinds of, possessed by Mûrets, III, 40; five sacrificial, 162; delight near fire, 164; are Agni, 197; horse, ass, and he-goat, search for Agni, 198, 204-206; consists of body and vital air, 293; born with bones, though not introduced with bones into womb, 254; mounted on its middlebody from left side, 361; having received the focus standing, gives birth whilst lying down, 363; left side of well-filled animal more raised than right, 400; do not diminish, being established in the womb, 401; are the vital airs, 402; the kûmpurusha, gaura âraṇya, gavaya, ushîra, sarabha unfit for sacrifice and not to be eaten by Brâhmaṇa, 412; of animals the head born first, IV, 40; biggest about the middle, 40, 50; the right side the stronger, 40; there are animals in the air, 46; are food, 46; four-footed (lives) in the air, 50; four kinds of four-footed domestic animals, 56; four-footed, connected with Vasus and Rudras, freed from death through the katurvîma-stoma, 68; tame, ruled over by Brîhaspati, 74; one-hoofed, ruled over by Varuna, 75; small, ruled over by

Pūshan, 75; wild, ruled over by **Vāyu**, 75; threefold (father, mother, child; or embryo, amnion, chorion), 110; seven domestic animals, 211, 277; seven wild ones, 277; five (sacrificial) — man, horse, bull, ram, he-goat, 299; by these **Pragâpati** could not attain heaven, 300; **Pragâpati** the one proper sacrificial animal, 304; sacrificial animal is **Pragâpati**, and represents all deities, 404; draught animal pulls with all four limbs, V, 78; walks on two feet at a time, 78; one-hoofed originates from **Indra's** ear, 213; are sixteenfold, 252; tame and wild ones bound at **Asvamedha**, 266; if so, get earth and heaven respectively, 306; if wild ones set free, 307.
animal-brick (cattle-brick), III, 156, 166, 187.
animal sacrifice (*apahumbha*), III, 166, 187; to **Vāyu** and **Pragâpati**, 171 seq.; each of 600 lbs. of, 175; consists of mountain animal cake and chief oblation, 180; a.s. of **Soma** is *svayavipant*, IV, 262; the performer of it eats food every six months in the other world, 292; esoteric remarks on, V, 118 seq.; a ransoming of one's own self, 118; should be performed at least once a year, 119; effect of the *havirvâgâ* or the **Soma** sacrifice order, 117; is a great **Soma**-sacrifice, not avishit, 122; with or without **Soma**, 122, 127; *Kitumasya* animal sacrifice, 122.
animal victim, five, III, 156; their heads, 164; heads placed in fire-pan in first layer, 400; ropes of unequal length, 166; not only two slaughtered, 171; by male victims the Sacrificer ransoms himself, V, 119; to whom does it belong? (**Pragâpati**, **Sûrya**, **Indra**-**Agni**), 127, 128.
anirukta, III, 110, 179; V, 506.
añkāṅka (metre), is water, IV, 89.
anna-homa, III, 37; V, 295, 377.
anointment, of Sacrificer, at **Râgasûya** (on tiger skin), III, 80; at **Agnikâyana** (on black ante-

lope skin), IV, 226; (on skin of he-goat), 227; by **Soma** and the nectar of immortality, 251; with fat gravy at **Sautrâmanî** (on black antelope skin), V, 250 seq., 252.

ant (*vamri* and *upadikâ*), gnaw **Vishnu's** bowstring, obtain the taste of food, and find water where they dig, V, 142; are the first-born of the world (?), 450; **ant-hill**, III, 206; is this earth, 207; used for the clay of **Pravargya** vessels, V, 450.

antarikshīnari, etymology, III, 318; IV, 50.

Antaryat, a **Gandharva**, V, 30.

antaryāman-gatrah, III, 6; produced from *svāra-sīman*, and from it the *parvaloc-toma*, IV, 7.

antelope skin, black, sign of initiation, III, 186; is the sacrifice, 213, 266; IV, 226; V, 249, 417; its hair the metres, III, 255, 266; V, 249, 198; is the earth, III, 219; the seat of the good work, 219; the ten gold plate sewn, 266; mountain of Sacrificer on, IV, 226; used in burning dead body, V, 204, 203; for consecration at **Sautrâmanî**, 249.

anumantrea, V, 42, 43, 183, 184.

Anumati, eight-k *pīla* cake 40, III, 42; is this earth, 44; a garment the feet, 44; pap to her, the extreme end of one of the four regions, IV, 264.

Anumohanti, the **Apsaras**, is an intermediate quarter (of N. W.), or the night, IV, 107.

anupraisha, V, 244.

anucāsana, precepts (of the *Vedāṅga*), to be studied, V, 98.

Anushrubh, connected with north, autumn, *vairāga*, *ekavimśastoma*, III, 91; produced from the autumn, and from it the *aśva-sīman*, IV, 10; in the form of it four-year-old kine produced, 39; is the northern region, 45; is speech, 89, 144, 277; of thirty-two syllables, 206; is the voice (of **Pragâpati**), 327, 328; what takes place after the three *savanas* is of **Anushrubh** nature, V, 106; the horse is of

- Anushrubh nature, 304; Anushrubh related to the north, 304.
 anuvākya, is in the Gâyatri metre, V, 26.
 anuyāga, eleven, III, 183; are thunderbolt, hail, and (heavenly) fire-brand, V, 42, 43.
 Anvādhyas, the guardians of one of the four regions, V, 359.
 anvāhārya, mess of rice, the dakshinā at Darśapūrnamāsa, V, 7; etymology, 23.
 Anvāhārya-pākana fire, atonement for its going out lest his cattle die, V, 83; is the air, 178; blood milked by Agnihotra cow to be boiled on enclosed Anvāhārya, 183.
 anvākyina, old tale, regarding battles between gods and Asuras, not true, V, 14.
 anvāṇī-māhāyeshvri, III, 42 n.; of Agnyādāna at preceding full-moon, V, 2.
 Anvataḥ plākṣhā, a lake in Kurukshetra, visited by swan-maidens, V, 70.
 āpaḥ, etymology, III, 146.
 apimārga (achyranthes aspera), thereby the gods wiped away the Rakshas, III, 52; of a backward effect, 54; used for cleansing one's self after a burial, V, 137.
 apimārga-homa, III, 52.
 āpāra, downward air, becomes the upward air, IV, 16.
 āpāna-bhṛt, the eye-sustainer, IV, 15.
 āpasā bricks, III, 383; lying down of them in first layer, 413 seq.; are waters, 413; IV, 2; of second layer, 23, 34 seq.; are rain, 34.
 āpendra, III, 130.
 apradakshuzam (apasalavi), V, 323, 467.
 apratiratha, is Indra, IV, 192; hymn muttered by Brahman, as the fire is led forward, 192.
 āpri verses, twelve, III, 169, 173; for sautrāmāṇi, V, 244.
 Apsaras,-- from Pragāpati couples issue in the form of Gandharvas and Apsaras, IV, 229; Gandharvas and Apsaras made offering to in rāshtrabhrīt oblations, 230 seq.; Gandharvas and Apsaras affect sweet scent (gandha) and beauteous form (nīpa=apsas), 230; and worship the divine Purusha under these forms, 373; changed into swans, V, 70; Soma Vaishnava their king, the Aśvīras their Veda, 366.
 āpti, (twelve) formulas and oblations, III, 29.
 Āptoryāma, III, introd. xiii, xix-xxiii; V, 419; Atrātra, 397.
 Āpyas, the guardians of one of the four regions, V, 359.
 arani, two, V, 74.
 aranye-nūkyā, the odd cake to Maruts, IV, 210; (extended), V, 376; is speech, IV, 210; the seven rivers flowing westwards, 212; belongs to Pragāpati, 212.
 Ārbhaya-pavamāna, of Vāgapeya, III, 9.
 Arbuda Kidraveya, king of snakes, V, 367.
 ardhendra oblations of ghee, to Indra coupled successively with one other deity (Agni and Indra, &c.), forming part of the Vasor dhārā, IV, 216.
 Arguna, mystic name of Indra, III, 99.
 arikupa (metre) is the water, IV, 88.
 Arishzanemi, the chieftain (grāmāṇi) of the sacrifice (or the north), is the second autumn month, IV, 107.
 arka, flame, the four, IV, 334 seq.; is the fire on the fire-altar, 342; the fire-altar (Agni-Pragāpati), 346, 348; is Aditya; the vta' air, 349; the Arka is Agni, Aditya, Prāṇa, the Purusha, 398, 399; the Arka-nature of the Arkya, 402; is the waters, 402; Arka and Asvamedha, become Death, 404.
 arka (calotropis gigantea), is food, IV, 157; leaf used for offering to Rudra with, 157; thrown into the pit (kāvāla, 166; the arka sprang from Rudra's place of rest, 158; is inauspicious and hence must not be trodden upon, 166; arka flowers, leaves, &c., 334 seq.

arka (? hymns of praise), food for the gods, V, 232.

arkāsvamedhasantati, oblations, IV, 239.

arkis,—haras, sokis, arkis (heat, fire, flame), of Agni, IV, 382.

ārksyat, V, 155 n.

Arkya, is the fire (Agni-Pragîpati) and the food thereof, IV, 342 seq.; the Arka-nature of the Arkya, 402; triad—Agni, Arkya, Mahad uktham, V, 172.

arm, exerts strength, III, 200; stroking arms of king, 88; is fifteen-fold, IV, 79; food is eaten therewith, 306; arms and legs consist of twenty-five parts each, 325; parts of arm, V, 75, 77; the different parts, 162.

arm-pit, from it watersprings, IV, 169.

arrow, three, III, 88; arrow's range—Pragîpati's width, 171; Pragîpati's height, 25; arrow's width, 230; arrow is strength, 235.

âshvamahestrya, III, 169.

ârtava, 1 season and period, the ruler of seasons, IV, 74.

Arūna, A parvī, Gautama, a teacher, IV, 293, 294.

Arūnya, See Sotaketa.

Arūti, bewitches Bhadrishva, Âtithi, Arūti, III, 147; his view on Dvapara Yuga, V, 37; on Âgnihotra, expiation, 182; on Uddhāna.

arvan, horse, carries the Asuras, IV, 401.

Ārya, and Śūdra, ruled by day and night, IV, 74; a clever woman the Ārya's mistress, V, 126.

Aryaman, his path above upper region, III, 59, 122; pāṭha-oblation to, 83.

Asamratha, Âditya's chieftain (grîmanu), is the second ramy n onth, IV, 106.

âsandi. See throne-seat.

Âsandivat, a city, V, 396.

Arani, a form and name of Agni, is the lightning, III, 160.

asapatnâ, bricks, of fifth layer, IV, 83 seq.

ashâdâ (ishrakâ), the earth, III, 154, 387; IV, 95; conn. with Savitrî, III, 190; made by Sacri-

ficer's wife, 190; for ang ot, by the mahishi, 238; is speech, 290, 387; IV, 95; etym. logy, III, 387; is the vital air—388; laying down of, 388, 391; is the mahishi, 391; IV, 2.

ashes, the foul part (pâpm) of food eaten by Agni, III, 261; thrown out in the evening and morning, 261; taken to the water, 293; some of it brought back and put in the pan, 294, 295.

ashâdâza-stoma, is speed, and the year, IV, 63.

ashâkatvârizza-stoma, the revolving sphere, the year, IV, 66; the last of the even stomas, 218.

ashrami, eighth day after full moon, sacred to Pragîpati, III, 180; is a joint of the year, 180.

Asita Dhîva, king of the Asuras, V, 368.

Ashtamegas, a branch of the Karvapa and a of priests, win the Soma-drink from the Bhūt viras, IV, 345 n.

asman, etymology, III, 148.

astavyas, a metre, is all for, IV, 52.

as-trisabhi, how created, III, 147; substitute for cow and sheep, 197; horses doubly impregnate, 197; arches for Agni, 234, 235; is addressed, 224; imbued with benevolence, 225; to present, Vajra and Sutra, 227.

Asura, arrogance and deceit, III, 11; rep. sed by Indra and Bhṛgu—pati in the south, IV, 192; contend with the gods for the regions, 193; hold to untruth, and the gods to truth, 257; serve the divine Purusha as Mityâ, 37; carried by horse Arvan, 401; created from the downward breathing of Pragîpati, V, 1; smitten with evil and darkness, 13, 14; the tales of their fights with the gods not true, 14; through arrogance offer into their own mouths and come to naught, 22; contend with the gods for Pragîpati, the sacrifice, 105; Asita Dhîva their king, magic art their Veda, 368; Asuravidyâ, 368 n.; driven from the regions, 423; from the

- earth, 429; people of Asura nature (the Easterns and others) make their burial-places round, 403; and line them with stone, 403.
- âsuta and suta, V, 242 n.
- Asuri, on truth, V, 317.
- asva, etymology, III, 146; V, 328.
- Asvamedha, III, introd. xxvi; a super-numerary (special) rite, 246; is the sun, IV, 239, 304; how produced, 403; Arka and Asvamedha become Death, 404; the Darzapûrnamâs (the original (normal) Asvamedha, V, 33; Asvamedha the moon, 33, 34; performance, 274 seq.; is the bull among sacrifices, 276; wealth (? distinction), royal sway, departs from him who performs the Asvamedha, 285; means royal sway, 288; Asvamedha performed by Pragâpati, 289; from of old a hero was born to the performer of the Asvamedha, 295; where they perform it, Parjanya rains whenever they list, and security of possession is assured to the people, 295; the Asvamedha Pragâpati reserves for himself, assigning the other sacrifices to the gods, 295; is the king of sacrifices, 298; the victims tied to the stakes, 298 seq.; is the royal office, 303; a disused sacrifice, 334; belongs to all the deities, 336; is a Kshatriya's sacrifice, hence commenced in summer, 317; but rather in spring, 347.
- Asvapati Kaikeya, a king and theologian, IV, 393.
- Asva Sâmudrâ, V, 302.
- avastomiyâ, oblations, V, 337, 341.
- Âvatarâvî. See Buhla.
- avattha (ficus religiosa), leaves used for salt-bags, III, 33; tree on which the Maruts stayed, 34, 84; branch broken off by itself used for making a bowl, 67; consecration vessel, for a Vaiya to sprinkle with, made thereof, 84; originates from Indra's skin, (and honour), V, 215; means honour, 220; not to stand near a grave, 427; is the abode of plants?, 427.
- âvin-graha, III, 6.
- âvina-jasra, III, introd. xviii, xx.
- Âvinau, by two syllables gain two-footed men, III, 40; two-kapâla cake to, 62; are twins, 62; reddish-white he-goat their victim at Sautrâmanî, 129; cure Indra from the effects of over-draught of Soma, 132; drink Soma with Namuâ, 135; two-kapâla cake at Sautrâmanî for healing, 137; lay down the second layer of altar, as physicians and Brâhmanas, IV, 23, 30; are the Adhvaryus of the Agni-dityâ and the gods, 23; took the part of Pragâpati below waist and above feet which is sacred to them, 28; became everything here, 30; (with the help of Sarasvatî) they heal Indra, when his vital energy is taken from him by Namuâ, V, 216, 223; the he-goat their guerdon, 216; are the physicians of the gods, 217; he-goat immolated to them, 217; are the eyesight, and fiery spirit, 217, 218; she-goats sacred to them, 218; bring the Soma (plant) from Namuâ which Sarasvatî then distils, 232; connected with the earth (and the morning-pressing), 241, 247; possess healing-power (bhaishagya), 243; are the Adhvaryus of the gods, 245; connected with spring and summer, 247; together with Sarasvatî they prepare the Sautrâmanî to heal Indra, 249; Asvinau, Sarasvatî, and Indra are everything here, 253; and have a share in the gharma, 475; two he-goats black (? white) on lower part of the body their victims at Asvamedha, 300; restore Dadhyañk Âtharvama's head after becoming his pupils, 444, 445; 475.
- âvini, regional bricks, IV, 23 seq.; what part of the body they represent, 28.
- Atharvan, is the breath, III, 217;

- the Atharvans the Veda of the Gandharvas, V, 365.
- Atharvāṅgiras, the study of their texts, V, 97.
- āti, an aquatic bird, V, 70.
- atigrāhya-grahāḥ, III, 6.
- atikkāṇḍas, comprises all metres, III, 104; V, 497; the covering (including) metre in form of which the lions were produced, IV, 38; beyond all metres, 110, 385.
- Atirātra, III, introd. xiii, xvii xx, xxiii; confusion of its sāmāns in session of a hundred Atirātras, V, 92; two in the year's session, 147; Atirātra with all the stomas, 330, 333, 395.
- atirikta-stotra, III, introd. xx, xxii.
- ātithya (guest-offer) 21, ends with the loka, IV, 250; is the food of the Soma-sacrifice, V, 491.
- Atnira, Agni's. See Para.
- Atyagashroma, III, introd. xvi; last day of Atirātra, avākya, xvii.
- Audarya (son of Udaya). See Mundibha.
- Audhara. See Kṛishṇa.
- audgrāhya oblations, III, 249; at Avamedha, V, 279, 8, 4.
- Aupamanyava. See Marutta.
- Aupreṇ. See Arzra.
- Aupri Gāruṇeya, descends to earth from upper region, III, 2, 3.
- aurina-sāman, how chanted, IV, 7.
- austerities. See tapas.
- autumn, produced from the ear, and from it the amshrabha, IV, 10; consists of months Isha and Ūga, 49; rainy season and autumn are the air-world and the middle of the year, 49; in autumn creatures are brahmanvat (rich in growth), 45.
- avabhṛitha, III, 185; at the animal sacrifice, V, 121; at Sautrānazi, 264.
- avakā plants, placed below and above tortoise, III, 392; means water, 393; IV, 49; below and above the lower ritavyā bricks of third layer, IV, 45; drawn across the altar to appease it, 174; etymology, 175; afford least subsistence, 175; sepulchral mound covered therewith, V, 436.
- avākāra, formulas, V, 46; are the vital airs, 469, 492.
- avatāna, 'unstringing' formulas and oblations, IV, 163.
- avi (ewe), is this earth, III, 156; victim, 156; created from Pragāpati's ear, 402; sacred to Varuṇa, 411; is the skin of (supplies a covering for) the two-footed and four-footed, 411; fashioned first of forms by Tvashtri, 411.
- avid-formulas, III, 89.
- Avikshita. See Marutta.
- āvis, III, 89.
- āvitta, III, 89.
- avākya, III, introd. xvii.
- axle, denoted twice in, III, 291.
- Avasthita, a performer of a sattra V, 61.
- Avayas, Yavis and Avayas, the former and latter formulas, connected with creatures generally, and the Gandharvas, a stoma, IV, 69; the lords of creatures, 76.
- Āvagava. See Marutta.
- Avas, is Agni, III, 125.
- Ayashroma, form of Agnishroma, IV, 287.
- Bahishpamāna, of Vāgapeya, III, 8; of Abhiśāmya, 69; at Avamedha, is heaven, V, 307, 306; when chanted 'outside,' 305.
- bahvr̥ka, theologians of the Rig-veda, V, 72.
- Bālāki, V, 165.
- balance, the right edge of the vedi is a balance in which the Sacrificer is weighed, V, 45.
- Bāhika, Prātipiya, a Kauravya king, V, 259.
- balvaga, grass used for winding round throne-seat, V, 461.
- bamboo. See reed.
- barefooted, consecrated king never stands barefooted on earth, III, 129.
- Bārhaduktha, Āpri-verses, V, 302.
- Bārhaspatya pap, III, 21, 28, 36.
- barhis, is the sky, V, 248.

- barley corn, V, 405.
 barren, wife possessed with *Nirriti*, III, 65.
 bath, purificatory, V, 438.
 beast, wild (*ivāpada*, tiger, &c.), spring from Soma flowing from lower opening, III, 131.
 bee, wounds the horse's thigh, V, 330.
 Belief and Unbelief, as two women with a man (Wrath) between them, V, 111, 112.
 belly, gets and eats the food, IV, 115; food of all kind meets together there, V, 37.
 Bhadrāsena Āgātatrava, bewitched by *Aruci*, III, 141.
 Bhaga, *pārtha*-oblations to, III, 82.
 bhāgadugha, carver or tax-gatherer, III, 62; one of the *ratnabā*, 63.
 Bhāllaveya, V, 354, 393; cf. *Indradymna*.
 Bharadvāja, *ṛshi*, III, introd. xiv; is the mind, 107; etymology, 107.
 Bhāradvāja, a teacher, IV, 352.
 Bharata, is *Pragāpati*, III, 292;
 Bharata *Danśhanti*, son of *Sakuntalā*, performed the *Ayamedha*, V, 399; seizes the sacrificial horse of the *Satvas*, 401.
 Bhāratas, the throne of, III, 106;
 Bharatas, V, 399, 401.
 Bhauvana. See *Vivakarman*.
 Bhava, a form and name of *Agni*, is the rain-cloud (*parganya*), III, 160.
 Bhesajā, (medicine) a work of the *Ātharvavikāś*, V, 365 n.
 Bhimasena, performs *Ayamedha*, V, 396.
 Bhrigu *Vāruṇi*, sent out by his father *Vāruṇa* to gain knowledge, V, 108 seq.
 Bhrigus, one is to sacrifice along with them, IV, 200; sacrifice was offered by them, 262.
 bhṛūzahatyā, V, 311.
 bhūh, *bhuvaś*, *svaś*, - *sāman* on, IV, 145; are the three worlds, 145; the first words spoken by *Pragāpati*, V, 12; the five syllables made by *Pragāpati* the five seasons, 13; luminous essences evolved from triple science, 103; expiatory oblations to be made therewith, 103, 104; are at-expitiory, 180; some perform the sprinkling of the *Sacrificer* with these at *Sautrāmāni*, 253.
 bhūta, living being, existing thing (? spirit) — freed from death through *trayastrimśa*-stoma, connected with *Rbhus* and *Viśve Devāś*, IV, 70; the *bhūtānām patib* their lord, 73; *Pragāpati* *Parameshṛbin* their lord, 76, 350, 354; daily offerings to them, V, 95.
 bhūtānām patib (*Pragāpati*, the year), husband of *Ushas*, III, 158; IV, 73.
 Bhūtavira, a family of priests, IV, 345 n.
 Bhūti, goddess of prosperity, homage paid to her, III, 324.
 bhuvah. See *bhūh*.
 bifurcate. See forking.
 bilva (*Aegle Marmelos*), V, 374.
 birds,—how created, III, 148; when born, body produced first, IV, 136, 139; flesh not to be eaten by *Agnihit* (say some), 296; contract and expand their wings and tail, 300 seq.; the little bird which bustles with 'aha-lak,' V, 325; birds the people of *Tārksya* *Vaiparyata*, the *Purāṇa* their *Veda*, 369.
 bird-like body, is the fire-altar, IV, 285; takes *Pragāpati* to heaven, 300. •
 black, is sickly, IV, 137.
 blood, oblations of, V, 394.
 boar, produced from ghee, III, 122; boar and cow friendly together, 103; shoes of boar's skin, 102; vicious boar *durvārāha* unclean, V, 178; earth torn up by boar, used for *Pravargya* vessels, 451.
 body, founded on the mind, III, 270; linked to food by the (channels of the) vital airs, 270; is kindled by the sun, and hence warm, IV, 135; produced before wings and tail, 136; has thirty limbs, 167, 222; is twenty-five-fold, 168, 222; if immortal, is boneless, 178; the fire-altar, *Mahāvratā*, and *Mahaduktham* are the • *Sacrificer's*

divine, immortal body, 279; consists of couples, 284; consists of five mortal parts (hair, skin, flesh, bone, marrow) and five immortal parts (mind, voice, breath, eye, ear), 290; the immortal parts are the vital airs, 292; body (fifteenfold, 309; fivefold, 309); consists of 101 parts and has as many vital airs, 325, 326; parts constituting Prāṇapati's body, 347; of thirty parts, 383, 387; body of dead man how to be treated, V, 201 seq.; body of man is of three parts, 261.

bone, --bricks are Agni's bones, IV, 20; bones run both lengthwise and crosswise in the body, 113; in wings and tail of birds no

ness, strength of man, 72 are the endoskeletones, but 760 of them, 227; V, 15 bones of fat and oil possess are anke, V, 20; bones of de m are collected, 117, 119; brought home, a razed on the

buried, 433; arranged like bird's body, 475.

boon, choosing of, III, 103.

bow, string, III, 57; is the R̥gveda's strength, 174; 59; with three arrows given as a ritual fee, V, 11; Visvam's bow and three arrows, 112.

brahmadatyā, redeemed by Atvamadhā, V, 328; atonement for it, 340, 341.

Brahmakārin, not delivered to Death, V, 48; cuts off a night from his life by not bringing firewood, 48, 49; his life a sacrificial session, 49; begging alms, 49, 50; brings firewood to teacher, 52, 54, 85; initiation of Brahmakārin, 86 seq.; teacher, by laying his right hand on him, becomes pregnant with him, and in the third night he is born as a Brāhmana with the Sāvitrī, 88; whether allowed to eat honey or not, 90; may initiate the Unnetri, 137.

brahmakārya, religious studentship, V, 86 seq.

Brahman (n.), is Brāhaspati, III, 3, 21; IV, 192; (prayer), III, 21; (priesthood) connected with the east, Gāyatrī, Rathantara, Trivrat, spring-season, 91; the Brahman (trayī vidyā) first created, 145, 146; is the foundation of everything, 145; is Agni's mother, 149; Prāṇapati is the whole Brahman, 35; constitutes the fourth layer of altar, IV, 59; (priesthood) delivered from death through the trivrat-stoma, 67; Brahmanaspati its lord, 73; is Agni, 85; Agni created as the Brahman, 342; the unborn Brahman, the Rishi, 110; the Brahman, the Yagus, is

the whole seven-syllable Yagus, 110; Brahman, mystic sciences, the 20, 728; established as the V, 41; is the highest of IV, 59; upholds heaven, earth, 59; is the vital air is Prāṇapati, 59, 60; is Gāyatrī, and the sun's disk is the universe, 315; the unperishable, āśman, the brick into Agni into which all beings pass, 243; the true Brahman is the Puruṣa, 100; the universe in the beginning was the Brahman who created the gods, V, 27; the Brahman, having placed the deities in the three worlds and in the higher worlds, went to the sphere beyond these, whence it descended again by means of its manifestations Form and Name, 27; only on being possessed of the Brahman the gods became immortal, 28; delivers creatures to Death, except the Brahmakārin, 48; six doors to the Brahman, 66 seq.; sacrifice to Brahman (study of the Veda), 95 seq.; is a light equal to the sun, 388; the ultimate thing of the universe, 499; Brahman Sva yambhu, performs austerities, 417; offers himself up in the

creatures, and the creatures in his own self, 418; is the first-born, yonder sun, 459.

Brahman (m.), priest, mounts cart-wheel, III, 22; beats the drum, 24; presented with gold honey-cup, 29; gets gold *śatamânas* as fee for protecting sacrifice in south, 108; (V, 211); his fee at *Darapeya* twelve heiters with first calf, III, 119; bull his fee for *paññakula*-oblation to Indra, or brown ox for ditto to Soma, 122; white-backed bullock for *Bṛhaspati*'s ditto pap, 122; neither performs, nor chants, nor recites: yet gets gold *śatamâna*, 141; is the entire sacrifice, 185; as representative of *Bṛhaspati* mutters *Apratiratha* hymn whilst Agni is led forward, IV, 192; is the autumn, V, 45; uses the whole *trayi vidyâ*, 104; initiated for *sūtra* as moon and plants, 135; if he does not know certain rites he may allow another to act for him, 211, 212; formerly they had to be of the *Vasishṭha* family, 212; is the heart of the sacrifice, 245; one fettering the sacrificial horse without announcing it to Brahman is liable to incur injury, 277; the spotless Brahman, is the moon, 317, 318; (? *Pragâpati*, is the horse, 318; boon granted to him, 350; is the highest seat of speech, 391; the guardian of the sacrifice, 459; the best physician amongst priests, 483; is seated, 503.

Brâhmâna (m.), not to be fed upon, having Soma for his king, III, 72, 95; IV, 249; sprinkling of king from *pañña* vessel, III, 83; sprinkles him in front, 94; comes after king, 96; is stronger than king, 110; is followed by the three other castes, 227; *Brâhmâna* and *Kṣatriya* never go behind *Vaiśya* and *Sūdra*, 227; into him, as the representative of the Brahman, all beings pass and are reproduced therefrom, V, 85; effect of the study of the Veda on him, 99 seq.;

not to engage with *Râganya* in disputation, 114; as the scape-goat receives the Sacrificer's pain and evil, 181; the *Brâhmâna* descended from *Rishis*, represents all deities, 195, 196; *Brâhmâna*, if going away offended, is presented with a cow longing for a bull, 195; *Brâhmâna* accepting earthen vessels of dead man, is a remover of corpses, 205; the Soma his drink, 217; not to drink raw spirituous liquor, 260; is a form of the priestly office, 286; king can oppress him, but fares the worse for it, 286; to the *Brâhmâna* belongs the fulfilment of wishes, 287; was of old born endowed with spiritual lustre, 294; every Sacrificer becomes a *Brâhmâna*, 348; *Brâhmâna* knowing nothing of the *Asvamedha*, may be despoiled, 360.

brâhmâna (n.), mystic sense, or dogmatic explanation of an oblation, IV, 240.

Brâhmanâḥkām-sin.—bull his *dakṣiṇâ* at *Darapeya*, III, 119; is under the Brahman priest, V, 136.

Brahmanaspati, lord of the priesthood, IV, 73; is the sun, V, 453.

brahmaudana, priests' mess of rice, V, 274; is seed, 275, 348.

brahmodya, theological disputation, V, 79; between Brahman and *Hotri*, 314; all priests, 388-390.

breast-bone, IV, 114.

breath. See *prâna*.

brick. See *śhrakâ*.

Bṛihaduktha Vâmadevya, V, 302.

bṛihad vaśas, III, introd. xv.

Bṛhaspati, gains *Pragâpati* and ascends to upper region, now his own, III, 2, 59, 122; is the Brahman (priesthood), 3, 21; IV, 192, 229; V, 258, 314; wild rice-pap on seventeen plates, III, 21, 28; afraid of the earth and vice versa, 34; with *Bṛhaspati*'s rulership the Sacrificer is consecrated at *Vâgapeya*, 39; by eight syllables gains *Gâyatri*,

40; pap to *Bṛihaspati*, 59; is Purohita of gods, 59; V, 258; white-backed bullock his fee, III, 59; his the smaller and broken rice-grains, 67; (? is *Varuna*, 68); pap of wild rice to *Bṛihaspati Vāk*, 70; pârtha-oblation to *Bṛihaspati*, 82; IV, 228; assists *Varuna*, III, 113; *samsrip*-oblation (pap), 116; *piṣṭakābala* (pap) on centre of Veda, 120, 121; white-backed bullock fee to Brahman for *Bṛihaspati*'s oblation, 122; *pratyūḡam* havis (pap), 125; *Savitri* and *Bṛihaspati* connected with the regions and the *Ātushṭoma*, IV, 69; ruler of tame animals, 74; protector of upper region, 123; connected with *Vive Devî*, *trîvî* and *travastîrîvî*-*stomas*, &c., 102, 123; as Brahman assists Indra *Apratiratha* in fighting the *Asuras*, 102; takes *Sri*'s holy lustre and receives (*mṛtavi*) dî. pap, V, 62-65; the eighth of the ten duties that the gods receive oblations of drops, 221; offering of barren cows, 422, 423; *Bṛihaspati* with the *Vive Devî*, receives off ring of *Gharman*, 420; is the wind, 420.

Bṛihaspatis var. III, introd. xxv, xxv, 4; the same is *Vāgapeya*, 54.

Bṛihati, metre, the fire-altar becomes like it, III, 219; is the year, 220; consists of thirty-six syllables, 318; in the form of it oxen were produced, IV, 38; is the air, 53; a thousand *bṛihatîs*, 111; is the mind of *Pragâpati*, 327, 328; 12,000 make up the whole *Rik*, 352; twenty-one *bṛihatîs*, as the measure of the universe, 384-387; the *Āturmîsya* formulas amount to 362 *bṛihatîs*, and hence to the year and *Mahāvratâ*, V, 78; by it the gods reached heaven, 156, 172; the *Tâpaskîta*-sattrâ amounts thereto, 172; cattle related thereto, 221; the pressing-stones are of *bṛihatî* nature, 243.

bṛihat-sâman, III, introd. xv, xvi, xx-xviii; connected with Indra, xv; with *Kshatra*, &c., 91; produced from *pañka* *aza* *stoma*, IV, 7; (*bṛihat* *khandas*) is heaven, 19; connected with Indra, the *Rudras*, the south, &c., 101; sung over completed fire-altar, is the sky, 179.

bṛihat-stotra, *Vāgapeya-sâman*, III, 11.

Buḍila Āsvatarâsvi Vaiyâghrapadya, a teacher, IV, 393.

bull, liberated as fee for *Agni-Soma* cake, III, 45; fee for *Indrâgni* cake, 46; dark-grey, fee for *Pûshan's* *trishamyukta*, 56; brown, for *Soma's*, 56; is the *Pragâpati* of cows, 58; belongs to Indra, 65; spotted, 61; fee for oblation to *Maruts*, 61; sacrificial animal, 162, 164 seq.; slaughtered for Indra, 172; eight-hoofed, 177; *rukshana* is *v. 200*, produced in the form of the *Kakubh*, IV, 58; two-year-old *chryavâ*, produced in the form of the *Virâ*, 59; other ages of other metes, 39; originates from Indra's mouth, V, 215; has an excrescence (*dhup*), 176.

bundle-lace (*omakâra*), V, 421 seq.;

four-cornered, 423; 18 made round by people of *Asvina* nature, the Easterns and others, 427, 424; the site for it, 424 seq.; size, 428, 435; ploughing of *sūc*, 431.

calf, year and a half old, is vigour, produced in the form of the *trishubh*, IV, 59; white calf of black cow, 200.

carpenter, his house is the resting-place of the sacrificial horse and its keepers, V, 360.

cart. See chariot.

castes, four, do not vomit *Soma*, III, 131.

cattle, belong to *Pûshan*, III, 55; (*Rudra*, 52); are *purisha*, 201; represented by the *khandasyâ* (metre-) bricks, IV, 36; thrive when it rains, 36; become metres, 36; *Pragâpati*, in the shape of *Gâyatrî*, overtakes the

- cattle, 37; thrive exceedingly in the homestead of him who possesses many of them, V, 126; their eye taken by the sun, whence they only know things by smelling, 130; bovine cattle represent all animals, 332.
- chamberlain. See *kshattri*.
- chanting-place, of *bahishpavamâna-stotra*, V, 305.
- chariot, -race, introd. xxiv, 17 seq.; taken down from stand and turned, III, 18, 98; with three horses, warrior and charioteer, 50, 102; gods driving on, 289; placed north of fire with pole to the east, 290; offering made on head of chariot, IV, 233; chariot shifted sunwise round the fire on the brick-altar, 234; is the sun, 235; by oblations of air the gods yoked the chariot for the attainment of all their wishes, 236; two smashed chariots joined together, V, 195; made complete by means of cords, 318.
- charioteer, not to get down from chariot along with king, III, 104.
- child, born with head first, III, 233; in womb grows by warmth, 254; tries to speak and stand up at the end of a year, V, 17; first speaks words of one or two syllables, 17; born after being fashioned for a year, 88.
- circumambulation, (thrice) of altar (to atone for ordinary walking round), IV, 170; of sacrificial horse (by the king's wives), V, 322, 323.
- clavicle. See collar-bone.
- clay, produced from foam, III, 147, 157; lump of, is Agni, 206 seq.; ditto for *Pravargya* vessels, V, 419.
- clod-bricks, are the regions, III, 315, 348; vital sap, 345; IV, 44; clod of earth deposited midway between a grave and the village, V, 440.
- cloud, originates from smoke, III, 85; is the udder whence the 'shower of wealth' flows, IV, 221.
- coin. See gold coin.
- cold, is the body of him about to die, IV, 136.
- collar-bone, classed with the ribs, V, 164.
- colour (outward appearance), is everything, V, 354.
- commander of army. See *senâni*.
- conception,—one born a year after conception may perform *Āgneyana* without having carried the *Ukhyā Agni* for a year, IV, 274.
- consecration. See anointment.
- copper, piece of, put in mouth of eunuch, III, 90; melts, V, 493.
- cord, is Varuṇic, III, 222, 236; cf. rope.
- costal cartilages, IV, 114.
- cotton tree, (*salmalia malabarica*), the highest tree, V, 317.
- couch, no sleeping on during initiation, III, 185.
- counter-charm, III, 53, 371.
- couples, sustain the realm, IV, 230.
- courier. See *palāgala*.
- cow, *dakṣhinā* for first-fruits, III, 46; her Varuṇic nature, 51; yoke-trained cow *dakṣhinā* for *Īndraturīya*, 51; belongs to Rudra, 52; *dakṣhinā* for oblation to Aditi, 60; cow-raid, 98; cow and boar friendly together, 103; means these worlds, 156; has four nipples, 217; most fit to yield a livelihood, 237; when milked out is worn, 257; (or bull) created from *Pragāpati*'s breath, 402; is (the supplier of) food, 406; not to be injured, 406; milch cow (*dhienu*) is vigour, produced in the shape of the *gagatī* metre, IV, 39; the bricks of altar made such, 172; milked by sitting person, 172; milk of black cow, with white calf, offered to Agni about to be laid on fire-altar, 200; black cow and white calf are night and sun, 200; cow of plenty, seen and milked by *Kāma*, 203; offering of barren cow (to *Mitra-Varuṇa*), 263-265; brings forth within a year, V, 12; cow suckling a strange calf, her milk used for offering in case of an

- Agnihotrim dying, 198; cow, wont to cast her calf, victim of Indra at Aśvamedha, 300; barren cows immolated, 302, 411; tail of barren cow tied to the left arm of a dead man, 438 n.; of Pravargya, see *gharmaduhā*.
- cow-dung, smeared over fire-site, V, 191; used for burning dead body, 202.
- creation, III, 145 seq.; nine primary substances, 147.
- creator. See *Dhātṛi*.
- creatures (*prāṇi*), produced from *Prāṇapati*, the sacrifice, III, 40; in all quarters, IV, 31; *Prāṇapati* their lord, 71; *Yavas* and *Āyavas* their lords, 79.
- cross-visa, offering made on *Svayantī* (*Prāṇi*) of completed altar, IV, 183.
- crow, is untruth, V, 446.
- cubit, means the dakṣarm, V, 449.
- curds and whey, sour curds. See *dadhī*.
- cusheers, wrought of gold threads, for the priests to sit on, V, 360, 361.
- dadhī*, sour curds, is life sap, III, 374; belongs to Indra, 375; a form, or the life-sap, of the earth-world, 389, 390; mixed with honey and ghee, for sprinkling completed fire-altar, IV, 182 seq.; globe of sour curds put on *Samath*, as a form of cattle, 203.
- dadhīghartma*, V, 502.
- Dadhukrā*, III, 27.
- Dadhukrāvan*, III, 27; V, 326.
- Dadhyañk Atharvana*, is speech, III, 218; knew the pure sacrificial essence (the *Madhu*), 414; is decapitated by Indra, and restored by the *Āvins*, 443, 444.
- Daivāpa*. See *Indrota*.
- Dayāmpāti*, instructed by *Sāṅdilyāyana*, IV, 273.
- Dākshāyana*, form of Full and New-moon sacrifice, to be performed for fifteen years, V, 5.
- dakṣhinā* (sacrificial gift), (cows), the way along which they pass, III, 99, 101; *dakṣhinā* as *Apsaras*, the *Gandharva Yagñi*'s mates, IV, 232; the sacrifice is praised for them, 233; no bargaining for, as depriving the priests of their place in heaven, 280; wins food, 285; no oblation without *dakṣhinā*, V, 7; stand south of altar, 17; time for bringing them up at animal sacrifice, 120; are healing medicine, 217; is the glory, 446; must not be given away by the priest, at least not on the same day, 446.
- Dānava* (*Asuras*), V, 95.
- dāvāvadha*, III, 108.
- darbha*-grass, bunch of, put on ploughed *Agnikshetra*, III, 332; contains food and drink, 332; grow up from waters loathing *Vetri*, 332; IV, 41; handful put on mixture of ghee (with gold chips), sour curds and honey for sprinkling therewith (with the top) on completed fire-altar, 182; a means of purification, V, 195, 274; piece of gold tied thereto and taken westwards (as the sun), 195; ditto of silver, taken eastwards (as the moon), 196; rope thereto for tying sacrificial horse, 274; sepulchral mound covered therewith, 436.
- darkness, after the creation of the earth, III, 319.
- Darzapūrnamāsa*, the offerer thereof eats food every half-month in the other world, IV, 299; esoteric remarks on, V, 1 seq., 52 seq.; to be performed for thirty years (twice 360 full and new moons) thereby gaining the 360 days and nights of the year, 4, 5; first performed by *Parameshṭhin* *Prāṇapatiya*, 15; after him *Prāṇapati*, *Indra*, *Agni*, and *Soma*, 15, 16.
- Dazapeya*, III, introd. xxvi; requires special offering-place, 68, 113 seq.; etymology, 114; an *Agnishroma*, 118.
- Dazaratha*, king of *Ayodhyā*, III, 97.
- Dazārātra*, V, 140; last day of, called *avivākya*, III, introd. xvii; compared to the seat (or

- body) of a chariot, the two *śaḍaḥas* being the wheels, V, 149, 155 n., 159.
- dative of purpose, III, 198.
- Dauḥshanti*. See *Bharata*.
- daurgāha*, V, 397.
- dawn, precedes the sun, III, 273.
- day, a separator, IV, 89; originates from the light emitted by the gods when created, V, 14; the (one) day (after day) is the year, 155.
- day and night, nourish *Agni*, III, (271, 27); encompass the universe, 287; days and nights are endless, 352; rulers of *Ārya* and *Sūdra*, IV, 74, 75; are *Pragāpati*'s joints, 281; are forms of *Brahman* and *Kṣhatra*, V, 286.
- dead man, his bones arranged in bird-form, V, 435.
- Death, seizes creatures whilst in *Pragāpati*'s womb, IV, 67; created above (mortal) beings as their consumer, 290; searches for (the half-mortal) *Pragāpati* who has entered the earth, 290; is the year, 356 seq.; he is the ender, 356; has only the body for his share, 357; those who do not become immortal come to life again and become the food of Death time after time, 358; *Agni* as Death, 365; Death is immortal, and the man in the sun, 366; Death is both the man in the sun and that in the right eye, 371, 374; is both one and many, being the man in the sun, he is numerously distributed on earth among creatures; whence also both near and far away, 372; Death becomes the self of him who knows, and makes him immortal, 374; Death, hunger, being alone in the beginning, creates *Mind*, 402; *Arka* and *Asvamedha* become Death, 404; creatures delivered to him, except *Brahmakārin*, V, 48; deaths take place in any world, 339; oblations to Deaths, 340.
- deity, only he is a deity to whom offering is made, IV, 238, 246, 266; different deities and metres identified with parts of the body, 330, 331; the ultimate deity not to be questioned beyond, V, 117.
- Devaganavidyā*, the Veda of *Rakshas*, V, 368.
- devasū* (divine quickeners), offerings to, III, 69, 72; IV, 246.
- dewy season, consists of the months *Tapa* and *Tapasya*, IV, 126; which are supreme, 126, 127; is the sky, 127; is the year's head, 127.
- dhām* (*dhā*), scat-hiding (verse), IV, 291.
- Dhānva*. See *Asita*.
- Dharma* *Indra*, king of the gods, V, 370.
- Dhātṛ* (creator), connected with gods generally, and the *Viś*, IV, 68; lord of the seven *Rṣis*, 73; is *Pragāpati*, 263; the sun, 264; offering of twelve-*kapāla* cake to, 264.
- Dh'ra Sātapaṇya*, instructs *Mahāgāla Gābāla* on the nature of *Agni*, IV, 331.
- dhishanā*, III, 243.
- dhishnya* heartis, III, 317, 318; preparation of, IV, 241; are the clansmen to the fire-altar, as chief, 241; consist of a single layer, 242; only with *lokamprizā* bricks, 242; enumeration of, 242 n.; eight, 360.
- dhṛishṭi*, fire-tongs, V, 39 n., 500.
- Dhṛitarāshira*, V, 401.
- dhṛiti*, four oblations offered every evening of preliminary year of *Asvamedha*, V, 285, 288, 364.
- dhruva-graha*, III, 11.
- Dhvasan Dvaitavana*, king of the *Matsyas*, performed the *Asvamedha*, V, 398.
- dice, game at, III, 106, 112; V, 330.
- dikshā*, III, 68; at *Agnīḥayana* to last a year, 181; insignia of, 185; of *Agnīḥayana*, 246 seq.; is speech, IV, 67; springs from faith (*araddhā*), 138; is the body of the sacrifice, 240; of seven days at *Asvamedha*, V, 290 seq.; twelve, 371; is the vital airs, 291; twenty-three days at *Purushamedhā*, 403.

dikshāyīyeshri, III, 44; IV, 258; without samishrayagus, 258.

diśām aveshrayaḥ, III, 120.

diśyā, regional bricks, in first layer, III, 188 seq.; in second layer (=āyini), IV, 31 seq.; in third layer, 43 seq.; are the regions and the sun, 43; 44; are the metres, 45.

Diti (and Aditi), viewed by Mitra and Varuṇa, III, 93.

dog, the moon is the heavenly dog, watching the Sacrificer's cattle (to seize them) and coming down at new moon, V, 10; dog's clutch (valaḥṭita), a burning pain, 10; dog driven away by bow or staff, 11, 12; an uncle in animal, 178; four-eyed dog killed at Asvamedha and plunged under horses' feet, 270; dog's untruth, 116.

drabā, drava, arrow, III, 88.

drops, oblation of. See *śtokā*.

drought, produces a lawless condition, V, 18.

drums, seventeen put up, III, 11; one beaten by Brahman priest, 24.

dūrā, gross hard brick, III, 187; 379; is cattle, 379; etymology, 380; is the kshatra, breath and vital sap, 382; grows up bent by joint, knot by knot, 381; spreads and branches out by a hundred fathoms, 381; IV, 2.

Dushitaritu Puroḥitina, a king, V, 260, 272.

Dyādashā, opening Virūṣa of, III, introd. xix.

Dyāvātana. See *Divāsan*.

dyāpara, deer, III, 107.

dyāvira-stoma, is vigour, the year, IV, 63.

dyi; adā, the angle metre in the form of which sheep were produced, IV, 38; of twenty syllables, 385; offering of, V, 312.

Dviyagus brick, is this earth, seen by Indrāgni, III, 381; is the Sacrificer, 381; his human body, 382; laying down of, 383; is the hip of Agni, the sacrificial animal, 400; IV, 2.

Dyaus, gives birth to Agni, III, 272.

Eagle. See *ayena*, *supāna*.

ear, one of the five vital airs (of the head), III, 102; as the regions, is the child of heaven, IV, 10; from it autumn is produced, 10; is Vayāmitra (all-friend), 10; introduced from the left (or upper) side, 11; is one only, 11; sustained by the upward vital air (udāna), 15; one of the five divisions of vital air in the head, 190; the ear evolved from the eye, and from it work, 378, 379; the two ears connected by channel, V, 36; what is thought by mind is spoken by speech, and heard by the ear, 263; Adavarva and Sacrificer whispering in the right ear of the horse, 287.

earth, three of them, III, 27; strand of consecrated *Bṛh* (spati and vice versa, 34; ditto of Varuṇa, 103; union with Agni, 118; bhūman (foundation), 147, 158; (prathvi) the broad, 148, 182; is the Gayatri, 148; connected with Prāgāpati and Agni, 187; created a force consisting of eight syllables, 232; has been by Vasus by means of Gayatri, 233; navel of the earth, 258; a firm resting-place, 278; surrounded by ocean, 301; is circular, 309; the mother of Agni Purusha, 311; is Prāgāpati's Gāhapatya, 314; after its creation, darkness was everywhere, 319; Prāgāpati its begotten, 346; spread on waters like a lotus leaf, 364; is Agni's womb, 364; is established on truth, 364; is the truth, the most certain of worlds, 364; sheds seed upwards in the form of smoke (steam) which becomes rain, 383; bears everything breathing, 387; is measured out, fashioned (mitā); is the course (eva), IV, 88; on earth one thinks with the heart, and the mind, 95; is the most substantial (rasātama) of worlds, 179; is the right wing of Agni-Prāgāpati, the altar and universe, 179; steadied by mountains and

- rivers, V, 126; is the Kshatriya's world, 133; connected with the Āsvins, 241; is higher than the water, 267; he who hides himself, or goes elsewhere, is ultimately found on the earth, 284, 285; no creature, walking erect or horizontally, can go beyond it, 285; is the great vessel, 315; in the beginning of the size of a span, 451; raised up by boar Emūsha (Pragāpati, her husband), 451; is a good abode on which all creatures abide, 457; is white, as it were, 463; her over-lords (Agni, Indra &c.), 464 seq.; becomes a mare and carries Manu, her lord (Pragāpati), 466; is a place of abode for all the gods, 505.
- east, connected with priesthood &c., III, 91; Agni's region, 206; IV, 199; is towards the gods, III, 215, 355; IV, 226; is the Gāyatri, IV, 45; is a queen, 16, 100; the Vasus its lord, 100; protected by Agni, 100; connected with trivṛt-stoma, āgya-śāstra, and rathantara-sūman, 100; is strength and the sky, V, 16, 17; the region of the gods, 388. •
- easterns. See prātya.
- water, the, is Agni, Aditya, the breath, IV, 398.
- egg. See golden egg.
- eight, symbolical significance, IV, 190.
- eightfold, is the year, IV, 66.
- eighty (aṣṭi), means food, IV, 92, 112, 161; of formulas (to the Rudras), 161, 223.
- ekādāmi, of sacrificial stakes, V, 301 n., 309; is heaven, 310; offspring and cattle, 310; a viṣṭig, 335, 404, 405.
- ekapadā, the gapless metre in the form of which goats were produced, IV, 38; of ten syllables, 385.
- ekavīmśa-stoma, is design, the year, IV, 64.
- ekavīmśa, the twenty-first or twenty-one-fold, is the sun, III, 265, 308; IV, 62; V, 331, 333, 334, 335, 378, 402; produced from manthi-graha, and from it the vairāga-sāman, IV, 10.
- ekavīmśa-stoma, connected with Anushṭubh &c., III, 91; at morning-service of Kṛavapāniya, 127; is the upholder (a foot-holder), the sun, IV, 62; through it, connected with Mitra Varuṇa, rain and wind freed from death, 68; the foundation (the feet), 78; connected with Soma, the Maruts, north &c., 102; second day of Ajyamedha an ekavīmśa-day, V, 377; the foundation of Sūmas, 377.
- ekoti, V, 150.
- elevation high-lying ground, people in danger take thereto, V, 300.
- embryonic water of calving cow, III, 78.
- embryos, freed from death through paṭlavīma-stoma, connected with Ādityas and Maruts, IV, 69; killer of embryo is despised, 272.
- Emūsha, the boar (Pragāpati) raises the earth (his wife), V, 451.
- enclosing-stones. See parikṣit.
- enemies (or enemies' sons), when meeting, get on well together on addressing one another by name, V, 288.
- entrail (vṛkālā), if not cleansed of contents in dead body, a tiger springs therefrom when burnt, V, 203, (215).
- Eshavira, a family of priests, V, 45 n.
- etarhi, one-fifteenth part of a kṣipra, V, 169.
- emuch, long-haired, III, 90; malted rice bought from him, V, 219; is neither man nor woman, 219.
- eva, at least, IV, 19 (u eva).
- exorcism, IV, 171.
- eye, food flowed from eye of fallen Pragāpati, III, 312; one of the five vital airs (of the head), 402; there is always water in it, 416; produced from the sun, and from it the rain, IV, 8; is the Rishi Gamadagni, 9; introduced from behind, 9; is one only, 9; sustained by the downward vital air (apāna), 15; one of the five divisions of vital air in the head, 190; the man in the

(right) eye is the man in the sun and the god man of the altar, 368; he is the same as Indra, and has a mate in the left eye, who is Indrāñi, 369; the two persons descend to the cavity of the heart and enter into union, and at the end of their union the man sleeps, 370; from the union of these two divine persons all that exists originates, 371; the man in the right eye (and in the sun) is Death, his feet stick fast in the heart, and on his pulling them out and coming out, he dies, 371; that man in the eye is the vital air and leads forward all creatures, 371; whilst being one only he is numerously distributed among creatures, 372; the eye evolved from breath, and from it the ear, 377, 378; what were man without eyes, V, 124; white, black, and purple, 164, 216, 351; white and black, 351; by means of the body, 358, 360.

taggots, three bunches of, offered and offered upon whilst held at different heights, V, 164.

truth, truth in truth, V, 46; the initiation spring from truth, 158.

taloon. See yena.

tanning, of the sacrificed horse, by the king's wives, V, 525; of the (Pravargya) fire, by the Adhvaryu and his assistants, 467.

test-milk, living on, is penance (tapas), IV, 256; milk of three, two, one test during days of initiation, and of none on day of preparation, 256.

father, is gentle and kind to his son, IV, 25; when asked for anything by his sons, says 'So be it,' 60; takes his dear son to his bosom, 206; sons in early life subsist on father, the reverse in later life, V, 157; returning from abroad is received kindly by sons, 204; father and sons part in time of peace, 308.

Fathers, the hollow is sacred to

them, III, 31; are the clansmen, with Yama their chief, 399; Aditi their mother, IV, 74; the south then (from), 226; are the six seasons, 243; he who does not eat becomes consecrated to the Fathers (dies), V, 20, 21; daily offering of the svadhâ to them, 95, 96; sacrificial practices appropriate to offerings to Fathers, 198 seq.; the world of the Fathers is in the south, 225; the sutâ-liquor of the Sautrâmanî falls to the share of the Fathers of him who drinks it, 233; those who perform on southern fire, go down to the world of the Fathers, 236; live in Yama's realm, 236, 237; the path of the Fathers and that of the gods by one of which all living beings have to pass, 237, 238; are asleep, 263; placed in the immortal womb, 272; are the subjects of Yama Yayasyata, the Yagusthen Veda, 283; the eleven number, and the sacrificial butter belong to them, 413; the door to their world is in the south, 424; their world inclines towards the south, 424; to them belongs the road filled with roots, 427; they are the world of plants, and hide among the roots of plants, 429; not seen together with the living, 440; three in number, 455; with Yama and the Aṅgiras, receive offering of Gharma, 481.

female, lies on left side of male, III, 199; injures no one, 202; after birth conceives again, 311.

fever, one suffering therefrom is consumed by his vital airs, IV, 348.

fifteen, IV, 74, 309.

fifteenfold, is the thunderbolt, III, 413; IV, 85; V, 381; the arm, IV, 79; the neck, V, 163.

fig-tree, Indian. See Nyagrodhas.

finale. See nidhana.

fingers (and toes), have a common connecting link (or limb), III, 417; consist of four parts each, IV, 325; the different

fingers, V, 75; the different fingers and their joints, 161.
 finger-breadth, the lowest measure, IV, 300; thereby fire-altar measured, 300.
 fire, when it goes out it is wafted up in the wind, IV, 333; Fire evolved from Work, 380; is the womb of the sacrifice, V, 3; is one of the six doors to the Brahman, 66; sacrificial fires only desire flesh of victims and the Sacrificer, 119; four kinds of fires, (three worlds and the regions; Agni, Vāyu, Āditya, Kāndramas), 127; there is a fire in every piece of wood, 187; circumambient fire shuts out the Asuras, 271; carried round victims, 307.
 fire-altar (agni; the way in which it is mounted (like a horse), III, 261; building of, 362 seq.; a four-footed animal, IV, 19; contraction and expansion (of animal's body), 20 seq.; of eagle-build, 21; is the year and the three worlds, 29; constructed so as to extend obliquely eastwards, 115; Agni its head, the earth its right, the sky its left wing, Vāyu (the air, vital air) its body, the moon its tail, the sun its heart, 178-80; the Sacrificer's divine body, 226, 256; the body of all the gods, 256; substitutes for complete fire-altars at repeated Soma-sacrifices, 271; is an ocean of Yagus, 278; Fire-altar, Mahāvratā and Mahād uktham are the Sacrificer's divine, immortal body, 279; is a bird-like body, 285; is the earth, the mind, the trunk, the head, 286; is measured by finger-breadths, 300; the sevenfold, 306; for this a vedi of ninety steps, 308; different forms of, from sevenfold to one hundred and one-fold (the latter of which is to be fourteen times that of the former), 309 seq.; by building a smaller fire-altar, one curtails Pragâpati, and by one larger than the largest one exceeds

the universe, 312; the hundred and one-fold contains all objects of desire, is the year, and the sun, 313; it is equal to the sevenfold one, 314; is built between the two performances of the upasads, 316; each layer of bricks and earth takes (or represents) a month to build, 318; the hundred and one-fold the normal one (?), 321 seq.; it gains the immortal light, 323; it is a sevenfold one by its layers, 324; the fire (altar) is fivefold (by food, drink, excellence, light, and immortality), 326; is the food prepared for Pragâpati and becomes the body itself, 341; is the man in the sun, 366; is the earth, air, sky, the sun, the nakshatras, the metres, the year, the body, all beings and all gods, 381-390.
 firebrand, belongs to Rudra, V, 201.
 fire-pan. See ukhâ.
 firmament (nâkî), is the heavenly world above the Virâg (layer), IV, 93, 100; is the regions, 100; in the world of righteousness (sukṛita) above the third luminous back of the sky, 122; the heavenly world, the back of the sky, 198; the heavenly world beyond the highest fire-altar, 250, 304.
 first-fruits, offering of. See Āgraya-neshri.
 fivefold, is the animal sacrifice, V, 125; the Āsvamedha becomes so, 308.
 flax, forms amnion of Agni's womb, III, 252; foul-smell of, 252.
 flesh, not to be eaten during initiation, III, 185; of fat person fat, of lean lean, V, 20; is the best kind of food, 119.
 foam, produced from water, III, 147, 157.
 food, kinds of, given to Sacrificer, III, 36; one kind to be renounced by him, 37; satisfies if proportionate to body, 260, 330; IV, 189; to food the body is bound by the vital airs, III, 270; is taken in from the front (mouth) backward, 402; the resort of the waters, 416; the

purīṣa is Agni's food, IV, 20; is seventeenfold, 79; whilst eating food one drives away evil that is above him, 87; is asked for by sick man when he gets better, 87; is of three kinds, 93; its essence is invisible, 95; threefold (ploughing, rain, seed), 110; benefits the body only if put in the body, 135; put in (a channel of) the vital air benefits the whole body, 139; are sustained by food, 139; they close up if food is not eaten, 139; is the arrow of the Rudras of the earth, 163; sour curds, honey, and ghee are every kind, or the best kinds, of food, 184, 185; is variegated (varied), 196; is served from the right side, 226; is of two kinds, immortal and mortal, 285; not taken by the arm at a cubit's distance, 326; food, when mixed in the body, becomes the body itself, 341; food consumed by one in this world consumes him in the other, V, 262.

road-brick, III, 143, 169.

root, is a support, IV, 117.

root-print of a horse, offered upon, V, 367.

forest-trees, take place in spring, V, 45.

roking, to cut off the branches, of udumbara (santal), IV, 203; medicinal, 121.

rope, the and ropan, IV, 295; form and name, the two forces of the Brahman (the former being the stronger), V, 27, 28; oblation to Forms, see prakṛanti.

rotright (pakṣa), the former and latter, called Yavas and Ayavas, IV, 69, 76.

forty-four-fold, is the trishubh and thunderbolt, IV, 85.

frog, drawn across the altar, to appease it, IV, 174; arose from the water dripping off the altar, 174.

Full and New-moon sacrifice. See Darśapūrṇamāsa.

fumigation, of pan, III, 240; of Pravargya vessels, V, 455, 456.

funeral ceremonies, V, 421 seq.

funeral pile, V, 201, 202, 203.

furrow, what it yields, III, 329; are the vital airs, their meeting-place speech (voice), 332.

Gābāla. See Mahābāla, Satyakāma. gāgata, of Gāgati nature, cattle (animals), V, 252, 284, 313.

Gagati, gained by Vīṣve Devāḥ, III, 40; connected with Vīṣve Devāḥ &c., 91; of twelve syllables, 16; of forty-eight, 18; is the earth, 169, 183; V, 245; all the metres, III, 169, 183; the triple science, 193; gains these worlds from above hitherwards, 281; produced from rainy season, and from it the ṛkṣamaśimam, IV, 8; in the shape of 7 milch cows were produced, 30; in the western region, 35; cattle, 5; V, 313; is the Brahman, and the sun's disk, IV, 94; is the downward breathing of Pragipati, 327, 329; a Rikhu of the Gāgati metre (the ṛkṣamaśimam) brought the Sacrificer to bless, V, 173; the by the Ādityas consecrate the king, 313.

Gāmadāgna, Agni-verses, V, 302.

Gāmadāgna, ṛkṣu, is the eye, IV, 94; is Pragipati, V, 302.

Ganaka, of Videha, questions Yagnavalkya as to Agnihotra, V, 36; obtains Mitravindā sacrifice from Yagnavalkya, 66; questions Brāhmanas regarding Agnihotra, 112 seq.; teaches Yagnavalkya, 114; becomes Brahman, 115; his sacrifice performed with 1,200 cows as dakṣhiṇī, 115.

Gananeḡaya. Pārikṣita, IV, 315; cups of fiery liquor poured out in his palace, V, 93; perform Arvamedha, 396.

Gana Sārkarikāya (Sāyavasat), a teacher, IV, 393, 396.

Gānāruteya. See Aupāvi.

Gāndhāra (Nagnagat), IV, 21.

Gandharva, the heavenly, thought-cleansing, III, 5; is yonder sun, Savitṛi, 195; twenty-seven of them, 19; were the first to yoke the horse, 20; from Pragipati

- couples issue in the form of Gandharva and Apsaras, IV, 229; Gandharva and Apsaras made offering to in *râshtrabhr̥t* oblations, 230 seq.; Gandharva and Apsaras affect sweet scent (*gandhā*) and beauteous form (*rūpa* = *apsas*), 230; and wor-ship the divine Purusha under those forms, 373; carried by horse Vāgin, 401; three Gandharvas (Yavamāt, Uddālāmat, Antaryat) point out to the *Ri* his imperfections in their sacrifice, V, 29, 30; get the Apsaras Urvāṣī back from Purūraya, 69; produce a flash of lightning, 70; teach Purūrayas how to produce a sacred fire, to become one of themselves, 71; the people of King Varuṇa Aditya, the Atharvans their Veda, 365.
- earth, of *prachīta* - sâman, III, introd. 88 seq.
- Gārhapatya, thence fire of *ukhā* is taken, III, 263; if it goes out, is produced by churning, 264; building of, 298 seq.; outlines of hearth, 302; is Agni himself, 309; is the earth, 309; IV, 196; V, 178; the world of men, III, 314; ascended by the gods, 319; on the fifth layer of the fire-altar, IV, 99, 117 seq.; is food, 118; Gārhapatya hearth is a womb, 119; is the vedi, 121, 307; the original Abavāniya (of the hall) is the womb in which the gods begot the Gārhapatya of Agniyana, 308; from it the Abavāniya is born, 308; atonement for Gārhapatya going out, best master of the house did, V, 83; ditto for going out at Agnihotra, 188 seq.
- garment, made to float away, in *avabhr̥tha*, V, 267; a hundred garments the priests' fee, 353; garments man's outward appearance, 353.
- Gautmat. See *suparva*.
- Gātvēdas, etymology, IV, 274.
- gāthā, V, 101, 326 seq.; - cf. *Nārāyaṇsi-gāthā*.
- gātru, V, 163 n.
- gaura, III, 410.
- Gauriviti Śāktya, V, 250.
- Gautama. See *Kurri*, and *Aruna*.
- Gavīm ayanam, a sattra, V, 139 seq.; deities of, 140 seq.; the three great rites of it (*Katurvīma*, Vishavāt, Mahāvratā), 144.
- gavaya, V, 338.
- gavedhukā seed (coix barbata), is refuse, III, 51, 71; used for oblation to Rudra, 51, 63, 71, 158; = grass used for smoothing newly-made vessel, V, 455.
- gâyatra, Agni, III, 148, 161; IV, 277, 300; (*ikbānda*) is Agni, IV, 178.
- gâyatra-sâman, produced from Gâyatri, and from it the *upâmsagraha*, IV, 4; when used in stotras, 4; sung over completed and appeased altar, is Agni, 178.
- Gâyatri, is Agni's metre, III, 31; *Brāha-pati's*, 40; connected with the brahman, &c., 91; is the earth, 148; how produced, 158; of twenty-four syllables, 167; IV, 300; is the vital air, III, 167, 218, 253; produced from spring season, and from it the *gâyatra-stoma*, IV, 4; in the shape of it two and a half year old kine were produced, 39; is the eastern region, 45; the breath of Pragâpati, 327; Gâyatri tripadā, 385; the golden, brilliant-winged Gâyatri who bears the Sacrificer to heaven, V, 53; is the vedi, 56; Gâyatri in bird's shape fetches Soma from heaven, 122; a falcon of the Gâyatri metre (the *bahishpavamāna*) bearing the Sacrificer to bliss, 173; thereby the Vans consecrate the king, 312; is fiery mettle, 312.
- generation, threefold (father, mother, son), III, 240; only takes place above the earth, IV, 128; is stationary, on the other side of the sky and sun, 128; only on this side of the sky, 130.
- generative power, is immortal, III, 354; is only on this side of the sky and sun, IV, 128.
- gharma, hot draught of milk and ghee, V, 442; is the sun, 463, 481; revered as the lord of all

worlds, and of thought and speech, 471, 489; is cow's milk (and ghee), 475.

gharmadughā (samrāg-cow), is 121, Aditi, Sarasvatī, V, 474; is bound by its horns, 474; is given to Adhvaryu, 503.

ghee, in consecration water, III, 79; is seed, 211 &c.; the life-sap of the universe, of waters and plants, 333; a form, or the life-sap, of the air, 390; with gold chips in it offered on completed fire-altar, IV, 182; mixed with sour curds and honey for sprinkling on ditto, 182 seq.; belongs to Agni, 189; is fiery m. ttle, V, 274, 296, 312; is the gods' favourite resource, 296, 410.

Ghora, a work of the Atharvans, V, 366 n.

ghosha (roar), pārtha-oblation to, III, 82.

ghṛtāṭī, the apsaras, is an intermediate region E.N.W., on the offering-spool, IV, 127.

girdle, sign of initiation, III, 185.

go, ox, III, 119.

goat, the-1, means Prajāpati, III, 75; brings forth three years, 35; tells how created, 117, 173; he-goat sacrificed on a 162, 165 seq.; slaughtered for Agni, 162; for Prajāpati, 171; searches for Agni, 204, 205; addressed, 225; represents Brāhmā, 227; is the form of all cattle, 230; sprung from Prajāpati's head, 235; from his voice, 302; eats all kinds of herbs, 245; produced in form of ekapadā metre, IV, 38; the grey (smoke-coloured) animal originates from Indra's eyes, V, 214; hornless he-goat one of the three chief victims in Aśvamedha, 298; produced from the heat in Makha's head, 452.

goat's hair, cut off, III, 229; mixed with clay, 230.

goat's milk, III, 245; used for cooling Pravargya vessels, V, 452, 457, 477.

goat's skin, of he-goat, III, 35.

gods, offer to one another, III, 1;

are thirty-three (or four), 9, 79;

V, 238; slay Vṛtra, III, 48;

smite the Rakshas and gain

universal conquest, 49; sweep

away the Rakshas, 52; obtained

possession of man by trisham-

yukta, 54; love the mystic

mysterious, 144 seq.; created

from (Prajāpati's) upper vital

airs, 150; saw second layer of

altar, 189, 190; were produced

from out of these worlds, 239;

are threetold, 239; wives of

gods placed fire-pan in lap of

the earth, 242; wives of gods

are the plants, 242; gods make

food of whoever hates them

and give it to Agni, 259; Āha-

vaniya is the world of the gods,

344; their life is longer than

man's, 344; one must do as

the gods did, 357; become the

truth, 363; have their birth-

place in the east (the Āhava-

niya), 389; order: Agni (and

Dik-hān), Indra and Vishnu,

gods generally and creator, Mi-

tra and Varuṇa, Vasus and

Rudras, Adityas and Maruts,

Aditi and Pūshan, Savitṛ and

Bṛhat-pati, Yavas and Ayavas,

Rbhas and Vāye Devāḥ, IV,

67, 69; gods generally (man-

viewers) connected with the

creator (Dhātṛ) and the Vis,

65; become complete through

offspring (or subjects) and

mates, seat themselves on the

firmament, in heaven, 108;

entered heaven from below, 109;

draw together round Indra,

127; are just as many now as

there were of old, 128; Agni,

Vāyu, Aditya, the hearts of the

gods, 162; gods holding to

truth, and Asuras to untruth,

257; created from the breath

(prāṇa), 289; seven worlds of

the gods, 277; (the three

worlds and four quarters),

314; are of joyful soul, 339;

the true knowledge belongs to

them alone, and he who knows

it is not a man, but one of the

gods, 339; were first mortal,

and only after gaining the year,

became immortal, V, 3; created from Praṇapati's breath of the mouth, 13; the tales of their fights with the Asuras not true, 14; created by the Brahman, and placed in the three worlds and those above them, 27; were mortal, and only on being possessed of the Brahman, became immortal, 28; daily offering to them with *svahā*, 96; contend with the Asuras for Praṇapati, the sacrifice, 104; number of gods (8 Vasus, 11 Rudras, 12 Ādityas, Indra, Praṇapati), 115 seq.; the one god, *Prāna*, 117; the world of the gods in the north, 223; the path of the Fathers, and that of the gods, by one of which all living creatures have to pass, 237, 238; 'all the gods' enumerated as ten, 280, 281; are of three orders, 291; did not know the way to heaven, 320; Dharma Indra their king, the Sūman their Veda, 370; reside on earth, in the air, the heavens, the regions, the *nak-hatras*, the waters, 505, 506; Agni, Vāyu, Sūrya, Kandra, Varuṇa are the Self of the gods, 505, 506.

gold, is immortal life, III, 35, 84, 93, 265; IV, 313; V, 239; gold threads woven in strainers, III, 84; its uses, 111; produced from ore, (117), 158; is immortal, 203; is light, 366; IV, 313; V, 203, 303; immortality, V, 117, 203; is Agni's seed, 187; a piece of it tied to darbha plant and taken westward (as the sun), 195; originates from Indra's seed, 215; a piece of it used for purifying the *surā* at Sautrāmāṇi, 220, 235, 236; sacrificers and priests cleanse themselves by means of piece of gold held over *kātvāla*, 239; originates from seed of immolated horse (Praṇapati), 275; (*ratamāna*) piece given as fee with brahmaudana at beginning of *Asvamedha*, 275; by means of the golden light Sacrificer goes to heaven, 303; is a form

of the *Kakatra*, 303; is fire, light, immortality, 304; as dark-shield, 350, 358; gold stands and cushions, 360, 361; slab of gold as seat, 361; repels the *Kakatra* (as Agni's seed), 367; the wheel smelter, 391; is *śāṅga* settled, 397, 398

gold brick, III, 100, 166

gold chips, *śāṅga* of the *śāṅga*, of the victims' heads, III, 402-404; fire-altar bestrewn with 5 and 200, IV, 136 seq.; make Agni thousand-eyed, 201; some thrown into ghee for oblation on (*svayamātrina*) of completed altar, 182; these chips complete making Praṇapati's body immortal, 291, 294; seven inserted in the seven openings of vital airs of dead body before being burnt, V, 207.

gold coin (*nishka*) worn as prize, V, (51), 53.

golden egg, produced from the primordial waters, V, 12; floated about for a year, as the only resting-place, 12.

gold man (*puruṣa*), laid on gold plate in first layer, III, 366; is Praṇapati-Agni, 366; the Sacrificer, 368, 382; when laid down, one must not walk in front of him, 369; two offeringspoons his arms, 373; covered and viewed by Sacrificer whom he represents, 375, 376; is the Sacrificer's divine body, 382; his body co-extensive with altar, IV, 18, 146; gold man and gold plate are Agni and Indra, 342; is the man in the sun, and both are the man in the right eye, 368; is the foundation of the Yagus, as one of the only three bricks of which the altar consists, 374.

gold plate, III, 35; trodden upon by consecrated king, 92; with 100 holes, 93; (gold piece) on gaming-ground offered upon, 112; hung round Agnikit's neck, 265; is the truth and Āditya, 265; with twenty-one knobs, the sun's rays, 265; means vital

- energy and vigour, 266; sewn up in antelope skin, 266; worn over navel, 267; is Pragâpati's vigour which went out of him and became the sun, 212, 213; put down on lotus-leaf in centre of altar-site under first layer, 364; IV, 146; gold plate and gold man are Indra and Agni, 342; gold plate is the orb of the sun, and both are the white of the eye, 367, 368; is the foundation of the *Rik*, as one of the only three bricks of which the altar consists, 374; gold and silver plates beneath feet of Sacrificer whilst consecrated at Sautrâmanî, V, 251; the two there represent lightning and hail, 251; placed on top of Pravargya pot, 467; given to Brahman priest, 503; cf. *nishka*.
- gomrîga, one of the three chief victims at *Avamedha*, V, 298, 338.
- Goshroma, form of *Agnishroma*, IV, 287.
- Gotama Râhûgaya, originator of *Mitravinîâ* sacrifice, V, 60.
- Gotama's Stoma (*Katushrîma*), V, 375.
- go-vikartana, huntsman's, one of the king's ratnins, III, 63.
- govinata, form of *Avamedha*, V, 400, 401.
- graha cup of Soma, after their drawing chanting of *stotra* and recitation of *âstra*, IV, 13; is the draught of Pragâpati's vital fluid, 282.
- graha oblations of ghee relating to Soma cups and implements, forming part of the *Vasordhârâ*, IV, 216.
- grain, are a form of day and night, V, 296; parched grain, a form of the *Nakshatras*, 296.
- Grâmanî (headman), one of the *ratninas*, III, 60; is a *vaiya*, 61; III.
- Grâvastut priest, is made the *Hotri*, V, 137.
- grave. See burial-place.
- great region. See upper region.
- Grîhapati, III, 158; V, 131; initiated first (being the earth), 135.
- grîvâb. See neck.
- groats, parched, are a form of the gods, V, 296.
- guda prâna, intestinal vital air, IV, 17.
- guest-offering, III, 355.
- guhû. See spoon.
- Gumbaka (*Varuza*), V, 340, 343.
- Gyotishroma, form of *Agnishroma*, IV, 287.
- hail, a terrible form of rain, V, 251.
- hair, of lion, wolf, tiger thrown on flesh-portion of *Sautrâmanî*, III, 132; ditto in cups of *Surâ*, V, 218; these are a form of Rudra, 229; *purîsha* formula are Agni's hair, IV, 20; hair and form, 295; how the hair grows and gets grey, V, 52, 55; comes off when wetted, 313.
- hair pit, from Pragâpati's hair-pits the stars originate, IV, 361; as many as there are twinklings of the eye, V, 169.
- Hair, *ayanâbha*. See *Para*.
- Hâhîngaya, a teacher, his view of the nature of Agni, IV, 363.
- hand, laid down, palm upwards, for protection, V, 465.
- haras, *haras*, *rohis*, *arîs* dyat, fire, flame of Agni, IV, 182.
- hare, in the moon, V, 10; leaps in bounds, 390.
- haridru (cedar tree), not to stand near a grave, V, 427.
- Harizandra, father of Rohita, III, 95.
- havyrdhâna, associated with *Gâyatri*, V, 494.
- havyraghâ, killed by mortar and pestle, V, 2; as distinguished from the Soma-sacrifice, 119.
- haya, horse, carries the gods, IV, 401.
- hazel-cock (*kapiñgalâ*), springs from *Vîsvarûpa's* head, III, 130.
- head, of child born first, III, 233; IV, 287; ditto of animals, IV, 40, (287); human head is placed on *ukhâ*, III, 311; is the birth-place of the vital airs, 396; measures a span, if four-cornered, contracted in the middle, 396; is (the focus) of

- the ten vital airs, IV, 57; is threefold, and consists of two *kapālas*, 78, 387; is of *Gâyatri* nature, and threefold, 114; fivefold vital air of head (mind, speech, breath, eye, ear), 190; becomes 'sharpened,' 190; threefold (skin, bone, brain), V, 163, 499; three heads of the *Asvamedha*, 335; is a span high, contracted in the middle, 454.
- headman. See King-makers.
- heart, on earth one thinks with one's heart and mind, IV, 95; *Agni*, *Vāyu*, *Aditya* the hearts of the gods, 162; is round and smooth, 180; is near the right arm-pit, 180, 181; is secret, V, 36.
- heaven, a counterfeit (*pratimā*) of the earth, IV, 52; is single, V, 297; by means of the golden light the Sacrificer goes to heaven, 303.
- heaven and earth, when they separated, the *Vasus*, *Rudras*, and *Adityas* separated and became the lords, IV, 75; propitiatory cake on one *kapāla*, when sacrificial horse, or anything else, is lost, 347; with *Sūrya* and *Vāyu*, 347; between them everything is contained, V, 484; are the out- and up-breathing, 488.
- heavenly world, above the *Virāḡ*, is the firmament, IV, 93; is the firmament, 100, 304; and the regions, 100; is the year, 100; is entered from below, 109; the heavenly world, the light, is entered from the sky, from the back of the firmament, 199; those going there do not look round, 199; heavenly world beyond the highest firmament, 250; the world where the sun shines, 304; is (the place of) safety, V, 238; *Kshatriyas* remain *Kshatriyas* in the other world, 250; is equal in extent to a thousand, 280; lies 'straight away,' 281, 297.
- hemp, layer of it put in fire-pan, as the chorion, III, 252; hempen sling for gold plate worn round
- *Agni*'s neck, 266.
- herald. See King-makers.
- him, makes *Sāman* complete, IV, 178; is the *Sāman*, V, 306.
- hiranya, etymology, III, 367.
- Hiranyagarbha, is *Pragāpati* and *Agni*, III, 172; came first into existence, 388; -IV, introd. xiv, 295 n.
- hita, III, 151.
- honey, used with consecration water as the essence (flavour) of water, III, 78; not to be eaten during initiation, 186; a form, or the life-sap, of the sky, 390; mixed with sour curds and ghee for sprinkling on completed fire-altar, IV, 182 seq.; the remainder (or essence) of the triple science and therefore may be eaten by *Brahmaśrin*, V, 90; not, according to others, 90; a form of *Soma*, 243; means breath, 467.
- honey-cup. See *madhugraha*.
- hooft-cup, thirty-three of fat gravy offered at *Sautrāmanī*, V, 252.
- horn, or black antelope, III, 96.
- horse, *asva*, produced from the water, III, 19; V, 304, 318; stands lifting one foot on each side, III, 19; sprinkling of horses for race, 19; right horse yoked first, 19; horses smell *Brāhaspati*'s oblation, 22, 28; *Varuṇa*'s sacrificial animal, 60; how created (etymology of *asva*), 146; sacrificial animal, 162, 165 seq.; slaughtered for *Varuṇa*, 162; is hornless and with mane, 177; its halter lies round the mouth, 198; is the sun, 199, 208, 359; searches for *Agni*, 204, 205; whilst running shakes itself, 207; steps on lump of clay, 207; is a thunderbolt, 209; the most highly-favoured of animals, 200; horse's footprint offered upon, 212; horse is addressed, 224; represents *kshatra*, 227; sacred to *Pragāpati*, 240; white horse led in front of the bricks of the first layer being carried forwards, 359; is made to step on altar-site from the north, 359; smells the first layer of bricks, 359, 361; IV, 141; white horse

(Pragâpati) finds Agni on lotus-leaf, III, 360; the white horse scorched by Agni, whence its mouth is scorched, and it is apt to become weak-eyed, 360; whoever seeks Agni in the shape of a white horse finds him, 360; horse led round on prepared altar-site towards sunset, 361; created from Pragâpati's eye, 402; V, 328; is the speed of the wind, III, 405; the one-hoofed animal, 410; yoked (tied) below shaft, IV, 237; right horse first by gods, the left by men, 237; carries (draws) men, 401; the sea its birth-place, 401; 403; sacrificial horse (Pragâpati, the Purusha), 401; prize-winning horses constantly sprinkled (?), V, 95; sacrificial horse sacred to Pragâpati, 277, 278; horse the most vigorous, powerful, famous, and the swiftest of animals, 278; is a thunderbolt, 279; sacrificial horse generated by sky and earth, 287; synonyms of horse, 287; when let loose returns to its chain, 288; born from of old as a runner, 294; is the kshatra, 303; of Anushrubh nature, 304; sacrificial horse put to chariot, 311; is the great bird, 315; is trimmed up with the reins, 318; is Brahman (m.), 318; knows the way to heaven, 320; lying down near sacrificial horse insures fertility, 322; is sacred to the All-gods, 332; horse stands on three feet, but scampers off on all four, 332; is the highest noblest of animals, 332; worth 1000 cows, 353; steps on chanting-place, 384.

horse-dung, seven balls of, used for fumigation, III, 240; V, 455.

horse-hoof, oblation on, V, 339.

hotrâ, the seven, are the regions, III, 368.

Hotri priest, seated towards the west, III, 108; gold plate his fee at Darapeya, 119; piebald bullock his fee for parikâbala oblation to Visve Devâb, 122; Hotrâ means abundance, 142;

his fee at Sautrâmani three milch cows, 142; is Agni, 219; black antelope skin his own place, 219; the guardian of undisturbed rites, 219; follows behind the bricks of first layer carried forward, defending it from behind, 358; is winter, V, 45; the six hotris (priests generally), 121; initiated for sattra, as Agni and speech, 136; is the voice of the sacrifice, 215; is the sacrifice, 459, 460, 504.

Hotriya hearth, of Agnikayana, of twenty-one bricks, and as many enclosing-stones, IV, 24; householder (grîhamedhin) unlearned in scriptures, V, 362.

hunger, death is hunger, IV, 402; Yûpa bent at top, and bent outwards in middle, is a type of hunger, V, 124.

hungry, hungry man is consumed by his vital airs, IV, 347, 348.

â, mother of Purûravas, V, 68; Manu's daughter (is the Agni hotra cow), 81.

â, invocation of, III, 11, 113; IV, 248; is food, V, 19; the central air, 20; is faith, 42.

idam, III, 143; (ida) one-fourteenth part of an earthen V, 169.

idâvatsara (third year of cycle), IV, 21.

idvatsara (fourth year of cycle), IV, 21.

immortal, is the food that is baked, III, 164; immortal body is boneless, IV, 178; immortal bricks are the six Sâmans sung over the completed altar, 180; going to the heavenly light and becoming immortal and Pragâpati's children, 220; the immortal light is distributed amongst beings by Savitri, 322; the immortal light (and life) to be gained by the hundred and onefold altar or by a life of a hundred years, 323, 324; the body is not immortal, being the share of death, 357; after separating from the body one becomes immortal, be it by knowledge or holy work (the

fire-altar); coming to life again, one attains immortal life, 357; the Amṛita threefold, 365; by performing the animal sacrifice once a year—the year being life - one gains immortal life, V, 119.

immortality, is light (*rukt*), III, 383; IV, 238; man's highest form, IV, 147, 177; the highest thing in the universe, 148, 181; is the vital airs, 178; the nectar of immortality (Soma), the Agni-kṛt consecrated therewith, 251, 252; the nectar of immortality, Soma, departs from the gods and is recovered by penance, 255, 256; the immortality bestowed on Agni and Sacrificer, 256; beyond the year lies the wish-granting world, the immortal (immortality) which is the light (*arkis*) that shines yonder, 322; it is to the other world what life is to this, 327.

impure speech, if used, the vital airs pass away, V, 326.

Indra, performed Vāgapeya and won everything, III, 3; is the kshatra, 3, 59; IV, 229; is the Sacrificer, III, 13, 54; by eleven syllables gains the Trishnuh, 40; slays Vṛitra by cake-offering, 45; is energy and vital power, 46, 82; generative power, 46; with Agni smites the Rakshas, 51; eleven-kapāla cake to, 59; bull his sacrificial animal, 60; Indra gveshṭa, pap of red rice to, 70; by anointing Indra, the gods guide him past his enemies, 74; by drinking Soma, Indra becomes a tiger, 81, 92; pārtha-oblation to, 82; calls on Maruts staying on Aśvattha tree, 84; Indra Vṛiddhasravas, 89; kills Namukī, 92; mystically called Arguna, 99; rathavimokṣaniya oblation to, 102; Indra Viṣaugas, 109; assists Varuna, 113; samsṛip-oblation (eleven-kapāla cake), 116; pañḍābila oblation on south part of vedi, 120, 121; see a bull, 122; slays Vīrvarūpa, Tvashṭr's son, 130; Indra Sutrāman, 135;

eleven-kapāla cake at Sautrāmanī, 136, 137; is the central vital air, 143; etymology (*indh*) 'the kindler,' 143; is breath, 154; bull slaughtered to him, 162; repels Vṛitra, 179; afraid of Vṛitra not being killed, enters the waters, 365; takes away Pragāpati's vigour (*ogās*) to the north, 374; becomes Pragāpati's left arm, 374; sour curds (*dadhī*) belong to him, 374; ruler of the kshatra, IV, 74; is Āditya, 92; Indra's heaven is the undiminished virāg, 94; ousted from this world by wrong sacrificial procedure, 94; protector of the south, 101; connected with Rudras, pañḍābilastoma, prāuga-rastra, brīhatsāman, 101; the gods draw together round Indra, 127; magnified by all beings, 140; the greatest of charioteers, 140; to him belongs the 'purisha' of the altar, 140; equal to all the gods, 140; Indra the highest, mightiest, and strongest of gods, assisted by Brihaspati, fights the Asuras, 192; is Apratiratha (irresistible car-fighter), 192; of trishrubh nature, 262; the deity of the sacrifice, 262; Indra Vimridh, verses to, 276; Agni and Indra created as brahman and kshatra, 342; they join each other as gold man and gold plate, 342; they are the light and immortal life, 343; they are the fire-altar (Agni the bricks, Indra the purisha), 343; for killing Vṛitra, &c., is deprived of the Soma-drink, and Kshatriyas with him, 345, n. — Indra Vimridh, (additional) cake at Full-moon, V, 5, 6; Indra slays Vṛitra by Full-moon offering, 6; Indra Pradātṛ, clotted curds for, at New-moon, 8; Indra Vṛitrahān, expiatory eleven-kapāla cake at New-moon, 11; statements regarding his battles mere illusion, 14; Indra created out of Pragāpati with a life of a thousand years, 15; Indra

- becomes speech, 16; takes Śrī's power and receives (mitra-vindā) oblation (eleven-kapāla cake), 62-65; brahmakārin his disciple, 86; Indra is the thunder-(cloud), the thunder being the thunderbolt, 116; covets Vasishṭha's (knowledge of the) Virāḡ, 212; slays Viśvarūpa, and drinks Tvāṣṭri's Soma, 213 seq., 248; has his Soma-drink and vital energy taken from him by Namukī, and is restored by the Asvins, 216; bull immolated to him at Sautrāmāṇi, 217; cows sacred to him, 218; Indra's cake of eleven kapālas to win his energy, 222, 223; slays Namukī with foam of water, 223; drinks separately the Soma from the mixture of Soma and blood in Namukī's head, 223; Indra Sutrīman, 224; connected with the sky (and the third pressing), 241, 247; with summer, 247; with winter and dewy season, 247; heated by Asvins and Sarasvatī by means of the Sautrāmāṇi, 249; Asvins, Sarasvatī, and Indra are everything here, 253; and have a share in the gharma, 475; the seventh of the tendencies ('all the gods') receiving oblations of drops, 281; a cow wont to cast her calf his victim at Asvamedha, 300; Dharma Indra, king of the gods, 370; draws his glory by taking in Vishnu (Makta) whence he is Makhavat (Maghavat), 443; decapitates Dadhyāṇīk Atharvāna, 444; offering made at Pravargya to Indra, with the Vasus, Rudras, and Adityas, 479, 480; is the wind, 479.
- Indra-Agni, lay down third layer of fire-altar, IV, 41; the best (chiefest) of gods, 41; fire-altar belongs to them, 278; the most powerful of gods, V, 278; are all the gods, 392.
- Indra-Brihaspati, animal sacrifice to, V, 402.
- Indradyumna Bhāllaveya (Vaiyāghrapadyā), a teacher, IV, 393, 396.
- Indrāṇī, Indra's beloved wife, V, 474.
- Indra-Pūshan, Āru to, III, 53.
- Indra-Soma, Āru to, III, 56.
- Indrastut Ukthya, V, 419.
- Indraturiya offering cake to Agni, Āru to Varuṇa (and gavedhukā) to Rudra, and sour curds to Indra--III, 50, 51.
- Indra-Vishnu, Āru to, III, 54; (traidhītavī) twelve-kapāla cake at Sautrāmāṇi, 138; connected with kshatra and pañcadāsa-stoma, IV, 68; animal sacrifice to, V, 402.
- indriya, III, 116, 143.
- Indrota Sannaka, V, 393; Indrota Daivāpa Sannaka, 396.
- intercourse, sexual, is an Agnihotra offering, V, 114.
- intestine. See entrail.
- iriza, III, 43.
- iron, is the viz, V, 304; iron bowl, oblation in, 339.
- Īāna, a form and name of Agni, is the sun, III, 160.
- Isha, first autumn-month, IV, 49.
- ishrakā brick-yagushmati and lokam-prizā (nobility and peasantry), III, 153; formulas of settling (śādana), 153, 154; five kinds, 155, 166; head of, 155; are Agni's limbs, 156; made of clay and water, 164, 210; etymology, 164; anṛtashrakā and anṛtेशrakā, 171; sharp-edged thunderbolts, 357; are all creatures, 359; special ishrakā marked with lines, parallel to spine, IV, 18; are the bones, 20, 135; number of, 50; are the creatures that went out of Pragāpati, 54; size and markings, 137; become milch cows, 172; are Pragāpati's joints, the days and nights, 281; made up of Pragāpati's body, 290; three thousand additional marked bricks constituting the highest form of the bird's form and plumage, 303; the one brick, Akshara, Agni, the Brahman, 343; are Pragāpati's lights, 349 seq.; bricks are threefold in respect of gender (sex), 364 seq.; the fire-altar consists of three bricks, Rik,

- Yagus, and Sâman, having for their foundations the gold plate, the gold man, and the lotus-leaf, 374; on tomb, V, 434, 435.
- ishâpûrta, V, 287 n.
- ishri, (i.e. kâmyeshri) performed in a low voice, IV, 248.
- island, neither earth nor water, V, 497.
- itihâsa, legend regarding battles between gods and Asuras not true, V, 14; to be studied, 98; is the Veda of water-dwellers, 369.
- itihâsa-purâna, to be studied, V, 98.
- joy (ânanda), is the soul (of knowledge and life), IV, 339, 340.
- jujube (fruit of *Zizyphus Jujuba*), three varieties of, used in the Sautrâmâni, V, 214, 215, 219.
- Ka, Praçâpati, III, 173, 175, 221; V, 86; IV, introd. xiv; the four rites relating to Ka, IV, 334 seq.
- Kâdraveya. See Arbuda.
- Kaikeya. See Asvapati.
- Kâkra. See Revottaras.
- Kakubh metre, in the form of it bulls were produced, IV, 38; is the prâna, 88.
- kâleya-sâman, III, introd. xvi.
- kali, die, III, 107; dominant over the other dice, 108.
- Kalpa (prospering) oblations, with which the Vasor dhârâ concludes, IV, 220.
- kâma, III, 163.
- kamasa cups, III, 114.
- Kâmpila, V, 321, 322.
- kâmyeshri, performed in a low voice, IV, 248 n.
- kandramas. See moon.
- Kaṅkatiyas, instructed by Sâṇḍilya in the sacrificial art of the fire-altar, IV, 254.
- Kazva, saw the cow of plenty and milked her, IV, 203; his hermitage Nâlapit, V, 399.
- kapâla, pot-herd, of broken ukhâ, III, 263.
- kapoti (kapotin), a particular form of a tree, 123.
- *kâpya, a dish, V, 220.
- Karakâdhvaryu, IV, 15, 129.
- Karakâb, III, 171, 175.
- Kâroti,—there Tura Kâvasheya built a fire-altar, IV, 279.
- kârshmarya (gmelina arborea), a Rakshas-killing tree, III, 373.
- karûkara (? vertebra), V, 165.
- Kâya (of the Kâjis), V, 401.
- Kasyapa, all creatures descended from him, III, 390; officiates at Sarvamedha of Visvakarman, V, 421;—the Kasyapas, a family of priests, IV, 345 n.
- katurdasa-stoma, gained by Vasus, III, 40.
- kâurmâsya, seasonal offerings, instituted by the gods, III, 47; he who offers them eats food, every four months, in the other world, IV, 299;—esoteric remarks upon them, V, 74 seq.; by them Praçâpati fashioned for himself a body, 74; amount to the year and the Mahâvrata, 78; are the year, 309; kâurmâsya victims at Arvamedha, 309, 383; seasonal animal sacrifices, 402.
- katurvimsa, first day (after opening day) of Sattrâ and formerly one of the three 'great rites' of the year, V, (139), 144, 156, 167.
- katurvimsa-stoma, is the womb, the year, IV, 64; through it, connected with Vasus and Rudras, the four-footed are freed from death, 68.
- katushroma,* is the stay, support, Vâyu, IV, 66; connected with Savitri and Brihaspati, frees the quarters from death, 69; V, 78, 329; is the Kṛita among dice, 330; the highest of stomas, 332; Gotama's Stoma, 375.
- katuskâtârimsa-stoma, connected with Yavas and Avavas, frees creatures from death, IV, 69; is trishrubh (4 and 11) and thunderbolt, 85.
- katustrimsa-stoma, is the range of the ruddy one (sun), the year, IV, 65.
- kâtvâla (pit), is the same (in cubit extent) as Agni (fire-altar), III, 309; arka-leaf thrown in, 166; is fire, 166; is the place for cleansing, V, 489 n.; between

it and the Āgnīdhra is the gate of sacrifice, 497.

Kauravya. See Balhika.

Kausalya, V, 397.

Kauśāmbeya, (? a native of Kauśāmbī). See Proti.

Kaushya. See Susravas Kaushya.

Kausurubindi. See Proti.

Kāvasheya. See Tura Kāvasheya.

keepers, of sacrificial horse, V, 355.

Kelaka Sāṇḍilyāyana, a teacher, his views regarding Agni, IV, 364.

Keśavapanīya, III, introd. xxvi, 126 seq.; stomas of the three savanas (ekavimsa, saptaśara, pañcāśara), 127; may conclude the Rāgasūya, 129; Shodasin forms part of Keśavapanīya Atirātra, IV, 405.

Keśin, a noble race, as performers of a Sattra, V, 131; exist to this (the author's) day, 134.

khadira lacacia catechu, throne-seat thereof at Abhishekanīya, III, 125; is the bone, V, 373-375.

khandasyā bricks, are the metres and cattle, III, 414; IV, 2; of second layer, IV, 34; of third layer, 51 seq.; of fifth layer, 87 seq., 92, 99, 109 seq.; are Pragāpati, 114.

Khandika Audbhāti, a Kshatriya, skilled in sacrificial matters, V, 131.

khandoma days, V, 156 n.

khara (mounds), III, 10; V, 452 n., 485, 489.

khila (unploughed ground) between two cultivated fields, IV, 51.

kikasāb, breast-bone, V, 164 n.

kim-puruṣa, III, 409.

kine, are man's form (wealth), V, 261.

king, he and Jrotriya upholders of the law, III, 106; if weaker than priest he is stronger than his enemies, 110; king, when consecrated, is entreated by people (for blessings), IV, 220; only he becomes king whom other kings allow to assume royal dignity, 224, 229, 233, 247; are realm-sustainers, 229; maintains his rule by offspring,

230; kings both combine and keep asunder, V, 41; can oppress the Brāhmana, but fares the worse for it, 286; when clad in mail performs heroic deeds, 300; cannot rear cattle, 326.

King-makers, the non-royal, heralds and headmen, V, 304.

king's brother, III, 110.

king's son. See rāgaputra.

Āiti, layer of altar, five, III, 150,

191; IV, 147, 204; seven, III, 249, 253, 358; IV, 205; five, six, or seven, IV, 96; or three, 97; -- by whom 'seen,' and what their ancestry, III, 186 seq., 190; are the seasons, IV, 96; are sacrificial food, whence the first is sprinkled with ghee, III, 356; the first is 'led forward' on red ox-hide, 256, 257; -- building of first layer, 362 seq.; is the earth and the spring season, and the feet, 386; IV, 1 seq.; plan, 17;

second layer, 22 seq.; seen by the gods and laid down by Asvins, 23; plan, 24; is nest-like, 25; is the space between earth and air; and the summer-season, 29; the part between feet and waist, 30; -- third layer, 41 seq.; seen by the gods, laid down by Indra and Agni, and settled by Visvakarman, 41; plan, 48; is the air, and rainy season and autumn, 49; is the belly, 138; the waist, 149; fourth layer, 58 seq.; is the Brahman, 59; upholds heaven and earth, 59; is the space between air and heaven, and the winter-season, 70; the part between waist and head, 71; between waist and neck, 149; plan, 71; is the larger of the Brahman, Pragāpati, the Rishis, Vāyu, the Stomas and vital airs, 81, 82; -- fifth layer, 82 seq.; is the shining (vīṇā) heaven, 82; the fifth (including sixth and seventh) is the head and dewy season, 127; plan, 98; the fifth is the neck, the sixth the head, the seventh the vital airs, 149; -- symbolical meanings

- of layers, 147, 148; ditto as regards the bodily parts, 148, 149; the layers of brick are the immortal, and those of earth the mortal, parts of *Pragâ-pati's* body, 190; the mortal ones enclosed in the immortal, and made immortal, 290, 291; the seven layers, 291; how the six layers of brick, and six of earth, correspond to the vital airs and the mortal parts of the body respectively, 292 seq.; each layer of bricks and earth takes (or represents) one month, 318.
- Āitra*, name of *Agni*, III, 161; IV, 269 n.
- Āitra-sāman*, III, 369 (corr. IV, 146).
- Āitya*, III, 151 seq.
- kāṇḍīya*, (-six) formulas and oblations, III, 30.
- knee, consists of two plates (bones), V, 500; knee-high, IV, 158; V, 249; lifting of sacrificer on throne-seat, 254.
- knife, for slaughtering the horse is made of gold, that of *parjanya's* of copper, and that of the others of iron, V, 303.
- knife-paths, V, 326.
- knowledge, superior to brick-built altars, IV, 380; by knowledge one ascends to where all desires have vanished, and all sacrificial gifts and mere rites do not attain, 389.
- Koka, son of king *Soma*, V, 400.
- Kosha, a priestly race, IV, 392; cf. *Suśrāva* *Kaushya*.
- Kraivya, the *Pāṇḍāla* king, performed the *Aśvamedha*, at *Parivakrā*, V, 397.
- krānta, one of *Vishnu's* steps, III, 96.
- Kratusthālā, the *Apsaras*, is an intermediate quarter (? N.E.), or (*Agni's*) battle, IV, 105.
- krīmuka tree, how produced, III, 254; wood red and sweet, 254; has no ashes, 255.
- kṛita, dice, III, 107; V, 330.
- Kṛivī, old name for *Pañḍāla*, V, 397.
- krivi (vv. II. kavi, krayi), III, 98.
- Kshatra, nobility, connected with South region, *trishubh*, *bṛihat-sāman*, *pañḍāra-stoma*, summer, III, 91; (political power) concentrated in one, 248; connected with *Indra-Vishnu*, and freed from death through *pañḍāra-stoma*, IV, 68; *Indra* its lord, 74; is the eater among the people, 125, 132, 242; attaches to a single individual, 132, 241; stands, as it were, 210; is built up by (social) layers, 242; *Indra* created as *Kshatra*, 342; established on the *Viś*, V, 41; produced from out of the *Viś*, 225; produced from out of the *Brahman*, 227; not to be detached from the *Viś*, 228; Sacrificer consecrated by the *Kshatra* (a *K-hatriya*), 253, 254; takes no delight in the priestly office, 286; spiritual lustre takes no delight in the *Kshatra*, 286.
- kshatra-dhṛiti*, III, introd. xxvi, 129.
- Kshatriya* (cf. *rāganya*), and *Viś*, III, 100; followed by the other three castes, 226; *Brāhmaṇa* and *Kshatriya*, never walk behind *Vaiśya* and *Sūdra*, 227; *Kshatriya* and *Purohita* alone complete, 259; are everything, 260;—*Kshatriya* destroys enemies and raises his relations, 260; grants settlement with approval of clan, 299; deprived of the *Soma-drink*, IV, 345 n.; his world is the earth, V, 133; remain *Kshatriya* in heaven, 250; *Kshatriya* consecrates *Kshatriya*, 254; whilst sacrificing becomes a *Brāhmaṇa*, 348.
- kshattri*, chamberlain, one of the *ratninaḥ*, III, 61; is a *prasavitrī*, 61; addresses the *Pālīgali*, V, 387.
- kshetrapati*,—*prayugām havis* (pap) to, III, 125.
- kshipra*, one-fiftieth part of a *muhūrta*, V, 169.
- kshipra-jyena* (? the quick eagle), produced from the *amṛitavākā*, IV, 370.
- kshumā* (v. I. *kshupā*), name of an arrow, III, 88.
- Kūbera Vairavana*, king of the *Rakshas*, V, 367.

Kuhû, pap offered to her, (the extreme end of) one of the four regions, IV, 264.

Kumâra (the boy, Agni), born from Ushas, III, 159, 160.

kumbhî, pot, III, 270; perforated with a hundred holes, V, 220, 234 n.

kumbyâ (? an explanatory passage), V, 101.

kuntâpa, V, 164 n., 374.

kûrka, a (gold) stool for Sacrificer, V, 37c.

kûrma, etymology, III, 390; the same as *karyapa*, 390.

Kurukshetra,—Purûravas wanders about in Kurukshetra, V, 70; is the gods' place of divine worship, 441.

Kuru-paûkâla, III, 124; V, 51.

kurupi aûgîlâ, V, 389, 390.

kura-grass, garment made thereof, worn for purification, III, 31; is pure, 32, 35b.

Kurî Vâgabavasa (Gautama), a teacher, IV, 345 n., 390.

kya, belonging to Kû, IV, 334 seq.; is the food of Agni, 342 seq., 347 seq.

ladder anirayasi, leant against sacrificial post and mounted by Sacrificer and wife, III, 32.

lakshmin, mark, is lucky on right side of body of man, or left side of woman, IV, 81; mark in mouth lucky, 81; lucky on any side, 95.

layer, of altar. See *liti*.

lead, piece of, put on tiger's skin and kicked off, III, 91; compared with gold, 92; originates from Indra's navel, V, 215; with lead malted rice bought at Sautrâmanî, 219.

league, a thousand, the farthest distance, IV, 163.

leg,—arms and legs consist of twenty-five parts each, IV, 325; parts of leg, V, 75.

life,—of gods longer than men's, III, 344; life (*âyus*) and vital air the highest (endowments), IV, 141; life (*âyus*, vitality) the same as vital air, 143; is food, 196; life of a hundred years is immortality,

299; gains the immortal light, heaven, 323; therefore one must not shorten one's life, 323; consequences of shorter lives, 323, 324; it requires many sacrifices to gain one day or one night (of life), 324; life is to this world what immortality is to the other, 327; those who do not become immortal come to life again, and become the food of Death time after time, 357, 358; retribution in future life, V, 109 seq.

litting-sticks (*zaphau* or *parîzâsu*), V, 45; are heaven and earth, 476; therewith *Pravargya* pot is lifted, 477.

light (*rukî*), is immortality, III, 383, IV, 238.

lightning, is the teat whence the 'shower of wealth' flows, IV, 221; one of the six doors to the Brahman, V, 66, 67; a terrible form of rain, 261.

lightsome (*runmati*) oblations, (to Agni and Varuna), IV, 237, 239.

limb's, dependent on vital airs, III, 151; IV, 19; thirty of the body, IV, 167, 222; are tripartite and furnished with two joints, V, 77.

lincs, three drawn round for protection, III, 212; on bricks, IV, 137.

lion, produced from Soma flowing from Indra's nose, III, 131; is vigour, produced in the form of the *atikkhanda*s metre, IV, 38.

liquid,—the means of drinking off one of two liquids mixed together, V, 223.

liquor, spirituous. See *parîsrit*, *surâ*, *logeshukâ* (clod-bricks), III, 315.

loka, space and world, III, 180.

lokamprîâ, brick, is the peasantry, III, 153;—of Gârhapatya, 308.

—their number on fire-altar, IV, 41; two laid down in corners and thence filling up of layer, 22, 41, 58, 82; is the sun, 96, 131, 134, 135; the nobility, 132, 242; is the body, 134; the vital air, 130; when made milch-cows by the gods, stand with averted faces, having received

- no names, 174; therefore called 'virâg,' 174; 10,800 in fire-altar (10,701 in *Āhavanīya*, 21 *Gārhapatya*, 78 *dhishṇyas*), 357, 360; it is the gold man in the sun, and the one brick (? *akshara*) in which the fire-altar results; also the man in the eye, whence two *lokamprizās* are laid down, 369; Agni the one *lokamprizā*, 381.
- long-haired man (*teṇuch*), III, 9, 90.
- lost thing, recovered by offering to Heaven and Earth, *Vāyu*, and *Sūrya*, V, 347.
- lotus-flower, and plant, golden flower as fee, III, 115 seq.; its leaves a symbol of sky and stars, its seed-stalks of the air, and its suckers of the earth, 117; lotus plant means the waters, 364.
- lotus-leaf, placed on antelope skin, III, 215; is speech, 215; the sky, 216; the womb, 222; placed on *Āhavanīya* site, 343; Agni found on lotus-leaf by white horse (*Pragāpati*), 360; lotus-leaf as womb, laid down in centre of altar-site under first layer, 363; means water and earth spread out thereon, 364; (*pushkara*), the essence of waters, made a stronghold by the gods for Indra, 365; represents the waters, Agni's maternal womb, IV, introd. xx; marks the commencement (womb) of altar, 44, 118, 119; is the immortal light, 365; is the light of the sun, and both are the black of the eye, 367, 368; is the foundation of the *sāman* as one of the only three bricks of which the altar consists, 374.
- lute,-- played to one is a form (sign) of wealth (? distinction), V, 285; a *Brāhmaza* and a *Rāganya* play the lute and sing praises of Sacrificer at *Avamedha*, 285 seq., 356 seq.
- lute-players, masters of, V, 362 seq., 372.
- *Mādharma*, second spring-month, III, 386.
- Madhu*, the sweet doctrine (*brāhmaṇa*), V, 444 n., 471.
- Madhu*, first spring-month, III, 386.
- madhu-graha*, III, 11; held by *Vaiśya* or *Rāganya*, 29; presented to the Brahman priest, 29.
- Madhuka* *Paṅgva*, remark on animal sacrifice, 122.
- Mādhyandina-pavamāna* (at *Vāgapeya*), III, 8.
- Māgha*, month suitable for erecting of sepulchral mound, V, 42.
- maghavat* = *mahavat*, V, 143.
- Mahādeva*, V, 81.
- Mahad uktham*, IV, introd. xxv; in bird's shape, xxv; 110 seq.; (? a different recension, 111 n., 168 n.); the *Satarudriya* accounted to be equal to it, 168, 273; an ocean of *rits*, 278; 1.01 to be recited for another, 279, 367; fire-altar, *Mahad uktham*, and *Mahāvratā* are the Sacrificer's divine, immortal body, 279;—281 seq.; originated from the vital fluid (*rasa*) of *Pragāpati*'s dismembered body, 282; the *Hotri* thereby puts *Pragāpati*'s vital fluid into the *Soma*-cup, 283; it is equivalent to all the *rits*, 283; is a bird-like body, 286; is the sky, speech, the body, 286; thereby the *Hotri* puts flavour into the *Mahāvratīya* cup, 346; is the orb of the sun, 366; triad. Agni, Arka, *Mahad uktham*, V, 172; cf. *uktha*.
- mahānāmni* verses, III, introd. xx, xxi.
- Mahān Deva*, a form and name of Agni, is *Pragāpati*, III, 160.
- mahas* (wealth, or joy), as a formula pronounced after the *Agnihotra*, V, 126.
- *Mahāśāla Gābāla*, instructed by *Dhira Sātapaṇeya* on the nature of Agni, IV, 331, 393; (? the same as *Prākināśāla Aupamanyu*), 393 n., 395.
- Mahāvira* pot (*Vishnu* and the Sun), etymology, V, 443; making of, 447 seq.; its form, 454; anointed with ghee, 462; is revered (as the sun), 469. •

Mahāvratā, IV, introd. xxv seq. : 110, 168; the last day (before concluding day) of Gavām ayanam, and formerly one of the three great rites of the Sattra, V, (139), 144, 167.

Mahāvratā-sāman, in bird's shape, IV, introd. xxvi, 110; an ocean of sāmāns, 278; not to be chanted for another, 279.

367; fire-altar, Mahāvratā and *Mahad uktham* are the sacrificer's divine, immortal body, 279; thereby the Udgātri puts

Pragāpati's vital fluid into the Soma-cup, 282; is equivalent to all (other) sāmāns, 283; composition of (Gāyatra, Ra-

thantara, Br̥hat, Bhadrā, and Rāgana-sāmāns), 282, 283; is a bird-like body, 286; is the ur. breath, 286; the vrata of the great one (Agni), 342; thereby the Udgātri puts flavour into the Mahāvratā cup, 346; is the light of the sun, 366.

mahāvratāya-graha, IV, introd. xxvi, 282; by offering it, the Adhvaryu puts the vital fluid into Pragāpati, 284; is Pragāpati's food, 346; is offered with 'vaushat', 202, 346.

māhendra-graha, belongs to Indra, III, 13, 17;—drawing of, 41, 81, 117.

mahiman, two Soma-cups (drawn for Pragāpati) at Aśvamedha, day and night, IV, 401; V, 327; mahiman, is royal power, 327; the first drawn in gold vessel, 391; the second in silver vessel, 394.

mahishi, first wife, III, 238; lies down near the sacrificial horse, V, 386; addressed by Brahman, 386.

Māhitthi, III, 175; IV, 105, 8, 271, maiden,—beautiful maiden is apt to be loved (by men), V, 295; given as dakṣhiṇā, 402.

Maitravaruṇa, his hearth, III, 80, 81; sterile cow his fee at Dasapeya, 119; is under Hotri, V, 137; is the mind of the sacrifice, 245.

maitravaruṇa-graha, III, 6.

Makha, is the sacrifice, III, 233; Vishnū, V, 443; his head re-

stored, 450 seq.;—Makha Saumya, 454.

male, is pre-eminently endowed with power, IV, 230; m. organ, (of three parts), V, 19; has one joint, 19.

malt, of rice and barley, V, 219, 223 n., 246.

man, is skinless, III, 32; men belong to Vishnu, 34; lives up to a hundred years, 93, 134, 405; V, 261, 273; has a hundred powers or energies, III, 93, 134; V, 275; is born into a (future) world made by him, III, 181; the sham-man his sacrificial substitute, 107; is a fathom high, 309; is Praṇapati, 309; man's life shorter than the gods', 344; tends upwards by his vital airs, 368; is not held down by food and breath, 379; man's human form is clay, 382; men have their birthplace in the west (the Gīrhapatya), 369; man created from Pragāpati's mind (manas), 102; is the first and strongest of animals, 402; is produced in the shape of the paṅkti, IV, 38; (male) is lucky if marked on right side, 31; single man has many wives, 230; man with upstretched arms the measure for the fire-altar, 305; that is his highest measure, 305; fivefold (by food, drink, excellence, light, and immortality), 326, 327; when man dies he, by his five vital airs, passes into fire, sun, moon, the quarters, and the wind, and becomes one of them, 333; must not eat food in the presence of his wife, 369; man at the end of sexual union becomes apathetic and sleeps, 370; is king Soma, V, 6; of sixteen parts, 20; man is born thrice (through birth, sacrifice, and death), 23, 24; daily offering to men (by entertaining guests), 95; black, yellow-eyed man (Wrath) between two women (Belief and Unbelief) in North-East quarter, 110-112; man's thought taken by sun' (whence saying, 'the divine

- thought protect thee, not man's thought!'), 130; man as the year (year's sattrā), 144, 145, 168 seq.; man does not know clearly the way to heaven, 305; men the subjects of Manu Vairavasvata, the *Rik* their Veda, 362.
- man in the eye. See eye.
- man in the sun. See sun.
- manas. See mind.
- manthin (graha), III, 6; puroruk formula of, 111; produced from aida-sāman, and from it the ekavimsa-stoma, IV, 10.
- Manu, is Pragāpati, III, 250; carried by the earth (his wife, a mare), V, 466.
- Manu Vaivasvata, king of men, V, 361.
- Mānutantavya. See Saumapa.
- Manyu, the one god who did not abandon Pragāpati, IV, 157; becomes Rudra, 157.
- mare, brings forth within a year, V, 12; mare with foal the dakshinā at Sautrimāni, 218, 222; mares enclosed to make the sacrificial horse whinny, 306.
- Mārgaliya hearth, at Agnikayana constructed of six bricks (the seasons, the Fathers), IV, 243; used for cleansing, V, 490.
- mark, on body. See lakshman.
- marrow, the formula used in laying down the brick is the marrow, IV, 20; is the light of man's body, 327; is the Yagushmatī bricks, hence 360 parts of marrow in the body, 387; V, 169.
- marud-netrāb (devāb), seated in the north, III, 49.
- Maruts, (uggeshāb) offering of sterile cow to, III, 13; are the peasantry (vir), 13, 34, 61; staying on Asvattha tree, 34, 84; by seven syllables gain the domestic animals, 40; seven-kapāla cake to, 61; rathavimokṣāniya oblation, 101; dappled cow their victim at oblation of teams, 125; Ādityas and Maruts connected with embryos, and pañkavimsa-stoma, IV, 68; lords of the north, 102; connected with Soma, ekavimsa-stoma, nishkevalya-sastra, vairāga-sāman, 102; Vasus, Rudras, Ādityas, Maruts, Virve Devāb, build on different sides of altar (E. S. W. N. Zen.), 118; rule over rain, 170; seven cakes of seven kapālas to them, 208 seq.; these are the vital airs (of Vairavānara, the head), 209; they are the vir, 210; their cakes offered to sitting, 210; with the hand, with Svāhā (without a proper anuvākya and yāgyā), 211; are the rays of the sun, 212; the stormy (region), the troupe of the Maruts, is the air, 236; are the guardians of one of the four regions, V, 359; Maruts, as guards-men of king Marutta, 397; animal sacrifice to, 402; Maruts, as the people, surround the tsamrāgi Pravargya, 466.
- Marutta Avikṣhita, the Ayogava king, performed the Asvamedha, V, 397.
- marutvatiya-sastra, connected with Varuna, the Ādityas, the west, &c., IV, 101, 102; on second day of Asvamedha, V, 379, 380.
- mate, makes man complete, IV, 132; is one half of one's self, 132.
- Matsya Sāmmada, king of water-dwellers, V, 369; cf. Dhvasan.
- Maudgalya. See Nāka Maudgalya.
- Māyā, - as such, Asuras serve the divine Purusha, IV, 373.
- Menakā, the Apsaras, is the southern quarter, or heaven, IV, 106.
- metres, connected with the Brahman, &c., III, 91; Gāyatrī, Trishrubh, Gagatī, Anushrubh, 201 202; immortal metres, 203; identified with the white and black hair of the black antelope skin, the rik and sāman, 266; mounting of those four metres (representing the worlds), 276, 277; are vital sap, 352; the oceanic (samudriya) metre, 352; the seven, 353; IV, 277, 314; looseness in calculating, III, 353; are life-sustaining gods, IV, 32; the cattle become metres, 36; different kinds of metres, 36 seq.; are cattle, 45; and food, 87; the eight defined and the undefined ones, 53, 88 seq.; etymology, 87; the ābandasyā

bricks representing the ten principal metres, 109, 110; seven, increasing by four (syllables), 212; these are the seven vital airs, 327-9; the different metres and deities identified with parts of body, 330, 331; do not fail by excess or deficiency of one or two syllables, V, 157.

milk-cow,—the bricks of altar are made such, IV, 172; in the other world one will get many such by the Brahman, the Yagus, 173; with cult given as dakṣiṇā for Aditi's pap at Sautrāmāsi, V, 268.

milk,—used with consecration-water, III, 78; is breath-life, 245; laid in female, 245, 311; milk from black cow which has a white calf, offered to Agni, about to be laid down on fire-altar, IV, 200; milk is breath, 200; is vital sap, 201; milk (curds) on at Sautrāmāsi represents Soma, and the Kṣatras, V, 225, 228; curds of milk there to Asvins, Sarasvati and Indra, 240, 241.

milking-bowl (pṛanyanā), made, V, 454 seq.; milked into, 175.

milking-pail (dohanaḥ)—milk offered from it, IV, 100.

millet, originates from Indra's hair, V, 215.

mind (soul, manas),—everything gained by it, III, 100; union of Mind and Speech, 149; is Sarasvat, 298; is the foundation of the body, 270; the first of vital airs, 402; in it all the vital airs are established, 402; originates from Vāyu, in right side of body, IV, 6; from it the summer is produced, 6; is one only, 7; is the moon, 11; from it speech is produced, 11; sustained by the circulating vital air (vyāna), 15; is the fifth to the four vital airs, 73; mind (=metre) is Pragāpati, 88; one of the five divisions of vital air in the head, 190; Manas as Gandharva, with Rikṣ and Sāmans as Apsaras, his mates, 233; Mind alone existed in the be-

ginning, 375; thence the other four vital airs (speech, breath, the eye, the ear), and after them work and fire, were evolved each one from the preceding one by worshipping with its thirty-six thousand Arka-fires, 375 seq.; Mind preceded and created by Death, hunger, 402; the libations to Mind and Speech (Sarasvat and Sarasvati) are such to Full and New moon, V, 28, 31, 32, 35; Sacrificer is mind, manifested in speech, 262; what is thought in mind is spoken by speech, and heard by ear, 263; is the overlord of vital airs, 501; all is gained thereby, 507.

nithuna, not to take place during dikṣhā, III, 185; or prior to mantrāvaruṇa curds, 186.

Mitra,—by one syllable gains trivṛt-stoma, III, 40; is the Brahman, 67; to him belongs wood broken off by itself, and naturally produced butter, 67; the larger rice-grains, 68; what is cooked by hot steam, 68; injures no one but is every one's friend, 68; Mitra Satya, pap of nūmba seed to, 71; pravṛgām havis (pap), 125; Mitra is the breath, 230; (together with the Vasuṣ) mixes the clay, 231; is the wind, 245; the out-breathing (prāṇa), IV, 68; takes Śrī's noble rank (kṣatras) and receives (mitravindā) oblation (pap), V, 62-5; the ninth of the ten deities ('all the gods') receiving oblation of drops, 281.

Mitra-Bṛhaspati, a pap to, III, 66; are the path of the sacrificer, 17.

Mitra-Varuṇa,—are appointed as kings by the gods, III, 73; to them the Rāgaṇya belongs by his arms, 88, 93; are dhṛitavratas (upholders of the sacred law), 89; mount the chariot and thence behold Aditi and Diti, 93; are the directors (prajāstārau), 99; dish of clotted curds (payasyā) to them, 105, 186; (pañṇakāṇa) dish of clotted curds (payasyā) on north part of vedi, 120, 121; Adhvaryu's fee

- for it sterile cow, 122;— are the out-breathing (*prāṇa*) and up-breathing (*udāna*), 122; V, 181; connected with rain and wind, and the *ekavimsa-stoma*, IV, 68; *payasyā* to, is a divine mate for Sacrificer (since prior to it he must not touch woman), 270; this *payasyā* is seed, put into *Pragâpati*, 270; are this and the other worlds, V, 268; the *prāṇa* and *apāna*, 269; offering of barren cows, 402; seasonal animal sacrifice, 402, 411.
- mitrâvaruṇa-netrâb* (*devâb*), seated in the north, III, 49.
- Mitravindâ*, form of sacrifice (ten oblations), V, 62 seq.
- month, — twelve or thirteen in the year, III, 119; a thirteenth, 182; has sixty days and nights, 184; the year their ruler, IV, 74; the thirteenth is *Agni's* trunk, 167; the thirteenth is the year itself, V, 247; is an excrescence of the year, 276.
- moon, slain when set at liberty, III, 45; is *Vratra* and *Soma*, 45; (*Kandramas*) how created, 149; is seed, 149; the *Vive Devâb* placed with moon in the quarters, 150; is *Pragâpati*, 178; dwells on earth at new-moon, 178; slaughtered by the gods at full-moon, 178; is *Vratra*, 178; one of *Agni's* forms, 230; is the hook or point to which the year is linked by the seasons, 269; created with the regions, 286; sun and moon *Pragâpati's* eyes, the moon the eye on which he lay, hence much closed up, 313; is *Soma's* highest glory in the heavens, and cause of him to be celebrated there, 355; is mind, and becomes (or gives birth to) speech, IV, 11; is the year and all living beings, 54; is the (thunderbolt and) *pañkadasa-stoma* (because of its waxing and waning fifteen days), 62; is the tail of *Agni-Pragâpati*, the altar and universe, 179; the essence of oblations goes up to the moon, 179; (*Kandramas*), as *Gandharva*, with the stars as *Apsaras*, his mates, 232; when the moon sets it enters the wind, 333; is *Aditya's* (*Agni-Pragâpati's*) food, 349; is king *Soma*, 349; V, 6, 9, 10; is the ascended *Pragâpati-Sacrificer*, made up of all existing things, IV, 354; is the bolt of the gate of sacrifice, V, 1; the heavenly dog watching the *Sacrificer's* cattle (to seize them), 10; the hare-marked one, 10; full and new moon variously identified, 30 seq.; moon (*Soma*) is the *Asvamedha*, 33, 34; the moon, one of the six doors to the *Brahman*, 66, 67; his light taken by the sun, 130; represented by piece of silver tied to a darbha plant and taken eastwards, 196; is born again and again, 315; the type of vitality, 315; is the spotless *Brahman* (*masc.*), 317, 318; *Kandra* (the regent of the regions or of the *Nakshatras*?) is the Self of the gods, 305.
- mortals, created from lower (downward) vitalairs, III, 150; IV, 289.
- mortar and pestle, put in first layer, III, 393-396; mean food, 393 seq.; the mortar is the womb, the pestle the *jina* of the *Agni-animal*, 400; IV, 2.
- mother, bears son on her lap, III, 232.
- mouth, peculiar mark in mouth is lucky, IV, 81; (*paizrit*) reaching up to mouth, 159; lifting of sacrificer on throne-seat up to the mouth, V, 254.
- mrityumohini*, the first four stoma-bricks of fourth layer, IV, 50 n.
- muhūrta*, a fifteenth part of the day (and a thirtieth part of day and night), IV, 351 seq.; 10,800 in the year, 352; V, 169; in each *muhūrta* a four-score of syllables completed to make up the *trayi vidyâ*, *Pragâpati's* body, IV, 353; consists of fifteen *kshipras*, V, 169.
- Mundibha Audanya*, discovers atonement for slaying of *Brâhmana*, V, 341.
- mudga*-grass, layer of it put in fire-pan, as the womb, III, 251.

nabhas, the first rainy month, IV, 48.
nabhasya, the second rainy month, IV, 48.

Nāḍapit (Kaṇva's hermitage), V, 399.
nada-verse, IV, 113.

nadipati, III, 75.

Nagnagit, Svargit Nagnagit (or Nāgnagita), the Gāndhāra (a rāḡanyabandhu), IV, 21.

Nāka Maudgalya, a teacher, V, 201.

nākasad, bricks of fifth layer, are the gods (seated on the firmament), IV, 97 seq.; are the four priests with the Sacrificer, 103; are the (Sacrificer's) Self, 104; the regions, 104.

nakshatra, III, 19; Agnīvādhāna not to be performed under a special nakshatra, V, 1; single nakshatra, 423; are a place of abode to all the gods, 505; (Kandra, or Varuṇa? their regent), 505, 506.

nāmba (āmba) seed, growing on unploughed ground, III, 71.

name, giving of, trees from evil, III, 159; oblations to names (of Agni) forming part of the Vasor dhārā, IV, 219; he who is consecrated (anointed) comes to have two names, 247; form and name, as two forces of the Brahman, the former being the stronger, V, 27, 28.

nameless finger, III, 221, 294.

Namūti, an Asura, killed by Indra, III, 92; drinks Soma with the Aśvins, 135; takes Indra's Soma-drink and vital energy, V, 216; wins Indra's source of strength by means of the Surā-liquor, 222; is slain by Indra with foam of water, being neither dry nor moist, neither staff nor bow, neither palm nor fist, 223; is evil, 223; in his severed head was Soma-juice mixed with blood, 223; the Aśvins bring away the Soma from him, and Sarasvatī distils (presses) it, 232.

Nārāyaṃsi-Gāthāb, to be studied, V, 98.

Nārāyana, - Puruṣa Nārāyana, exhorted by Praḡāpati to sacrifice, V, 172, 173.

naudhasa-sāman, III, introd. xvi.

navadara-stoma, is heat and the year, IV, 63.

navel, goes all round, III, 86; navel of the earth (is the place where ukhā is standing), 258; gold plate worn by Agnīkīṭ over navel, 267; sun stands over navel of the earth (or sky), 267; below navel is seed, 267; part of animal above navel is sacrificially pure, 267; immortal part of vital air is above navel, 267; the intestinal (channel of) vital air round about the navel, IV, 17; navel-high (parīrit), 158; the food above the navel is immortal, below mortal, 285; navel-high, lighting of Sacrificer on throne-seat, V, 251.

neck (grivāb), consists of fourteen joints, V, 163.

needle, - copper, silver and gold ones (or wires) used for making the 'knife-paths,' V, 326, 327.

Neshtri, draws cups of Surā, III, 10; leads forth patni, 31; garment his fee at Darapeya, 119; is under Adhvaryu, V, 137; Neshtri (or Pratiprasthātri) leads up the king's wives, 321.

netting (akya), for carrying the Ukhya Agni, III, 268; is the regions, 268; with six strings of reed grass, 269; is the seasons, 269.

New and Full-moon sacrifice. See Darśapūrṇamāsa.

new moon, - thence the sacrifice is spread, III, 180; the night of new moon is the gate of the sacrifice, V, 1; then the moon comes down to this world, 2; new moon an additional offering in honour of Indra for having slain Vṛātra (at full moon), 6, 7; is a single nakshatra, 423.

nidhana, - prastāva and nidhana, IV, 145, 146.

nidhanavat-sāman, produced from paṅkti, and from it the āgraya-graha, IV, 11.

night, is a uniter, IV, 89; is the goodness (well-being) of the year, as then all beings dwell together, 326; originates from

- the darkness arising from the Asuras when created, V, 14; means peaceful dwelling, 285.
- nigrābhyāb (water used for moistening Soma-plants), V, 106; are the divine waters, 107.
- nilakant/a, IV, 162 n.
- nineteen, IV, 74.
- ninety, sixteen nineties (of dhṛiti oblations) are the horse's chain, V, 288.
- nipples, on fire-pan, III, 237.
- Nirriti (evil, corruption), oblation of spilled rice to, III, 43; is this earth, 43, 322; pap of black rice split by finger-nails, 65; her bricks and altar, 319 seq.; to her belong husks, 320; is black, 320; south-west her region, 320; her bricks laid down in a cleft of ground or natural hollow, or where no plants grow, 321; Nirriti visits him who does not offer Soma, 321; is sharp-edged, 321; binds with an iron band, 322; of one mind with Yama and Yami (Agni and the earth), 322; the awful goddess, 322; the sling sacred to her, 323; in the direction of Nirriti's region (S.W.) stone is thrown (thereby expelling all heat and suffering from the world), IV, 171, 361.
- nishka, worn by Sacrificer round his neck, V, 338; given to Adhvaryu, 350.
- nishkevalya-stotra and -jastra, belong to Indra, III, 13, 81; connected with Soma, the Maruts, north, &c., 102; on second day of Ajvamedha, V, 380.
- niyut (team of Vāyu), is the up-brigathing (udāna), III, 173, 177.
- north, connected with Anushrubh, autumn, &c., III, 91; is Rudra's region, 97; IV, 158; V, 488; northwards Sacrificer and wife ascend the sacrificial post, III, 32; northwards he puts the Ukhya Agni on the chariot, 290; palāra branch thrown out northwards, 299; thither he relegates decline, sickness, 348; hungry people live in that region, 348; horse and ram most plentiful in the north region, 404; is the anushrubh, IV, 45; the Maruts its lords, 102; Soma its protector, 102; connected with ekavimśa-stoma, nishkevalya-jastra, vairāga-sāman, 102; self-ruling, 46, 102; north side of altar offering-place to Rudra, 158; is the waters and the law, V, 18; is the region of men, 448; the region of the Sacrificer's offspring (or subjects, people), 485.
- north-east, standing towards, Pragāpati creates creatures, III, 252, 276; is the quarter of gods and men, 252; IV, 227; there is the gate of heaven, III, 252; in that direction one offers libations and leads up the dakshinās, 252; towards north-east, the Agnikat stands whilst holding the Ukhya Agni up towards the east, 272 (275), and north-east, 280; the Vishvustrides made in that direction, 276; animals let loose towards north-east, 239; ditto oxen after ploughing the agnikshetra, 331; ditto white horse, 339; the direction of the sun, V, 485.
- nose, a partition between the eyes, and the persons therein (Indra and Indrāṇi), IV, 369.
- nostrils, are the path of breath (prāṇa), V, 263.
- number, the highest and lowest, IV, 172.
- nyagrodha (ficus indica), therefrom consecration vessel for a friendly Rāganya to sprinkle, III, 83; originates from Indra's bones (and sweet drink), V, 215, 216; means sweet drink, 220; takes root when turned downwards, 317; not to stand near a grave, 427.
- oblations, are flesh, IV, 206.
- ocean, lord of rivers, III, 75; flows round the earth from east southwards, 301; is a moat, 301; flows round, and encompasses these worlds, IV, 169; flows from left to right, 169; the

- cloudy ocean, the sky, 235; three of Yagus, Sāman, and *Rik* (Agni, Mahāvratā and Mahaduktham), 278; the year's sattra likened to the crossing of an ocean, V, 145 seq.; (the aerial) is the wind, 479.
- off-spring, is all the light, III, 239.
- ogress-ridder, is the wind, V, 479.
- ointment, for eyes and feet, V, 439.
- old ox, old barley, and old arm-chor, as fee for oblation to Agni Ayushmat after burial, V, 439.
- omentum. See *vapi*.
- one, is speech, IV, 73.
- ore, produced from stone, III, (147), 138.
- ox, tired out by drawing the cart, III, 257; is Agni, 354; ox will do for white horse in leading forward Agni, 362; *apa-bhrūvā* is vigour, produced in the shape of the *bṛhati* metre, IV, 38; born from old as a draught animal, V, 294; holding on to the tail of an ox, while returning home from burial, 438.
- ox-hide, red, for the layers or bricks to be put on, III, 155; *Rājanya* shoots arrows at two ox-hides, IV, 287 n.
- padapaṅkti metre, is the earth, IV, 88.
- pañ. See *māṅg-pañ*.
- Paṅgya, remark of his on the shat-ahas, V, 162; cf. *Madhuka*.
- palāḡala, courier, one of the *ratninaḡ*, III, 64; to him belong skin-covered bow, leathern quiver, and red turban, 64.
- pālāḡali, addressed by chamberlain, V, 387.
- palāsa, (*butea frondosa*), is the Brahman, III, 53, 83, 258; V, 221; consecration vessel therefrom, for Brāhmana to sprinkle, III, 83; resin of palāsa for boiling water, 229; palāsa is Soma, 229, 258; site of Gārhapatya swept with palāsa branch, 298; not the *Āhavanīya*, 343; sacrificial stake to be made thereof, V, 123, 373-375; palāsa branch for sweeping burial-place, 430; palāsa peg, 436.
- pañābila pap, consisting of five oblations, III, 120.
- pañādasa-stoma, gained by *Ādityas*, III, 40; connected with *Kshatra*, &c., 91; at evening service of *Kṛṣṇapāṇīya*, 127; produced from *antaryāma-graha*, and from it the *bṛhat-prashūḡa*, IV, 7; is bright, the thunderbolt, and the moon, 62; through it, connected with *Indra* and *Vishṇu*, the *Kshatra* is freed from death, 68; is the arm, 79; connected with *Indra*, the *Rudras*, the south, &c., 101.
- pañākūṭā, bricks of the fifth layer, IV, 96, 10 seq.; are the *h*itās, 103; etymology, 103; at the sacrificer's mate, 104; of spring, 104; the regions beyond the sun, 104; shafts and missiles protecting the worlds, 104, 105.
- Pañākūṭa, formerly called *Kṛṣis*, V, 397; cf. *Soma*.
- pañāvītiya offering, III, 48.
- pañāvītiya, III, 48.
- pañāvīmā-stoma, is the embryos, the year, IV, 64; through it, connected with *Ādityas* and *Maruts*, embryos are freed from death, 69.
- pañādhīmya, III, 48.
- pañkti metre, connected with *Ākvara* and *raivata-sāman*, &c., III, 91; produced from winter, and from it the *nidhanavat-sāman*, IV, 11; is the slow metre, in the form of which men were produced, 38; ditto bullocks *tanadūha*, 39; is the upper region, 45; consists of five feet; is the ear (of *Pragāpati*), 327-329; of 10,800 *pañkti* consists the whole *Rik*, and of as many the *Yagus* (7,200) and *Sāman* (3,600), 352, 353.
- Para *Atrāṇa Hairāzyanābha*, king of *Kosala*, performed the *Asvamedha*, V, 397.
- Parameshṭbin, *Parameshṭbin* and *Āditya* connected with the sky, the third *svayam-ātrāṇā*, and fifth layer, III, 188, 190; *Pragāpati* *Parameshṭbin*, lord of beings (*bhūta*), IV, 76; *Parame-*

sh/lin takes *Pragâpati's* head which is sacred to himself, 142; *Paramesh/lin* *Pragâpatya* created out of *Pragâpati* with a life of a thousand years, V, 15; the first who performed New and Full-moon offering, 15; performs it for *Pragâpati*, as a wish-granting sacrifice, 15; is the heavenly waters (? *Parganya*) in the highest place, 15.

Parganya, rain-cloud and rain-god, is *Bhava* (Agni), III, 160; gods become like him, 277; licks the ground and strokes the plants, 277; scarcely born, lights up everything, 278; is beyond the reach of our arms, 278; does not rain in the region where *kimpurusha*, &c., are, 412; is the boon-bestower, the upper region, IV, 107; animal sacrifice to *Parganya*, V, 402.

paridhi, enclosing-stick, on the middle one the yoking or un-yoking of the fire-altar is performed, IV, 250, 252; round tomb, V, 430.

Pârik-shita. See *Ganamegaya*.

Pârik-shitiya, V, 396.

parinâd (sâmans), preceding the *mahâvrata-sâman*, IV, 28; n.: are cattle, 288; how performed, 288 n.

paripasavya, oblations, V, 321.

pariplava legend, V, 361 seq.

pariâsa. See lifting-stick.

parisrit (enclosing-stone),—are the womb of the fire, III, 301, 341; the waters (ocean), 301; IV, 187, 244; are the bones, III, 302; twenty-one for *Gârhapatya*, (301), 308, 344, 359; offering to *Rudra* on three of them (the three *Agnis*), IV, 157; anointing takes place close to enclosing-stones, 2-7; *parisrit* of *dhishya* hearths, are merely laid down, 244; are the clansmen, 244; represent the additional height obtained by man (with upstretched arms) standing on tiptoe, 305; a line dug for them outside (the altar-ground), 306; are of the nature of nights (protective), 326; are

the nights of the year, *Pragâpati's* body, 354, 358; three hundred and sixty for fire-altar, (261 of *Âhavanîya*; 21 *Gârhapatya*; 78 *Dhishnyas*), 357-358; are the waters encircling the earth (the fire-altar), 381.

parisrut (immature liquor), III, 9, 131, 133; originates from *Indra's* generative organ, V, 215; not to be consumed by *Brâhmaṇa*, 260.

Parivakrâ, a city in *Pañtâla*, V, 397.

parivatsara (second year of cycle), IV, 21.

parivrikta, discarded wife, addressed by *Hotri*, V, 387.

pariyagña, enclosing sacrifices, III, 4.

parva,—branch, driving away the calves therewith at new moon, V, 8;—tree originated from fallen feather of *Gâyatri*. (or leaf of *Soma*), 122; tree in the abode of plants?, 435.

pârtha-oblations, twelve at *Râgasûya*, III, 81; twelve at *Agnikâyana*, IV, 225; are the year, 228.

pârthurasma-sâman, V, 333.

partridge (*tittiri*), springs from *Vasurûpa's* head, III, 130.

paryagnikarava, V, 307.

paryangya, victims, at *Asvamedha*, V, 299 n.

paryâya, III, introd. xviii.

pasu, etymology, III, 162; cf. victim.

Pasupati, a form and name of *Agni*, III, 159; is the plants, 159.

pasu-purodâsa, III, 136, 137, 173, 175; IV, 245, 247, 248; their object, 247 n.; directions (*prâishast*), 205; should belong to the deities to whom the victims are devoted, V, 221.

Pârava. See *Revottaras*.

path, two paths, that of the Fathers, and that of the gods, V, 237, 238.

Pâthya, the bull, is the mind, III, 218.

patni. See *Sacrificer's* wife.

patnisâlâ, IV, 307.

patnisamyâga, their symbolic import, V, 44.

Paulushi. See *Satyayagña*.

Pauru-âyana. See *Dusharitu*.

paurushamedhika, the central (day), V, 419.

pavamāna - stotra, — (bahish - pava-māna) is heaven, V, 305, 306.
 pavamāni-verses, V, 235.
 pavitra, a Soma-sacrifice, III, introd. xxvi, 42.
 pavitra, strainer, filter, — gold weaved therein, III, 84; (of goat's hair and sheep's wool), V, 235.
 payasyā (dish of clotted curds), to Mitra and Varuna, III, 105, 186, 120; is the essence of cattle, 105.
 pearls, 101; gold pearls woven into hair of sacrificial horse, V, 313.
 pebble, (gravel) produced from sand, III, (147), 158; used instead of bricks for the sepulchral mound of a non-Agniāt, V, 440.
 phālguna, — full moon of second phālguna is the first night of the year, III, 179; V, 318.
 pilippilī (? smooth, glossy), V, 15, 116.
 pīṣāṅgā (? tawny), V, 316, 359.
 pitādāru (deodar), V, 373, 374.
 Pitarāḥ, — somivantāḥ, barhishadāḥ, agnashyāttāḥ, Hlations of Surā to, III, 136; cf. fathers.
 pitcher, with a hundred or nine holes, III, 135.
 plaksha (ficus infectoria), mat of, V, 394.
 plants, grow three times a year (spring, rainy season, autumn), III, 340; shoot out a hundred-fold and a thousandfold, 310; plants as Apsaras, the Gandharva Agni's mates, IV, 231; delighted in by every one, 232.
 plough (śira), yoking of, III, 326; etymology, 326; of udumī ara wood, 326; its cords of muṇḍa grass, 326.
 poison, in Praṇapati's body (from Rudra's shaft), V, 36.
 pond, water from, III, 77.
 pool, water from, III, 76.
 porcupine, V, 390.
 post, sacrificial. See yūpa.
 Potri, garment his fee at Dāvapeya, III, 119; is under the Brahman priest, V, 137.
 pradakṣiṇam (prasalavi), V, 323, 468.
 Praṇapati, seventeen victims to, III, introd. xxiv, 14; is the sacrifice and food of the gods, 1; lord of speech, 5; seventeen-fold, 8; IV, 190, 347; V, 352;

the thirty-fourth god, III, 9, 79; man is nearest to him, 15; means productiveness, 15; is the sacrifice and the year, 30, &c.; he who offers Vāḍapeya becomes Praṇapati's child, 32; Praṇapati delivers creature from Varuna's noose, 47; Praṇapati - Agni, the Purusha, 144; Praṇapati becomes relaxed and is restored by Agni, hence called Agni, 151, 152; is Agni's father and son, 153, 154; Agni's father, 360; bhūtānām patiḥ (the year), husband of Ushas, 158; is Mahān Devaḥ (Agni), 160; covets Agni's forms, 161; is all the metres, 169; a he-goat slaughtered for him, 171; Praṇapati is hornless, 171; twenty-one-fold, 172; one half of him is Viyu and one half Praṇapati, 173; is the moon, 178; the eighth day after full-moon sacred to Praṇapati, 180; Praṇapati (and Agni) connected with the earth and the first svayamā-trinā, 187, 190; is these worlds and the quarters, 193; harnesses the mind, 193; the inspirer of devotion, 194; he is the immortal one, and the gods his sons, 194; digs for Agni, 215; is undefined, 215; both the defined and the undefined, 311; V, 455; the manly-minded, III, 284; is both gods and men, 290; after producing creatures, becomes relaxed, and is restored by the gods, 312; without him there was no firm foundation, 312; is food, 312; the vital air that went from him is Vāyu; his lost vigour is Āditya, 312; his downward vital air is the fire on earth, the air his body, the wind in the air is the vital air in his body, the sky his head, the sun and moon his eyes, 313; Praṇapati is the begetter of the earth, 346; is the whole Brahman (n.), 353; Praṇapati becomes a white horse and finds Agni on a lotus-leaf, 360; is the Man, 366; the vital air his pleasing form, 367;

Agni and Indra take away his fiery spirit and vigour, 374; they become his arms, 374; his hair becomes the herbs, 380;—IV, introd. xiv seq.; his dismemberment the creation of the universe, xv; is the Sacrificer, *ib.*; the Arch-sacrificer, xix; the one god above all other gods, xx; the thirty-fourth, xx; V, 151, 211; the food of the gods (Soma), IV, introd. xxi; Father Time or Father Year, xxii seq.; is Death, xxiii; is the *Rishi* Virvakarman, IV, 28, 37; Pragâpati, the highest lord (parameshu/în), becomes a metre, 37; in the form of Gâyatri overcomes cattle, 37; in the air Pragâpati is Vâyu, 57, 58; is the Brahman (*n.*), 59, 60; is (aerial) space, and the *saptadasha-stoma*, 62; becomes pregnant with living beings (*bhûta*), 67; Pragâpati Parameshu/în, the lord of living beings (*bhûta*), 76; the progenitor (*praganayitri*), 76; is the mind (*i-metre*), 88; enters heaven last of gods, 113, 117; consists of sixteen parts (*kalâ*), 189; takes Agni, as his dear son, to his bosom, 206; those going to the heavenly light and becoming immortal become Pragâpati's children, 220; from him couples issue in the form of Gandharvas and Apsaras, and he, becoming a chariot, encloses them, 229, 234; Pragâpati Virvakarman, who has wrought the universe, 233; is *Dhâtri*, 263; one half of Pragâpati mortal, and the other immortal, 290, 292; becomes clay and water, and enters the earth, afraid of Death, 290; is recovered in the form of bricks, 290; is built up so as to become immortal, 291; his body in part of Agni's. Indra's, and the All-gods' nature, 291; he (by chips of gold) finally makes his body of golden form, 295; Pragâpati is the (sacrificial) animals—man, horse, bull, ram, he-goat, 299; Pragâpati goes up to the world where the sun

shines, and becomes the one sacrificial animal, 301; is *Savitri*'s well-winged eagle, 301; Father Pragâpati requires his due proportions, 309; Pragâpati's body contains Agni, all objects of desire, 313; poured, as seed, into the *ukhâ*, 341; is Agni, 345; Pragâpati, the year, and his lights, 349 seq.; Pragâpati, the year, has created all existing things, 350; to encompass all beings he divides himself into different bodies, 350 seq.; Pragâpati's body contains (or consists of) the three-fold science, 352; Pragâpati and Sacrificer, being composed of all existing things, on ascending, become the moon, and the sun is their foundation, being generated out of their own selves, 354, 355;—Pragâpati, the sacrifice, is the year, V, 1; the *Purusha*, Pragâpati, born in a year, from a golden egg, 12; his first words, 'b' ūh, bhuvah, svar,' 12; born with a life of a thousand years, 13; Pragâpati smites the *Asuras* with evil and darkness, 13, 14; Pragâpati, by the Full and New-moon sacrifice, becomes the vital air and Vâyu, 15; Pragâpati is everything endowed with breath, 16; gives himself up to the gods and creates the sacrifice as a counterpart of himself, 22; Pragâpati and his daughter, 36 *n.*; poison in his body, 36; *Sri* issuing from him, 62; *brahma-kûrin* committed to him, 86; Father Pragâpati resorted to by the gods for advice, 91 seq.; Pragâpati alone in beginning, from him the three worlds, 102; the seventeenfold Pragâpati, what he consists of (as regards the *trayi vidyâ*), 170; exhorts *Purusha Nârâyana* to sacrifice, 172; victim before initiation for *Sattra*, formerly to *Savitri*, now to Pragâpati, 174; Pragâpati, the sacrifice, is king *Soma*, 205 seq.; by producing the sacrifice he lost his greatness which went

to the great sacrificial priests, 275; the most vigorous of gods, 278; Prāgāpati performs *Avamedha*, 289; is the chief (*mukha*) of deities, 292; victim to Prāgāpati, 371; is the Brahman (n.), 409; Manu Prāgāpati carried by the earth (his wife, a mare), 466.

Prāgāpati-hridaya (Prāgāpater *hri-dayam*), a *sāman* sung over the completed altar, IV, 180.

prāgvamśa, IV, 307 n.

Prākinasāla *Aupamanya*, a teacher, IV, 393 n.; (?) is the same as *Mahāsāla Gābāla*, 393 n., 395 n.

prākinavamśa, IV, 307 n.

Prākinayogya. See *Satyayagya*, *Sauteya*.

prakrama, step, movement,--forty-nine oblations to torus of the horse, V, 282, 363, 384.

Prītyas, being of *Viśva* nature, make their burials, *śoes round*,

V, 423; and are there with stone, 470.

Prakṛdanti, the *Asuras*, is the western quarter, or the day, IV, 106, 107.

prāna (vital air), water thereof, III, 184; nine, 97, 196, 218, 296; seven of head and two downward ones, IV, 247; V, 150; ten, III, 174, 297; IV, 51, 165, 243, 246; V, 24; three, III, 210, 385; six, 270; were the *Rishis*, 147; are good for all beings, 151; is Prāgāpati, 192; the *śruva*, 192; are the thoughts, 193; are *Agni*, 196; is *Mitra*, 230; immortal part of vital air is above navel, the mortal part passes by and away from the navel, 267; sink the body to food, 270; are the divine inspirers, 305; three downward vital airs, 315; the three compared with the three fires, 317; number of vital airs in body uncertain, 331; food for them placed in mouth, 332, 388; seven vital airs in the head, 340, 402; seven in each victim (or its head), 403; is Prāgāpati's pleasing form, 367; belongs to the whole universe,

385; is taken in from the front backwards, 391; is the male, the mate of speech, 391; the head is the birth-place of all the vital airs, 396; the five (of the head) mind (soul), eye, breath (*prāna*), ear, voice (speech), 402; depart from Prāgāpati, IV, 3; create food with Prāgāpati, 3; spring-season produced from breath, 4; the *Rishi* *Vasishṭha* is breath, 5; are connected and one, 5; five (*prāna*, *apāna*, *vyāna*, *udāna*, *samāna*), 15; *prāna* becomes the *apāna*, 16; intestinal vital air (*guda prāna*), 17; run in body both lengthwise and crosswise, 18; must reach every limb, 19; pass not only backward and forward but everywhere, 19; contract and expands the body and limbs, 21; are *life-sustaining* gods, 32; up, down, and through-breathing, 34, 47; obto and out-breathing, 43; breath necessary for all, 48; separated from each other by the width of a horse-hair (*vāta*), 55; seven in front (upper half of man), 55, 57; seven counter-breathings behind, 55, 58; one in each limb, 55; ten focussed in the head, 57; out-breathing (*prāna*) is *Mitra*, the down-breathing (*apāna*) *Varuna*, 68; three (*prāna*, *udāna*, *vyāna*), 73; four *prāna*, with mind as the fifth, 73; seven in the head, the seven *Rishis*, 73; nine, 73; ten with the *ātman* as the eleventh; 74; *prāna* and *apāna*, 86; *prāna*, *vyāna*, *udāna*, 90, 237; V, 246; pass backwards and forwards, IV, 90; *prāna*, *apāna*, *vyāna*, 131, 186; V, 89, 90; is kindled by the sun, and hence is warm, IV, 135; without vital air a limb would shrivel up, 136, 140; *prāna*, *apāna*, *vyāna*, *udāna*, 143; they are the same as vital power (*āyus*), 143; the highest thing in universe, 149; are the immortal element, 178, 327; (*prāna*, *apāna*), 167; are the gods of the gods, 185;

are not eaters of oblations, 183; without them no dwelling-place becomes pure, 186; they are neither in the sky nor on earth, but whatever breathes therein, 186; connects head with body, 188; in the head fivefold (mind, speech, breath, eye, ear), 190; (prāna, breath) is one of the five divisions of vital air (prāna) in the head, 190; eight limbs and eight prānas, 190; vital airs kindle (the body), 203; the vital airs are the immortal part of the body, 202; how they are represented in the layers of the altar (Pragīpati's body), 202 seq.; by the prāna gods eat food, by the apāna men, 203; are the perfect (sādhyā, blessed) gods, 204; vital air is the light of the body, 226; a hundred and one in the body, 226; is not the immortal element, but something material, 227; are the seven nities, 227-230; vital airs consume him who is hungry and feverish, 237, 248; breathe voided from speech, and from it the eye, 277; triad—Agni, Āditya, Prāna—are the eater, the Arka, the Uktha, the Puruṣa, 398, 399; Vāyu, on entering man, is divided into the ten vital airs, V, 3; āśya, 'the breath of the mouth,' therefrom the gods created, 13; from the downward breathing (avāna) the Asuras, 13; downward breathing abhorred by other breathings, but in it everything that enters the others meets, 19; prāna (breath of mouth) is the eater of food, udāna (of the nose) fills man, and (of the eyes, ears, &c.) is the giver of food, 31; prāna and apāna move in a forward and a backward direction respectively, 43; prāna entering udāna and reversely, 83; vyāna entering udāna, 84; central prāna belongs to Indra, 121; with five breathings (prāna, vyāna, apāna, udāna, samāna) five Brāhmanas (or the father himself) to breathe over

child (before navel-string has been cut) to ensure long life, 129, 130; two downward (avāna) breathings and udāna (by which men rise, ud-yanati, 183; two, five, six, seven, twelve, or thirteen, 188; prāna and apāna, each equal to the totalling of the eye, 189; 10,000 breathings of man in day and night, 170; prāna and udāna, moving downward and upward, 230; all vital airs established on speech, 246; all vital airs established on prāna and udāna, 262; etymology (prā-nā, 263; nostrils are the path of prāna, 263; food eaten by prāna is pervaded by vyāna, and its essence shed as seed, 264; vital airs of him who speaks impure speech pass away, 326; the mind (soul) their overlord, 404.

prānadhāt, trucks, are the vital airs, IV, 1; how placed, 2; laid down by tens, 2; etymology, 12; are the limbs, 13; of second layer, 23, 33 seq.; ten of third layer, 51; are the moon (being food as making up a virāḡ), 54.

prazītāḥ, lustral water, is the head of the sacrifice, V, 35, 492; at the haviryagñā, 119; etymology, 270.

prasalavi. See pradakṣyam.

prastāva, - prastāva and nidhana, IV, 145, 146.

Prastotri, a horse his fee at Dasapeya, III, 119; under Udgātri, V, 136.

• prātaranuvāka, III, introd. xviii; IV, 249; of Atirātra superseded by Āsvina-jastra, but is to be repeated in a low voice by Maitravaruna, V, 92, 93.

• Pratidanza Aibhāvata (king of the Svikna), as authority on the Sautrāmāṇi, V, 230.

• Pratihartri, priest, is under Udgātri, V, 137.

Prātiṭhiya. See Balhika.

Pratiprasthāttri, III, 111; gold mirror his fee at Dasapeya, 119; is under Adhvaryu, V, 137; offers the cups of Surā-liquor on the Southern of the two

- Eastern fires, 232; Pratiprasthātṛi (or Neshtrī) leads up the king's wives, 321.
- pratiṣṭhā (stand), is threefold (tripod), IV, 116.
- prāṇa-jastra, connected with Indra, the Rudras, the South, &c., IV, 101.
- Pravargya, III, 355; IV, 187; 'setting out,' IV, 187; V, 493 seq.; Pravargya vessels are Agni, Vāyu, and Āditya, IV, 187; the head of the Sacrifice, 188; performed as long as the Upasads, 317; is the sun, 317; V, 445; on Satarudriya day, day of preparation, and sutyā day, IV, 320;—performance, V, 441 seq.; time of performance, 458; is Vāyu-Pūshan, 475; when performed, 490 seq.; combined with Upasad, 493; is the year, the worlds (and Agni, Vāyu, and Sūrya), the Sacrificer, &c., 507 seq.
- prayāga, mystic significance of, V, 40.
- prāyana, III, 305.
- prāyānya offering, III, 325; ends with the Samyo, IV, 258, 259; Prāyānya Ātūtra, 251.
- prayugīm havishī (twelve oblations of teams), III, 123; for yoking the seasons, 123.
- prelude. See prastāva.
- pressing-stones, (grāvan), are of Brihati nature, V, 243; the vital airs, 186.
- priests, officiating, are the limbs of the Sacrifice, IV, 280; V, 236; are of the same world as the Sacrificer, IV, 280; must not bargain for dakṣhīnās, 280; sixteen, 348; the order in which these are initiated for a sattra, V, 135 seq.; messes of rice for them, 343; the quarters (regions) parcelled out between them, 402, 412, 420;—priest's mess of rice, see brahmaudana.
- prishṭha-sāman, six, III, introd. xx-xxiii; V, 148 n.; seven, IV, 277, 314.
- prishṭha-stotra, III, introd. xvi, xx seq., 333, 376; are the seasons, V, 331.
- prishṭhya-graha, belongs to Agni, Indra, and Sūrya, III, 6.
- prishṭhya-shadaha, III, introd. xxi; V, 148; used by Āngiras when contending with Ādityas, V, 152; etymology, 152, 162.
- Prāthin Vainya, consecrated first of men, III, 81.
- Priyavrata Rauhināyana, directs the wind, IV, 340.
- procreation. See generation.
- prospering-oblations. See kalpa.
- Proti Kauṣāmbeya Kausurubīndi, residing as religious student with Uddilaka Āruvi, V, 153.
- prushvā (mist, moisture, or hoarfrost), III, 77.
- punaryagña, IV, 121.
- punaskṛti, on fifth layer of fire-altar, IV, 99, 110 seq.; is seed and generative power, 119; etymology, 121; on what part of the altar to be laid, 121; is the uttaravedi, 121; as substitute for complete altar, 271.
- Puṇḡikasthālā, the Apsaras, is the (eastern) quarter, or (Agni's) army, IV, 105.
- Purāṇa (stories of old time), to be studied, V, 98; the Veda of birds, 369.
- puraskarana, IV, 337.
- purastād bhāgāb, III, 333; IV, 185; cf. uddhāra.
- purisha, III, 201; its formulās are Agni's hair, itself his food, IV, 20; covering of soil, 26; is food, 95, 96, 139; is the pericardium, 96; is flesh, 138, 149; vital air, 139; belongs to Indra, 140; is one half of the altar, 140; symbolical meaning of its layers (1st cattle, 2nd birds, 3rd stars, 4th sacrificial gifts, 5th progeny and subjects, 6th gods), 147 seq.; 'earth to earth,' V, 203.
- Purishya (Agni, the altar), III, 201; favourable to cattle, cattle-loving, 206, 214; (? rich, plentiful), 310; Agni Purishya, the son of the Earth, 311.
- pūrṇahuti, III, 42; V, 504.
- Purohita, one of the ratninaḥ, III, 59; anoints (sprinkles) king in front, 94; hands the sphyra to consecrated king, 110; Kshatriya and Purohita alone complete, 259; are everything, 260;

- is perfect in sanctity and power, 260; his fire used by king for offering during *dikshâ*, V, 371.
- Pûru, an Asura-Rakshas, overthrown by Agni in battles, III, 292.
- Purukutsa, the Aikshvâka, performed the Arvamedha, V, 397.
- Purûravas, son of Idâ,-- Purûravas and Urvâjî, V, 68 seq.; wanders about in Kurukshetra, 70; becomes a Gandharva, 74.
- purusha, seven purushas (the seven *Rshis*) made into one, III, 144; IV, 205;-- the Purusha, 304, 305; is Pragâpati-Agni, III, 144;-- (man) a sacrificial animal, 162; 163 seq.; slaughtered for *Vishvakarman*, 162; has twenty-four limbs, 167; twenty-one parts, 172; hornless and bearded, 177; Purusha, IV, introd. xiv seq.; (man in the sun, and in the eye, the gold man), xxii; this divine person (in sun, and eye) is variously served as Agni, Sâman, Uktham, &c., IV, 373; (Agni) *Vaivânara* is the Purusha, 398; the Agni-like, Arka-like, Uktha-like Purusha, 399; is the true Brahman, 400; Purusha Pragâpati, born from golden egg, V, 125. Purusha Nârâyana exhorted by Pragâpati to sacrifice, 172, 173; is established in five things, 389; Purusha Nârâyana, 403; Purusha born from Virâg, and Virâg from Purusha, 403;-- purushas (men) as victims, 407 seq.; cf. sun, eye.
- Purushamedha, III, introd. xxvi; V, introd. xxi seq., 403 seq.; five *sutyâs*, 405; etymology, 407.
- Purusha-Nârâyana (litany), V, 410; cf. purusha.
- purusha-sâman, (III, 369): IV, 146.
- purusha-sûkta, IV, introd. xiv.
- pûrvâbhisheka, IV, 249.
- Pûrvakîrti, the Apsaras, in an intermediate (?upper) quarter, or the dakshinâ, IV, 108.
- Pûshan, by five syllables gained the five regions, III, 40; pap to, 55, 63; lord of cattle, 55; V, 346; represents productiveness, III, 56; dark grey bullock the fee for oblation to Pûshan, 56, 63; pârtha-oblation to Pûshan, 82; Pûshan *Vishvavedas* (all-possessing), 89; assists *Varuna*, 113; *samsrip* oblation (pap) to, 116; *prayugâm havis* (pap), 125; is this earth, 205; V, 352; Aditi and Pûshan connected with *trinava-stoma*, IV, 69; rules over small animals, 75; is rattle, 195; V, 293; takes *Sri's* wealth and receives (*mitra-vindâ*) oblation (pap), V, 62-65; protector of travellers, 293; watcher of men, 293; expiatory pap, 346; lord of roads, 352, 353; is (*Vâyu*) the wind, 474.
- pushkara, etymology, III, 365.
- pûtika. See âdâra.
- quarters. See regions.
- queen, one of the *ratninas*, III, 60; lies down near sacrificial horse, V, 322.
- race. See chariot race.
- Râganya, shoots seventeen arrows' ranges, III, 25; word of four syllables, 25; takes part in chariot race, 29; holds honey-cup and cup of *Surâ*, 29; sprinkles king from *nyagrodha* vessel, 83; the bow his strength (*virya*), 89; ten Râganyas drink of Sacrificer's cup, 114; armoured Râganya driving round sacrificial ground, shooting arrows at two ox-hides, IV, 283 n.; not to be engaged with in disputation by Brâhmanas, V, 114; hired by some to drink the *Surâ-liquor*, 233; a form of the *kshatra*, 286; battle is his strength, 287; the grandeur of heroism bestowed on him, 294, 295; born (from) of old as one heroic and victorious, skilled in archery, certain of his mark, and a mighty car-fighter, 294, 295; unfit to be consecrated (king), 360; Râganya lute-player, 364 seq.
- râganyabandhu, IV, 21; keep most apart (?from their wives in eating) whence a vigorous son is born to them, 370; Ganaka

- of Videha called thus, V, 113.
- rāgaputra**, a hundred princes born in wedlock to be the guardians of the sacrificial-horse, V, 288; those who reach the end of the year's keeping become sharers in the royal sway, 288, 289.
- Rāgastambâyana**. See *Yagñavalkas Rāgastambâyana*.
- Rāgasūya**, III, introd. xi, xxiv-xxvi; belongs to king and makes him king, III, 4; inferior to *Vāgapeya*, 4; IV, 223; performance, III, 43 seq.; is *Varuna-sava*, 76; a supernumerary (special) rite, 246.
- raggudāla** (*Cordia Myxa*) V, 373, 374.
- Rāhūgana**. See *Gotama Rāhūgana*.
- Raikva**, III, 107.
- rain**, from clouds arising from smoke (steam), III, 185; from smoke sent up by the earth, 383; falls both on ploughed and unploughed land, 336; represented by the *apasyā* bricks, IV, 34; falls everywhere in the same direction, 35; is in the wind, 35; falls abundantly in the rainy season, not in autumn, 49; rain and wind, connected with *Mitra-Varuna*, freed from death through *ekavimsa-stoma*, 68; is the arrows of the *Kucras* in the sky, 164; is ruled over by *Maruts*, 170; produces a well-ordered state of society, V, 18; sounds like a chant, 45; rain-drops, as many as sweat-pores, hair-pits, and twinklings of the eye, 169; hail and lightning two terrible forms of it, 251; the sky, rain, the first conception, 315.
- rainy season**, produced from the eye, and from it the *Gagatī*, IV, 8; consists of months *Nabhas* and *Nabhasya*, 48; rainy season and autumn are the air-world, and the middle of the year, 49.
- raivata** (and *jākvara*) -*sāman*, is a *prishtha-sāman*, III, introd. xxi, xxii; connected with *pañkti*, *trayaśtrimśa*, &c., 91; *jākvara* and *raivata* produced from *trivṛta* and *trayaśtrimśa*, IV, 12; connected with *Bṛihaspati*, *Vijve Devâb*, the upper region, &c., 103.
- Rākâ**, pap offered to her, (the extreme end of) one of the four regions, IV, 264.
- Rakshas**, -safety from, III, 45; suck out creatures, 49; smitten by *Indra* and *Agni*, 51; swept away by the gods, 52; kept by continuous libation from coming after the gods, 191; kept off from south, and sacrifice spread in place free from danger and devilry, 199; seek to hinder the gods from sacrificing, 357; are the associates of the night, 361; *rakshas*-killing counter-charm, 53, 371, 372; repelled by thunderbolt, 372; harass those wandering in a wild forest, V, 160; *Kubera Vajravani* their king, the *Devaganavidyâ* their Veda, 367, 368.
- rakshavidyâ**, V, 368 n.
- ram**, sacrificial animal, III, 162, 165 seq.; slaughtered for *Tvashtri*, 162; is vigour, IV, 38; vicious ram (*aidaka*) an unclean animal, V, 178; originates from *Indra*'s nose, 215.
- Râma**, son of *Dazaratha*, III, 97.
- Râma Mārgaveya**, one of the *Syâparva* family of priests, IV, 345 n.
- rampart**, threefold, III, 212, 213.
- rāshirabhrīt** oblations, at (consecration of) *Agnikâyana*, IV, 229.
- raśmi**, rein, III, 101.
- Rathagrîtsa**, *Agni*'s commander-in-chief (*senâni*), is the first spring-month, IV, 105.
- rathantara-sāman**, III, introd. xiv, xv; connected with *Agni*, xv; with the *brahman*, &c., 91; at *keśavapaniya* used for first *prishtha* and for *sandhi-stotra*, 127; produced from *trivṛt*, IV, 5; (*rathantara-kbandas* is the earth, 89); connected with *Agni*, the *Vasus*, east, *trivṛt* and *āgyasāstra*, 100; sung over completed altar, is this earth, 179; etymology, 179.
- Rathaprotâ**, *Āditya*'s commander-in-

- chief, is the first rainy month, IV, 106.
- Rathasvana, Vāyu's commander-in-chief, is the first summer month, IV, 106.
- Rathaugas, Agni's chieftain (*grāmanī*), the second spring month, IV, 105.
- rathavimōṣaṇīya oblation, III, 101.
- Rathekītra, Vāyu's chieftain (*grāmanī*), is the second summer month, IV, 106.
- ratna-haviṃshi (*ratninām haviṃshi*), III, 58 seq.
- ratninab, III, 65; do homage to king, 108.
- rātri (night performance), III, 127.
- rātri-paryāyāb, III, 12.
- rattan (*vetasa*), mat used to cut the sacrificial horse on, V, 304, 329, 394; rattan grows in water, 304, 329.
- rauhīza. plates, V, 454 seq.; cakes, cooked, 468; offered, 472, 489; they are Agni and Āditya; day and night, heaven and earth, 473, 474.
- Rauhīnāyana. See Priyavrata.
- raurava-sāman, is an *aśva-sāman*, IV, 10.
- realm, sustained by kings, IV, 229; by couples (offspring), 230.
- red, includes all colours, III, 355.
- reed (*muṣṭga*), entered by Agni, III, 198; is Agni's womb, 200; (*vetasa*) rattan branch drawn across altar to appease it, IV, 174; plucked out from its sheath, V, 267; a bundle held upwards while sepulchral mound is raised, and afterwards put up in the house, 436; sheaths of reed grass kindled, 463.
- region (quarter), — five, III, 40, 108; IV, 246; four, III, 203; six, 268; seven, IV, 277; nine, III, 196, 296; ten, 183, 297; IV, 164, 246; ruled over by Pūshan, III, 40; ascent of, 91; connected with the Brahman, &c., 91; how created, 149; are parts of Vāyu-Pragāpati, 152; are Agni, 183; connected with Vāyu, and third layer of altar, 188; heal what is injured, 221; put in the world by Virve Devāb, 235; are both inside and outside of these worlds, 235; by them the worlds are fastened to the sun, 269; created with the moon, 286; are between these two worlds, 349; IV, 26; are the upper sphere, IV, 9; above everything, 10; are the heavenly world, 10; become the ear, 10; are in all four directions, 26; face each other, 27; are supported by the sun, 28; names of the five regions (East queen, South far-ruler, West all-ruler, North self-ruler, Great-region supreme ruler), 46, 100 seq.; freed from death through *katuśoma*, connected with Savitri and Brihaspati, 69; encircling (*paribhū*), 88; are the firmament, the heavenly world, 100; five on this side of the sun, 104, 195, 200; five on the other side of the sun, 104, 200; four on the other side (?), 198; five propitiatory oblations to (the five) regions (*divām aveshī*), 245; how laid down in the several layers, 263, 264; — created by the five gods Parameshvarin, Pragāpati, Indra, Agni, Soma, V, 16 seq.; guardians of the four regions are the Āpyas, Sādhyas, Anvādhyas, and Maruts, 359; parcelled out between the priests, 402, 412, 420; are a place of abode to all the gods, and Kandra their regent (?), 505.
- regional bricks. See *diṣyā*, and *āvini*.
- renunciation, of one kind of food for life, III, 337; IV, 224.
- retabsak, bricks, — two, are these two worlds, III, 383; IV, 26; are the testicles, III, 384; are the ribs of Agni, the sacrificial animal (bird), 400; IV, (2), 16; their range (or rim), 17, 23, 26.
- retribution in future life, V, 109 seq.
- Revottaras Sthapati Pārava Kākra, (short Sthapati Kākra, or Kākra Sthapati), priest and teacher, V, 236, 269.
- Ribhu, — Ribhus and Virve Devāb

connected with beings (bhūta) and trayastriṃśa - stoma, IV, 69; — a *Ribhu* of the *Gagat* (*Gagati*) metre (is the ārbhava-pavamāna) bearing the Sacrificer to bliss, V, 173; *Savitri*, with *Ribhus*, *Vibhus*, and *Vāgas*, receives offering of *Gharma*, 420.

rits, are the middle of the body, IV, 20, 31, 32; fastened on breast-bone and costal cartilages, 114; — *parśu* and *prishri*, V, 164 n.

rice, different kinds of, III, 69-70; originates from *Indra's* marrow (and *Soma*-drink), V, 210.

Rik, was in *Vṛitra*, III, 138; part of triple *Veda*, 139, 141; thereon the *Sāman* is sung, IV, 13; wife of *Sāman*, 14; *Riks* and *Sāmans* as *Apsaras*, the *Gandharva* *Manas'* mates, 233; they are wishes, as thereby one prays, 233; by the *Mahad* *uktham* it enters *Pragāpati* as his vital fluid, 284; consists of 12,000 *Brhatis*, 10,800 *Pañktis*, 352, 353; a hymn to be recited of the *Rik*, the *Veda* of men, V, 362.

riksama-sāman (? *vairūpa-sāman*, or such as are merely sung, not chanted), produced from *Gagati*, and from it the *Sukragraha*, IV, 7.

Rishabha Yigñatura, king of the *Svīkṇas*, V, 250, 399, 400.

Rishi, were the non-existent, III, 143; the vital airs, 143, 333; IV, 60, 100, 185; etymology, III, 143; saw the fourth layer of altar, 189, 190; have a fore-share in *Agni*, 333; the seven *Rishis* are the seven vital airs in the head, IV, 73; *Dhātṛi* their lord, 73; the first-born *Brahman*, 100; *Rishis* spin the thread (of the sacrifice), 124; first made up (constructed) the fire-altar, 174, 185; the seven *purushas* made into one *purusha* were the seven *Rishis*, 205; established in the seasons, 212; the last-born *Rishis*, 250, 267; — have mistakes in their sacrifice pointed out to them by *Gandharvas*, V, 29; the seven (*Ursā*-major), 425.

rishikā, bear or ogre, V, 307. *

ritavyā, seasonal bricks, are the seasons, III, 386; IV, 29; the three worlds, 129; the nobility, 129; stepping-stones for the gods and Sacrificer to ascend and descend the worlds, 129; — the two of first layer are the spring months, *Madhu* and *Mādhava*, III, 386; IV, 2; — two of second layer, 21; are the summer months, *Sukra* and *Sukī*, 29; — two lower of third layer, the two rainy months *Nabhas* and *Nabhasya*, 48; the two upper, the autumn months *Isha* and *Ūrga*, 49; two of fourth layer, the winter months *Saka* and *Sahasya*, 70; two of fifth layer, 99, 125 seq., are the dewy months *Tapa* and *Tapasya*, 126.

rite. See *vrata*.

river, seven flowing eastwards, IV, 211; seven flowing westwards (identified with downward vital air), 212; those drinking thereof become most vile, blasphemous, and lascivious of speech, 212.

Rohini, the nakshatra, falls on new moon of month *Vaiśākha*, V, 2.

Rohita, son of *Harizandra*, III, 95.

rope, of darbha grass, for tying horse, greased with ghee, V, 374; twelve (or thirteen) cubits long, 276.

royal dignity, means unlimited prosperity, V, 249.

rubbing down of Sacrificer with fragrant substances, at *Sautrāmanī*, V, 252.

Rudra, is *Agni*, III, 51, 64; gave *dhukā* pap to, 51, 63; rules over beasts, 52, 205; hankers after killed cow, 63; *Rudra* *Paṇupati*, gave *dhukā* pap to, 70; the North his region, 97; IV, 158; V, 488; *Rudra* *Sureva* (most kindly), III, 110; a form and name of *Agni*, 159; *Satarudriya*, IV, 150 seq.; is *Agni* in his immortal form, 156; oblations of wild sesameum, on an arka leaf, to, 156; was originally *Manyu*, 157; etymology, 157; V, 116, hundred-headed, thousand-

eyed, hundred - quivered, IV, 157; oblations of gavedhukā flour on an arka leaf, 158; is the Kshatra (whilst the Rudras are the Vis), 159, 162; the golden-armed leader of hosts, 160; worshipped with mystic utterances, 161; Agni created as the hundred-headed Rudra, 201; his shaft piercing Pragâpati's body, V, 36 n.; the ruler of animals, 229; by hairs of lion, wolf, and tiger being put in cups of Surâ representing wild animals, Rudra's shaft is only directed against these, and he spares domestic cattle, 230; consecrates king by the Trishrubh, 312.

Rudras, by fourteen syllables gain Āturdava-stoma, III, 40; eleven, born from Vāk, 149; placed in the air with Vāyu, 150; kindle the sun, 231; Vasus (with Mitra) and Rudras mix the clay, 231; fashion air-world by means of trishrubh, 234; Rudras and Vasus sing praises of (bricks in) second layer, IV, 25; how produced, 33; Vasus and Rudras connected with embryos and Āturvimsa-stoma, 68; Vasus, Rudras and Ādityas separate, and are the lords when heaven and earth separate, 75; connected with Indra, &c., 101; the lords of the south, 101; Vasus, Rudras, Ādityas, Maruts, Virve Devâb build on different quarters of the altar (E.S.W.N.Zen.), 118; of earth, air, and sky, 158-159; originate from drops of oblations, 159; are the Vis (whilst Rudra is the Kshatra), 159; are spread by thousands over these worlds, 168; in tribes (gâtâni), 160; the arrows of the Rudras of sky, air and earth are rain, wind and food, 164, 165; the Rudras invoked in the Satarudriya are Agnis, 167; the eleven Rudras enumerated, V, 116; arise by performance of midday pressing, 173; obtain the part of Vishnu, the sacrifice,

corresponding to the midday pressing, *443; Indra, with Vasus, Rudras, and Ādityas, receives offering of Gharma, 479, 480.

rugâ, an arrow, III, 38.

runmatî, oblations to Agni and Varuna, IV, 237-239.

rûpa, form, — oblations to forms. See prakrama.

Sacrifice, path of, not to be swerved from, III, 14; V, 10; west (to east?) path of sacrifice, III, 347; sacrifice is happiness, 351; performed from the left (north) side, IV, 107; of ever-flowing blessings, 107; all beings are settled in the sacrifice, 144; has only one finale, heaven, 146; is all-sustaining, 199; they who perform it are wise, 199; Yagâ as Gandharva, with the Dakshinâs, as Apsaras, his mates, 232; comparative efficacy of sacrifices, 299; is a Man, 300, 305; Pragâpati, the Sacrifice, is the Year, V, 1; 38; the fire its womb, 3; is a counterpart of Pragâpati, 22; becomes the Sacrificer's body, 23, 27; bolt of the sacrifice (yagñamēni), 42; the successful issue of the sacrifice, 66-68; the five great (mahâyagñâ), 95; sacrifice is cattle, 116; animal sacrifice fivefold, 125; like a forest with desert places and ravines, the sacrifice not to be entered without knowledge, 160; (true) form of sacrifice ensures entrance to the heaven of the living, 212; is devotion, 231; a web, 252; the navel of the earth, 390; passage between Agnidhra and Kâtvâla is the gate of the sacrifice, 497; sacrifice is the self of all beings, 504.

Sacrificer, is Indra, III, 13; 18; at Vâgapeya sprinkled with remains of offering material, 38; the child of the earth, 125; he is Agni, 212; is really intended to be born in heaven, 345; is Pragâpati, Agni, the sacrifice,

- IV, introd. xv seq.; carried to heaven by, or flying there in shape of, birdlike altar, IV, introd. xxi seq.; becomes Death, xxiii; ousted from his realm (yagamānaloka) by wrong sacrificial procedure, IV, 94; is the fire on fire-altar, 94; sits down with the *Vīve Devāb* on the higher seat (in the sky), 124; is established with *Vīve Devāb*, 201; the fire-altar, *Mahāvratā*, *Mahad uktham*, his divine immortal body, 279; is the body of the sacrifice, 280; V, 236; in entering on the fast he gives himself up to the gods, and by the sacrifice he becomes an oblation to the gods by which he redeems himself from them, V, 26; 27; and is freed from sin, 38; Sacrificer dying whilst away from home, 197 seq.; when about to die, 201 seq.; when dead, goes to the place won by him in heaven, 204; symbolically placed in heaven, provided with the Soma-drink, 231; drinks *Aindra* cup at *Sautrāmāni* and has his abode with *Indra*, 245; is *Āditya*, 248; requests invitation from priests for partaking of cup (of *vasā*), 259; arises in the other world with a complete body and all limbs, 259; by means of the golden light (or a gleam of light shining after him) goes to heaven, 303; with *Vāvatā* and other wives, 349; whilst sacrificing becomes a *Brāhmaṇa*, 348.
- Sacrificer's wife, led forth by *Neshtri*, III, 31; puts on garment of *Kuśa* grass, 32; discarded when without son, 65; Sacrificer's wives sprinkle the horse, V, 313; they weave pearls into its hair, 313; they cleanse sacrificial horse, 321-323; walk round it, 322, 323; fan it, 323; the four wives in attendance at sacrifice, 349;—she is made to lie upon the *Mahāvira*, 472.
- sacrificial post. See *Yūpa*.
- sādana, settling of bricks, III, 154; sādana and sūdadohas, 301, 305 seq.; 379; V, 5.
- sadas, associated with *Gagati*, V, 495.
- sadasya, a seventeenth priest recognised by the *Kaushitakins*, IV, 348 n.
- sādhyas, the guardians of one of the four regions, V, 359.
- sagāta, III, 107, 111.
- sagūrabdiya, oblation on the darbha bunch on freshly ploughed altar-site, is *Agni's fore-share*, III, 332, 333; IV, 185.
- sagush, IV, 32.
- saha, the first winter-month, IV, 70.
- Sahaganyā, the *Apsaras*, is an intermediate quarter (S.E.), or 1st e earth, IV, 106.
- sahasradakshina, III, 140.
- sahasya, the second winter-month, IV, 70.
- Sailāli, V, 393.
- Saindhava (horses), are the *Hotris* and *Adhvaryus*, V, 94.
- Sākalya, chosen to quench the fire-brand *Yāgñavalkya*, V, 115; questions beyond the deity (*Pragāpati-Brahman*) and dies in misery, 117.
- Sākāyanins,—their doctrine regarding the nature of *Agni*, IV, 363.
- Sāktya. See *Gauriviti*.
- Sakuntalā, the *Apsaras*, mother of *Bharata*, V, 399.
- śākvara (and *raivata*) -sāman, a *prishṭha-sāman*, III, introd. xx-xxii; connected with *Pañkti*, *Triṇava*, &c., 91; śākvara and *raivata* produced from *triṇava* and *trayastrimśa*, IV, 12; connected with *Brihaspati*; *Vīve Devāb*, the upper region, &c., 103.
- śakvari (verses), V, 331, 333.
- śālā, III, 117.
- śālāvrika (or *sālāvrika*), hyena (?), V, 71.
- salt, means cattle, III, 33, 299; seventeen bags (*asvattha* leaves) thrown up by peasants to Sacrificer, 34; scattered over *Gārhapatyā* site, 299; is the amuon of the fire, 302, 344; saline soil

- means cattle, 343; is seed, V, 426.
- Salva, a people, IV, 344.
- Sâman, III, introd. xiii seq.; was in *Vritra*, 138; — (= *vâginâm sâman*) sung by Brahman, 23; part of triple Veda, 139, 141; is sung on the *rik*, IV, 13; the husband of the *Rik*, 14; — *sâmans* sung on *svayamâtirinnâs*, 144; are sap (*rasa*) laid into the worlds, 145; on *bhuv* *bhuvab svar*, 145; six *Sâmans* sung (by *Adhvaryu*) over appeased altar, 177 seq.; are the vital airs, 177; make body boneless and immortal, 178; those six *Sâmans* are immortal bricks, 181; *Riks* and *Sâmans* as *Apsaras*, the *Gandharva Manas'* mates, 233; are wishes, as one prays with them, 233; by the *Mahâvrata-sâman* the *Sâman* (*veda*) enters *Pragîpati* as his vital fluid, 284; *Sâman* (*veda*) consists of 4,000 *brîhatîs*, and *Yagus* and *Sâman* of (7,200 and 3,600) 10,800 *pañk-tîs*, 353; *sâman* sung (by Brahman) at *Sautrâmanî*, the *Sâman* representing lordship (*kshatra*) *ôr* imperial sway, V, 255; is the essence of all the Vedas, 255; is the Veda of the gods, 350; a decade of it recited, 370; sung at *pravargyotsâdana*, 496; drives off the *Rakshas*, 496.
- samânabhrît (holders of the pervading air) are the speech-sustainers, IV, 15.
- sâma-nidhana, IV, 116.
- sambhâra, III, 36; V, 447.
- Samgivi-putra, IV, introd. xviii.
- samgrahitri, charioteer, one of the *ratninab*, III, 62, 104.
- jamî (acacia suma), a *samidh* of, IV, 202; etymology, 202; for appeasement, not for food, 202; peg on tomb, V, 436.
- samidh, eleven, III, 259; twelve for *Kshatriya* and *Purohita*, 259; three *udumbara* ones, soaked in ghee, put on the fire prior to its being led forward, IV, 189; are *Agni's* food, 191, 202; three (*jamî*, *vikahkata*, *udumbara*) put on, 202, 203; *samidh* means vital air, 205.
- sâmidhenî, twenty-four, III, 167; twenty-one, 172; seventeen, 174; eleven, the first and last of which recited thrice, V, 25, 39.
- samishrayagus, III, 185; nine (eleven) at *Agnikâyana Soma-sacrifice*, IV, 257 seq.; not performed at *Dikshariyeshui*, &c., 258 seq.; at etymology, 261; the nine to complete the nine incomplete offerings, 261 seq.; is food, V, 44.
- samkrîti-sâman, V, 333.
- Sâmmada. See *Matsya*.
- samrâg, is *Pravargya*, V, 443; his throne-seat, 461.
- samrâg-cow (of *Pravargya*), killed by a tiger, atonement, V, 131 seq.; cf. *gharmadughâ*.
- sâmrâgya (imperial dignity), III, introd. xxiv; represented by throne-seat at *Sautrâmanî*, V, 249.
- samrâsava, III, introd. xxv.
- samsrip-oblations, III, 114 seq.
- samsthâ, III, introd. xi; the *samsthâ* is the year, V, 248.
- samstubbh (metre), is speech, IV, 89.
- Sâmudri (son of *Samudra*). See *Asva*.
- samudriya - metre, III, 352 (cf. *samudra* - metre, = the mind, IV, 88).
- samvatsara, (?) year of cycle, IV, 21; etymology, V, 14.
- samyak, IV, 26, 27.
- Samyos, makes good all imperfections in sacrifice, V, 29; — *Jamyorvâka*, a resting-place, 44.
- sand (sikatâ), produced from clay. III, 158; scattered over saline soil on *Gârhapatya* site, 300; on *Âhavanîya* site, 344; is the ashes of *Agni Vairvânara*, 300; his seed, 300, 302, 311; emptied fire-pan filled with it, 311; on *uttara-vedi*, 349; two kinds, black and white, 352; is the lost part of the *Brahman* (*Pragîpati*), 353; is unnumbered, unlimited, 353; number of sand grains, 353; represents bricks with formulas, 353; the sediment of water, 416.

sandhi-stotra, III, introd. xviii, xix, 12; is *isvrit* at *Keśavapaniya*, 127.

Sāndila, fire-altar, IV, 167, 222, 272, 274.

Sāndilya, III, 414; IV, introd. xviii, instructs the *Kaṅkatiyas*, IV, 254, 279; disputing with his pupil *Sāptarathavāhani*, 295; instructs *Vāmakakṣhāyana*, 345; his doctrine of the Brahman, 400.

Sāndilyāyana, instructs *Daivāmpāti*, IV, 273; cf. *Kelaka Sāndilyāyana*, 364.

śāntadevatva, the same as *śatarudriya*, IV, 156.

sap, vital (rasa), unites head and breath (vital air), IV, 201.

sapha. See lifting-stick.

saptadaja-stoma, III, introd. xxiii; connected with *Viś*, &c., 91; used at *Dasapeya*, 118; at midday-service of *Keśavapaniya*, 127; produced from *śukra-graha*, and from it the *vairūpa-sāman*, IV, 9; is space, *Pragīpati*, the year, 62; connected with gods generally and the creator, trees the *Viś* from death, 68; is food, 79; connected with *Varuna*, the *Ādityas*, the west, &c., 101, 102.

Sāptarathavāhani, disputing with his teacher *Sāndilya*, IV, 295.

sapti, leader or side-horse, III, 20, 21.

Sarasvat, is the mind, III, 398; V, 32, 35.

Sārasvata wells, III, 398.

Sarasvati, victim to, III, introd. xviii, xxiv; is *Vāk*, 39, 80, 398; V, 32, 35, 293, 476; *pārtha-oblation* to, III, 82; assists *Varuna*, 113; *samsrīp-oblation* (*pap*), 115; *prayugām havis* (*pap*), 125; ewe with teats in dewlap her victim at *Sautrāmanī*, 129; cures *Indra* of effects of *Soma*, 135; with *Sarasvati Vāk*'s support the *Sacrificer* is anointed at *Agnīkayana*, IV, 228; takes *Śrī*'s prosperity (*pushi*) and receives (*mitravindā*) oblation (*pap*), V, 62-65; is healing medicine, and assists the *Arvins* in curing

Indra, whence she gets the ram for her guerdon, 216, 223; ram immolated to her, 217; ewes sacred to her, 218; she distils the *Soma* (plant) brought away from *Namuk* by the *Arvins*, 232; connected with the air (and the midday-pressing), 241, 247; bestows food, 243; connected the rainy season and autumn, 247; together with the *Arvins* she prepares the *Sautrāmanī* to heal *Indra*, 249; *Arvins*, *Sarasvati* and *Indra* are everything here, 253; have a share in the *Gharma*, 475; an ewe her victim at *Avamedha*, 300; assists the *Arvins* in restoring the head of *Makha*, 475.

Sarasvati, river, water from it used for coronation of king, III, 7.

śārathi, III, 62.

śarira, etymology (*śri*), III, 144.

Śārkarākṣhya. See *Gana*.

Śārṅgaya. See *Suplan*.

śarpāna, III, 114; with the horse, to the *Pavamāna-stotra*, V, 305.

śarpanāma-formulas, III, 369; etymology, 370.

śarpavidyā, the Veda of snakes, V, 367.

Sarva, form and name of *Agni*, III, 159; is the waters, 159.

Sarvamedha, III, introd. xxvi; V, 417 seq.; a ten-days' sacrifice, 418.

Sarvapreshṭha, III, introd. xxii; IV, 246.

sarvastoma, IV, 246.

sarvavedasa, *sarvasva* (all one's property), substitutes in giving it away, IV, 321 n.

śastra, III, introd. xii; attended by *Sacrificer*, 41; is the *Sacrificer*'s subjects, 41; same as *stotra*, IV, 14; (professional) reciter is despised, 367; (*uktha*) without it, the *stotra* is in vain, V, 257.

śasvat, III, 98; V, 250 n.

sata, a bowl (of reed), V, 220, 252.

śatamāna, round (gold) plate, III, 104; presented to Brahman, 141; see for *bahishpavamāna* of *Avamedha*, V, 306.

Satānika Sātrāgita, performed the
Asvamedha, V, 400, 401.

Sātaparameya. See Dhīra Sātapar-
meya.

Satarudriya, IV, 150 seq.; ety-
mology, 156, 157; amounts to
the year, 166, 167; to the
Mahad uktham, 168, 320.

sataśārsha-rudra-jamaniya, IV, 157.

satātīrātra session, V, 91 seq.

satobhratī metre, in the form of it
steers were produced, IV, 38.

Sātrāgita. See Satānika.

Sātrīśāha. See Soma.

Sattra, sacrificial session, - of a
hundred Agnishtrōmas, Ukthiyas,
Atīrātras, V, 91, 135 seq.; per-
formance of a year's Sattra is
like the crossing of an ocean,
145 seq.; of a thousand years,
and its substitutes, 170 seq.

Sattrin, whether to have separate
or common hearths, V, 175; if
taken ill, keep apart and offer
Agnihotra, 175; in case of death,
Sattrin to be burnt by his own
fires, 175.

Satvats, V, 401.

Satyakāma Gābāla, V, 392.

satya-sāman, III, 361, 363 (corr.
IV, 146).

Satyafagāla Paulushi (Prākinayogyā),
a teacher, IV, 393, 394.

Sātyayagñi, V, 354, 395; cf. Sonā-
ushma Sātyayagñi.

Sātyāyani, IV, 21; his view as to
the nature of Agni, 363.

Saukeya Prākinayogyā, in disput-
ation with Uddālaka Āruṇi, V,
79 seq.

Saulvāyana, an Adhvaryu priest,
V, 61.

Saumapa Mānutantavya, V, 392.

Saunaka. See Svaidāyana, Indrota.

Sauromateya. See Āshādhi.

Sautrāmāni, III, introd. xxvi, 129
seq.; castrated bull the fee,
137; a draught mare, 138;
a sattra, III, introd. xii, 140;
performance, V, 213 seq.; is
both an ishṭi and an animal
sacrifice, 220; is Soma, 220;
by Sautrāmāni one's enemy is
overcome, 223; should be per-
formed after each Soma-
sacrifice to replenish one's self,

239; becomes (or is) a Soma-
sacrifice, 240, 245, 264; belongs
to Indra, 245; is the year, 247,
248; is the moon, 248; pre-
pared by Arvins and Sarasvatī
to heal Indra, 249; a Brāhmaṇa's
sacrifice, 260; is the body of
nān (Sacrificer), 262; Yagñā,
the Sautrāmāni, at first with
the Asuras, went over to the
gods, 270.

savana, the three (Soma-pressings).
of Gāyatri, Trishrubh, and
Gagati nature, are devoted to
Agni, Indra, Viṣve Devāb re-
spectively, V, 106, 443, 444;
(Arvins, Sarasvatī, Indra), 241;
(Vasus, Rudras, and Ādityas),
241 n., 443.

Savaniya victims, on first day of As-
vamedha, V, 377; on third, 395.

savimśa-stoma, is victorious assault,
the year, IV, 63.

sāvitra, formulas and libations, III,
190, 196; IV, 266; are one half
of the year, 347; an Anushrubh
one (not approved of), V, 89.

Savitri, the impeller, speeder, III,
2, 61; preliminary oblation to,
4; by six syllables gained the
six seasons, 40; twelve or
eight-kapāla cake, 61, 115;
ditto of fast-grown rice, 69;
Savitri Satyaprasava, 69, 109;
pārtha-oblation, 82; assists
Varuna, 113; samsrīp-oblation
(twelve or eight-kapāla cake),
115; prayugām havis (ditto), 125;
ditto cake at Sautrāmāni, 136;
saw the Sāvitra formulas, 190;
is Agni, 191; poured out as
seed, 192; is the mind, 193;
(the dappled steed) with his
rays (reins) measures out earth
and regions, 195; is yonder sun,
195; the heavenly Gandharva,
195; he who chooses his friend-
ship chooses glory and pros-
perity, 251; Savitri and Bri-
haspati, connected with the
regions and the Atush-
stoma, IV, 69; the sun-rayed,
golden-haired Savitri raises
the light, 195; is the guardian
of all beings, 195; Savitri, the
sun's well-winged eagle, is Pra-

gāpati, 305; distributes the immortal light among creatures, plants and trees, more or less, and, along with it, more or less life, 322; takes Śrī's dominion, and receives (mitravindā) oblation (eight or twelve-kapāla cake), V, 62, 63; brahmakārin committed to him, 86; victim before initiation for Sattrā, formerly to Savitṛi, now to Pragāpati, 174; Savitṛi's cake is on twelve kapālas, to win the food of the year, 222; connected with the rainy season, 247; receives oblation at Sautrāmāni (for having assisted in healing Indra), 252; the fourth of the ten deities ('all the gods') receiving oblations of drops, 280; three iṣṭas to Savitṛi Prasavitṛi, Savitṛi Asavitṛi, Savitṛi Satyaprasava, 284; Savitṛi is this earth, 284; takes the sacrificial horse to heaven, 319; cake (on twelve kapālas) to Savitṛi Prasavitṛi, 355; ditto to Savitṛi Asavitṛi, 356; ditto to Savitṛi Satyaprasava, 358; three oblations to Savitṛi, 409; deposits the dead man's bones in the earth, 433; Savitṛi, with the Ribhus, Vibhus, and Viṅgas, receives offering of gharma, 480; is the wind, 480.

śavitṛi, the sacred (Gāyatri) formula, taught to Brahmakārin at once, formerly after a year, V, 87, 89.

savyashukṛi (savyastha, savyeshukṛi, savyeshūba), III, 62, 102.

Sāyakāyana. See *Syāparṇa*.

Sāyavaśa. See *Gana*.

science,—**sciences** (vidyāb) to be studied, V, 98. See *triple science*.

sea, the womb of waters, III, 416.

seasons, six, III, 31, 220, 351; IV, 228; V, 287; ruled over by Savitṛi, III, 40; connected with the metres, castes, sāmāns, stomas, 91; the five bodily parts of Pragāpati, 152; seven, 249, 358; IV, 177, 211, 277, 314; the six seasons fasten the year to the moon, III, 269; are the *Vive Devāb*, 311; three sea-

sons of growth (spring, rainy season, autumn), 340; by seasons the age of embryo and man is computed, 386; consist of two months, 386; IV, 29; the Ārtava their rulers, 74; they move hitherwards and thitherwards (come and go), 91; five, 120; in each season there is the form of all of them, 126; everything fits in with its place by means of the seasons, 126; are (rise) upwards from this earth, 128; are deranged for him who dies, 129; seven or five, 163; the six seasons are the Fathers, 243; a dying man changes to the season he dies in, 244 n.; originated from the words 'bhūb, bhuvab, svar,' V, 13; the sun is their light, 149; are continuous, all first, all intermediate, all last, 245; the year is the bull among the seasons, 276.

seed (retas), produced from whole body, III, 349; white and speckled, 351; moist, 352; is twenty-five-fold (or twenty-fifth), 353; possessed of vital air, otherwise becomes putrid, 354; is virile power, 354; cast silently, 358; IV, 208; shed only by testiculati, III, 384; when productive, V, 53, 56; after seed is implanted, birth takes place, 180; from seed of man and animal everything is generated, 180; the essence of food, 264; of the sacrificial horse (Pragāpati) becomes generated, 275.

self-surrender. See *surrender*.

Senagit, Parganya's commander-in-chief (in the upper region), is the first winter month, IV, 108.

serpents, are the worlds, III, 369; different kinds of, 370; great serpent an object of wonder, V, 40.

sesamum, oblations of wild sesamum to Rudra, IV, 156.

seven, IV, 277, 314.

seventeen, IV, 74.

seventeenfold, is Pragāpati, III, 8, 79; V, 384; *Bṛihaspati-Pragā-*

- pati, III, 21, 22; man, 174; Pragâpati, space, IV, 62; Pragâpati, the year, 76; food, 79; the chest, V, 163.
- shadaha, sixty in the gavâṃ ayanam, V, 147; the two kinds (*Prishibya* and *Abhiplava*) are two revolving wheels of the gods, crushing the sacrificer's evil, 149; the two kinds to be worked into each other like the threads of one web, 149; alternate in *sattra*, 162 n.
- shaddbotri formula, V, 121.
- shatrimsa-stoma, is the firmament, the year, IV, 65.
- sheep (see *avi*, and *ram*;) produced in the form of *dvipadâ* metre, IV, 38; with sheep's wool malted barley bought at *Sautrâmavi*, V, 219.
- shodasa-stoma, gained by *Aditi*, III, 40.
- shodasin (sacrifice), III, introd. xvi seq., xxiii; victims of, 12; forms part of *Kravapaniya Atirâtra*, IV, 405; twelve in the year's session, V, 147.
- shodasi-graha, belongs to *Indra*, III, 6.
- shodasi-stotra, III, 127.
- shoes, of boar-skin, III, 102; he who has performed *Râgashya* is never to stand on ground without shoes, 129.
- sick man, when he gets better, asks for food, IV, 87.
- sickle, the crops go nigh to, III, 327.
- side, right side of animal the stronger, IV, 115.
- silk-cotton tree. See cotton tree.
- silver, piece of, tied to a darbha plant and taken eastwards (as the moon), V, 196; gold and silver plates (lightning and hail) beneath feet of Sacrificer whilst consecrated at *Sautrâmavi*, 251; as *dakshinâ*, 357; silver plate inserted under sand, 462.
- Sinivall, is *Vâk*, III, 231; pap to her, (the extreme end of) one of the four regions, IV, 264.
- sipita, (? bald part), V, 9.
- Sipivishva, (? bald), *Vishnu*, V, 9.
- siras, etymology (*sri*, *sri*), III, 144, 145, 401.
- sirsa, man sports therewith, V, 76.
- sitting,—one who has gained a position in the world is anointed sitting, IV, 227.
- six, its symbolic meaning, III, 268, 269; IV, 166.
- sixteenfold, is *Āditya* as the wielder of the fifteenfold thunderbolt, IV, 85; animals (cattle), V, 252; man, animal, universe, 302 n.
- sky (*dyaus*), union with the sun (*Āditya*), III, 149; connected with *Parameshvān* and *Āditya*, 188; is the waters, 216; fashioned by the *Ādityas* by means of *Gagati*, 234; udder of, is the waters, 284; is *Pragâpati*'s head, 313, 317; sheds seed in the form of rain produced by smoke (steam), 383; the seat of the waters, 416; is blissful (*sambhū*), IV, 88; above the third luminous back of the sky is the world of righteousness (*sukrita*), 122; is the left wing of the *Agni-Pragâpati*, the altar and universe, 179; is the higher abode, 202; the highest home, 203; steadied by clouds and stars, V, 126; connected with *Indra*, 241; the sky, rain, the first conception, 315, 359; is, as it were, yellow, 467; is a place of abode for all the gods, 505.
- slaughtering-knife. See knife.
- sleep, not to be disturbed, as during it the union of the two divine persons in the eyes takes place, IV, 371; mouth of him who has been asleep is clammy, 371; in sleep man's functions cease, 372.
- śloka (noise, praise), *pârtha*-oblation to, III, 82.
- śmaśāna. See burial-place; etymology, V, 422.
- smoke, is the breath of the sacrifice, III, 240; is seed shed by the earth, and becomes rain, 383; is the vigour of fire, IV, 250.
- snake, is neither worm, nor non-worm, III, 90; are the people of *Arbuda Kâdraveya*, the *Sarpavidyâ* their *Veda*, V, 367.
- Snâtaka, may initiate the *Unnetri* priest, V, 137.

joṣis,—*haras*, *joṣis*, *arṣis* (heat, fire, flame) of Agni, IV, 182.

Soma, the moon, III, introd. xxviii; means truth, light, 8; glory, 56; princely power (kshatra), 82; by four syllables gained four-footed cattle, 40; pap to, 56; brown bull is of his nature, 57; Soma Vinaspati, pap of *syimāka* millet to, 70; Soma, king of Brāhmaṇas, 72, 95; pârtha-oblation to Soma, 82; tiger-skin his beauty, 81, 92; rathavimokṣaniya-oblation to, 102; assists Varuṇa, 113; *cupasadi* pap to, 118; *ipaṣṭakābilā* pap on south part of veda, 120, 121; fee to Brahman, brown ox, 122; *pravugāṃ havis* (pap), 123; Soma withheld from Indra, 130; Soma juice flows from Indra, 131; Soma bought at new moon after year's initiation, 181; is paramāhuti, 258; the blowing wind (Vāyu), 342; the vital air, 342; the breath, 354; life-sap, 342; buying, driving about, &c., 342; is the drop, 405; the imperishable, 405; is Pragâpati, IV, introd. xxi; rules over trees, IV, 76; protector of the north, 102; connected with Maruts, *ekavimśa-stoma*, *nishkevalya-jastira*, *vairāga-sīman*, 102; the nectar of immortality, 251, 252; with Agnikāyana, Soma to be pressed for a year, 320; is the moon, 349; V, 6, 9, 10; pressed at full moon, and in the subsequent half-month enters waters and plants, 10; Soma created out of Pragâpati with a life of a thousand years, 15; Agni and Soma become eater and food, 16; Soma, the moon, is the *Asvamedha*, 33, 34; takes Śrī's royal power and receives (*mitra-vindā*) oblation (pap), 62-65; fetched from heaven by Gâyatri in bird's shape, 122; Pragâpati, the sacrifice, is king Soma, 205 seq.; one purged by Soma offers the *Sautrâmani*, 217 seq.; is the drink of the Brāhmaṇa, 217; is Indra's faithful companion,

226; contributes to joy (intoxication), 227; *sukra somapitha*, 231; *sukra madhumat*, 232; taken from Indra by *Namudi*, and brought away again by the *Asvins* and distilled by *Sarasvati*, 232, 233; the second of the ten deities 'all the gods' receive oblations of drops, 280; Soma *Vaishṇava*, king of the *Apsaras*, 366; Soma is the seed of the vigorous steed, 390; king Soma's throne-seat, 461.

Soma-netrâḥ (devâḥ), seated above, III, 49.

Soma-Rudra, pap to, cooked with milk from white cow with white calf, III, 65; they removed darkness from the sun (*Sūrya*), 66.

Soma-sacrifice, interlinked with *Agnikāyana*, III, 34; the performer of it eats food once a year in the other world, IV, 299; is (Pragâpati's) seventeen-fold food, 348; as distinguished from *havyayagña*, V, 119.

soma-samsthā, III, introd. xi, xii.

Somashma Sâtyayagñi, disputation on Agnihotra at Ganaka's house, V, 112, seq.

somâtipavita, III, 129; *somâtipûta*, V, 226.

somâvâmin, III, 129; V, 217, 226.

soma-vendor, malted rice bought from him at *Sautrâmani*, V, 220.

son, sons treated kindly by father, IV, 25; when asked by father to do anything, say 'what will therefrom accrue to us?' 59; dear son a favourite resort, 161; taken by father to his bosom, 206; sons in early life subsist on father, the reverse in later life, V, 157; father returning from abroad is received kindly by his sons, 204; father and son part in time of peace, 308.

Soma Sâtrâsâha, king of *Pânâla*, performed the *Asvamedha*, V, 400. sounding-holes, are the vital airs, V, 487.

South, connected with *Kshatra*, &c., III, 91; kine and goats most

- plentiful in south region, 404 ; is the *trishubh*, IV, 45 ; is *virâg* (wide-ruling), 46, 101 ; the Rudras its lords, 101 ; Indra its protector, 101 ; connected with *paññadaja-stoma*, *prâuga-jastra*, and *brihat-sâman*, 101 ; connected with Vâyu, 106 ; region of Fathers, 226 ; V, 485 ; is space and the air, V, 17.
- South-east, Ukhya Agni (the sun) held up towards, III, 280 ; sacred to Agni, IV, 80 ; the sun is placed there, 133 ; in that region is the door to the world of the Fathers, V, 424.
- sowing, of all kinds of herb-seeds on *agnikshetra*, III, 337.
- space (aerial expanse) is *Pragâpati* the year, and the *Saptadaja-stoma*, IV, 62.
- spade, is a thunderbolt, V, 448 ; of *udumbara* or *vikâṅkata* wood, 448.
- sparrow (*kalaviṅka*), springs from *Viśvarûpa's* head, III, 130.
- speech (voice), lord of, is *Pragâpati*, III, 5 ; based on vital air, 151 ; is the *sruk*, 192 ; world of speech, 145, 192 ; there is a keen edge to it on one or both sides, 200 ; speaks truth and untruth, divine and human, 200 ; consists of *vâk* (voice) and *akshara* (syllable), 203 ; is a spade, 215 ; is of three kinds, *rik*, *yagus* and *sâman* ; or low, half-loud and loud, 239 ; is healing medicine, 341 ; by speech the gods conquered the *Asuras* and drove them out of the universe, 387 ; the breath is the male, or mate, of speech, 391 ; a vital air, 402 ; produced from mind (and the moon), and from it the winter, IV, 11 ; is the *Rishi* *Viśvakarman*, 12 ; sustained by the pervading vital air (*samâna*), 15 ; made by the gods their milch-cow, 173 ; one of the five divisions of vital air in the head, 190 ; by speech one gets into trouble, 210 ; speaks both truth and untruth, 257 ; Agni as Speech (the *trayî vidyâ*), 364 seq. ; is the sun, 365 ; evolved from mind, and from its breath, 376, 377 ; the libations to Mind and Speech, (*Sarasvat* and *Sarasvatî*) are such to the Full and New moon, V, 28, 31, 32, 35 :—single of vital airs, 246 ; mind is manifested as speech, 262 ; what is thought in mind is spoken by speech and heard by ear, 263 ; by mind and speech all is gained, 507.
- sphûrgaka*, tree, not to stand near a grave, V, 427.
- sphya* (sacrificial wooden sword), handed to consecrated king, III, 110 ; gaming-ground prepared therewith, 111.
- spinal column, is continuous, V, 35.
- spoon, (cf. *sruk*, *sruva*), taking up of the two offering-spoons (*guhû* and *upabhrîṭ*), V, 56 ; not to clink together, 57, 60, 61.
- spring-season, connected with east, *gâyatri*, &c., III, 91 ; is the earth, 386 ; consists of months *Madhu* and *Mâdhava*, 386 ; produced from breath, and from it the *Gâyatri*, IV, 4 ; in spring forest-fires occur, V, 45 ; the *Brâhmana's* season, 348.
- sprinkling, - of *Sacrificer* with remains of (*prasavaniya*) offering-material at *Vâgapeya*, III, 38 ; of fire-altar with water, IV, 169, 174 ; of completed fire-altar with mixture of *dadhi*, honey and ghee, as Agni's after-share, 185 ; of sacrificial horse* with water, V, 278, 316.
- sprit, bricks of fourth layer, IV, 66 seq. ; free creatures from death, 67.
- spriti*, oblations, V, 133.
- Sraumatya*, a teacher, his view of the nature of Agni, IV, 363.
- Sraushar*, different modes and tones in uttering it, V, 57 seq. ; its five formulas are the unexhausted element of the sacrifice, 170 :—482, 502.
- sri*, excellence, III, 144, 163, 392 ; distinction (social eminence), IV, 110, 132, 241 ; V, 285, 313 ; goodness (?), 326, 327 ; prosperity, V, 18, 59 ; beauty, 315.

Srī, goddess of beauty and fortune, springs from Pragāpati, and is despoiled by the gods, V, 62.

Srīgaya, a people, V, 269.

sṛishti, bricks of fourth layer, IV, 71 seq.; ? throwing of prastara (sacrificer) into the fire, V, 24; creation (?), 458.

Srotriya, is an upholder of the sacred law, III, 106.

sruā (offering-spoon), is speech, III, 192; the two serving as Agni's (the golden man's) arms, 373; of udumbara for Vasor dhārā, IV, 214.

Srutasena, performs *Asvamedha*, V, 396.

sruva, (dipping-spoon), thrown eastward or northward, III, 53; is breath, 192; two oblations therewith, IV, 204.

staff, as sacrificial fee, V, 11, 12.

stake, sacrificial. See *Yūpa*.

stambayagus, III, 325.

standing, one is stronger than sitting, IV, 172, 178; he who has not yet gained a position (but is striving to gain it) is anointed standing, 227.

stars (*nakshatra*), how created, III, 149; are the lights of righteous men who go to heaven, 244; are the hair (of the world-man), IV, 288; as *Apsaras*, the *Gandharva Kāndramas'* mates, 232; are lightsome (*bhākuri*), 232; originate from Pragāpati's hair-pits, 361.

steer (*rishabha*) is vigour, produced in the form of the *satobhrhati* metre, IV, 38.

step, is the briskness in man, V, 266.

sthāli, cauldron, III, 270.

sthapati (governor), III, 111. Cf. *Revottara*.

sticks, striking king with, III, 108.

stobha, III, introd. xxiii.

stokiṃyā, oblations of drops, a thousand to ten deities, V, 279, 280.

Stoma,—are laid down as bricks in fourth layer, IV, 59; are the vital airs, 61; are food, 218; oblations relating to the Uneven and Even stomas, forming part of the Vasor dhārā, 217, 218; seven, 227, 314; do not fail by

excess or deficiency of one stotriyā, V, 137; increasing by four (verses), 166, 167.

stomabhāgā, bricks of fifth layer, are the essence of food, IV, 93 seq.; are the firmament (*nāka*), 93, 97; the first twenty-one are the three worlds and four regions; the last eight are the *Brahman*, the disk of the sun, 94; are the heart, 96, 99, 115.

stone, hunger is laid into it, hence it is hard and not fit for eating, IV, 170; put in water-pitcher and through it in *Nirriti's* region, 171; it should break there, 171; variegated stone set up whilst Agni is led forward, 195; is the sun, 196; is the vital air and vital power, 196; is put into the *Agnidhriya* *dhishōya*, 243, 360.

stool, gold, for Sacrificer, and *Adhvaryu*, V, 360, 361.

stotra, III, introd. xii seq.; attended by Sacrificer, 41; is the Sacrificer's own self, 41; stotras of *Abhishekanīya*, 69; the same as the *rastra*, IV, 14; connected with the production of food (*hite*), 72.

stotriya-trika, IV, 14.

stronghold, threefold, III, 219.

sū, 'to animate, speed,' III, 2.

Subhadrikā, dwelling in *Kāmpila*, V, 321.

Subrahmayā, priest, is made the *Udgātri*, V, 137.

sūdadohas, and *sādana*, III, 301, 305, &c.; is the breath, 302, 354; IV, 5.

Sūdra.—*Ārya* and *Sūdra* ruled by day and night, IV, 74, 75; *Sūdra* woman as the *Ārya's* mistress, V, 326; *Sūdra* is untruth, 446.

śuk, heat, pain, suffering, IV, 171; V, 497 n.

Sukī, second summer month, IV, 29.

Sukra, first summer month, IV, 29.

Sukra-graha, III, 6; puroruk formula of, 111; produced from *rik-sama-sāman*, and from it the *saptadaja-stoma*, IV, 8.

Sūktavāka, a completion of the sacrifice, V, 44.

sūlāvabhṛtha, V, 122.

summer-season, connected with the South, Trishrubh, &c., III, 91; produced from the mind, and from it the Trishrubh, IV, 6; consists of months *Sukli* and *Sukra*, 29; is the part between earth and atmosphere, 29; is scorched, V, 45; the Kshatriya's season, 347.

Sun, twenty or twenty-first-fold, III, 265; IV, 163; V, 37, 291, 305; there is a man in the sun's disk (*mandala*), III, 367; its disk is the Brahman, and the *Gāyatri*, IV, 94; is smooth and round, 180; its disk is variegated, 196; when the sun sets it enters the wind, 333; is a baker of the baked, 352; is the foundation of *Pragāpati* and the Sacrificer, and generated out of their own self, 354, 355; the sun - its orb, light, and man - is the triple science, the *Mahad Uktham*, *Mahāvratā*, and *Fire-altar*, 366; the man in it is Death, who is immortal, 366; its orb is the gold plate and the white of the eye; its light the lotus-leaf and the black of the eye; its man the gold man (in the altar) and the man in the right eye, 367, 368; is the goal, the resting-place, V, 37; the towering form of the bull, 107; (*Āditya*) slaughtered as an animal victim by *Pragāpati*, and consequently endowed with certain powers, 128 seq.; represented by piece of gold tied to darbha plant and taken westwards, 195; established on the *Brihati*, 255, 256; walks singly, 314; is spiritual lustre, 314, 315; not rivalled by any one, 354; no one able to turn him back, 359; is a remover of evil, 426; originates from *Vishnu's* head when cut off, 442; whilst the sun shines the performer of *Pravargya* is to wear no garment, nor to spit, nor to discharge urine, 447; is *Brahmanaspati*, 453; is the truth, 457; the Brahman (n.), 460; *Yama*, 460; *Makha*, 460; is

the child (*garbha*) of the gods, 469; the lord of creatures, 469; the sustainer of sky and gods, 470; the never-resting guardian, 470; is the father, 472; is a web-weaver, 484; the quarters are its corners, 498; is the fallow stallion, 501.

Sun and Moon (*sūrya-mandramasau*), are *Pragāpati's* eyes, III, 113.

Sunabsepha, legend of, III, 95, 109.

Sunāsīrya, seasonal offering, III, 48;

Sunāsīrya, part of *Pragāpati's* body, V, 77; oblations of, 77 n.

sun-motes, III, 79, 80: as *Apsaras*, the *Gandharva Sūrya's* mates, IV, 231; they float clinging together, 231.

sun-rain, III, 76.

sun-rays, are the *Visve Devâb*, V, 196.

sunwise motion, III, 359; leads to the gods, 372, 373.

Suparna, eagle (or falcon), *Savitri's* (*garutmat*) *Suparna*, (is *Pragāpati*), IV, 105; a *Suparna* of the *Trishrubh* metre (is the *mādhyaṇdina-pavamāna*) bearing the Sacrificer to bliss, V, 173.

Suplan Sârṅgaya, V, 239.

surā, cups of, III, 8; mean untruth, &c., 8, 9; drawn by *Neshtri*, 10; one of them held by *Vaiśya* or *Rāganya*, 29; oblation of, 133; offered to Fathers from pitcher with a hundred, or nine, holes, 136; originates from *Indra's* hips, V, 215; preparation of *surā*, 223, 224; it means food, and the *Vis*, 225; contributes to joy (intoxication), 227, 228; is the essence of waters and plants, 233; gladdens the Sacrificer, 233; is drunk by him and priests, being unpropitious for a *Brāhmama*, 233, 245; others make a *Rāganya* or *Vaiśya* drink it, 233; it falls to the share of the Fathers of him who drinks it, 233; purifies the Sacrificer whilst itself is purified, 236.

surrender (*paridā*), of one's self, IV, 186, 239, 251, 269; V, 236.

Sūrya, as *Gandharva*, with the sun-motes, as *Apsaras*, his mates,

IV, 231; is the highest of all the universe, 240; created by the Brahman and placed in the sky, V, 27; evolved from the sky, and from him the Sāmaveda, 101; Sūrya's daughter purifies the Soma with tail-whisk, 226; she is Faith, 226; Sūrya, the highest light, is heaven, 267; sacrificed as animal victim, 320; expiatory pap, 346, 347; is the eye of creatures, 346; Sūrya, Vāyu, and Heaven and Earth, 347; walks singly, 388; one of his rays is the rain-winner, 478; is heaven, the highest light, 502; (regent of the sky) is the self of the gods, 505.
 Sūryāṅdramasan, are Pragâpati's eyes, III, 313.
 Sūryastut Ukthya, V, 419.
 Sushena, Parganya's chieftain (grāmañi) in the upper region, is the second winter month, IV, 108.
 Sārvasa Kaushya, a teacher, IV, 391.
 Sūta, one of the Ratnins, III, 60; is the spiriter (sava), 60-62; 111.
 suta and āsuta, V, 241 n.
 Svadhā, as such the Fathers worship the divine Purusha, IV, 373; the Father's food, V, 96-98, 234; the autumn is the Svadhā, 423.
 svādhyāya, the study of one's daily lesson of the scriptures, V, 100 seq.
 svāhā, therewith logs are consecrated, III, 261; is food, IV, 159; is distinct (definite), 183; is the Vashat, 277.
 Svaidāyana, a Saunaka, and northern Brāhmana, defeats Uddālaka Āruṇi, V, 50 seq.
 svar, —cf. bhūb.
 svarāṅ, metre, III, 364; of thirty-four syllables, IV, 385.
 svāra-sāman, produced from Trishubh, and from it the Antaryāma-graha, IV, 6, 7; how chanted, ib.
 svāra-sāman days, performed either as Agnishomas or as Ukthyas, V, 147.

Svarbhānu, an Asura, smites the sun with darkness, III, 65, 406.
 Svargit Nāgnagita, or Nagnagit, the Gāndhāra, a rāganyabandhu, IV, 21.
 svayan-ātrinnā brick, represents the three worlds, III, 155; the first belongs to Pragâpati, 187, 378; second to Indrāgni and Visvakarman, 188; third to Parameshvān, 188; laying down of first, as earth, food, and vital air, 377; the lower vital air, 399; IV, 2; the second (in the third layer) is the middle part of the body and its vital air, 42; the air, 44, 45; the third (in the fifth layer), 96, 99; the vital air in the middle of the body, 114, 116, 140 seq.; oblations thereon, 182; is an uttaravedi, 182; svayanātrinnās as substitutes for fire-altar, 271.
 Svetaketu Āruṇya, has sacrifice performed for him by Vaisvāvasavya, IV, 333; his view regarding the fore-offerings, V, 40; regarding the nature of honey, 90; disputation on Agnihotra at Ganaka's house, 112 seq.; questioned by his father regarding the tordng-footholds of the year, 147.
 Svkna. See Pratidanza, Rishabha.
 Svishzakrit, performed between two oblations, III, 40; the same for kām्यeshis, IV, 248; is fervour (tapas), V, 41; the Kshatra, 253; three oblations of blood at Asvamedha, 337, 338; is Rudra, 338.
 swan maidens, V, 70.
 sweat-pores, as many as there are hair-pits and rain-drops, V, 169.
 Syaita-sāman, III, introd. xvi; sung by some over completed altar, IV, 180.
 syāma, III, 14.
 syāmāka, millet, III, 70.
 Syāparva, a people, IV, 344 n.; Syāparva Sāyakāyana, III, 171; IV, 274, 344.
 syena, falcon or eagle, one of the Gāyatrī metre (is the bahishpavamāna) bearing the Sacrificer to bliss, V, 173; the talon-

- slaying *syena*, the king of birds, originates from Indra's heart, 215; with two feathers of *syena* the sacrifice is purified (swept up and down) at *Sautrâmanî*, 230.
- tail,—twenty-one-fold, IV, 222; contraction and expansion of bird's tail, 301 seq.;—tail whisk as purifier, V, 220, 235.
- Tândya*, III, 153.
- tanu*, (five bodily parts), III, 152.
- Tapa*, the first dewy season, IV, 126; is the sun, 126.
- tapas*, (austerities) to be practised: of him who does so every part shares in the world of heaven, IV, 362; there is no perpetuity in it, 418.
- tâpaskita*, (the fire-altar used at the sacrificial session of that name), IV, 317; substitute for a session of a thousand years, V, 171 seq.; amounts to a *Bṛihatî*, 172.
- Tapasya*, the second dewy season, IV, 126.
- Târکشya*, the commander-in-chief of the sacrifice (or north), is the first autumn month, IV, 107; *Târکشya Vaipasyata*, king of birds, V, 369.
- târpya*, III, 85.
- teacher, of *brahmaârin*, whether to carry on sexual intercourse, or not, V, 90.
- testicles, V, 500.
- thighs, joined to body at upper end, III, 306; thigh-bone the largest bone, IV, 137.
- thirteen, IV, 74.
- thirty,—limbs of body, IV, 167.
- thirty-one, IV, 76.
- thirty-three, IV, 76; V, 164.
- thousand,—means everything, IV, 147, 304; V, 348;—the benefits of a life of 1,000 years, how to be gained, IV, 362.
- thread,—with it fried rice-grain is bought at *Sautrâmanî*, V, 219.
- threefold, the, belongs to gods, III, 21.
- throne-seat, of *udumbara*, for consecration at *Vâgapeya*, III, 35; of *khadira* at *Abhishekanîya*, 105; rising from, 128; thereon *Ukhyâ Agni* placed and carried, 267 seq.; represents the earth, 267; of *udumbara* wood, 267; V, 249; represents imperial dignity, 249; royal dignity, 249; the womb and navel of the *Kshatra*, 250; throne-seat, of *Pravargya*, the *samrâg*, 461; of *udumbara*, shoulder-high, 461; wound with grass-cords, 461.
- thunderbolt, is fifteenfold, III, 413; the (sixteenfold) sun (*Āditya*) is its wielder, IV, 85; has a sling (or handle) on its right side, 86; Indra drives off the *Asuras* therewith, 193; is the thunder, V, 116.
- tiger, skin of, used at consecration ceremony of *Râgasūya*, III, 81; is *Soma's* beauty, 81, 92; produced in the shape of the *virâg* metre, IV, 38; is vigour, 38; springs from entrail of dead body, if not cleaned out before being burnt, V, 203; springs from Indra's entrails, 215.
- tilvaka*, tree, not to stand near a grave, V, 427.
- tongue, distinguishes the essence (taste, flavour) of food, V, 263.
- tooth,—how teeth grow and decay, V, 52, 54.
- top,—of grass-stalks is sacred to the gods, IV, 185.
- tortoise (*kūrma*), how created, III, 147; a living one placed in first layer, 389; is the life-sap of these worlds, and these worlds themselves, 389; the lower shell the earth, the upper one the sky, and what is between is the air, 389; is anointed with *dadhi*, honey, and *ghee*, 389; is the same as the sun (*Āditya*), 390; is the vital air, 391; *Agni Vairvânara*, *Āditya*, creeps over the three worlds in the shape of a tortoise, 392; the lord of the waters and the bull of bricks, 392;—how laid down on the altar, IV, 2.
- traidhâtavi*, offering at *Sautrâmanî*, III, 139; at *Purushamedha*, V, 412.
- trayastrimsa* (-stoma), connected with *pañkti*, *raivatâ*, &c., III,

91; *trīṇava* and *trayastrīṃsa*, produced from the *āgrayana* and from them the *śākvara* and *raivata-sāmāns*, IV, 11, 12; is a foundation, the year, 65; connected with *Ribhus* and *Vīṣve Devāb*, frees living beings (*bhūta*) from death, 70; is connected with *Bṛihaspati*, the *Vīṣve Devāb*, the upper region, &c., 103; last of the uneven *stomas*, 217; *trayastrīṃsa* day, 420.

trayī vidyā, III, 139; (the *brahman*) first created, 145, 192; is all the metres, 193; consists of hymns, tunes, and prayers, 196; dug out by the gods from the mind-ocean, 415; (*stoma*, *yagus*, *rik*, *sāman*, *brāhat*, *rathantara*) is food; mentioned in final benediction of the *Vasor dhārā* consecration, IV, 220; is the truth, 258; the (*Soma*-sacrifice, 261; contains all existing things, 352; *Pragāpati*'s body contains (or consists of) it, 352; consists of 10,800 eighties of syllables, 353; is Speech, and *Agni* (the fire-altar), 364 seq.; is the universe, 403; constitutes the (new, divine) body of the Sacrificer, V, 38; evolved from *Agni*, *Vāyu*, and *Sūrya*, and from it the luminous essences *bhūb*, *bhuva*, *sva*, 102, 103; the *Brahman* pries to use the *trayī vidyā*, 104; is the unexhausted element of the sacrifice, 170.

trayodasa-stoma, gained by *Vasus*, III, 40.

trayovīṃsa-stoma, the array, the year, IV, 63.

trees, all except *udumbara* side with the *Asuras* against the gods, III, 256; ruled over by *Soma*, IV, 76.

tretā, die, III, 107.

trikakubh (metre), is the *udāna*, IV, 88.

trīṇava-stoma, connected with *Pañkti*, *śākvara*, &c., III, 91; with *trayastrīṃsa* produced from the *āgrayana-grāha*, and from them the *śākvara* and *raivata-sāmāns*, IV, 11, 12; is strength, the

year, 64; connected with *Aditi* and *Pūshan*, 69; connected with upper region, *Bṛihaspati*, *Vīṣve Devāb*, &c., 102, 103; is the two sides (flanks), V, 16; *trīṇava* day, 420.

tripāṇa, III, 83.

triple science. See *trayī vidyā*.

trishamyukta, offerings, III, 54, 56.

trishrubh, gained by *Indra*, III, 40;

is vigour, strength (*virya*), 64; is the one rule which the gods keep, 447; IV, 262, 308; V, 311, 312; connected with *kshatra*, &c., III, 91; is the body, self, 167, 218, 253; produced from the summer, and from it the *svāra-sāman* IV, 6; year-and-a-half-old calves produced in the form of it, 39; is the south, 45; the air of *trishrubh* nature, 57; *Vāyu* connected with it, 142; is the thunderbolt, 193, 308; connected with the sun, 197; of eleven syllables, 308; is the generative breathing (of *Pragāpati*), 327-379; an eagle of the *trishrubh* metre (midday *Pavamāna*) bearing the Sacrificer to bliss, V, 173; thereby the *Rudras* consecrate king, 312.

trivṛt-stoma, gained by *Mitra*, III, 40; connected with *brahman*, &c., 91; produced from *upāmsu-grāha*, and from it the *Rathantara*, IV, 5; the swiftest of *stomas*, 61; is *Vāyu*, 61; is breath, 66; through it (connected with *Agni*) the priesthood delivered from death, 67; is the head, 78; connected with *Agni*, the *Vasus*, the east, *āgyasāstra*, *rathantara-sāman*, 100.

truth, remaining with the gods, and untruth with *Asuras*, IV, 257; he who holds to it, though first poor, in the end prospers, 257; truth in faith, V, 46; conquers pain, always to be spoken, 85.

Tura Kāvasheya, IV, introd. xviii; builds fire-altar at *Kārotī*, IV, 279.

Tvashtri, assists *Varuṇa*, III, 113; rules over living forms, 113, 115; (*samsrip*) ten-kapāla cake to, 115; *prayugām havis* (ten-

- kapāla cake), 125; his son Vi-
varūpa, 130; V, 213; ram
slaughtered for him, III, 162;
fashioned first the sheep, 411;
takes Śrī's forms and receives
(mitravindā) oblation (ten-
kapāla cake), V, 62-65; prac-
tises mystic rites on Indra and
excludes him from the Soma-
draught, 213 seq.; 248; Tvash-
tri, the seminal, is multiform,
293; fashioner of the couples
of animals, 293.
- twenty-five, IV, 75.
- twenty-five-fold, is seed, III, 353;
is the body, IV, 168, 222.
- twenty-four-fold, is man, III, 167;
the wing (pak-ha), IV, 222;
Pragāpati, the year, V, 141.
- twenty-nine, IV, 75.
- twenty-one, IV, 75, 191; V, 150.
- twenty-one-fold (or twenty-first), is
man, III, 172; (stoma) the sun,
127, 265; IV, 163; V, 37, 150
(cf. note), 305 note, 333, 335;
the tail, IV, 222; the belly, V,
164; the altar, &c., 334, 335;
the head of the sacrifice, 335.
- twenty-three, IV, 75.
- twinkling of the eye, as many as
there are spirations, and hair-
pits, V, 169.
- udāna, becomes the vyāna, IV, 16;
(breath of the nose) fills man,
V, 31.
- udānabhrīt (holders of the upward
air), are the ear-sustainers, IV,
15.
- udavasāniyeshri, III, 115, 139; IV,
269.
- udayaniya (Atirātra), IV, 254.
- Uddālaka Āruvi, son of (Arūva) Gau-
tama, a Kurupaṅkala Brāhmana,
[IV, 333 n., 393 n.;] V, 50 seq.;
in disputation with Saukeya Prā-
ñinayogya, 79 seq.; teacher of
Proti Kausurubindi, 153.
- Uddālavat, a Gandharva, V, 30.
- udder, in one third of cow, III, 237.
- uddhāra, share,- purastād—, upar-
ish/bāt, IV, 162.
- Udgātri priest, seated towards north,
III, 109; gold wreath his fee at
Dasapeya, 119; by means of
the Mahāvratā (sāman) he puts
the vital fluid into Pragāpati,
the altar, IV, 282; in the rainy
season, V, 45; initiated for
Sattra (as being the thunder-
cloud and rain), 135; holding
on to him from behind, 173;
not to chant the Udgītha of
bahishpavamāna at Asvamedha,
305; is the friend of the gods, 388;
the Udgātris do, as it were, the
Patnī's work at the sacrifice, 504.
- udgītha,—of bahishpavamāna at As-
vamedha performed by the
horse, V, 305.
- udumbara (ficus glomerata), means
substance, food, III, 35, 36, &c.:
strength, life-sap, 373; used for
throne seat at Vāgapeya, 35;
for food-vessel, 36; for con-
secration water-vessel, 73, 80;
ditto for the king's kinsman to
sprinkle from, 83; branch hid-
den in wheel-track, 104; how
produced, 256; sides with the
gods, whilst all other trees do
so with the Asuras, 256; con-
tains the vital sap of all other
trees, 256, (267), 394; produces
fruit (thrice a year) equal to
that of all other trees, 257; is
always moist, 257; udumbara
jar used for sowing seed on
Agnikshetra, 337; etymology,
395; samidhs of, IV, 189, 191;
samidh with forking branches,
203; offering-ladle of, for vasor
dhārā, 214; originates from In-
dra's flesh (and force), V, 215;
means strength, force, 220, 448.
- uggiti, formulas and oblations, III,
40.
- Ugra, form and name of Agni, III,
159; is Vāyu, 160.
- Ugrasena, performs Asvamedha, V,
396.
- ukhā, fire-pan,—materials collected
for, III, 180; belongs to Pragā-
pati, 180; eight parts of, 180;
thereinto the Sacrificer pours
his own self, 180; represents
the three worlds, 210, 233 seq.;
313; fashioning of, 233 seq.;
is a cow, 237; is Agni's self
(body), 239; is the Sacrificer's
own self, 251; baking of pan,
252 seq.; instructions in case

- of its breaking, 263; ditto in case of fire therein going out, 263; etymology (ut-khan), 270; filled with sand and milk, 310, 311; not to be looked at when empty, 310; placed on mortar in first layer, 396-398; is the belly of the animal Agni, 400; shaping and baking of it side by side with the building of fire-altar, IV, introd. xix; a representation of the three worlds, ib.; is placed on the mortar, 2; Prāgāpati and Sacrificer are poured therein as seed into the womb, 341; therein, as the three worlds, Prāgāpati pours his own self, 354.
- Ukhyā Agni, III, 263, 265; is held up towards east, 272, (1275); towards south-west and north-east, 280; carried about for a year, 269; placed on chariot and driven about, 290 seq.; poured on Gārhapatyā, 310; IV, 191 n.; 308 n.; by building an altar without carrying him for a year one kills all beings in the form of an embryo, 272; one must not officiate at such a sacrifice, 272; relaxations of rule, 273, 274; only one who has carried Agni for a year attains immortal life, 324; placed on fire-altar with 'vashat', 202, 341.
- ukbīshrakṣhara, V, 489 n., 500.
- uktha, III, introd. xiv-xvi; (= mahad uktham), the food of Agni, IV, 342; the uktha is Agni, Āditya, Prāna, the Puruṣa, 399; (= jāstrā), V, 257.
- uktha-stotra, III, introd. xiv seq., 127.
- ukthya-graha, III, 11.
- Ukthya sacrifice, III, introd. xiv-xvi; victims of, 12; two hundred and forty, or two hundred and thirty-four in a year's session, V, 147.
- ulūkhala, etymology, III, 395.
- unbelief and belief, as two women with a man, (wrath) between them, V, 111-112.
- uneven, belongs to the Fathers, V, 423.
- universe, in the beginning was neither existent, nor non-existent, IV, 374; is Mind alone, 375; is only Death, hunger, which creates Mind, 402; universe originally was nothing but a sea of water, V, 12; in the beginning was the Brahman, 27.
- Unnetri, priest, initiated last for sattra by non-initiated Snātaka or Brahmātarin, V, 137.
- unstringing (formulas). See avatāna.
- untruth, - remaining with Asuras, and truth with the gods, IV, 257; he who speaks untruth, though first flourishing, comes to nought in the end, 257; women, the śūdra, the dog and the blackbird (crow) are untruth, V, 446.
- upabhrāt. See spoon.
- upahita, III, 151.
- upāṃśu-graha, III, 6; is the mouth of the sacrifice, 53; produced from gāyatra-sāman, IV, 4; from it the trivṛt, 5.
- upanayana, initiation of Brāhmanical student, V, 86 seq.
- upanishad (mystic import), the essence of the Yagns, IV, 339; regarding the nature of Agni, 363 seq.; V, 155.
- uparishād bhāgah, IV, 185; cf. uddhāra.
- Upasād, III, 116, 118, 355; IV, 187; with three kindling-verses, and without prayāgas and anuyāgas, IV, 259; the two performances are two strongholds between which the fire-altar is built, 316; are the fervour in the sacrifice, 317; are day and night, and Pravargya the sun, 317; three, six, twelve, or twenty-four Upasād-days, or a year, 317, 318; on Sata-rudriya-day, day of preparation, and sutyā-day, 320; like after-offerings of a backward direction, V, 43; twelve Upasād-days at Ajvamedha, 371; ditto at Purushamedha, 403; is combined with Pravargya, 493.
- upasaya, supernumerary, V, 220 n.
- upasthāna, of fire on fire-altar, IV, 269; with seven-verses Aindrahymn, 274, 275.
- upayag, by-offering, eleven, III, 163.
- upayamani, (supporting) tray, V,

- 458; is the air, the Pravargya pot placed thereon, 477, 481, 488.
- upper (or great) region,—is the sun, IV, 27; the pañkti, 45; sovereign mistress (adhipatni), 46, 102; the Visve Devâb its lords, 102; connected with Bṛhaspati, the trinava, and trayas-trinva stomas, the śakvara, and raivata sāmāns, 102, 103; a boon-bestower, is Praganya, 107; is the Sacrificer's region, 485.
- Ūrga, second autumn month, IV, 49.
- Urvasi, an Aparas,—is the upper region, or the oblation, IV, 108; Urvasi, and Purūravas, V, 68 seq.
- Ushas, wife of Bhūtānām patib (Pragāpati, the year), III, 158.
- ushnih, — in the form of it three-and-a-half-year old kine produced, IV, 39; is the eye (of Pragāpati), 327-328.
- ushnisha, turban, III, 86.
- usurer (money-lender), V, 368.
- utkara, heap of rubbish, is the seat of what is redundant (superfluous), IV, 137.
- utsādana, of Pravargya, IV, 187; V, 493 seq.
- ut-sarga, formulas of removal (of distress), III, 408.
- uttaramandṛā (tune or lute), V, 356.
- uttara-nārāyana (litany), V, 412.
- uttara-vedi (high, or upper, altar), is the sky, III, 349; the womb, 349; the air, V, 248; on the uttara (northern) vedi, 225; used for 'setting out' the Pravargya vessels, 498; its navel is the voice, 498.
- vāga (food, race, strength), III, 204.
- Vāgā,—Savitrī, with Rbhus, Vibhus, and Vāga, receives offering of gharma, V, 480.
- Vāgapeya, III, introd. xi, xxiii seq.; by offering it one ascends to upper region, 2, 3; to the light, 33; becomes immortal, 33; wins Pragāpati, 3; it belongs to Brāhmanava and Rāganya, 3; by offering it one becomes samrāg, 4; it is superior to Rāgasūya, 4; IV, 225; number seventeen prevails thereat, III, 8; etymology, 13 seq.; is a supernumerary (special) rite, 246.
- vāgapeya-graha, belongs to Indra, III, 6; five such, 8.
- vāgapeya-sāman, III, introd. xxiii, 11, 12.
- vāgaprasaviya, (seven) oblations as Vāgapeya, III, 37; with remains thereof Sacrificer sprinkled at Vāgapeya, 38; (fourteen) oblations (of all-herb-seed) at Agnikāyana, IV, 223 seq.; are all food, 224.
- Vāgasravasa. See Kusri Vāgasravasa.
- vāghat, III, 218, 223.
- vāgin, horse, carries the Gandharvas, IV, 401.
- vāginām sāmān, III, 23.
- vai, meaning of, III, 198.
- Vainya. See Prithin.
- Vaipasyata. See Tārkshya.
- vairāga-sāman, III, introd. xx, xxii, xxiii; connected with Anushrubh, ekavimsa-stoma, autumn, 91; produced from ekavimsa-stoma, IV, 10; connected with Soma, Maruts, north, &c., 102.
- vairūpa-sāman, III, introd. xx, xxii; connected with vis, Gagati, &c., 91; (?) = riksama-sāman, IV, 8, 9; is an aida-sāman, 10; connected with Varuna, the Ādityas, the west, &c., 102.
- vaiśākha, month, new moon of, coincides with the nakshatra Rohini, V, 2.
- Vaishnava. See Soma Vaishnava.
- Vaisravana. See Kubera Vaisravana.
- Vaisradeva, seasonal offering, III, 47; part of Pragāpati's body, V, 74; oblations, 74 n.: at Asvamedha (to Ka, Pragāpati, Aditi, Sarasvati, Pūshan, Tvashtri, Vishnu), 289 seq.; 292 seq.
- vaisradeva-śastra, connected with Bṛhaspati, the Visve Devâb, the upper region, &c., IV, 103; on second day of Asvamedha, V, 381.
- vaisradevi (āmikshā), III, 108;—bricks, IV, 23, 30 seq.; represent creatures, 31.
- vaisvakarmāna, formulas and oblations (corresponding to the

Sāvitra ones), IV, 266; Agni Vaisvakarmāna, 268; are the second half of the year, 347.

Vaisvānara, twelve-kapāla cake to, III, 57; Vaisvānara is the year, 57, 170; prayugām havis (twelve-kapāla cake), 125; pasupuro-dāsa, 170; twelve-kapāla cake at dikṣhā of Agnikāyana, 247; Vaisvānara is all the fires, 248; is Agni, 248; is the Kshatra, 248; the Gārhapatya is Agni Vaisvānara, 300; the year, IV, 33, 207; twelve-kapāla cake which makes Agni Vaisvānara a deity after being set up on fire-altar, 307; etymology, 208; is the Kshatra, 210; is the sun, 212; views regarding his nature, 393 seq.; is the Puruṣa, 398; expiatory cake, V, 346; Vaisvānara is this earth, 346.

Vaisvāsavya, officiates to Sveta-keṭu Aruṇeya, and is examined by his patron's father (Uddīlaka Aruṇi), IV, 333.

Vaiśya, takes part in chariot race, III, 29; holds honey-cup and cup of surā, 29; sprinkles king from aravattha vessel, 84; hired by some to drink the surā-liquor, V, 233; son of Vaiśya woman not anointed, 326.

Vaivasvata. See Manu, Yama.

Vaiyāghrapadya. See Buḍiḥa, and Indradymna.

Vāk, victim to, III, 15; (Sarasvatī) the leader, 39, 80; (Bṛhaspati) Vāk, pap of wild rice to, 70; the triple Veda the thousand-fold progeny of Vāk, 140; out of her Pragāpati produced the waters, 145, 192; union with mind (manas), 149; bears the eight Vasus, eleven Rudras, twelve Ādityas, and the Viṣve Devāḥ, 149; Vāk, the voice, speaks to a span's distance, 200; is part of speech, 203; is a mahishi (consecrated queen), 239;—cf. Sarasvatī Vāk.

vākovākyam, dialogue, to be studied, V, 98.

vālakhilyā, bricks of the third layer are the vital airs, 54 seq.; etymology, 55; by means of

them the gods ranged over these worlds upwards and downwards, 56.

Vāmadevya, son of Vāmadeva. See Bṛhaduktha.

vāmadevya-sāman, III, introd. xvi, 12, 274; how chanted, IV, 7; sung over completed altar, is the breath (vital air) and Vāyu, 179; is Pragāpati, V, 333.

Vāmakakṣṭāyana, III, 314; instructed by Sāmāliya, IV, 345.

vapā, of five cuttings (portions), V, 125; vapā offering on second day of Arvamedha, 392 seq.; victims with and without vapā, 420.

vār, etymology, III, 146.

varana wood, peg of, V, 436; enclosing sticks, 439; sruva-spoon, 439.

vāravantiya-sāman, III, introd. xiv, 201; used for Agnishoma-sāman on first day of Arvamedha, V, 376.

Vārkaḥ, V, 169.

vārshāhara, sāman, V, 501.

vārtraghna, are the āgyabhāgas, V, 350.

Varuṇa, by ten syllables gains Virāḡ, III, 40; his noose, 47, 57, 280; Varuṇa is Agni, 51; (? Bṛhaspati, 68); barley pap to, 57, 60; to Varuṇa belongs the black, hence black cloth the fee for oblation to Varuṇa, 58; knot sacred to Varuṇa, 58; is the spiriter (sava) of gods, 60; the horse his sacrificial animal, 60; to Varuṇa belongs what is hewn by axe and what is churned, 67; what is cooked by fire, 68; what grows in ploughed ground, 71; the flowing water that does not flow, 76; the garment of initiation (at Abhishekanīya), 87; Varuṇa Dharmapati, barley pap to, 71; Varuṇa consecrated king, 98, 103; upholder of the sacred law, 106; Varuṇa Satyaugas, 109; on being consecrated Varuṇa's lustre (bhargas) departs from him, 113; assists himself, 113; samsrip-oblation (barley pap) to, 116; seizes creatures, 116; prayugām havis

- (pap) 10, 125; barley pap at Sautrâmanî, 136, 137; Varuna is the injurer, 137; horse slaughtered for him, 162; to him belongs the sling, 279, 280; the sheep sacred to him, 411; Mitra and Varuna, out-breathing and down-breathing, connected with ekavimsa-stoma, IV, 68; rules over one-hoofed animals, 75; protector of the west, 101; connected with the Âdityas, saptadasa-stoma, marutvatiya-sastra, vairûpa-sâman, 101, 102; ruînati (lightsome) oblation to, 238; is Agni (when completed and anointed), 238; is the kshatra, 239; Varuna and horse, V, introd. xix seq.; part of Pragâpati's body affected by Varuna, 36; takes Sri's sovereign power and receives (mitra-vindâ) oblation (ten-kapâla cake), 62, 65; sends out his son Bhrigu to improve his knowledge, 108 seq.; through (a cake to) Varuna one delivers one's self from Varuna's power and noose, 221; Varuna's cakes of ten kapâlas, for Varuna is Virâg, the lord of food, 222; connected with winter, 247; upholder of the sacred law, 251; is the king of the gods, 551; receives oblation in Sautrâmanî (for assisting in healing Indra), 252; swearing by the inviolable waters a sin against Varuna, 265; Varuna's son or brother is a whirlpool, 266; the last of the ten deities ('all the gods') receiving oblations of drops, 281; Varuna Gumbaka, 343; propitiatory barley pap, 346; Varuna seizes upon the drowned, 346; barley sacred to him, 346; Varuna Âditya, king of the Gandharvas, 365; (the regent of waters, ? and Nakshatras) is the self of the gods, 505, 506.
- Varuna-praghâsâb, seasonal offering, III, 47; part of Pragâpati's body, V, 75; oblations of, 75 n.
- varuna-sava, III, introd. xxv, 76, 103.
- Vâruni. See Bhrigu.
- varunic nature, of cow, III, 51.
- varunya, III, 57.
- vara, hymn, IV, 112, 223.
- vâra (? desirable or submissive), III, 77.
- vasatîvarî water,—at Arvamedha of four kinds, from the four quarters, 275.
- Vashat, uttered with ten oblations of the Darśapûrnamâsa, V, 3; is the sun and Death, and by it the Sacrificer is regenerated and delivered from death, 26; produces wasting away of cattle in winter, 45;—277 note.
- Vasishṭha, the Rishi, is breath, IV, 5; his (knowledge of the) Virâg coveted by Indra, V, 212; formerly only one of his family could become Brahman priest, 212.
- Vasor dhârâ, shower of wealth, IV, 213 seq.; is Agni's Abhisheka (consecration), 213; its mystic meaning, 221 seq.; corresponds to year and Mahad uktham, 221, 222.
- Vasu, dwelling in the air, III, 103, 281.
- Vasus, by thirteen syllables gain the trayodasa-stoma, III, 40; eight Vasus produced from Vâk, 149; placed on earth with Agni, 150; (with Mitra) mix the clay, 231; fashioned this earth-world by means of Gâyatri, 233; Rudras and Vasus sing praises of (brick in) second layer, IV, 25; how produced, 33; Vasus and Rudras, connected with the four-footed and the âturvimsa-stoma, 68; Vasus, Rudras, and Âdityas separated, and were the lords when heaven and earth separated, 75; connected with Agni, &c., 100; the lords of the east, 100; Vasus, Rudras, Âdityas, Maruts, and Vîve Devâb build on different quarters of altar E. S. W. N. U., 118; the eight Vasus enumerated, V, 116; arise by performance of morning pressing, 173; consecrate the king by the Gâyatra metre, 312; obtain the part of Vishnu, the sacrifice, corresponding to

the morning - pressing, 443 ;
Indra, with Vasus, Rudras, and
Ādityas, receives* offering at
Pravargya, 479, 480.

vāta. See wind.

vātsapra, hymn and rite, III, 261.
283 ; an unyoking-place, 286.

vatsara, (fifth year of cycle), IV, 21.

Vātsya, a teacher, IV, 272, 345 n.

vaushat, etymology, IV, 341, 346 ;

forms part of the unexhausted
element of the sacrifice (and
trayī vidyā), V, 170.

vāvātā, addressed by Udgātri, V, 387.

vayasyā, bricks in second layer,
IV, 24.

Vāyu, how created, III, 148 ; his
union with the air, 148 ; and
the regions, 188 ; with him the
Rudras in the air, 150 ; is the
released Pragāpati, 152 ; Vāyu
Niyutvat, 173 ; the out-breath-
ing, 173 ; one half of Pragāpati,
175 ; regent of the air, 204.
(210, 286) ; Agni, Vāyu, and
Āditya, are all the light, 210 ;
goes along by the breath of the
gods, 221 ; is the vital air that
went out of Pragāpati, 312 ; is
Vivakarman (the maker of
everything), IV, 6 ; blows most
in (from) south, 6 ; becomes the
mind, in right side of body, 6 ;
wind produced by the prāṇa-
bhṛts, 33 ; everywhere between
the two worlds, 34 ; runs every-
where in the same direction,
34 ; is in the regions, 34
wind has rain in it, 35 ; over
lord of the air world, 48 ; i
Pragāpati (of the air), Agni
the Sacrificer, 57, 58 ; takes the
part of Pragāpati between head
and waist, 60 ; becomes the
deities and the forms of the
year, 60 ; is the trivṛt-stoma,
and the swiftest, 61 ; the
support of all beings, 66 ; en-
closes all beings, 66 ; rules over
wild animals, 75 ; Agni, Vāyu,
and Āditya move hitherwards
and thitherwards, 90 ; the all-
worker (vivakarman), in the
south, 106 ; blows sideways in
the air, 130 ; wind and sky the
highest, and close together,

140, 141 ; is only on this side
of the sky, 141 ; is the thread
by which the sun strings the
worlds to himself, 141 ; is of
trishrubh nature, 142 ; Agni,
Vāyu, and Āditya are the hearts
of the gods, 162 ; is the self
(body) of all the gods, 179 ; is
the body (ātman) of Agni-Pragā-
pati, the altar and universe,
179 ; Agni, Vāyu, and Āditya
are the Pravargya (vessels), 187 ;
Vāyu is the man (nara) of the
air as (part of) the All (vīva),
208 ; is the breath, 208 ; Agni
considered as Vāyu, 363 ; Vāyu,
the one wind, when entering
man is divided into ten parts,
V, 3 ; Pragāpati becomes vital
air, and Vāyu, 15 ; created by
the Brahman and placed in the
air, 27 ; Vāyu one of the six
doors to the Brahman, 66, 67 ;
offering for expiation to Vāyu
in the direction in which the
wind blows, 84 ; all beings (at
death) pass over into the wind,
and from thence are again pro-
duced, 84 ; is evolved from the
air, and from him the Yagur-
veda, 102 ; Vāyu's form taken
by sun, whence wind is invisible,
130 ; Agni, Vāyu, and Āditya
are light, might, glory (tame),
173 ; the swiftest of gods, 278 ;
the fifth of the ten deities ('all
the gods') receiving oblation of
drops, 281 ; is a singer
praises, 312 ; Vāyu cooks the
food, 316 ; sacrificed as animal
victim, 319 ; expiatory milk
oblation, 345, 347 ; Vāyu is
the transformer of seed, 345 ;
Vāyu, Sūrya, and Heaven, and
Earth, 347 ; is Pūshan, since
he supports (push) everything,
474 ; (regent of the air) is the
self of the gods, 505.

Veda, triple (yagus, rik, sāman), III,
139, 140, 141 ; the thousand-
fold progeny of Vāk, 140 ; the
three Vedas (cf. trayī vidyā),
consist of 10,800 eighties of
syllables, IV, 353 ; study of
the Veda, V, 95 seq. ; bene-
ficial effects thereof, 99 seq. ;

- Rik*, Yagus and Sâman are light, might and glory (fame), 174.
- vedi, is this earth, III, 345, 349; IV, 235; V, 248; is the world of the (? place for) gods, IV, 118; measuring of vedi (for fire-altar), 30 seq.; (mahâvedi) equal to vedi of sevenfold fire-altar, 306; vedi of ninety steps (for the sevenfold fire-altar), 308; is fivefold, 309; right edge of vedi a balance in which the Sacrificer is weighed, V, 45; is the golden, brilliant-winged Gâyatri who bears the Sacrificer to heaven, 56; how to step past it, 57 seq.; two vedis at Sautrâmanî, 225; is the farthest end of the earth, 390.
- vet, sacrificial call, is indistinct (indefinite), IV, 183; used with oblation of ghee (with gold chips in it), on completed fire-altar, 183; used (with 'svâhâ') after final benediction of Vasor dhârâ consecration, 220; with 'vashat,' or 'svâhâ,' is food offered to the gods, 221.
- vetasa (bamboo), etymology, IV, 174; cf. reed.
- vibhaktaka nut, used as dice, III, 106; tree, not to stand near a grave, V, 427.
- Vibhus,—Savitri, with Ribhus, Vibhus, and Vâgas, receives offering of Gharma, V, 480.
- victim, animal, is Pragâpati, and represents all deities, IV, 404; number of, at Asvamedha, V, 309 seq.; is quieted (killed), 321; human (symbolic), 407; set free, 411; enumerated, 413 seqq.
- vikankata, (flaccourtia sapida), is the thunderbolt, III, 53; how produced, 256, 448; pieces laid round Pravargya pot, representing the Maruts, V, 466; the vital airs, 486.
- vikarî, brick in sixth or seventh layer, IV, 96, 99, 140 seq.; is Vâyu, 140; is vital power (âyus), 141, 291.
- vikramana, one of Vishnu's steps, III, 96.
- vikrânta, one of Vishnu's steps, III, 96.
- vikriti, (fashioning) formula, III, 283.
- village-boundaries, contiguous in time of peace, V, 306, 307.
- vimita, shed, put upon gaming ground, III, 11.
- virâg, bricks of fifth layer, IV, 83.
- Virâg, metre, gained by Varuna, III, 40; of ten syllables, 183, 196; V, 403 n.; is Agni, III, 196; is food, IV, 50, 204; all food, IV, 12, 87; V, 408, 418; the unassailable metre in form of which tigers were produced, IV, 38; also two-year-old kine, 39; is food, 50, 204; of thirty syllables, 94, 385; the undiminished Virâg is Indra's heaven, 94; the ten vital airs are the Virâg, the sacrifice, V, 3; possessed by Vasishtha, and coveted by Indra, 212; is the earth, 212; created by Pragâpati, enters the sacrificial horse, 310; born from the Purusha, and the Purusha from Virâg, 403.
- viz, (peasantry, clan), food for the noble, III, 13; connected with west, Gagati, vairûpa-sâman, saptadâsa-stoma, rainy season, 91; connected with the gods generally, and the creator, is freed from death through saptadâsa-stoma, IV, 68; less powerful than nobility, and differing in speech and thought from each other, 133; is the sacrifice, 144; sits as it were, 210; is indefinite, 210, 245; speak to the kshatra now in a loud, now in a low voice, V, 41; obedient to the kshatra, 227; not to be equal and refractory, but obedient and subservient, to kshatra, 303.
- Vishnu, by three syllables gained the three worlds, III, 40; is the upper end of the gods, 44; the sacrifice, 45, 113; V, 179; three-kapâla cake, or pap to, III, 54; men belong to him, or are of his nature, 54; three steps (strides), 96, 261, 275; by Vishnu, Pragâpati created

- the worlds, 276, 286; assists Varuṇa in recovering his lost vigour, 114; (upasad) three-kapāla cake, or pap, 118; as embryo a span long, 235, 255, 260, 268; Vishṇu Sipivishṇu, pap of rice and fresh milk at New moon, V, 9; the sixth of the ten deities ('all the gods') receiving oblations of drops, 281; Vishṇu nibhūyapa, Sipivishṇu, 293; a dwarfish animal his victim at Asvamedha, 300; enters the world in three places, 388; first reaches end of sacrificial session, and attains excellence among gods, 411; is the sacrifice, 442; unable to control his ambition, 442; with his bow and three arrows, 442; his head is cut off, and becomes the sun, 442; is divided into three parts (the pressings of the Soma-sacrifice), 443.
- Vishṇu-strides, a feature of the haviryagña, V, 120.
- vishṭārapāṅkti (metre), is the regions, IV, 88.
- vishṭāvṛāga, III, 50, 53.
- vishṭāvṛāgin, III, 123.
- vishṭuti, III, introd. xxii.
- Vishuvat, central day of Gāyām ayanam, and formerly one of the three 'great rites' of the year's sattra, V, (139), 144; is in excess of the year, 158.
- visvadeva-netrāḥ (devāḥ), seated in the west, III, 49.
- Vivāḡit Atirātra, with all the prishṭas and giving away of all one's property, a substitute for a year of Soma-pressing (with Agnikayana), IV, 320, 321; V, 420, 491.
- visvagyotis (bricks) are (all the light), Agni, Vāyu, and Āditya, respectively, III, 220, 239; making of, 239; mean offspring, progeny, 239, 385; IV, 129; laying down of the first (Agni), III, 384; is breath, 385; IV, 2; Agni, 130; that of third layer, Vāyu, 47, 130; is offspring, 47; is breath, 47; the fifth layer, 99, 129; possessed of generative power, 229; is the sun, 130; is breath, 131; Sūrya its lord, 131.
- Vivakarman, the puruṣa (man) slaughtered for him, III, 162; Vivakarman and Indrāgni connected with the air and the second svayamātrima, 188, 190; IV, introd. xiv; is Vāyu, 6, 106; the Rishi Vivakarman is speech, 12; he is Pragāpati, 28, 233; settles the third layer of altar, 41, 47; is Agni, 189, 190, 204; oblation to, 204; is the lord of all that exists, 204; eight oblations to (Agni) Vivakarman corresponding to the Sāvitra oblations, 266; Vivakarman Bhaavana performs Sarvamedha, and promises the earth to Kasyapa, 421.
- Vivāḡi, the Apsaras, is the northern quarter, or the vedi, IV, 107.
- Vivāmitra, rishi (All-friend), is the ear, IV, 10.
- Vivāntara Saushadmana, IV, 344 n.
- Vivārūpa, the three-headed son of Tvashtri, slain by Indra, III, 130; V, 213.
- Vivāyasu, the Gandharva, IV, introd. xiv.
- Vive Devāḥ, by twelve syllables gained Gagati, III, 30; pañka-bila oblation (papi) on west part of vedi, 120, 122; piebald bullock the Hotri's fee, 122; animal offering to them (instead of to Maruts), 126; born from Vāt, and placed with the moon in the quarters (regions), 150; they and Brihaspati no special class of deities, 150; put the quarters in the world, 235; are the seasons, 311; sing praises of (bricks in) second layer, IV, 26; produced, 33; Ribhus and Vive Devāḥ connected with living beings (bhūta) and trayas-trima-stoma, 69; are the lords of the upper region, 102, 103; connected with Brihaspati, &c., 103; Vasus, Rudras, Ādityas, Maruts, Vive Devāḥ, build on different sides of altar (E. S. W. N. U.), 118; sit down with the Sacrificer on the higher seat (in the sky), 124; are Indra and

Agni, and the three are brahman, kshatra, and viś, 344; the most famous of gods, V, 278; are all the gods, 392; the counsellors of king Marutta, 397; offering of barren cows, 402, 411; Viśve Devâb, except the Asvins, 441; with Brîhaspati, receive offering of gharma, 480; are the vital airs, 488.

vital airs. See *prâṇa*.

vital power, vitality (*âyus*). See life.

vrata, rite (of abstinence), III, 183; (fast-milk), 262; the four rites, and rites of rites, IV, 333 seq.: 342; entering upon at New moon, V, 7 seq.; vrata (food) brought at haviryagña, 119; is the head of the sacrifice, 240.

vratadughâ, cow, given to Hotri and Udgâtris, V, 504.

vridhanvant, V, 351.

Vṛitra, slain by Indra by means of cake-offering, III, 45; by Full-moon offering, V, 6; is the moon, III, 45; slain by gods, 48, 49; rik, yagus, and sâman were in him, 138; his retreat shattered by Vishnu, 139; repelled by Indra, 179; waters loathing him, 332; verses relating to the slaying of Vṛitra, IV, 275; is evil, sin, V, 11.

vrîtra-śanku (peg), V, 437.

vyâhrîti, mystic utterance, used with offerings to Rudra, IV, 161.

vyâna, becomes the udâna, IV, 16.

vyânabhrîṭ (holders of the circulating air) are the mind-sustainers, IV, 15.

vyushtri-dvirâtra, III, introd. xxvi, 129.

wain, as the mark of a sacrificial horse, V, 354.

walking round altar (in sprinkling), means slighting it, IV, 170; made good by circumambulation, 170.

warm, is the body of him who is to live, IV, 136.

water (*âpâb*), different kinds of, for consecration, III, 73 seq.; produced out of Vââ, 145, 192; from Pragâpati, 157; heals what

is injured, 220; the waters the udder of the sky, 284; the foundation of the universe, 293; therefrom the universe was produced, 294; water first made of this universe, 363; are unsettled, 301; waters beyond and below the sun, 305; jarful of water poured out as a thunderbolt to clear himself of all evil (*nirriti*), 324; three jarfuls poured on every four of sixteen furrows of Agnikshetra, 335; three additional ones on whole of Agnikshetra, 336; is the sky, 343; there is water not only in the channels of the vital airs, but in the whole body, 337; are the tenth, 363; whenever water (rain) flows everything that exists is produced, 363; possess self-rule, 364; the deepest place of the waters is where the sun burns, 391; are founded on the mountains (rocks), 405; the eye is their abode, the ear their goal, the sky their seat, the air their home, the sea their womb, sand their sediment, 416; is food, IV, 35; is the vital airs, 35; waters (of heaven) are in the highest place, 37; sprinkling of fire-altar with water, 169; springs forth from rock, 169; is contained in rock, in the mountains, 170; waters as Apsaras, the Gandharva Vâta's mates, 232; food is produced from them, 232; universe originally nothing but a sea of water, V, 12; is everything, even in the farthest place, being Parameshṭin, 15; water one of the six doors to the Brahman, 66, 67; the waters the foundation of the universe, 205; swearing by the inviolable waters, sin against Varuṇa, 265; waters as the third of the ten deities ('all the gods') receiving oblations of drops, 280; water thrown for exorcising, 438; the waters a place of abode to all the gods, and Varuṇa their regent, 506.

water-dwellers (fish and fishermen),

subjects of Matsya Sāmwada, the Itihāsa their Vedā V, 359.

well-water, III, 77.

west, connected with vis, Gagati, &c., III, 91; west (?to east) path of sacrifice, 347; is the Gagati, IV, 45; all-ruling (sam-rāḡ), 46, 101; the Ādityas its lords, 101; Varuṇa its protector, 101; connected with saptadāsa-stoma, marutvatiya-rastra, vairūpa-sāman, 101; the all-embracer is Āditya, 106; is hope, distinction (prosperity) and the earth, V, 17, 18; the region of cattle, 485.

wheat, headpiece of sacrificial post made of, III, 31; is touched by sacrificer, 32.

wheel, mounted by Brahman priest, III, 32; of cart and potter, creaks if not steadied, V, 126.

wey (vāḡina), of the Maitrāvāruṇi payasyā, offering of, IV, 271; dakṣhiṇi given therewith, 271.

whirlpool, water from, III, 76.

wife, is one half of husband, III, 33; intercourse with, kept secret, 229; the husband must not eat food in her presence in order that she may bear a vigorous son, IV, 369, 370; (many) wives a sign of (social) eminence, V, 313.

wind (vāta), cf. Vāyu; - connected with Varuṇa, by rain freed from death through ekaviṃśa-stoma, IV, 68; is Vāyu, 142; is the arrows of the Rudras of the air, 165; Vāta as Gandharva with the waters as Apsaras, his mates, 232; three oblations of wind on chariot, thereby yoking it, 235; is on this side of the sun, 235; also in the other world, 235; and in this (terrestrial) world, 236; wind-names uttered, V, 478; is the (aerial) ocean, flood, 479; is unassailable and irresistible, 479; an ogress-ridder, 479; identified with (aerial) ocean, flood; Indra, Savitri, Bṛhaspati, and Yama, 479-81; Pūshan, 486; is irresistible, an ogress-ridder, 479.

wing, of altar, crackling of, IV, 21; is of pankti nature (or fivefold), 115; twenty-one-fold, 222; contraction and expansion of, 300 seq.; has a bending link, 301; is crooked (?curved), 302; wings are the bird's arms, 306; the immortal wings of the Ahavaniya, V, 271.

winter, produced from speech, and from it the pankti, IV, 11; consists of months Saha and Sahasya, 70; is the space between air and heaven, and the part of body between waist and head, 70, 71; frog, avakā plant, and bamboo three forms of it, 175; in winter cattle waste away, V, 45.

wish, - in wishes nothing is excessive, IV, 241, 247, 265.

wolf, springs from Soma flowing from ears, III, 131; from Indra's urine, V, 215.

woman, impure part of, below navel, III, 32; fair-knotted, fair-braided, fair-locked her perfect form, 232; on left side of man, IV, 81; lucky if marked on left side, 81; brings forth within a year, V, 12; two women (Belief and Unbelief) in S. E. quarter with black yellow-eyed man (wrath) between* them, 110, 111; has beautiful form bestowed upon her, 295; given as dakṣhiṇā, 402; is untruth 446.

womb, lies close to belly, IV, 115; lower than belly, 115; enlarges with the child before it is born, not after, 309; is the bearer because Pragāpati by it bore creatures, V, 114.

wood, two kinds of (cut by axe and that found on the ground), III, 257.

wood-brick, III, 155, 166.

work (karman), evolved from the ear, and from it fire, IV, 379.

worlds, the, are the heavenly abodes (of the gods), III, 195; fastened to the sun by means of the quarters, 269; the two, are round, 271; ascent of the (worlds and) metres, 276-278; they are strung on a thread and joined with Āditya, 360; from them is born both what exists

and what exists not, 366; glide along like serpents, 369; are the resting-place, and moving-place, 143; seven worlds of the gods, 277; the three worlds and four quarters, 314; were created together, 286; three and those above them in which are placed the deities higher than Agni, Vāyu, Sūrya, V, 27; the Brahman is the sphere beyond these higher worlds, 27; how they were steadied by Pragâpati, 126; have light on both sides (sun and fire), 149; the three worlds (earth, air and heaven) are light, might and glory respectively, 173; two, those of the Gods and the Fathers, 225.

Wrath, as black, yellow-eyed staff-bearing man, between two women, Belief and Unbelief, V, 111, 112.

Yagña. See sacrifice.

yagnâkratu, oblations of ghee relating to special sacrifices (Agni and Gharma, &c.), forming part of the Vasor dhârâ, IV, 217.

yagnâpukbha, III, introd. xx.

Yagnâtura. See Rishabha.

Yagnâvakas Râgastambâyana, to him Pragâpati revealed himself, IV, 349.

Yagnâvalkya, IV, introd. xviii; questioned by Ganaka as to Agnihotra, V, 46; on the way in which the oblation is to be treated, 61; found by Ganaka to know the Mitravindâ sacrifice, 66; in disputation on Agnihotra at Ganaka's house, 112 seq.; taught by Ganaka, 114; claims prize as most learned in sacred writ, 115; on Agnihotra expiation, 182; on offering of omenta, 393.

yagnâyagnâya-sâman, III, introd. xiv, 274; sung over completed altar, is the moon, IV, 179; is the heavenly world, 252; is Agni Vaisvânara's chant of praise, 253; on first day of Arvamedha, V, 376.

yagnâpavitin, sacrificially invested, V, 237.

Yagus, was in Vritra, III, 138; part of triple Vêda, 139, 141; the Brahman, the Yagus, its power in the other world, IV, 173; the fire-altar the ocean of Yagus, 278; is built up with the fire-altar, 282; marches in front in quest of Pragâpati's vital fluid, 282; is Vāyu, 336; the breath, 337; (yat-gûb), 337; the mystic import (upanishad) its essence, 339; is silent (muttered), indistinct, 350; he who knows the mystic science becomes the Yagus and is called thereby, 341; Yagus consists of 8,000 brîhatîs, and Yagus and Sâman of 10,800 (7,200 and 3,600 resp.) pânktis, 353; is the one brick of which the fire-altar consists, 374; all beings, all the gods become the Yagus, 390; what is performed without a yagus, is unsuccessful, V, 276.

yagushmati, bricks, are the nobility, III, 153; placed on the body of the altar, 348; number of, IV, 22; are the peasantry, 132, 133; is food, 134; any special (extra) one to be placed in middle layer, 138; none in the dhishnya hearths, 242, (?) 244; are the days of the year, Pragâpati's body, 354; three hundred and ninety-six in fire-altar, 357; enumerated as to layers, 358, 359.

yâgyâ, is to be in the trishrubh metre, V, 26.

Yama, III, 49; rules over the settlements of the earth, and grants it to Sacrificer, 298; is the kshatra, 299; Yama and Yamî (Agni and Earth) of one mind with Nirriti, 322; the Fathers live in his realm, V, 236, 237; rules over, and grants, abode in the earth, 431; is the sun, 460; Yama, with Ângiras and Fathers, receives offering of Gharma, 481; — Yama Vaivasvata, king of the Fathers, 365.

yamanetrâb (devâb), seated in the south, III, 49.

yaudhâgaya-sâman, chanted with three nidhanas, IV, 7.

Yavamat, a Gandharva, V, 30.

Yavas and Ayavas, the light and dark fortnights, connected with creatures generally and the *katu/katvârimsa*-stoma, IV, 69; the lords of creatures, 76.

yâvat—tâvat, as long as, III, 244.

year, is seventeenfold (twelve months and five seasons), III, 174; twice in the year food is ripened, 244; is fastened to the moon by means of the seasons, 369; —its part in the sacrifice (as Father Time), IV, introi. xv seq.; is the fire-altar and the three worlds, IV, 29; is Agni Vaisvânara, 33; is space, 62; speeds all beings, 63; burns up all beings, 63; assails all beings, 63; the most vigorous of all things, 63; is arrayed (spread) over all things, 64; is the womb of all beings, 64; as an embryo, in the shape of the thirteenth month, enters the seasons, 64; is the strength of all beings, 64; it forms all beings, 65; is the foundation of all beings, 65; is the range of the ruddy (sun) and holds the supreme sway, 65; is the firmament (*nâku*), heaven, 65; all creatures are evolved from it, 66; is eighteenfold, 66; ruler of the months, 74; is generative power, 125; made continuous by the seasons, 125; contains all objects of desire, 313; is the same as the sun, 313; be-

yond the year lies the wish-granting world which is immortality, 322; is fivefold (viz. food, drink, excellence, light, and immortality), 326, 327; its divisions and lights, 351 seq.; is death, 356 seq.; Agni as the year, how corresponding to each other, 363; produced from the union of Death's mind and speech, 402;

Pragâpati, the sacrifice, is the year, V, 1, 38; only after gaining the year the gods become immortal, 5; the year is the imperishable world, 5; created by Pragâpati as a counterpart of himself, 14; the year (year's *sattrai*) as man, 144, 145, 168 seq.; is that (one) day after day, 155; amounts to a *Brhati*, 155; is the bull among seasons, 276.

yoke, measure of *uttaravedi*, III, 349; — yoke-pin, distance of throw of, III, 123.

yoking, first of the right, then of the left, ox, III, 291, 327.

youth (blitheful), in the prime of life, is apt to become dear to women, V, 295.

yûpa, sacrificial post, eight-cornered, III, 31; wrapt up in seventeen clothes, 31; with a wheaten head-piece, 31; seventeen cubits long, 31; mounted by Sacrificer and his wife, 32; V, 254; remarks on material, form, and size of yûpa, V, 123, 124; twenty-one, 373, 383.

ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS.

- Page 13, paragraphs 7, 8. We have probably to translate—the gods were created on its reaching heaven,—they were created on its entering this earth.
- P. 45, par. 33, lines 6, 11. Read,—in the balance.
- P. 60, l. 19. Read,—Adhvaryu.
- P. 76, note 3. Read,—offering of a pap to Aditi.
- P. 91, par. 4, l. 4. Read,—did we, by one of a hundred Ukthyas, dispel the darkness.
- P. 107, par. 10, ll. 2, 3. Read,—form of the bull.
- P. 108, note 3. Add. —(cf. also Hillebrandt, 'Varuṇa und Mitra,' p. 68 seq.
- P. 130, par. 9, ll. 2, 3. Read,—'The divine thought protect thee, not man's thought.'
- P. 136, par. 6, l. 2. Under him:—Hatisvāmin explains 'anu' by 'anvābhakta,' 'participating after him,' cf. XIII, 5, 4, 24.
- P. 149, note 1. The commentary takes 'prishṭhyapratishṭhite' in the sense of 'established on the prishṭhya,'—inasmuch as, in the first half of the year, he begins each month with the Abhiṣṭhava, and ends with the Prishṭhya, which is the stronger (balavattara, cf. XII, 2, 2, 16, and therefore 'ātmapratishṭhita.'
- P. 155, note 2. The MS. of the commentary is corrupt—ān-pūrvasvākriyate satarinādayaḥ sah bhadrāgamam vakkhaṣṭhāne evādhikshipayati na praderāntara āvartata ity arthaḥ.
- P. 179, note 1, l. 3 from below. Read.—'four-eyed' dog.
- P. 334, note 1. 'Ūtsagna' probably means 'detached'; cf. II, 5, 2, 48.
- P. 397, par. 6, l. 3. For whence, read,—and then.

PART IV.

- par. 5, l. 5. Read,—skin.
- note 1, l. 4. Read,—on the retāḥsiḥ range.
- par. 5, l. 4. Read,—Nabhas and Nabhasya.
- par. 4, l. 5. Read,—the seventh.
- par. 11. After 'sake,' add,—'The Sākvara and Raivata sāmāns stability in the air!' for by the Sākvara and Raivata sāmāns it indeed established in the air.
- l. 8. Read,—Pūrvakṛitti.
- l. 3. Read,—of seven seasons.
- , note 4. Delete,—According to . . . referred to.
- , par. 6. 8. Read,—circumambulates.
- , par. 5, l. 2. Read,—irresistible warrior.
- , par. 2, l. 3. Read,—shower of wealth.
- l. 1. Instead of, then,—read, thereby.
- par. 18, l. 9. Read,—exceeds this universe.
- l. 2. Read,—nor does he exceed this universe.
- par. 14. Read,—There are these five fingers (and toes) each consisting four parts.
- Note 1. Delete,—that being the simplest kind of Soma-sacrifice.—ana indeed must mean—all Soma and other sacrifices, down to the nihotra;—hardly, all sacrifices concluding with the Agnihotra.
- , note 2. Read,—'moving in front,' or 'previous performance.'
- , par. 23, l. 2. Read,—thousand Brīhatīs.
- l. 9. Perhaps we ought to translate—that (gold man), indeed, is the end, self, of everything here (or, of this universe). Cf. J. Muir, Orig. Sansk. Mts, vol. v, p. 389.
- Par. 16, l. 2. Read,—they ascend to where desires have vanished.
- , par. 1, l. 4. Read,—Gana Sārkarākshya.

TRANSLITERATION OF ORIENTAL ALPHABETS ADOPTED FOR THE TRANSLATIONS
OF THE SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST.

CONSONANTS	MISSIONARY ALPHABET.			Sanskrit.	Zend.	Phoenic.	Persian.	Arabic.	Syriac.	Chinese.	
	II Class.										
	I Class.	II Class.	III Class.								
Gutturales.											
1 Tenuis	k	.	.	क	𐬕	𐤀	𐬑	𐤁	𐤀	k	
2 " aspirata	kh	.	ʔ	ख	𐬖	𐤁	𐬑	𐤁	𐤁	kh	
3 Media	g	.	.	ग	𐬗	𐤂	𐬒	𐤂	𐤂	.	
4 " aspirata	gh	.	.	घ	𐬘	𐤂	𐬒	𐤂	𐤂	.	
5 Gutturo-labialis	q	.	.	.	𐬙	𐤃	𐬓	𐤃	𐤃	.	
6 Nasalis	h (ng)	.	.	ङ	{ 𐬚 (ng) 𐬛 (h)	.	.	.	.	.
7 Spiritus asper	h	.	.	ह	𐬛 (h)	𐤄	𐬔	𐤄	𐤄	h, hs	
8 " lenis	h	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
9 " asper faucalis	'h	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
10 " lenis faucalis	'h	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
11 " asper fricatus	'h	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
12 " lenis fricatus	'h	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
Gutturales modificatae (palatales, &c.)											
13 Tenuis	k	.	.	क	𐬕	𐤁	𐬑	𐤁	𐤁	k	
14 " aspirata	kh	.	.	ख	𐬖	𐤁	𐬑	𐤁	𐤁	kh	
15 Media	g	.	.	ग	𐬗	𐤂	𐬒	𐤂	𐤂	.	
16 " aspirata	gh	.	.	घ	𐬘	𐤂	𐬒	𐤂	𐤂	.	
17 " Nasalis	h	.	.	ह	𐬛	𐤄	𐬔	𐤄	𐤄	.	

CONSONANTS (unmodified).	MIMONARY ALPHABET.			Sanskrit.	Zand.	Pahlavi.	Persian.	Arabic.	Hebrew.	Chinese.
	I Class.	II Class.	III Class.							
18 Semivocalis	y	य	𐬶 					

Dentales modificatae (linguales, &c.)	
38 Tenuis	t
39 " aspirata	th
40 Media	d
41 " aspirata	dh
42 Nasalis	n
43 Semivocalis	r
44 " fricata	r
45 " diacritica	h
46 Spiritus asper	sh
47 " lenis	zh
Labiales.	
48 Tenuis	p
49 " aspirata	ph
50 Media	b
51 " aspirata	bh
52 Tenuissima	
53 Nasalis	m
54 Semivocalis	w
55 " aspirata	hw
56 Spiritus asper	f
57 " lenis	v
58 Anusvāra	m
59 Visarga	h

VOWEL	MISSIONARY ALPHABET			Sanskrit	Zend.	Pehlvi	Persian	Arabic	Hebrew	Chinese
	I Class.	II Class.	III Class.							
1 Neutralis	0									ā
2 Laryngo-palatalis	ē									ē
3 " labialis	ō									ō
4 Gutturalis brevis	a			अ	av	𐭠	ا	ا	א	ā
5 " longa	ā	(a)		आ	au	𐭡	ا	ا	א	ā
6 Palatalis brevis	i			इ	i	𐭢	ي	ي	י	i
7 " longa	ī	(i)		ई	ī	𐭣	ي	ي	י	ī
8 Dentalis brevis	ē			ए						ē
9 " longa	ā			ऐ						ā
10 Lingualis brevis	ri			र						u
11 " longa	rf			र						ū
12 Labialis brevis	u			उ						u
13 " longa	ū	(u)		ऊ						ū
14 Gutturo-palatalis brevis	e	(e)		ए	ē					e
15 " longa	ē	(ē)		ऐ	ē					ē
16 Diphthongus gutturo-palatalis	ai	(ai)		अइ	ai					ai
17 " "	ei	(ei)		इइ	ei					ei, ēi
18 " "	oi	(oi)		उइ	oi					oi
19 Gutturo-labialis brevis	o									o
20 " " longa	ō	(o)		ओ	ō					ō
21 Diphthongus gutturo-labialis	au	(au)		औ	au					āu
22 " "	eu	(eu)								
23 " "	ou	(ou)								
24 Gutturalis fracta	ā			अ						ā
25 Palatalis fracta	ī			इ						ī

